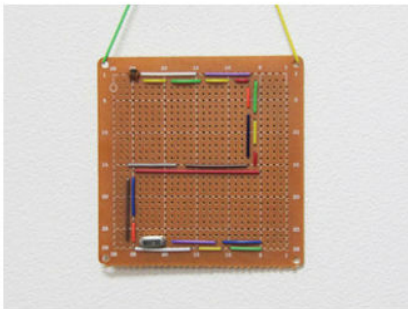


TALK TO ME IN KOREAN



LEVELS 1 – 9

Level 1

Lesson 1 - Hello, Thank you / 안녕하세요, 감사합니다

Lesson 2 - Yes, No, What? / 네, 아니요, 네?

Lesson 3 - Good-bye, See you / 안녕히 가세요, 안녕히 계세요, 안녕

Lesson 4 - I'm sorry, Excuse me / 죄송합니다, 저기요

Lesson 5 - It's me, What is it? / -이에요/예요

Lesson 6 - What is this?, This is ... / 이거, 이거 뭐예요?

Lesson 7 - This, That, It / 이, 그, 저

Lesson 8 - It's NOT / 아니에요

Lesson 9 - Topic/Subject marking particles / 은, 는, 이, 가

Lesson 10 - Have, Don't have, There is, There isn't / 있어요, 없어요

Lesson 11 - Please give me / 주세요

Lesson 12 - It's delicious, It tastes awful, Thank you for the food / 맛있어요, 맛없어요, 잘 먹겠습니다, 잘 먹었습니다

Lesson 13 - I want to / -고 싶어요

Lesson 14 - What do you want to do? / 뭐 하고 싶어요?

Lesson 15 - Sino-Korean Numbers / 일, 이, 삼, 사, ...

Lesson 16 - Basic Present Tense / -아요, -어요, -여요

Lesson 17 - Past Tense / -았/었/였어요 (했어요)

Lesson 18 - Location-marking Particles / -에/에서

Lesson 19 - When / 언제

Lesson 20 - Native Korean numbers / 하나, 둘, 셋, 넷, ...

Lesson 21 - Negative Sentences / 안, -지 않다, 안 하다, 하지 않다

Lesson 22 - 하다 Verbs

Lesson 23 - Who? / 누구?

Lesson 24 - Why? How? / 왜? 어떻게?

Lesson 25 - From A To B, From C Until D / -에서/부터, -까지

Level 2

Lesson 1 - Future Tense / -ㄹ/을 거예요, 할 거예요

Lesson 2 - object marking particles / 을, 를

Lesson 3 - And, and then, therefore, so / 그리고, 그래서

Lesson 4 - And, with / 하고, (이)랑

Lesson 5 - Days in a week / 요일

Lesson 6 - But, however / 그렇지만, 그런데

Lesson 7 - "To" someone, "from" someone / 한테, 한테서

Lesson 8 - 시간 Telling the time / 한 시, 두 시, 세 시, 네 시 ...

Lesson 9 - Counters / 개, 명

Lesson 10 - Present Progressive / -고 있어요
Lesson 11 - Self-introduction / 자기소개
Lesson 12 - What date is it? / 날짜
Lesson 13 - Too, also / -도 - Part 1
Lesson 14 - Too, also / -도 - Part 2
Lesson 15 - Only / -만
Lesson 16 - Very, A bit, Really, Not really, Not at all / 조금, 아주, 정말, 전혀, 별로, 진짜
Lesson 17 - Can, cannot / -ㄹ 수 있다/없다
Lesson 18 - To be good/poor at ~ / 잘 하다/못 하다
Lesson 19 - Making verbs into nouns / -는 것
Lesson 20 - Have to, should, must / -아/어/여야 되다/하다
Lesson 21 - More ~ than ~ / ~보다 더
Lesson 22 - To like / 좋다 vs 좋아하다
Lesson 23 - If, in case / 만약, -(으)면
Lesson 24 - Still, already / 아직, 벌써
Lesson 25 - Something, someday, someone, somewhere / 누군가, 무언가, 어딘가, 언젠가
Lesson 26 - Imperative / -(으)세요
Lesson 27 - Do it for me / -아/어/여 주세요
Lesson 28 - Particle for method, way / -(으)로
Lesson 29 - More, all / 더, 다
Lesson 30 - Don't do it / -지 마세요

Level 3

Lesson 1 - Too much or very / 너무
Lesson 2 - Linking verbs with -고 / Verb and Verb / 하고
Lesson 3 - In front of, Behind, On top of, Under, Next to / 앞에, 옆에, 위에, 밑에, 뒤에
Lesson 4 - Shall we ... ?, I wonder... / -(으)ㄹ까요?
Lesson 5 - Approximately, About / 쯤, 약, 정도
Lesson 6 - Future tense / -(으)ㄹ 거예요 vs -(으)ㄹ게요
Lesson 7 - Linking verbs / -아/어/여서
Lesson 8 - To look like, To seem like / - 같아요
Lesson 9 - To seem like, To look like (used with verbs) / -ㄴ 것 같아요
Lesson 10 - Before -ing / -기 전에
Lesson 11 - ㅁ irregular / ㅁ 불규칙
Lesson 12 - But still, Nevertheless / 그래도
Lesson 13 - Making adjectives / descriptive verbs + -ㄴ 명사
Lesson 14 - Making adjectives / action verbs + -는/(으)ㄴ/(으)ㄹ + 명사
Lesson 15 - Well then, In that case, If so / 그러면, 그럼
Lesson 16 - Let's / -아/어/여요 (청유형)

Lesson 17 - In order to, For the sake of / 위하다, 위해, 위해서
Lesson 18 - Nothing but, Only / 밖에 + 부정형
Lesson 19 - After -ing / 다음에
Lesson 20 - Even if, Even though / -아/어/여도
Lesson 21 - Linking verbs / -는데, 명사 + -인데, 형용사 + -ㄴ 데
Lesson 22 - Maybe I might... / -(으)ㄹ 수도 있어요
Lesson 23 - Word builder 1 / 학(學)
Lesson 24 - 르 irregular / 르 불규칙
Lesson 25 - Verb ending / -네요
Lesson 26 - ㅈ irregular / ㅈ 불규칙
Lesson 27 - Politeness Levels / 반말 and 존댓말
Lesson 28 - “Let’s” in casual language / 반말
Lesson 29 - ㅅ irregular / ㅅ 불규칙
Lesson 30 - Word builder 2 / 실(室)

Level 4

Lesson 1 - The more ... the more ... / -면 -을수록
Lesson 2 - Do you want to ...? / -(으)ㄹ까요?
Lesson 3 - It can't be ... / -(으)ㄹ 리가 없어요, 할 리가 없어요
Lesson 4 - verb ending / -지요/-죠
Lesson 5 - “당신” and “you” / 당신
Lesson 6 - Word builder 3 / 동(動)
Lesson 7 - It's okay. I'm okay. / 괜찮아요
Lesson 8 - it is okay to..., you don't have to... / -아/어/여도 돼요, 해도 돼요
Lesson 9 - you shouldn't..., you're not supposed to... / -(으)면 안 돼요, 하면 안 돼요
Lesson 10 - among, between / 사이에, 사이에서, 중에, 중에서
Lesson 11 - anybody, anything, anywhere / 아무나, 아무도, 아무거나, 아무것도
Lesson 12 - to try doing something / -아/어/여 보다, 해 보다
Lesson 13 - Word builder 4 / 불(不)
Lesson 14 - sometimes, often, always, never, seldom / 가끔, 자주, 별로, 맨날, 항상
Lesson 15 - any / 아무 Part 2
Lesson 16 - Spacing in Korean / 띄어쓰기
Lesson 17 - Word Contractions - Part 1 / 주격 조사, 축약형
Lesson 18 - most,best (superlative) / 최상급, 최고
Lesson 19 - Less, Not completely / 덜
Lesson 20 - Sentence Building Drill #1
Lesson 21 - Spacing Part 2 / 띄어쓰기
Lesson 22 - Word builder 5 / 장(場)
Lesson 23 - “Word Contractions - Part 2

Lesson 24 - much more, much less / 훨씬

Lesson 25 - -(으)ㄹ + noun (future tense noun group) / -(으)ㄹ + 명사, 할 것

Lesson 26 - -(으)ㄴ + noun (past tense noun group) / -(으)ㄴ + 명사, 한 것

Lesson 27 - I think ... (+ future tense) / -(으)ㄴ / -(으)ㄹ / ㄴ 것 같다, 한 것 같다, 할 것 같다

Lesson 28 - to become + adjective / -아/어/여지다

Lesson 29 - to gradually/eventually get to do something / -게 되다, 하게 되다

Lesson 30 - Sentence Building Drill #2

Level 5

Lesson 1 - almost did - -(으)ㄹ 뻔 했다

Lesson 2 - -시- (honorific) / -시-, 하시다

Lesson 3 - Good work / 수고

Lesson 4 - I guess, I assume / -나 보다

Lesson 5 - I guess, I assume - Part 2 / -(으)ㄴ 가 보다

Lesson 6 - Word builder 6 / 문(文)

Lesson 7 - as soon as ... / -자마자, 하자마자

Lesson 8 - It is about to ..., I am planning to ... / -(으)려고 하다, 하려고 하다

Lesson 9 - While I was doing ..., ... and then ... / -다가, 하다가

Lesson 10 - (say) that S + be / -(이)라고 + nouns

Lesson 11 - Sentence Building Drill #3

Lesson 12 - Noun + -(이)라는 + Noun / Someone that is called ABC / Someone who says s/he is XYZ

Lesson 13 - Word Builder lesson 7 / 회 (會)

Lesson 14 - -(으)니까, -(으)니 / Since, Because, As

Lesson 15 - At least, Instead, It might not be the best but... / -(이)라도

Lesson 16 - Narrative Present Tense in Korean / -(ㄴ/는)다, 하다 vs 해요 vs 한다

Lesson 17 - Quoting someone in Korean / -(ㄴ/는)다는, -(ㄴ/는)다고

Lesson 18 - Whether or not / -(으)ㄴ/는지

Lesson 19 - to tell someone to do something / Verb + -(으)라고 + Verb

Lesson 20 - Sentence Building Drill #4

Lesson 21 - Word Contractions Part 3 / 이거를 -> 이걸, 축약형

Lesson 22 - Word builder 8 / 식 (食)

Lesson 23 - it seems like ... / I assume ... / -(으)려나 보다

Lesson 24 - Not A But B, Don't do THIS but do THAT / 말고, -지 말고

Lesson 25 - Compared to, Relatively / -에 비해서 -ㄴ/은/는 편이다 /

Lesson 26 - Instead of ... / 대신에, -는 대신에

Lesson 27 - You know, Isn't it, You see..., Come on... / -잖아(요)

Lesson 28 - to have no other choice but to ... / -(으)ㄹ 수 밖에 없다

Lesson 29 - they said that they had done ..., they said that they would ... / -
았/었/였다고, -(으)ㄹ 거라고
Lesson 30 - Sentence Building Drill 5

Level 6

Lesson 1 - How about ...? / ~ 어때요?
Lesson 2 - What do you think about ...? / 어떻게 생각하세요? / 어떤 것 같아요?
Lesson 3 - One of the most ... / 가장 ~ 중의 하나
Lesson 4 - Do you mind if I ...? / -아/어/여도 돼요?
Lesson 5 - I'm in the middle of ...-ing / -는 중이에요
Lesson 6 - Word Builder Lesson 9 / -님
Lesson 7 - One way or the other / 어차피
Lesson 8 - I'm not sure if ... / -(으/느)ㄴ지 잘 모르겠어요.
Lesson 9 - While you are at it / -(으)ㄴ는 김에 /
Lesson 10 - Sentence Building Drill #6
Lesson 11 - I mean... / 그러니까, 제 말 뜻은, -라고요, 말이에요
Lesson 12 - What do you mean? What does that mean? / 무슨 말이에요?
Lesson 13 - Word Builder 10 / 과
Lesson 14 - “/ (slash)” or “and” / -(으)ㄹ 겸
Lesson 15 - the thing that is called, what they call ... / -(이)라는 것
Lesson 16 - -겠- (suffix)
Lesson 17 - because, since, let me tell you... / -거든(요)
Lesson 18 - - Or / -거나, -(이)나, 아니면
Lesson 19 - to improve, to change, to increase / -아/어/여지다 Part 2
Lesson 20 - Sentence Building Drill #7
Lesson 21 - Passive Voice in Korean - Part 1
Lesson 22 - Word Builder 11 / 무
Lesson 23 - Passive Voice - Part 2
Lesson 24 - I DID do it, I DO like it / -기는 하다
Lesson 25 - Easy/difficult to + V / -기 쉽다/어렵다
Lesson 26 - I thought I would ..., I didn't think you would ... / -(으)ㄴ/ㄹ 줄 알다
Lesson 27 - can, to be able to, to know how to / -(으)ㄹ 수 있다, -(으)ㄹ 줄 알다
Lesson 28 - it depends on ... / -에 따라 달라요
Lesson 29 - sometimes I do this, sometimes I do that / 어떨 때는 -고, 어떨 때는 -
아/어/여요
Lesson 30 - Sentence Building Drill #8

Level 7

- Lesson 1 - I see that ..., I just realized that ... / -(는)구나 / -(는)군요
- Lesson 2 - to pretend to + V / -(으/느)ㄴ 척/체 하다
- Lesson 3 - to be doable/understandable/bearable / -(으)ㄴ 만하다
- Lesson 4 - like + N / -같이, -처럼
- Lesson 5 - as much as / -((으)ㄴ) 만큼
- Lesson 6 - Word Builder 12 / 원 (院)
- Lesson 7 - even if ..., there is no use / -아/어/여 봤자
- Lesson 8 - -길래
- Lesson 9 - -느라고
- Lesson 10 - Sentence Building Drill #9
- Lesson 11 - Making Things Happen (Causative)
- Lesson 12 - -더라(고요)
- Lesson 13 - Word Builder 13 / 기 (機)
- Lesson 14 - No matter how... / 아무리 -아/어/여도
- Lesson 15 - What was it again? / 뭐더라?, 뭐였죠?
- Lesson 16 - I said ... / -다니까(요), -라니까(요)
- Lesson 17 - They say ... / -(느)ㄴ 대요 / -(이)래요
- Lesson 18 - They say ... / -(느)ㄴ 다던데요 / -(이)라던데요
- Lesson 19 - Making reported questions / -냐고
- Lesson 20 - Sentence Building Drill #10
- Lesson 21 - Didn't you hear him say ... / -(ㄴ/는)다잖아요 / -라잖아요
- Lesson 22 - Word Builder 14 / 정 (定)
- Lesson 23 - no matter whether you do it or not / -(으)나마나
- Lesson 24 - Passive Voice + -어 있다 / To have been put into a certain state
- Lesson 25 - to be bound to + V / -게 되어 있다
- Lesson 26 - on top of ..., in addition to ... / -(으/느)ㄴ 데다가
- Lesson 27 - As long as / -(느)ㄴ 한, -기만 하면
- Lesson 28 - the thing that is called + Verb / -(ㄴ/는)다는 것
- Lesson 29 - so that ..., to the point where ... / -도록
- Lesson 30 - Sentence Building Drill #11

Level 8

- Lesson 1 - Advanced Idiomatic Expressions / 눈 (eye) - Part 1/2
- Lesson 2 - Advanced Idiomatic Expressions / 눈 (eye) - Part 2/2
- Lesson 3 - right after + V-ing / -기가 무섭게, -기가 바쁘게
- Lesson 4 - N + that (someone) used to + V / -던

Lesson 5 - Advanced Situational Expressions: Refusing in Korean
Lesson 6 - it means ... / -(ㄴ/는)다는 뜻이에요
Lesson 7 - Word Builder 15 / 점 (點)
Lesson 8 - I hope ..., I wish ... / -(으)면 좋겠어요
Lesson 9 - Past Tense (Various Types) / 과거시제 총정리
Lesson 10 - Advanced Idiomatic Expressions - 귀 (ear)
Lesson 11 - Sentence Building Drill 12
Lesson 12 - Present Tense (Various Types) / 현재시제 총정리
Lesson 13 - Word Builder 16 / 주 (主)
Lesson 14 - Advanced Situational Expressions: Agreeing
Lesson 15 - Future Tense (Various Types) / 미래시제 총정리
Lesson 16 - Advanced Idiomatic Expressions - 가슴 (chest, heart, breast)
Lesson 17 - If only it's not ... / -만 아니면
Lesson 18 - in the same way that ..., just like someone did ... / -(으)ㄴ 대로
Lesson 19 - even if I would have to, even if that means I have to / -는 한이 있더라도
Lesson 20 - Sentence Building Drill 13
Lesson 21 - Advanced Idiomatic Expressions - 머리 (head, hair)
Lesson 22 - Word Builder 17 / 상 (上)
Lesson 23 - Advanced Situational Expressions: Making Suggestions in Korean
Lesson 24 - it is just that ..., I only ... / -(으)ㄹ 따름이다
Lesson 25 - Advanced Situational Expressions: Defending in Korean
Lesson 26 - Advanced Idiomatic Expressions - 몸 (body)
Lesson 27 - Advanced Situational Expressions: Complimenting in Korean
Lesson 28 - despite, in spite of / -에도 불구하고
Lesson 29 - Advanced Situational Expressions: When You Feel Happy
Lesson 30 - Sentence Building Drill #14

Level 9

Lesson 1 - Advanced Idiomatic Expressions / 손 (Hand)
Lesson 2 - -아/어/여 버리다
Lesson 3 - Advanced Situational Expressions: When You Are Unhappy
Lesson 4 - -고 말다
Lesson 5 - Advanced Situational Expressions: When you are worried
Lesson 6 - Advanced Idiomatic Expressions - 발 (foot)
Lesson 7 - Word Builder 18 / 비 (非)
Lesson 8 - Advanced Situational Expressions: Asking a favor
Lesson 9 - -(으)ㄴ
Lesson 10 - Sentence Building Drill 15
Lesson 11 - Advanced Idiomatic Expressions - 마음 (mind, heart)

Lesson 12 - -아/어/여 보인다
Lesson 13 - Word Builder 19 / 신 (新)
Lesson 14 - Advanced Situational Expressions: 후회할 때
Lesson 15 - Advanced Idiomatic Expressions - 기분 (feeling)
Lesson 16 - -(으)ㄴ 테니(까)
Lesson 17 - -(으/느)ㄴ 이상
Lesson 18 - -(으)ㄴ 까 보다
Lesson 19 - Advanced Situational Expressions: 오랜만에 만났을 때
Lesson 20 - Sentence Building Drill 16
Lesson 21 - Advanced Idiomatic Expressions - 생각 (thought, idea)
Lesson 22 - Word builder 20 / 시 (示, 視)
Lesson 23 - -(으)면서
Lesson 24 - -(ㄴ/는)다면서(요), -(이)라면서(요)
Lesson 25 - Advanced Situational Expressions: 길을 물어볼 때
Lesson 26 - Advanced Idiomatic Expressions - 시간 (time)
Lesson 27 - -더니
Lesson 28 - -(으)ㄴ 바에
Lesson 29 - Advanced Situational Expressions: 차가 막힐 때
Lesson 30 - Sentence Building Drill #17

LEVEL 1 LESSON 1

안녕하세요. = Hello. / Hi. / How are you? / Good afternoon. / Good evening. / etc...

안녕 + 하세요 = 안녕하세요.
[an-nyeong] [ha-se-yo]

안녕 = well-being, peace, health

하세요 = you do, do you?, please do

안녕하세요 is the most common way of greeting someone in Korean, and 안녕하세요 is in 존댓말 [jondaetmal], polite/formal language. When someone greets you with 안녕하세요, you can simply greet the person back with 안녕하세요.

Sample Conversation

A: 안녕하세요. [annyeong-haseyo] = Hello.

B: 안녕하세요. [annyeong-haseyo] = Hi.

감사합니다. = Thank you.

감사 + 합니다 = 감사합니다.
[gam-sa] [hap-ni-da]

감사 = appreciation, thankfulness, gratitude

합니다 = I do, I am doing

감사합니다 is the most commonly used formal way of saying "Thank you." 감사 means "gratitude" and 합니다 means "I do" or "I am doing" in 존댓말, polite/formal language, so together it means "Thank you." You can use this expression, 감사합니다, whenever you want to say "Thank you." in English.

LEVEL 1 LESSON 2

After listening to this lesson, when you are asked a YES/NO question, you will be able to answer that question with either YES or NO in Korean.

네 / 아니요

In Korean, "Yes" is 네 [ne] and "No" is 아니요 [aniyo] in 존댓말 [jondaetmal], polite language.

네. [ne] = Yes.

아니요. [aniyo] = No.

But in Korean, when people say "네", it is not the same as saying "Yes." in English. The same goes for "아니요" too. This is because the Korean "네" expresses your "agreement" to what the other person said. And "아니요" expresses your "disagreement" or "denial" to what the other person said.

For example,

someone asks you "You don't like coffee?" (커피 안 좋아해요? [keo-pi an jo-a-hae-yo?] in Korean) and if your answer is "No, I don't like coffee." you have to say "네."

Strange?

So it is more accurate to put it this way.

네. [ne] = That's right. / I agree. / Sounds good. / What you said is correct.

아니요. [aniyo] = That's not right. / I don't agree. / What you said is not correct.

Therefore, when you ask "You don't like coffee?" in Korean, if the person answering doesn't like coffee, he/she will say "No." in English but "네" in Korean. And if the person DOES like coffee, he/she will say "Yes." but "아니요" in Korean.

커피 좋아해요? [keo-pi jo-a-hae-yo?] = Do you like coffee?

네. 좋아해요. [ne. jo-a-hae-yo] = Yes, I like coffee.

LEVEL 1 LESSON 2

커피 좋아해요? [keo-pi jo-a-hae-yo?] = Do you like coffee?

아니요. 안 좋아해요. [aniyo. an jo-a-hae-yo] = No, I don't like coffee.

커피 안 좋아해요? [keo-pi an jo-a-hae-yo?] = You don't like coffee?

아니요. 좋아해요. [aniyo. jo-a-hae-yo] = Yes, I like coffee.

커피 안 좋아해요? [keo-pi an jo-a-hae-yo?] = You don't like coffee?

네. 안 좋아해요. [ne. an jo-a-hae-yo] = No, I don't like coffee.

You don't have to worry about the other parts of the sample sentences above. Just remember that the Korean system for saying YES and NO is different from the English system.

네 is more than just YES or THAT'S RIGHT.

While 네 [ne] is used to express "Yes" or "That's right", it is also used as a conversation filler. If you listen to two Korean people talking with each other, you will hear them saying 네 quite often, even when it is not intended to mean "Yes".

So two people can have a conversation like this. Imagine it is all in Korean.

A: You know what, I bought this book yesterday,

B: 네. [ne]

A: and I really like it.

B: 네.

A: But it's a bit too expensive.

B: 네.

A: Do you know how much it was?

B: How much was it?

A: It was 100 dollars!

B: 네? [ne?]

A: So I paid the money with my credit card.

B: 네...

LEVEL 1 LESSON 2

A: But I still like it a lot because it's a book by Kyeong-eun Choi, one of the teachers at TalkToMeInKorean.com

B: 네...

So, as you can see from the dialog above, 네 [ne] is a multi-player. It can be:

Yes. / That's right

but also,

I see. / I got it. / I'm here! (when someone calls you) / I understand. / Ah-ha. / etc...

맞아요.

Because 네 [ne] and 아니요 [aniyo] are focused more on your agreement and disagreement rather than whether something is true or not, and ALSO because 네 can mean "I see." or "Ah-ha." as well, Korean people often add this expression, 맞아요 [ma-ja-yo] after 네 [ne].

네, 맞아요. [ne, ma-ja-yo] = Yes, that's right.

This is in order to express more strongly and clearly that you are saying "You're right." rather than sounding like you are just passively listening, while nodding.

네 again.

네 is amazing. It can be many things already, but it can also be "What did you say?"

Suppose someone said something to you but you couldn't hear the person well or you weren't paying much attention. Then you can say "네?" [ne?] to mean "Pardon me?" "I'm sorry?" "What did you say?" "I didn't hear you well." You can also use "네?" to show your surprise.

LEVEL 1 LESSON 2

A: I bought a present for you.

B: 네? [ne?]

A: I said I bought a present for you?

B: 네?

A: Forget it.

B: 네?

LEVEL 1 LESSON 3

After listening to this lesson, you will be able to say good-bye in Korean.

Do you remember how to say "Hello." in Korean?

안녕하세요. [an-nyeong-ha-se-yo]

If you remember 안녕하세요, that is fantastic. And if you even remember that "안녕" in 안녕하세요 means "peace" and "well-being", that is even more fantastic.

안녕 [an-nyeong] = well-being, peace, health

And in Korean, when you say "Good-bye" in formal/polite Korean, 존댓말 [jondaetmal], there are two types of expressions, and both of these expressions have the word 안녕 [an-nyeong] in them.

One is when you are the one who is leaving.

And the other is when you are the one who is staying.

If you are leaving, and the other person is (or the other people are) staying, you can say:

안녕히 계세요. [an-nyeong-hi gye-se-yo]

If you are staying, and the other person is (or the other people are) leaving, you can say:

안녕히 가세요. [an-nyeong-hi ga-se-yo]

For now, don't worry about the literary meaning of the expressions and just learn them as they are, but if you are really curious and if we were forced to translate these greetings, they would be translated like this.

안녕히 계세요. = Stay in peace.

LEVEL 1 LESSON 3

안녕히 가세요. = Go in peace.

But again, don't worry about the literal meaning of these greetings JUST YET!

**** One tip Hyunwoo would like to give you:**

When Korean people say 안녕하세요 [an-nyeong-ha-se-yo], 안녕히 계세요 [an-nyeong-hi gye-se-yo] or 안녕히 가세요 [an-nyeong-hi ga-se-yo], they don't always pronounce EVERY single letter clearly. So often times, what you would hear is just the ending part, "세요" [se-yo].

So you can deliberately sound more fluent by just saying 세요 [se-yo] for all of these occasions.

LEVEL 1 LESSON 4

After listening to this lesson, you will be able to say "I am sorry" or "I apologize" and you will also be able to get someone's attention when you want to say something to them or order something in a restaurant.

죄송합니다. [joe-song-hap-mi-da]

Do you remember how to say "Thank you" in Korean?

It is **감사합니다**. [gam-sa-ham-ni-da]

If you also remember that **감사합니다** is basically **감사** ("appreciation" or "thankfulness") plus **합니다** ("I do"), you can assume that **죄송합니다** is also **죄송** plus **합니다**.

죄송 [joe-song] means "apology", "being sorry" or "feeling ashamed", and **합니다** [hap-ni-da] means "I do", so **죄송합니다** [joe-song-hap-ni-da] means "I am sorry." or "I apologize."

죄송합니다 is NOT always "I'm sorry".

Even though 죄송합니다 [joe-song-hap-ni-da] is BASICALLY "I'm sorry", you can't use 죄송합니다 when you want to say "**I am sorry to hear that.**"

Many Korean people actually get confused when they talk about some bad news to their English-speaking friends and hear "I'm sorry" from them.

If you say "I'm sorry." after you hear a piece of bad news from your Korean friend, he or she might say "**Why are YOU apologizing for that?**" to you.

This is because 죄송합니다 ONLY means "I apologize.", "It was my bad.", "Excuse me." or "I shouldn't have done that." It can never mean "I'm sorry to hear that."

LEVEL 1 LESSON 4

저기요. [jeo-gi-yo]

In English, you can use the expression "Excuse me." in all of the following situations.

- 1) when you are passing through a crowd of people
- 2) when you are leaving the room for a second
- 3) when you want to get someone's attention and talk to them or let them know something
- 4) when you want to call the waiter in a restaurant or a cafe to order something

저기요 [jeo-gi-yo] is an expression that can be translated to "Excuse me" but this Korean expression, 저기요 is ONLY used for situation number 3 and 4 above.

How do you say "Excuse me." when you want to pass through?

You can say:

잠시만요. [jam-si-man-yo] (literal meaning: "Just a second.")

죄송합니다. [joe-song-ham-ni-da] (literal meaning: "I am sorry.")

잠깐만요. [jam-kkan-man-yo] (literal meaning: "Just a second.")

** Yes, "jamsimanyo" and "jamkkanmanyoo" are the same thing.

These are the most commonly used expressions. You don't have to memorize them right now, but they are just good to know!

LEVEL 1 LESSON 5

After studying with this lesson, you will be able to say things like "A is B(noun)." or "I am ABC(noun)." in polite/formal Korean.

이에요 / 예요 [i-e-yo / ye-yo]

이에요 and 예요 have a similar role to that of the English verb "to be". The fundamental difference, however, is the sentence structure that they are used in.

English sentence structure:

ABC + **[be]** + DEF.

** DEF is a noun here.

Ex)

ABC is DEF.

I am ABC.

You are XYZ.

Korean sentence structure:

ABC + DEF + **[be]**

** DEF is a noun here.

Ex)

이거 ABC예요. [i-geo ABC-ye-yo] = This is ABC.

In English, the verb "to be" is changed to "am" "are" or "is" depending on the subject of the sentence, but in Korean, you decide whether to use 이에요 [i-e-yo] or 예요 [ye-yo] depending on whether the last letter in the previous word ended in a consonant or a vowel. 이에요 and 예요 are very similar and also sound similar so it is not such a big problem if you mix up these two, but it is better to know the correct forms.

LEVEL 1 LESSON 5

When you want to say that ABC "is" DEF in Korean, if the word for "DEF" has a final consonant in the last letter, you add 이에요 [i-e-yo], but if it doesn't have a final consonant and ends in a vowel, you add 예요 [ye-yo]. This is just to make the pronunciation of the connected part easier, so it will come naturally if you practice with some sample sentences.

Final consonant + 이에요 [i-e-yo]

No final consonant (Only vowel) + 예요 [ye-yo]

Sample sentences

물이에요. = 물 + 이에요 [mul + i-e-yo]
(It's) water.

가방이에요. = 가방 + 이에요 [ga-bang + i-e-yo]
(It's) a bag.

사무실이에요. = 사무실 + 이에요 [sa-mu-sil + i-e-yo]
(It's) an office.

학교예요. = 학교 + 예요 [hak-gyo + ye-yo]
(It's) a school.

저예요. = 저 + 예요 [jeo + ye-yo]
(It's) me.

As you can see from the examples above, in Korean, you don't have to use articles like "a/an" or "the" as in English. So when you look up a noun in your Korean dictionary, you can add 이에요 or 예요 and then it means "It is ABC." "That is DEF." "I am XYZ."

You can also make this a question simply by raising the tone at the end of the sentence.

LEVEL 1 LESSON 5

물이에요. [mul-i-e-yo] = It's water.

물이예요? [mul-i-e-yo?] = Is that water? Is this water?

학교예요. [hak-gyo-ye-yo] = It's a school.

학교예요? [hak-yo-ye-yo] = Is it a school? Are you at school now?

뭐 [mwo] = what

뭐예요? [mwo-ye-yo?] = What is it? What's that?

LEVEL 1 LESSON 6

After studying with this lesson, you will be able to say "This is ABC." and also ask "Is this ABC?" and "What is this?" in polite/formal Korean.

이에요 / 예요 [i-e-yo / ye-yo]

In the previous lesson, you learned how 이에요 [i-e-yo] and 예요 [ye-yo] can be placed after a noun to express the meaning of "It is ABC" or "I am DEF."

Review / Example

책 [chaek] + 이에요 [i-e-yo] = **책이에요.** [chaek-i-e-yo] **It's a book.**

저 [jeo] + 예요 [ye-yo] = **저예요.** [jeo-ye-yo] **It's me.**

** 이에요 and 예요 have a similar role to that of the English verb "to be".

Final consonant + 이에요 [i-e-yo]

No final consonant (Only vowel) + 예요 [ye-yo]

이거 [i-geo] = this, this one

이 [i] ("this") + **것** [geot] ("thing") = **이것** [i-geot] --> **이거** [i-geo]

이거 [i-geo] is originally **이것** [i-geot] and it is a combination of **이** [i] ("this") and **것** [geot] ("thing") but it is often used as just **이거** [i-geo] for the ease of pronunciation.

Sample Sentences

이거 책이에요. [i-geo chaek-i-e-yo] = This is a book.

이거 카메라예요. [i-geo ka-me-ra-ye-yo] = This is a camera.

LEVEL 1 LESSON 6

이거 커피예요. [i-geo keo-pi-ye-yo] = This is coffee.

이거 사전이에요. [i-geo sa-jeon-i-e-yo] = This is a dictionary.

이거 뭐예요? [i-geo mwo-ye-yo?] = What is this?

In Level 1 Lesson 5, we introduced the question, 뭐예요? [mwo-ye-yo?] and it means "What is it?" You can add 이거 [i-geo] in front of it to ask "What is this?"

이거 뭐예요? [i-geo mwo-ye-yo?] = What is this?

이거 핸드폰이에요. [i-geo haen-deu-pon-i-e-yo] = This is a cellphone.

이거 뭐예요? [i-geo mwo-ye-yo?] = What is this?

이거 물이에요. [i-geo mul-i-e-yo] = This is water.

이거 뭐예요? [i-geo mwo-ye-yo?] = What is this?

이거 커피예요. [i-geo keo-pi-ye-yo] = This is coffee.

Do you remember how to say "No"?

이거 커피예요? [i-geo keo-pi-ye-yo?] = Is this coffee?

아니요. 이거 물이에요. [a-ni-yo. i-geo mul-i-e-yo] = No. This is water.

Do you remember how to say "Yes, that's right"?

이거 커피예요? [i-geo keo-pi-ye-yo?] = Is this coffee?

네. 맞아요. 이거 커피예요. [ne. ma-ja-yo. i-geo keo-pi-ye-yo] = Yes, that's right. This is coffee.

LEVEL 1 LESSON 7

In this lesson, you can learn how to say "this" "that" and "it" in Korean.

In English, the words "this" and "that" can be used both on their own and to modify words.

Example)

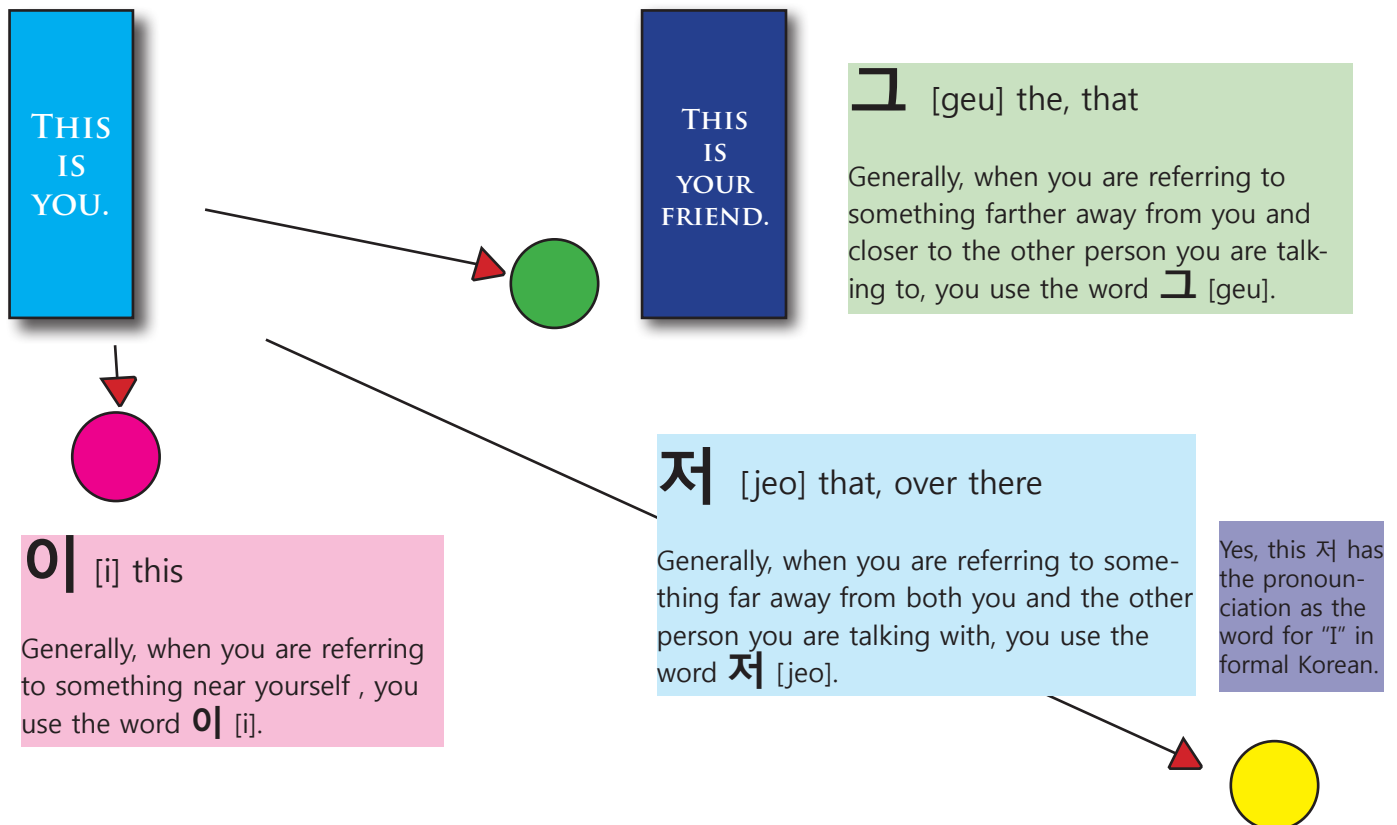
In English you can say "This is my car." and also "This car is mine." So the word "this" here can be used as a pronoun and also as a word that modifies "car."

In Korean, however, words for "this" as a modifier and "this" as "this item here" or "this thing here" are strictly distinguished, and the same is true for "that" as well.

이 [i] = this (near you)

그 [geu] = the / that (near the other person)

저 [jeo] = that (over there)



LEVEL 1 LESSON 7

Since 이, 그, and 저 in Korean can only work as modifiers, when you want to say 'this' 'that' or 'it' as pronouns, you have to add the word 거 [geo] or 것 [geot] after these words.

거 [geo] = 것 [geot] = thing, item, stuff, fact

So...

이 [i] = this

이 + 것 = 이것 [i-geot] or 이거 [i-geo] = this thing, this item, this one

그 [geu] = the, that

그 + 것 = 그것 [geu-geot] or 그거 [geu-geo] = the thing, the item, that one, it

저 [jeo] = the, that, that ... over there

저 + 것 = 저것 [jeu-geot] or 저거 [jeu-geo] = that thing over there

You can form various expressions using 이, 그, or 저 along with other words.

Example)

사람 [sa-ram] means **a person**

이 사람 [i sa-ram] = this person, this man here, this lady here, he, she

그 사람 [geu sa-ram] = the person, that person, he, she

저 사람 [jeo sa-ram] = that person over there, he, she

LEVEL 1 LESSON 8

In this lesson, you can learn how to say something is NOT something.

Now, let's review. Do you remember how to say "this" "that" and "the/it" in Korean?

-----Review-----

이 [i] = this (near you)

이거 [i-geo] or **이것** [i-geot] = this thing, this item, this stuff, this fact

그 [geu] = the / that (near the other person)

그거 [geu-geo] or **그것** [geu-geot] = the thing, the item, that one, it

저 [jeo] = that (over there)

저거 [jeo-geo] or **저것** [jeo-geot] = that thing over there

사람 [sa-ram] means **a person**

이 사람 [i sa-ram] = this person, this man here, this lady here, he, she

그 사람 [geu sa-ram] = the person, that person, he, she

저 사람 [jeo sa-ram] = that person over there, he, she

아니에요 [a-ni-e-yo] = to be not, it is not, you are not

아니에요 [a-ni-e-yo] is the present tense form in the formal language of the verb **아니다** (to be not). So **아니에요** [a-ni-e-yo] means "It's not." "I am not." "You're not." "He/she is not." and etc.

LEVEL 1 LESSON 8

Whenever you want to say that something is NOT something, you can say a subject and **아니예요** [a-ni-e-yo].

NOUN + 아니예요 = TO BE NOT + NOUN

Example:

저 아니예요. [jeo a-ni-e-yo] = It's not me.

우유 아니예요. [u-yu a-ni-e-yo] = It's not milk.

물 아니예요. [mul a-ni-e-yo] = It's not water.

If you want to say "This is not milk." "I am not a student." "That's not a park." and etc, you can add a word at the beginning of the sentence.

milk = 우유 [u-yu]

not milk = 우유 아니예요. [u-yu a-ni-e-yo]

This is not milk. = **이거** 우유 아니예요. [i-geo u-yu a-ni-e-yo]

student = 학생 [hak-saeng]

not a student = 학생 아니예요 [hak-saeng a-ni-e-yo]

I am not a student. = **저** 학생 아니예요. [jeo hak-saeng a-ni-e-yo]

liquor = 술 [sul]

not liquor = 술 아니예요 [sul a-ni-e-yo]

That is not liquor. = **저거** 술 아니예요. [jeo-geo sul a-ni-e-yo]

cat = 고양이 [go-yang-i]

not a cat = 고양이 아니예요 [go-yang-i a-ni-e-yo]

It is not a cat. = **그거** 고양이 아니예요. [geu-geo go-yang-i a-ni-e-yo]

LEVEL 1 LESSON 9

In this lesson, you are going to learn about the topic marking particles and the subject marking particles in Korean. Most languages don't have subject marking particles or topic marking particles in their sentences, so the concept might be very new, but once you get used to them, knowing how to use these particles will come very much in handy.

Topic marking particles

은 [eun] / 는 [neun]

The main role of topic marking particles is **letting the other people know what you are talking about or going to talk about**, and topic marking particles are attached after nouns.

Words ending with a last consonant + -은

Words ending with a vowel + -는

Examples:

가방 [ga-bang] + 은 [eun]

나 [na] + 는 [neun]

The topic of the sentence, marked by 은 [eun] or 는 [neun] is usually (but not always) the same as the subject of the sentence.

저 [jeo] = I

저 + 는 [neun] = 저는 [jeo-neun] = as for me / (I am talking) me

저는 학생이에요. [jeo-neun hak-saeng-i-e-yo] = As for me, I am a student. / I am a student.

Here, the word 저 (I) is both the topic of the sentence (talking about "I" here) and the subject of the sentence ("I" is the subject, and "am" is the verb.)

LEVEL 1 LESSON 9

But the uniqueness of the Korean language can be found in the following sample sentence.

내일은 저는 일해요. [nae-il-eun jeo-neun il-hae-yo]

= "As for tomorrow, I work."

Here, **내일** [nae-il], tomorrow, is followed by **은** [eun], is a topic, but not the subject of the verb 일하다 [il-ha-da], "to work" because it is not "tomorrow" that works but "I" that work.

Subject marking particles

이 [i] / **가** [ga]

The role of subject marking particles is relatively simple compared to that of role of topic marking particles.

Words ending with a last consonant + -이

Words ending with a vowel + -가

Examples:

가방 [ga-bang] + 이 [i]

학교 [hak-gyo] + 가 [ga]

So, basically,

topic marking particles (은/는) express what the **topic** of the sentence is, and **subject marking particles (이/가)** show what the **subject** of the sentence is, but that's not everything.

LEVEL 1 LESSON 9

What more is there about the particles **은/는/이/가**?

(1)

In addition to marking topics, **은** [eun] / **는** [neun] has the nuance of "about" something, "as for" something, or even "unlike other things" or "different from other things."

(2)

In addition to marking subjects, **이** [i] / **가** [ga] has the nuance of "none other than" "nothing but" and also, when used inside a complex sentence, the role of marking the subject without emphasizing it too much.

Let's look at some examples of **(1)**.

이거 [i-geo] = this / 사과 [sa-gwa] = apple / 예요 [ye-yo] = to be / is

이거 사과예요. [i-geo sa-gwa-ye-yo] = This is an apple.

You can add **은/는** to this, and in this case the subject, 이거, ends in a vowel, so add **-는**.

이거는 사과예요. [i-geo-NEUN sa-gwa-ye-yo]

= **(The other things are not apples, but) THIS is an apple.**

So you can imagine someone talking like this:

이거 커피예요. [i-geo keo-pi-ye-yo] (= This is coffee)

이거**는** 물이에요. [i-geo-NEUN mul-i-e-yo] (= That was coffee, but THIS ONE, it's water.)

이거**는** 오렌지주스예요. [i-geo-NEUN o-ren-ji-ju-seu-ye-yo]

(= And THIS ONE, it's different again, it's orange juice.)

이거**는** 뭐예요? [i-geo-NEUN mwo-ye-yo?]

(= And what about this one? What is it?)

LEVEL 1 LESSON 9

As you can see from this example, 은/는 has the role of emphasizing the topic of the sentence by giving it the nuance of "that one is ... and/but THIS ONE is..." So sometime it is unnatural to use 은/는 in every sentence you say.

So in Korean, although 은 and 는 are generally topic marking particles, people often save 은/는 for really emphasizing the topic in contrast to the other parts of the sentence.

For example, if you want to say "The weather's nice today." in Korean, you can say it in many ways. (Don't worry about the entire sentence here. Just focus on the use of 은/는.)

1) 오늘 날씨 좋네요. [o-neul nal-ssi jot-ne-yo]

The weather's good today.

2) 오늘 **은** 날씨 좋네요. [o-neul-**EUN** nal-ssi jot-ne-yo]

(The weather hasn't been so good lately, but TODAY, it's good.)

3) 오늘 날씨 **는** 좋네요. [o-neul nal-ssi-**NEUN** jot-ne-yo]

(Today, not necessarily everything else too, but at least the weather is good.)

So THAT's how powerful and useful the topic marking particles (은/는) can be in changing the nuance of your Korean sentences!

Let's look at some examples of **(2)**.

좋아요 [jo-a-yo] = it's good / 뭐 [mwo] = what / 이/가 [i/ga] = subject marking particles

Imagine that one says "좋아요. [jo-a-yo]" and that means "It's good." or "I like it."

But if you are not quite sure WHAT is good, you can ask "WHAT is good?" or "What are you talking about?"

LEVEL 1 LESSON 9

In order to express your curiosity as to "WHAT" is good, you can ask:

뭐가 좋아요? [mwo-GA jo-a-yo?]

Here the word 가 [ga] emphasize what the subject of the verb "to be / 좋아요" is.

If one says,

ABC 좋아요. [ABC jo-a-yo] = ABC is good.

And if you disagree and you think XYZ is good, not ABC. You can express your opinion that the subject of "being good" should be XYZ, not ABC, by saying:

ABC 좋아요? XYZ가 좋아요! [ABC jo-a-yo? XYZ-GA jo-a-yo]

So, with 이 and 가, you can add more flavor and more concrete meanings to your Korean sentences when you want to emphasize WHO did something, WHICH ONE is good, and etc.

Is that everything?

Almost.

As you can see from above, 은/는 and 이/가 both have different roles, but the roles of 은/는 as a 'contrast' factor is much stronger, because you can change the topic of a sentence with 은/는. So, when you form complex sentences (i.e. I think the book that you bought is more interesting than the book I bought.), in general, 은/는 is not so commonly used all over the sentences. Often times 은/는/이/가 can be dropped, but when you need particles to clarify the meaning, 이/가 will be more commonly used.

LEVEL 1 LESSON 10

In this lesson, we are going to have a look at the expressions

“있어요” [i-sseo-yo] and **“없어요”** [eop-sseo-yo]

When you want to talk about what people **HAVE/DON'T HAVE**, and also about things that **EXISTS/DOESN'T EXIST**, you can use these expressions.

있어요 [i-sseo-yo] comes from **있다** [it-da], and it basically expresses that something exists.

If you are talking about someone or something existing in a specific place, it means **“to be”**

Ex) I am here. / It's over there. / I am at home now.

If you are talking about something (or someone in some cases) in your possession, it means **“to have”**

Ex) I have a sister. / I have eleven dogs. / Do you have a private airplane?

And **없어요** [eop-sseo-yo] is the opposite, and it comes from the verb **없다** [eop-da]. Even though there IS a way to say the same thing, using **있어요** and making into a negative sentence, since there is this independent verb in Korean (**없어요**) for expression non-existence, it's more convenient to use **없어요** rather than saying **있지 않아요** or **안 있어요** (we'll learn these form in a later lesson to come.)

So, in conclusion,

있어요 <--> **없어요**
[i-sseo-yo] [eop-sseo-yo]

LEVEL 1 LESSON 10

Let's look at more examples!

있어요 [i-sseo-yo]

And in our examples, let's use the following words:

물 [mul] = water / 친구 [chin-gu] = friend / 시간 [si-gan] = time

You simply add 있어요 at the end of the noun that you are referring to.

1. 물 있어요. [mul i-sseo-yo] = There is water. / Water exists. / I have water. / They have water.
2. 물 있어요? [mul i-sseo-yo?] = Is there water? / Do you have water? / Do they have water?
3. 친구 있어요. [chin-gu i-sseo-yo] = I have friends. / I have a friend. / There are friends.
4. 친구 있어요? [chin-gu i-sseo-yo?] = Do you have friends? / Do they have friends?
5. 시간 있어요. [si-gan i-sseo-yo] = There is time. / I have time. / They have time.
6. 시간 있어요? [si-gan i-sseo-yo?] = Is there time? / Do you have time? / Do they have time?

And just by replacing 있어요 [i-sseo-yo] with 없어요 [eops-eo-yo] you get sentences in the opposite meanings.

없어요 [eop-sseo-yo]

1. 시간 없어요. [si-gan eop-sseo-yo] = There is no time. / I don't have time. / We don't have time.
2. 친구 없어요. [chin-gu eop-sseo-yo] = I don't have friends.

LEVEL 1 LESSON 10

----- Review Time -----

Do you remember the usages of **은/는** [eun/neun], the topic marking particles and **이/가** [i/ga], the subject marking particles?

은 and 는 mark the topic of a sentence, and at the same time emphasize the contrast between the topic of the sentence and the other things.

So if you say 시간 없어요. [si-gan eops-eo-yo] that means "I don't have time." and if you want to say, "I have other things but just TIME is not what I have." you can say that simply by add 은 [eun] or 는 [neun] at the end of 시간 [si-gan] (but in this case, 시간 ends with a last consonant so 은 is used), that becomes 시간**은** 없어요.

And if someone asks you "What is it that you don't have? What are you saying that you don't have?" you can answer that question by saying "TIME. Time is what I don't have." and that can be expressed through 시간**이** 없어요.

있어요 and 없어요 can be used to form many interesting and frequently used expressions in Korean.

재미 [jae-mi] = fun

재미 + 있어요 = 재미있어요 literally means "fun exists" but it means "to be interesting"

**Notice how the two words are even written without any space inbetween. That's because it has already become an expression used daily.

Example)

TTMIK 재미있어요! [jae-mi-i-sseo-yo] = TTMIK is fun! / TTMIK is interesting!

LEVEL 1 LESSON 11

In this lesson we are going to study how to ask "Do you have ...?" or "Is there ...?" and also how to say "Give me ... please." or "I'd like to have ... please."

Do you remember how to say "I have ..." "You have ..." or "There is ..."?

있어요. [i-sseo-yo] "I have ..." "You have ..." "There is ..."

없어요. [eop-seo-yo] "I don't have ..." "You don't have ..." "There isn't ..."

Examples

사과 [sa-gwa] = apple

사과 있어요 [sa-gwa i-sseo-yo] = I have an apple. There are apples. They have some apples.

사과 없어요 [sa-gwa eop-seo-yo] = I don't have an apple. There is no apple.

오렌지 [o-ren-ji] = orange

오렌지 있어요 [o-ren-ji i-sseo-yo] = I have an orange. There is an orange.

오렌지 없어요 [o-ren-ji eop-seo-yo] = I don't have an orange. There is no orange.

Now, if you want to ask whether someone has something or not or whether something exists?

Simply by raising the tone at the end of the sentence, you can make it a question.

있어요? [i-sseo-yo] = Do you have ...? Is there ...?

없어요? [eop-seo-yo] = Don't you have ...? There isn't ...?

LEVEL 1 LESSON 11

Examples

사과 있어요 [sa-gwa i-sseo-yo] = I have an apple. There are some apples.

사과 있어요? [sa-gwa i-sseo-yo] = Do you have an apple? Do you have apples?

사과 없어요? [sa-gwa i-sseo-yo] = You don't have any apple? There is no apple?

Let's take some other nouns for example.

시간 [si-gan] = time

시간 있어요? [si-gan i-sseo-yo?] = Do you have some time?

시간 없어요? [si-gan eop-seo-yo?] = You don't have time?

커피 [keo-pi] = coffee

커피 있어요? [keo-pi i-sseo-yo?] = Do you have coffee?

커피 없어요? [keo-pi eop-seo-yo?] = Don't you have coffee? You don't have coffee?

Now, after figuring whether someone has something or not, you might as well want to ask for some of it, by saying "**Please give me ...**" or "**I'd like to have ... please.**"

주세요 [ju-se-yo] = Please give me

주세요 [ju-se-yo] comes from the verb 주다 [ju-da] which means "to give" so literally, 주세요 only means "please give" in the polite/formal language regardless of to whom or by whom.

LEVEL 1 LESSON 11

Examples

A: 사과 있어요? [sa-gwa i-sseo-yo?] = Do you have apples?

B: 네. 사과 있어요. [ne. sa-gwa i-sseo-yo] = Yes, we have apples.

A: 사과 주세요. [sa-gwa ju-se-yo.] = Give me (an/some) apple(s).

** Please note that there is no strict distinction between plural and singular in Korean nouns.

A: 커피 있어요? [keo-pi i-sseo-yo?] = Do you have coffee?

B: 아니요. 커피 없어요. [an-i-yo. keo-pi eop-seo-yo] = No, we don't have coffee.

A: 우유 있어요? [u-yu i-sseo-yo?] = Do you have milk?

B: 네. 우유 있어요. [ne. u-yu i-sseo-yo.] = Yes, we have milk.

A: 우유 주세요. [u-yu ju-se-yo.] = Give me some milk, please.

주세요 [ju-se-yo] can be used in many different situations: when you ask someone to hand something over to you, when you are ordering something in a restaurant, when are asking for an item in a shop, or, when attached to a verb (which we will learn how to do in a later lesson) , to ask someone to do something for you.

More Examples

아이스크림 주세요 [a-i-seu-keu-rim ju-se-yo] = Please give me some ice cream.

햄버거 주세요 [haem-beo-geo ju-se-yo] = Please give me a hamburger.

김치 주세요 [gim-chi ju-se-yo] = Please give me some kimchi.

불고기 주세요 [bul-go-gi ju-se-yo] = Please give me some bulgogi.

밥 주세요 [bap ju-se-yo] = Please give me rice. Please give me food.

LEVEL 1 LESSON 12

In the previous lesson, we learned how to say "Please give me ..." or "I'd like to have ... please" in Korean. Do you remember the expression?

주세요 [ju-se-yo] = Please give me ... / I'd like to have ...

And you can use this expression (주세요) to order something in a restaurant or to ask for more side dishes while you are eating.

김밥 주세요. [gim-bap ju-se-yo] = Kimbap, please. (when ordering in a restaurant)

불고기 주세요. [bul-go-gi ju-se-yo] = Bulgogi, please. (when ordering in a restaurant)

김치 주세요. [gim-chi ju-se-yo] = Please give us some kimchi here.

(when asking for some (more) side dishes in a restaurant)

In this lesson, let us have a look at how to say "It tastes good." "It is delicious." and also how to thank for a meal or food **before** and **after** the meal.

맛 [mat] = taste

맛 [mat] means "taste" in Korean. Now, do you remember how to say "there is" or "I have"?

Yes! **있어요** [i-sseo-yo] is the expression. So by putting 맛 and **있어요** together, you get the expression **맛있어요** [ma-si-sseo-yo] which means "It's delicious."

맛있어요 [ma-si-sseo-yo] = It's tasty. It's delicious.

Examples

이거 맛있어요. [i-geo ma-si-sseo-yo] = This is delicious.

LEVEL 1 LESSON 12

저 케익 맛있어요. [jeo ke-ik ma-si-sseo-yo] = That cake is delicious.

삼겹살 맛있어요. [sam-gyeop-sal ma-si-sseo-yo] = Samgyupsal (Korean barbecue) is delicious.

뭐가 맛있어요? [mwo-ga ma-si-sseo-yo?] = What's delicious?

Now, do you also remember how to say "there isn't" or "I don't have" in Korean?

Yes, 없어요 [eop-seo-yo] is the expression. So by putting 맛 and 없어요 together, you get the expression 맛없어요 [ma-deop-seo-yo], which means "It doesn't taste good."

맛없어요 [mad-eop-seo-yo] = It's not tasty. It's not delicious. It tastes awful.

Note that the pronunciation of the last letter in **맛**, which is **ㅈ**, changes according to the word that follows it. When it is NOT followed by any word, it's pronounced as [t], ending the word there. When it is followed by **있어요**, it becomes an [S] sound, making **맛있어요** pronounced as [ma-si-sseo-yo]. When it is followed by **없어요**, it becomes a [D] sound, making **맛없어요** pronounced as [ma-deop-seo-yo].

Examples

이거 맛없어요? [i-geo ma-deop-seo-yo?] = Does this taste awful?

이 차 맛없어요. [i cha ma-deop-seo-yo] = This tea tastes awful.

Now, you know how to say "It's delicious." and "It's not delicious." It's time to learn a phrase that you can say to thank for a meal before and after you eat. This is very important especially if someone is treating you or if you are invited to someone's house.

LEVEL 1 LESSON 12

잘 먹겠습니다. [jal meok-ge-sseum-ni-da]

잘 먹겠습니다 [jal meok-ge-sseum-ni-da] literally means "I am going to eat well." or "I will eat well." (Don't worry about the grammar that is used here yet. Just learn this as a set phrase for the time being.) And this expression is used very frequently among Koreans when they are about to start eating a meal, usually regardless who's paying for the meal. But in case someone in particular is paying for the meal for the other(s), the other(s) will say 잘 먹겠습니다 to the person who's buying. When you eat with your friends to whom you don't use polite/formal language, and when you want to joke that your friend should buy you food, you can also say 잘 먹을게! [jal meo-geul-ge!] which implies that you are thanking them because they are going to treat you.

잘 먹었습니다. [jal meo-geo-sseum-ni-da]

Once you have finished a meal, if you want to thank someone for the meal, or just thank for the meal in general, you can use this expression. 잘 먹었습니다 literally means "I have eaten well" (Again, don't worry about the grammar here.) but it really means "Thank you for the food."

LEVEL 1 LESSON 13

In this lesson, we are going to study how to say "I **want to**..." in Korean.

In the previous lessons, we learned how to say that something is delicious, and also how to thank for the food you are going to eat.

맛있어요. [ma-si-sseo-yo] = It's delicious.

잘 먹겠습니다. [jal meok-ge-sseum-ni-da] = Thank you for the food. I will enjoy it.

But before you order something in a restaurant in a coffee shop, you might as well ask your friends what they **want to** eat, and also tell them what you **want to** eat.

In English, you add the expression "want to" before the verb, but in Korean, you need to change the end of the verb. But don't worry. It's not too difficult to do.

-고 싶어요 [-go si-peo-yo] = I want to ...

Now, let's practice.

Here are some frequently used Korean verbs.

가다 [ga-da] = to go

보다 [bo-da] = to see

먹다 [meok-da] = to eat

And changing these verbs into the **-고 싶어요** form is very simple.

LEVEL 1 LESSON 13

Just drop the **다** [da] (the last letter in all Korean verbs) and add **-고 싶어요** [-go sipeoyo].

to go = **가다** [ga-da] ---> **가** + **-고 싶어요**

가고 싶어요 [ga-go si-peo-yo]

I want to go.

to see = **보다** [bo-da] ---> **보** + **-고 싶어요**

보고 싶어요 [bo-go si-peo-yo]

I want to see/look/watch.

to eat = **먹다** [meok-da] ---> **먹** + **-고 싶어요**

먹고 싶어요 [meok-go si-peo-yo]

I want to eat.

Sample conversation

A: **뭐 먹고 싶어요?** [mwo meok-go si-peo-yo?] = What do you want to eat?

B: **햄버거 먹고 싶어요.** [haem-beo-geo meok-go si-peo-yo] = I want to eat a hamburger.

LEVEL 1 LESSON 13

Here's a useful word to know.

더 [deo] = more

Now that you know how to say "I want to eat (it)" you can say "I want to eat more." using this word (더).

먹고 싶어요. [meok-go si-peo-yo] = I want to eat it.

더 먹고 싶어요. [deo meok-go si-peo-yo] = I want to eat **more**.

** Note the word order here.

LEVEL 1 LESSON 14

In our previous lesson, we learned how to say “**I want to**” in Korean. In this lesson, we will practice using the structure “I want to” in context through more sample conversations.

First, let's look at **5** verbs. **Don't worry** if they are new to you. At this point, knowing how to use them is more important than memorizing each and every one of them.

하다 [ha-da] = to do

보다 [bo-da] = to see

먹다 [meok-da] = to eat

사다 [sa-da] = to buy

마시다 [ma-si-da] = to drink

Do you remember how to change a verb into the “I want to + verb” form?

하 + 타 + 고 싶어요

Yes. 다 [da] disappears and you add 고 싶어요 [go si-peo-yo] after the verb.

하다 --> 하고 싶어요 [ha-go si-peo-yo] = I want to do ...

보다 --> 보고 싶어요 [bo-go si-peo-yo] = I want to see ...

먹다 --> 먹고 싶어요 [meok-go si-peo-yo] = I want to eat ...

사다 --> 사고 싶어요 [sa-go si-peo-yo] = I want to buy ...

마시다 --> 마시고 싶어요 [ma-si-go si-peo-yo] = I want to drink ...

LEVEL 1 LESSON 14

Do you remember how to say "WHAT" in Korean?

뭐 [mwo] = what

Sample conversations:

** Remember: In Korean, objects come before verbs.

A: 뭐 하고 싶어요? [mwo ha-go si-peo-yo?] = **What do you want to do?**

B: 텔레비전 보고 싶어요. [tel-le-bi-jeon bo-go si-peo-yo] = **I want to watch TV.**

A: 텔레비전 보고 싶어요? [tel-le-bi-jeon bo-go si-peo-yo?] = **You want to watch TV?**

B: 네. [ne] = **Yeah.**

A: 뭐 보고 싶어요? [mwo bo-go si-peo-yo] = **What do you want to watch?**

B: 뉴스 보고 싶어요. [nyu-seu bo-go si-peo-yo] = **I want to watch the news.**

A: 이거 사고 싶어요. [i-geo sa-go si-peo-yo] = **I want to buy this.**

B: 이거요? [i-geo-yo?] = **This one?**

A: 네. 이거 먹고 싶어요. [ne. i-geo meok-go si-peo-yo] = **Yeah. I want to eat this.**

B: 이거 뭐예요? [i-geo mwo-ye-yo?] = **What is this?**

A: 이거 김밥이에요. [i-geo gim-bap-i-e-yo] = **This is gimbap.**

Some more useful verbs

읽다 [ilg-da] = to read / 읽고 싶어요 [il-ggo si-peo-yo] = I want to read ...

자다 [ja-da] = to sleep / 자고 싶어요 [ja-go si-peo-yo] = I want to sleep.

놀다 [nol-da] = to hang out, to play / 놀고 싶어요 [nol-go si-peo-yo] = I want to play.

쉬다 [swi-da] = to rest / 쉬고 싶어요 [swi-go si-peo-yo] = I want to rest.

일하다 [il-ha-da] = to work / 일하고 싶어요 [il-ha-go si-peo-yo] = I want to work.

LEVEL 1 LESSON 15

In this lesson, we are going to talk about NUMBERS!

We wish we could say that there is a very easy way to learn the Korean numbers once and never forget them, but the truth is, there isn't. As far as the numbers are concerned, you will have to keep practicing using them until they stick. So in this lesson we will introduce the sino-Korean numbers up to 1000.

Sino-Korean numbers

We will use the term "sino-Korean" when a Korean word is based on the Chinese language. Since Korea has received a lot of influence from China, many words in the Korean language have their roots in the Chinese language. So over the course of time, Korean people started using both the sino-Korean number system and the native Korean number system. And the situations and the contexts in which each system is used are different, but don't worry. You will get used to the two systems and how to differentiate between these two by practicing with us!

1 일 [il]

2 이 [i]

3 삼 [sam]

4 사 [sa]

5 오 [o]

6 륵 [ryuk] or 육 [yuk]

7 칠 [chil]

8 팔 [pal]

9 구 [gu]

10 십 [sip]

LEVEL 1 LESSON 15

And the rest is easy.

In Korean, if you want to say 11, you just say TEN + ONE.

If you want to say 33, you just say THREE + TEN + THREE.

If you want to say 99, you say NINE + TEN + NINE.

100 백 [baek]

1,000 천 [cheon]

Can you guess how to say **312** in Korean?

Yes, you are right.

THREE + HUNDRED + TEN + TWO

삼 + 백 + 십 + 이

[sam-baek-sip-i]

Some more examples

1,234 = 1,000 (천) + 2 (이) + 100 (백) + 3 (삼) + 10 (십) + 4 (사)

512 = 5 (오) + 100 (백) + 10 (십) + 2 (이)

Note that for 1,000, 100, and 10, you don't have to say one (일) + thousand (천), 일백, or 일십.

LEVEL 1 LESSON 16

In this lesson, we are going to learn how to **conjugate** Korean verbs.

When you look up verbs in a Korean dictionary, they are in this form:

가다 [ga-da] = to go

먹다 [meok-da] = to eat

자다 [ja-da] = to sleep

때리다 [ttae-ri-da] = to hit

웃다 [ut-da] = to laugh

And when you change the forms of these verbs to express the present tense, the future tense, the past tense, and etc., the **first thing** you need to do is to drop the last letter, **다** [da], and then you have the verb stem.

Verb stems of the verbs above:

가 [ga]

먹 [meok]

자 [ja]

때리 [ttae-ri]

웃 [ut]

And to these, you add the appropriate verb endings to make them complete. And in this lesson we are going to learn how to change these dictionary forms of the verbs into the **present tense**.

LEVEL 1 LESSON 16

The Present Tense

In order to conjugate a verb into the present tense, you take the verb stem, and add one of these endings:

아요 [a-yo]

어요 [eo-yo]

여요 [yeo-yo]

****** Note that we are introducing the endings in the **polite language**. Do not worry about learning to use different politeness levels. Once you have learned how to say everything in polite language, changing it to other politeness levels is very easy to do.

So, which one of these three endings goes after which verb stem?

It's quite simple.

If the verb stem's last vowel is **ㅏ** [a] or **ㅓ** [o], it is followed by **아요** [a-yo].

If the last vowel is **NOT** **ㅏ** [a] or **ㅓ** [o], it is followed by **어요** [eo-yo].

And only one verb stem, which is **하** [ha], is followed by **여요** [yeo-yo].

Let's look at some examples.

1)

가다 [ga-da] = to go

The verb stem is **가** [ga] and its last vowel is **ㅏ** [a] so you add **아요** [a-yo].

So it first becomes 가 + 아요, and then more naturally, it becomes **가요** [ga-yo] for ease of pronunciation.

LEVEL 1 LESSON 16

가다 [ga-da] = to go (dictionary form)

--> 가요 [ga-yo] = I go. You go. He goes. She goes. They go. (present tense)

2)

먹다 [meok-da] = to eat

The verb stem is **먹** [meok] and its level vowel is **ㅏ** [eo] so it is NOT ㅏ or ㅑ, so you add **어요** [eo-yo].

So it becomes, **먹 + 어요** [meo-geo-yo]

먹다 [meok-da] = to eat (dictionary form)

먹어요 [meo-geo-yo] = I eat. You eat., and etc. (present tense)

****** Note that there is a liaison in the pronunciation at **먹 + 어** [meok + eo] which sounds like **머거** [meo-geo].

3)

보다 [bo-da] = to see, to watch, to look

Verb stem? 보 [bo]

What is it followed by? **아요** [a-yo]

보 + 아요 ---> Over time, it started being pronounced and written as **봐요** [bwa-yo]. (Say 보 + 아 + 요 three times as fast.)

보다 [bo-da] = to see, to watch, to look

봐요 [bwa-yo] = I see. I look. I watch. You look. and etc. (present tense)

LEVEL 1 LESSON 16

4)

보이다 [bo-i-da] = to be seen, to be visible

Verb stem? **보이** [bo-i]

What is it followed by? **어요** [eo-yo]

보이 + 어요 ---> **보여요** [bo-yeo-yo]

보이다 [bo-i-da] = to be seen, to be visible

보여요 [bo-yeo-yo] = It's visible. I see it.

5)

하다 [ha-da] = to do

Verb stem? **하** [ha]

What is it followed by? **어요** [yeo-yo]

하 + 어요 ---> **하여요** [ha-yeo-yo]

Over time, 하여요 became **해요** [hae-yo].

****** Here, please just remember that this verb, 하다 is very versatile. You can add a noun in front of it and you can form new verbs. We will introduce how to do this in lesson number 23. But for now, just remember that 하다 becomes 해요 in the present tense and it means "I do." "You do." "He does." or "They do."

LEVEL 1 LESSON 16

Are there any irregularities or exceptions?

Sadly, yes, there are. But don't worry. Even those exceptions are NOT too far away from the regular rules!! And of course, we will introduce them in the nicest and easiest way possible through our future lessons. Thank you once again for studying with us through this lesson!

LEVEL 1 LESSON 17

In the previous lesson, we looked at the basic way of conjugating the verbs in the dictionary form into the **present tense** form. Do you remember how?

Verb stems ending with vowels **ㅏ** [o] or **ㅑ** [a] are followed by **아요** [a-yo].

Verb stems ending with vowels OTHER THAN **ㅏ** or **ㅑ** are followed by **어요** [eo-yo].

Verb stem **하** is followed by **여요** [yeo-yo].

Now it's time to learn how to change verbs into the **past tense**.

If you understand how to change verbs into the present tense, understanding how to change them into the past tense is just as easy. A similar rule is applied to making past tense sentences, and the endings are:

았어요 [a-sseo-yo]

었어요 [eo-sseo-yo]

였어요 [yeo-sseo-yo]

You can add those to the verb stems, or you can think of it as just replacing the "요" at the end of present tense sentences with -ㅆ어요 [ss-eo-yo].

Verb stems ending with vowels **ㅏ** [o] or **ㅑ** [a] are followed by **았어요** [a-sseo-yo].

Verb stems ending with vowels other than **ㅏ** or **ㅑ** are followed by **었어요** [eo-sseo-yo].

Verb stem **하** is followed by **였어요** [yeo-sse-yo].

Let's take a look at some examples.

LEVEL 1 LESSON 17

사다 [sa-da] = to buy

Verb stem = 사 [sa]

**** You drop the final 다 [da] from any verb and you get the verb stem.**

Past tense

= 사 + 았어요 [sa + a-sseo-yo]

= **샀어요** [sa-sseo-yo]

= I bought / you bought / she bought / he bought / they bought / etc.

오다 [o-da] = to come

Verb stem = 오 [o]

Past tense

= 오 + 았어요 [o + a-sseo-yo]

= **왔어요** [wa-sseo-yo]

= I came / you came / he came / they came / she came / we came / etc.

적다 [jeok-da] = to write down

Verb stem = 적 [jeok]

Past tense

= 적 + 었어요 [jeok + eo-sseo-yo]

= **적었어요** [jeo-geo-sseo-yo]

= I wrote / you wrote / he wrote / she wrote / they wrote / we wrote / etc.

하다 [ha-da] = to do

Verb stem = 하 [ha]

Past tense

= 하 + 였어요 [ha + yeo-sseo+yo]

LEVEL 1 LESSON 17

= **했어요** [hae-sseo-yo]

= I did / you did / he did / they did / etc.

More sample verbs in the present tense and the past tense

1.

먹다 [meok-da] (Verb stem = 먹 [meok]) = to eat

Present Tense: **먹어요** [meo-geo-yo]

Past Tense: **먹었어요** [meo-geo-sseo-yo]

2.

잡다 [jap-da] (Verb stem = 잡 [jap]) = to catch

Present Tense: **잡아요** [ja-ba-yo]

Past Tense: **잡았어요** [ja-ba-sseo-yo]

3.

팔다 [pal-da] (Verb stem = 팔 [pal]) = to sell

Present Tense: **팔아요** [pa-ra-yo]

Past Tense: **팔았어요** [pa-ra-sseo-yo]

4.

놀다 [nol-da] (Verb stem = 놀 [nol]) = to play, to hang out

Present Tense: **놀아요** [no-ra-yo]

Past Tense: **놀았어요** [no-ra-sseo-yo]

LEVEL 1 LESSON 17

5.

쓰다 [sseu-da] (Verb stem = 쓰 [sseu]) = to write, to use

Present Tense: **써요** [sseo-yo] (NOT 쓰어요)

Past Tense: **썼어요** [sseo-sseo-yo]

6.

기다리다 [gi-da-ri-da] (Verb stem = 기다리 [gi-da-ri]) = to wait

Present Tense: **기다려요** [gi-da-ryeo-yo] (NOT 기다리어요)

Past Tense: **기다렸어요** [gi-da-ryeo-sseo-yo]

7.

이상하다 [i-sang-ha-da] (Verb stem = 이상하 [i-sang-ha]) = to be strange

Present Tense: **이상해요** [i-sang-hae-yo] (NOT 이상하어요)

Past Tense: **이상했어요** [i-sang-hae-sseo-yo]

8.

멋있다 [meo-sit-da] (Verb stem = 멋있 [meo-sit]) = to be cool, to be awesome

Present Tense: **멋있어요** [meo-si-sseo-yo]

Past Tense: **멋있었어요** [meo-si-sseo-sseo-yo]

LEVEL 1 LESSON 18

In Korean, as you already know, there are some 'particles' which are used to mark the roles of some nouns, and so far, we have learned about subject marking particles (이 [i] and 가 [ga]) and topic marking particles (은 [eun] and 는 [neun]). In this lesson, we are going to have a look at location marking particles, 에 [e] and 에서 [e-seo], and also how to say WHERE in Korean.

First let's learn the word for "WHERE" or "WHICH PLACE".

어디 [eo-di] = where, which place

Now, let's look at how to ask someone "Where do you want to go?" in Korean.

to go = 가다 [ga-da]

to want to = 고 싶어요 [go si-peo-yo]

Do you remember how to form a sentence using 고 싶어요 [go si-peo-yo]? Yes, you drop the letter '다' at the end of a verb and attach 고 싶어요 after that.

가다 + 고 싶어요 --> 가고 싶어요 [ga-go si-peo-yo] = I want to go.

가고 싶어요 = I want to go.

가고 싶어요? = Do you want to go?

And now, you just add the word 어디 [eo-di] in front of the verb.

어디 가고 싶어요? [eo-di ga-go si-peo-yo?] = Where do you want to go?

LEVEL 1 LESSON 18

WHY USE LOCATION MARKING PARTICLES?

Whereas it is POSSIBLE to make sentences without location marking particles (as in the example above: 어디 가고 싶어요?), by using the right location marking particles, you can make your message very clear. There are many location marking particles in Korean, but let us look at the two most basic particles, 에 [e] and 에서 [e-seo].

에 [e] = at, to

Noun + 에 [e]

에 is a location marking particle, but it is not only used to mark locations. It means "at", "to" and etc, and it can be used to mark a location, a time, a situation, and many other things, but here, at us just focus on its role of marking locations.

Let us look at how it is used inside a Korean sentence, by looking at some sample sentences.

Sample 1

Let's say "I went to school." in Korean.

1. to go = 가다 [ga-da]

I went = 가 + 갔어요 = 갔어요 [ga-sseo-yo]

2. school = 학교 [hak-gyo]

3. to = 에 [e]

I went to school. = 학교에 갔어요. [hak-gyo-e ga-sseo-yo]

LEVEL 1 LESSON 18

Sample 2

Let's say "I came to Korea." in Korean.

1. to come = 오다 [o-da]

I came = 오 + 왔어요 = 왔어요 [wa-sseo-yo]

2. Korea = 한국 [han-guk]

3. to = 에 [e]

I came to Korea. = 한국에 왔어요. [han-gug-e wa-sseo-yo]

Sample 3

Let's say "Where do you want to go?" in Korean.

1. to go = 가다 [ga-da]

do you want to go = 가 + 고 싶어요 = 가고 싶어요 [ga-go si-peo-yo]

2. where = 어디 [eo-di]

3. to = 에 [e]

Where do you want to go? = 어디에 가고 싶어요? [eo-di-e ga-go si-peo-yo?]

Sample 4

Let's say "Where are you?" in Korean.

1. to be = 있다 [it-da]

are you = 있 + 어요 = 있어요 [i-sseo-yo]

2. where = 어디 [eo-di]

3. at = 에 [e]

Where are you? = 어디에 있어요? [eo-di-e i-sseo-yo?]

Where are you now? = 지금 어디에 있어요? [ji-geum eo-di-e i-sseo-yo?]

어디에 있어요 지금? [eo-di-e i-sseo-yo ji-geum?]

LEVEL 1 LESSON 18

에서 [e-seo] = at, in, from

Noun + 에서 [e-seo]

에서 [e-seo] can express many things, but here let's look at two of its main roles.

에서 [e-seo] expresses:

1. a location where an action is taking place

(ex. I studied in the library. / I met my friends in Seoul.)

2. the meaning of "from" a place

(ex. I came from Seoul. / This package came from Spain.)

The difference between 에 and 에서.

에 and 에서 can both be translated to "at" in English. How are they different then?

에 expresses a location where something "is" or "exists" or a direction that you are going toward.

Ex) 집에 있어요. = I am at home.

집에 가요. = I'm going home.

에서 expresses a location where some action is taking place.

Ex) 집에서 일해요. = I work at home.

집에서 뭐 해요? = What are you doing at home?

LEVEL 1 LESSON 18

Some useful verbs and their conjugations to know

가다 [ga-da] = to go

가요 [ga-yo] = I go / you go / s/he goes / they go / let's go

갔어요 [ga-sseo-yo] = went / to have gone

오다 [o-da] = to come

왔어요 [wa-sseo-yo] = came / to have come

있다 [it-da] = to be, to exist

있었어요 [i-sseo-sseo-yo] = was / to have been

보다 [bo-da] = to see

봤어요 [bwa-sseo-yo] = saw / to have seen

하다 [ha-da] = to do

했어요 [hae-sseo-yo] = did / to have done

LEVEL 1 LESSON 19

In this lesson, we are going to look at how to say WHEN in Korean, and also practice answering the questions, "When did you do it?" "When did you arrive?" "When did you come?" "When do you get up?" and etc.

언제 [eon-je] = when

Unlike 어디 [eo-di], to which you have to add location marking particles to specify, **언제 [eon-je] can be used on its own.**

Now let us try using the word 언제 in context.

Let's say:

1) **"When did you do (it)?"**

when = 언제 [eon-je]

you did (it) = 하다 + 었어요 = 했어요 [hae-sseo-yo]

did you do (it)? = 했어요? [hae-sseo-yo?]

When did you do it? = **언제 했어요?** [eon-je hae-sseo-yo?]

2) **"When did you arrive?"**

to arrive = 도착하다 [do-cha-ka-da]

you arrived = 도착했어요 [do-cha-kae-sseo-yo]

did you arrive? = 도착했어요? [do-cha-kae-sseo-yo?]

When did you arrive? = **언제 도착했어요?** [eon-je do-cha-kae-sseo-yo?]

LEVEL 1 LESSON 19

3) "When did you come?"

to come = 오다 [o-da]

you came = 왔어요 [wa-sseo-yo]

did you come? = 왔어요? [wa-sseo-yo?]

When did you come? = 언제 왔어요? [eon-je wa-sseo-yo?]

4) "When do you get up?"

to get up = 일어나다 [i-reo-na-da]

you get up = 일어나요 [i-reo-na-yo]

do you get up? = 일어나요? [i-reo-na-yo?]

When do you get up? = 언제 일어나요? [eon-je i-reo-na-yo?]

Some more useful nouns to know.

오늘 [o-neul] = today

어제 [eo-je] = yesterday

내일 [nae-il] = tomorrow

지금 [ji-geum] = now

아까 [a-kka] = earlier (today), a while ago (today)

나중에 [na-jung-e] = later

LEVEL 1 LESSON 20

In lesson number 15, we introduced some sino-Korean numbers:

일 [il = one]

이 [i = two]

삼 [sam = three]

사 [sa = four]

오 [o = five]

육 [yuk = six]

칠 [chil = seven]

팔 [pal = eight]

구 [gu = nine]

십 [sip = ten]

백 [baek = hundred]

천 [cheon = thousand]

만 [man = ten thousand], and etc.

Now let's have a look at some native Korean numbers. There are cases where sino-Korean numbers are used, cases where native Korean numbers are used, and there are also some cases where sino-Korean numbers and native Korean numbers are used together.

For example:

1. When you tell the time, you have to use native Korean numbers to say the hour and sino-Korean numbers to say the minute.

LEVEL 1 LESSON 20

2. When you say your age in everyday conversations, you use native Korean numbers, but in some very formal settings like in the court of law or in a formal report, sino-Korean numbers are used to express your age.

3. When you are counting years, you can use either sino-Korean numbers or native Korean numbers, but the words that you use for counting the years change depending on whether you use sino-Korean numbers and native Korean numbers.

So how do you determine which number system to use in which situation? You don't have to try to, and you can't really generalize the usages of the two different number systems. It is best to just learn to use the different number systems along with the fitting context.

Now, let us go over the native Korean numbers and practice saying how old we are.

Native Korean numbers

- 1 하나 [ha-na]
- 2 둘 [dul]
- 3 셋 [set]
- 4 넷 [net]
- 5 다섯 [da-seot]
- 6 여섯 [yeo-seot]
- 7 일곱 [il-gop]
- 8 여덟 [yeo-deol]
- 9 아홉 [a-hop]
- 10 열 [yeol]

LEVEL 1 LESSON 20

From 11 to 19 is simple. You just put the number 10 and add another number after it.

Ex)

열 (10) + 하나 (1) = 열하나 [yeol-ha-na] (11)

열 (10) + 아홉 (9) = 열아홉 [yeol-a-hop] (19)

20 스물 [seu-mul]

The same rule as above for 11 through 19 applies to 21-29, 31-39, 41-49, and etc.

30 서른 [seo-reun]

40 마흔 [ma-heun]

50 쉰 [swin]

60 예순 [ye-sun]

70 일흔 [i-reun]

80 여든 [yeo-deun]

90 아흔 [a-heun]

Now, here is an interesting piece of information.

From numbers 1 through 99, the usage of native Korean numbers is generally very distinctively different from the usage of sino-Korean numbers, but for bigger units like 100, 1,000, 10,000 and etc., the words for these bigger numbers in the native Korean numbers are no longer used and only sino-Korean numbers are used.

LEVEL 1 LESSON 20

So, 100 in the sino-Korean number is 백 [baek], and even when you need to use the native Korean number, you use the same word.

And when you want to say 101, 102, and etc., you need to combine the systems together.

101 = 백 [baek / 100] (sino-Korean) + 하나 [ha-na / 1] (native Korean)

205 = 이 [i / 2] (sino-Korean) + 백 [baek / 100] (sino-Korean) + 다섯 [daseot / 5] (native Korean)

Let's have a look at how to talk about the age.

There are two ways of saying the age, but here, let's look at the more ordinary and everyday fashion.

You say a native Korean number and add 살 [sal] after it.

But the numbers 1, 2, 3, 4, and 20 change forms before a noun.

1 하나 [ha-na] --> 한 [han] 살

2 둘 [dul] --> 두 [du] 살

3 셋 [set] --> 세 [se] 살

4 넷 [net] --> 네 [ne] 살

...

20 스물 [seu-mul] --> 스무 [seu-mu] 살

21 스물 [seu-mul] --> 스물한 [seu-mul-han] 살

...

LEVEL 1 LESSON 20

The following are from age 1 through 100 in native Korean numbers, followed by the age counter 살 [sal].

한 살 (1), 두 살, 세 살, 네 살, 다섯 살, 여섯 살, 일곱 살, 여덟 살, 아홉 살, 열 살 (10), 열한 살 (11), 열두 살, 열세 살, 열네 살, 열다섯 살, 열여섯 살, 열일곱 살, 열여덟 살, 열아홉 살, 스무 살 (20), 스물한 살 (21), 스물두 살, 스물세 살, 스물네 살, 스물다섯 살, 스물여섯 살, 스물일곱 살, 스물여덟 살, 스물아홉 살, 서른 살 (30), 서른한 살 (31), 서른두 살, 서른세 살, 서른네 살, 서른다섯 살, 서른여섯 살, 서른일곱 살, 서른여덟 살, 서른아홉 살, 마흔 살 (40), 마흔한 살 (41), 마흔두 살, 마흔세 살, 마흔네 살, 마흔다섯 살, 마흔여섯 살, 마흔일곱 살, 마흔여덟 살, 마흔아홉 살, 쉰 살 (50), 쉰한 살 (51), 쉰두 살, 쉰세 살, 쉰네 살, 쉰다섯 살, 쉰여섯 살, 쉰일곱 살, 쉰여덟 살, 쉰아홉 살, 예순 살 (60), 예순한 살 (61), 예순두 살, 예순세 살, 예순네 살, 예순다섯 살, 예순여섯 살, 예순일곱 살, 예순여덟 살, 예순아홉 살, 일흔 살 (70), 일흔한 살 (71), 일흔두 살, 일흔세 살, 일흔네 살, 일흔다섯 살, 일흔여섯 살, 일흔일곱 살, 일흔여덟 살, 일흔아홉 살, 여든 살 (80), 여든한 살 (81), 여든두 살, 여든세 살, 여든네 살, 여든다섯 살, 여든여섯 살, 여든일곱 살, 여든여덟 살, 여든아홉 살, 아흔 살 (90), 아흔한 살 (91), 아흔두 살, 아흔세 살, 아흔네 살, 아흔다섯 살, 아흔여섯 살, 아흔일곱 살, 아흔여덟 살, 아흔아홉 살, 백 살 (100)

Found your age?

Now, say the age and add 이에요 [i-e-yo] after that.

한 살이에요. I am one year old.

열 살이에요. I am ten years old.

스무 살이에요. I am twenty years old.

서른 살이에요. I am thirty years old.

LEVEL 1 LESSON 21

In this lesson, we are going to have a look at how to make **negative sentences** in Korean. There are mainly two ways to do this.

How to make negative sentences in Korean

1. Adding **안** [an] before a verb
2. Using the negative verb ending, **지 않다** [ji an-ta]

Method #1 is more simple and more colloquial, and method #2 is relatively formal but not necessarily only for formal situations.

If you want to use method #1, and add **안** [an] before a verb, it's easier than method #2 because you don't have to worry about the different tenses of your sentences. The word **안** [an] doesn't change the tense.

Examples

가다 [ga-da] = to go

집에 가요. [jib-e ga-yo] I'm going home. / I go home.

집에 **안** 가요. [jib-e an ga-yo] I'm **NOT** going home. / I **DON'T** go home.

집에 **안** 가요? [jib-e an ga-yo?] You're **NOT** going home? / You **DON'T** go home?

버리다 [beo-ri-da] = to throw away

그거 버렸어요. [geu-geo beo-ryeo-sseo-yo] I threw it away

그거 **안** 버렸어요. [geu-geo an beo-ryeo-sseo-yo] I **DIDN'T** throw it away.

그거 아직 **안** 버렸어요. [geu-geo a-jik an beo-ryeo-sseo-yo] I **DIDN'T** throw it away yet.

Examples using method #2 (adding **지 않다** [ji an-ta])

지 않다 [ji anta] is the basic form and you need to conjugate it according to the tense, too.

LEVEL 1 LESSON 21

Present tense: **지 않아요** [ji a-na-yo]

Past tense: **지 않았어요** [ji a-na-sseo-yo]

** You can apply the same verb conjugating rules as for the other verbs.

가다 [ga-da] = to go

가지 않다 [ga-ji an-ta] = to not go

가지 않아요 [ga-ji a-na-yo] = I DON'T go. / I'm NOT going.

가지 않았어요 [ga-ji a-na-sseo-yo] = I DIDN'T go.

버리다 [beo-ri-da] = to throw away

버리지 않다 [beo-ri-ji an-ta] = to not throw away

버리지 않아요 [beo-ri-ji a-na-yo] = I DON'T throw it away.

버리지 않았어요 [beo-ri-ji a-na-sseo-yo] I DIDN'T throw it away.

Very short sample dialogs

1.

A: **아파요?** [a-pa-yo?] = Does it hurt?

B: **안 아파요.** [an a-pa-yo] = It doesn't hurt.

A: **안 아파요? 진짜 안 아파요?** [an a-pa-yo? jin-jja an a-pa-yo?]

= It doesn't hurt? It really doesn't hurt?

B: **안 아파요.** [an a-pa-yo] = It doesn't hurt.

2.

A: **안 먹어요?** [an meo-geo-yo?] = You are not going to eat?

B: **안 먹어요!** [an meo-geo-yo!] = I'm not eating!

A: **정말 안 먹어요? 맛있어요!** [jeong-mal an meo-geo-yo? ma-si-sseo-yo]

= You are really not going to eat? It's delicious.

B: **안 먹어요. 배 안 고파요.** [an meo-geo-yo. bae an go-pa-yo]

= I'm not eating. I'm not hungry.

LEVEL 1 LESSON 21

3.

A: **이거 매워요?** [i-geo mae-wo-yo?] = Is this spicy?

B: **아니요. 안 매워요.** [a-ni-yo. an mae-wo-yo] = No. It's not spicy.

A: **진짜 안 매워요?** [jin-jja an mae-wo-yo?] = It's really not spicy?

B: **네. 안 매워요.** [ne. an mae-wo-yo] = No, it's not spicy.

LEVEL 1 LESSON 22

In lesson #16, we learned how to make the dictionary form of a verb into the present tense (현재 시제: hyeon-je si-je) and in lesson #17, we learned how to make the past tense (과거 시제: gwa-geo si-je). And we also learned that the verb 하다 [hada] has a very unique way of being conjugated.

하다 [ha-da] = to do

Dictionary form = 하다

Present tense = 하 + 예요 = 해요 [hae-yo]

Past tense = 하 + 었어요 = 했어요

We also mentioned that the verb 하다 is a very powerful and useful word. That is because in Korean there are a lot of verbs that are made by combining a noun with 하다.

Many of the Korean nouns that indicate or describe some action or behavior can be combined with 하다. And they become verbs.

Examples

1. 공부 = studying / 공부하다 = to study
2. 일 = work, job / 일하다 = to work
3. 기억 = memory / 기억하다 = to remember
4. 청소 = cleaning / 청소하다 = to clean
5. 요리 = cooking, dish / 요리하다 = to cook
6. 이사 = moving / 이사하다 = to move, to move into a different house

LEVEL 1 LESSON 22

7. 노래 = song / 노래하다 = to sing
8. 노력 = effort / 노력하다 = to make an effort, to try hard
9. 동의 = agreement, agreeing / 동의하다 = to agree
10. 인정 = admitting, acknowledgement / 인정하다 = to admit
11. 후회 = regret / 후회하다 = to regret
12. 운동 = exercise / 운동하다 = to exercise, to work out
13. 사랑 = love / 사랑하다 = to love
14. 말 = words, language / 말하다 = to speak
15. 생각 = thought, idea / 생각하다 = to think

Making negative sentences with 하다 verbs

In order to make negative sentences using these 하다 verbs (check out Lesson #21 for information on how to make negative sentences in Korean) you need to separate the noun part and the 하다 part again and add 안 inbetween.

Examples:

생각하다 --> 생각 안 하다

노력하다 --> 노력 안 하다

And if you remember from Lesson #16, there are two ways to make negative sentences in Korean: adding 안 before the verb and using the verb ending 지 않다. If you want to use 지 않다 with 하다 verbs, you simply conjugate 하다 [ha-da] to 하지 않다 [ha-ji an-ta].

LEVEL 1 LESSON 23

누구 [nu-gu] = who

Remember the subject markers and the topic markers?

Subject markers: 이 [i] / 가 [ga]

Topic markers: 은 [eun] / 는 [neun]

Subject markers emphasize the subject and shows '**who**' did something, or '**what**' is being described, and topic markers emphasize the **topic** of your sentence and shows '**what**' or '**whom**' **you are talking about**.

When you want to ask simple questions like "Who did it?" "Who helped her?" or "Who made it?", you are emphasizing the subject, which is the word "who" here, so you need to use the subject marker 이 [i] or 가 [ga].

누구 ends in a vowel so it would have to be followed by 가,
but "누구 plus 가" changes to "누가" instead of "누구가"

누구 [nu-gu] = who

누구 [nu-gu] + 가 [ga] = 누가 --> 누가 [nu-ga]

Remember that this is ONLY when you are emphasizing 'who' as the subject of an action or state.

Compare these examples:

LEVEL 1 LESSON 23

1.

When you want to ask "Who is it?" in Korean,
you literally say "it is WHO?" so it becomes:

누구 (who) + 예요 (is) = **누구예요?** [nu-gu-ye-yo?]

2.

When you want to ask "(Among these people, none other than) WHO is Jane?" you can say:

누구 (who) + 가 (subject marker) + 제인 (Jane) + 이에요? (is?)
= **누가 제인이에요?** [nu-ga je-in-i-e-yo?]

3.

And when you want to ask "Who did it?":

누구 (who) + 가 (subject marker) + 했어요? (did?)
= **누가 했어요?** [nu-ga hae-sseo-yo?]

More sample sentences

1. 누가 전화했어요? [nu-ga jeon-hwa-hae-sseo-yo?] Who called?
2. 이거 누구예요? [i-geo nu-gu-ye-yo?] Who is this? (This is who?)
3. 어제 누가 왔어요? [eo-je nu-ga wa-sseo-yo?] Who came yesterday?
4. 그거 누가 만들었어요? [geu-geo nu-ga man-deu-reo-sseo-yo?] Who made that?
5. 누가 샀어요? [nu-ga sa-sseo-yo?] Who bought it?

LEVEL 1 LESSON 24

So far, through our previous lessons, we have learned how to say "what" "where" "when" and "who".

What = **뭐** [mwo]

Where = **어디** [eo-di]

When = **언제** [eon-je]

Who = **누구** [nu-gu]

And today, we are going to learn some more **의문사**(interrogatives).

How = **어떻게** [eo-tteo-ke]

Why = **왜** [wae]

How much (money) = **얼마** [eol-ma]

How + adjective/adverb = **얼마나** [eol-ma-na]

Generally, these interrogatives in Korean are used before the verb of a sentence. But as the word order of the sentences is much more flexible (thanks in part to the subject/topic/object markers), they can come in at various parts of sentences, depending on the context or the nuance.

Examples

1. **어떻게** [eo-tteo-ke] = how

어떻게 찾았어요? [eo-tteo-ke cha-ja-sseo-yo?] = How did you find it?

(찾다 = to find, to look for)

LEVEL 1 LESSON 24

어떻게 왔어요? [eo-tteo-ke wa-sseo-yo?] = How did you get here?

(오다 = to come)

2. 왜 [wae] = why

왜 전화했어요? [wae jeon-hwa-hae-sseo-yo?] = Why did you call?

(전화하다 = to call)

왜 안 왔어요? [wae an wa-sseo-yo?] = Why didn't you come?

(오다 = to come)

3. 얼마 [eol-ma] = how much

얼마예요? [eol-ma-ye-yo?] = How much is it?

얼마 냈어요? [eol-ma nae-sseo-yo?] = How much did you pay?

(내다 = to pay)

4. 얼마나 + adjective/adverb = how + [often/fast/early/soon/etc...]

얼마나 자주 와요? [eol-ma-na ja-ju wa-yo?] = How often do you come?

(자주 = often / 오다 = to come)

얼마나 커요? [eol-ma-na keo-yo?] = How big is it?

(크다 = to be big)

얼마나 무거워요? [eol-ma-na mu-geo-wo-yo?] = How heavy is it?

(무겁다 = to be heavy)

LEVEL 1 LESSON 25

In this lesson, we are going to introduce how to say "from A to B" when talking about **locations** and "from A until B" when talking about **time**.

Basically, if you look at the big picture,

에서 [e-seo] and **부터** [bu-teo] mean "from"

and

까지 [kka-ji] means "to" or "until"

First, let's look at how to say "from A" in Korean. Basically, **에서** [e-seo] and **부터** [bu-teo] both mean "from" and they are usually interchangeable, but in cases where they are **NOT** interchangeable, **에서** is associated more often with locations and **부터** is associated more often with time.

Like all the other particles, **부터**, **에서**, and **까지** are used AFTER a noun or a pronoun, not BEFORE one.

"From A" in Korean is "A**에서**" or "A**부터**"

Examples

1. From Seoul

= 서울**에서** [seo-ul-e-seo]

LEVEL 1 LESSON 25

= 서울부터 [seo-ul-bu-te] ** = "starting from Seoul"

2. From now

= 지금부터 [ji-geum-bu-teo]

= 지금에서 [ji-geum-e-seo] (x)

3. From (or Since) yesterday

= 어제부터 [eo-je-bu-teo]

Now, "to B" or "until B" in Korean is "B까지 [kka-ji]."

Examples

1. (From somewhere else) to Seoul

= 서울까지 [seo-ul-kka-ji]

2. Until now

= 지금까지 [ji-geum-kka-ji]

3. Until tomorrow

= 내일까지 [nae-il-kka-ji]

More examples

1. From here to there

= 여기에서 저기까지

= 여기부터 저기까지

LEVEL 1 LESSON 25

2. From head to toe

= 머리부터 발끝까지

= 머리에서 발끝까지

3. From Seoul to Busan

= 서울에서 부산까지

= 서울부터 부산까지

4. From morning until evening

= 아침부터 저녁까지

= 아침에서 저녁까지 (x)

TalkToMeInKorean Level 1 Dialog

This dialog is based on the grammar points introduced in **TalkToMeInKorean's Level 1 lessons**. First listen to the dialog alone, without looking at the Korean transcript, and then check how much you could understand by comparing your understanding with the original text as well as the translation

Korean Transcript

민아: 민수 씨 안녕하세요.

민수: 아, 네, 민아 씨, 안녕하세요! 이거 뭐예요?

민아: 이거요? 이거 선물이에요.

민수: 선물이에요? 우와. 감사합니다.

민아: 아니요, 민수 씨 선물 아니에요. 다른 사람 선물이에요.

민수: 다른 사람이에요? 누구요?

민아: 오늘 현주 씨 생일이에요.

민수: 정말요? 몰랐어요.

민아: 어, 저기, 현주 씨 왔어요.

현주: 민아 씨, 민수 씨, 안녕하세요!

민아: 생일 축하해요. 선물이에요.

현주: 우와. 감사합니다.

민수: 현주 씨, 생일 축하해요. 저는... 선물이 없어요. 생일을 몰랐어요.

현주: 괜찮아요. 감사합니다.

민아: 민수 씨는 언제까지 시간 있어요?

민수: 저요? 저는 일곱 시까지 시간 있어요.

민아: 좋아요. 현주 씨, 뭐 하고 싶어요?

현주: 저요? 글썄요...

TalkToMeInKorean Level 1 Dialog

민아: 민수 씨, 배고파요? 저는 피자 먹고 싶어요.

민수: 네? 네... 저기... 현주 씨는요? 피자 먹고 싶어요?

현주: 네. 저도 피자 좋아요.

민수: 저기요. 김치 불고기 치즈 피자 하나 주세요.

민아: 김치 불고기 치즈 피자요?

민수: 맛있어요! 아, 저기요! 콜라 세 잔 주세요.

민아: 저는 콜라 안 마시고 싶어요. 저는 맥주 주세요.

민수: 여기 맥주 없어요.

민아: 있어요.

현주: 저기요, 여기 맥주 있어요? 네, 맥주 하나 주세요.

민수: 누가 피자집에서 맥주를 마셔요?

민아: 왜요? 이상해요?

민수: 아니에요.

현주: 피자 나왔어요.

민아: 맥주는요?

현주: 여기 있어요.

민아: 잘 먹겠습니다!

민수: 잘 먹겠습니다.

현주: 잘 먹겠습니다.

Korean Transcript + English Translation

민아: 민수 씨 안녕하세요.

TalkToMeInKorean Level 1 Dialog

Mina: Minsu, hello.

민수: 아, 네, 민아 씨, 안녕하세요! 이거 뭐예요?

Minsu: Oh, hi, Mina. Hi. What is this?

민아: 이거요? 이거 선물이에요.

Mina: This? This is a present.

민수: 선물이요? 우와. 감사합니다.

Minsu: A present? Wow. Thank you.

민아: 아니요, 민수 씨 선물 아니에요. 다른 사람 선물이에요.

Mina: No, it's not a present for you, Minsu. It's a present for someone else.

민수: 다른 사람이요? 누구요?

Minsu: Someone else? Who?

민아: 오늘 현주 씨 생일이에요.

Mina: Today is Hyeonju's birthday.

민수: 정말요? 몰랐어요.

Minsu: Really? I didn't know.

민아: 어, 저기, 현주 씨 왔어요.

Mina: Oh, there, Hyeonju came.

현주: 민아 씨, 민수 씨, 안녕하세요!

Hyeonju: Mina, Minsu, hi!

민아: 생일 축하해요. 선물이에요.

Mina: Happy birthday. It's a present.

현주: 우와. 감사합니다.

Hyeonju: Wow. Thank you.

TalkToMeInKorean Level 1 Dialog

민수: 현주 씨, 생일 축하해요. 저는... 선물이 없어요. 생일을 몰랐어요.

Minsu: Hyeonju, happy birthday. I... don't have a present. I didn't know your birthday.

현주: 괜찮아요. 감사합니다.

Hyeonju: It's okay. Thank you.

민아: 민수 씨는 언제까지 시간 있어요?

Mina: Minsu, until when do you have time?

민수: 저요? 저는 일곱 시까지 시간 있어요.

Minsu: Me? I have time until 7 o'clock.

민아: 좋아요. 현주 씨, 뭐 하고 싶어요?

Mina: Good. Hyeonju, what do you want to do?

현주: 저요? 글썄요...

Hyeonju: Me? Well...

민아: 민수 씨, 배고파요? 저는 피자 먹고 싶어요.

Mina: Minsu, are you hungry? I want to have pizza.

민수: 네? 네... 저기... 현주 씨는요? 피자 먹고 싶어요?

Minsu: What? I see... um... Hyeonju, how about you? Do you want to have pizza?

현주: 네. 저도 피자 좋아요.

Hyeonju: Yeah... I like pizza too.

민수: 저기요. 김치 불고기 치즈 피자 하나 주세요.

Minsu: Excuse me. Give us one kimchi bulgogi cheese pizza.

민아: 김치 불고기 치즈 피자요?

Mina: Kimchi bulgogi cheese pizza?

민수: 맛있어요! 아, 저기요! 콜라 세 잔 주세요.

TalkToMeInKorean Level 1 Dialog

Minsu: It's delicious! Oh, excuse me! Give us three cups of cola.

민아: 저는 콜라 안 마시고 싶어요. 저는 맥주 주세요.

Mina: I don't want to drink cola. Give me beer.

민수: 여기 맥주 없어요.

Minsu: There is no beer here.

민아: 있어요.

Mina: There is.

현주: 저기요, 여기 맥주 있어요? 네, 맥주 하나 주세요.

Hyeonju: Excuse me, do you have beer here? Yes, give us one beer.

민수: 누가 피자집에서 맥주를 마셔요?

Minsu: How drinks beer in a pizza place?

민아: 왜요? 이상해요?

Mina: Why? Is it strange?

민수: 아니에요.

Minsu: No.

현주: 피자 나왔어요.

Hyeonju: The pizza came out.

민아: 맥주는요?

Mina: And beer?

현주: 여기 있어요.

Hyeonju: It's here.

민아: 잘 먹겠습니다!

Mina: Let's eat!

TalkToMeInKorean Level 1 Dialog

민수: 잘 먹겠습니다.

Minsu: Bon appetit!

현주: 잘 먹겠습니다.

Hyeonju: Let's eat.

Vocabulary Breakdown

감사합니다 = thank you

-고 싶다 = to want to

괜찮아요 = it's okay

글쎄요 = Well...

-까지 = until

나오다 = to come out

네 = yes

누가 = who (subject)

누구 = who

다른 = different, other

-도 = also, too

마시다 = to drink

맛있어요 = it's delicious

맥주 = beer

모르다 = to not know

뭐 = what

배고프다 = to be hungry

사람 = person, people

생일 = birthday

생일 축하해요 = happy birthday

선물 = present

세 잔 = three cups, three glasses

시간 = time

씨 = attached after a person's name when addressing someone in polite language

아니예요 = it's not

아니요 = no

안 = not

안녕하세요 = hello

TalkToMeInKorean Level 1 Dialog

언제 = when

없어요 = it doesn't exist, I don't have

오늘 = today

오다 = to come

이거 = this

일곱 시 = 7 o'clock

있어요 = it exists, I have

잘 먹겠습니다 = thanks for the food, bon appetit, let's eat

저 = me

저기 = over there

저기요 = excuse me, hey

정말 = really, truly

좋아요 = it's good, I like it

주세요 = give me

콜라 = cola

피자 = pizza

하나 = one

Workbook for Level 1 Lessons 1 - 10

Thank you for downloading this workbook from TalkToMeInKorean.com. This **WORKBOOK** has been made to help you reinforce what you have learned from our lessons number 1 through 10 in Level 1 at TalkToMeInKorean.com. The audio file for ALL of the Korean sentences that appear in this workbook is also available for download.

The **STORE** section of the site will open very soon and you will be able to browse through and purchase some really interesting Korean learning material, **BUT** even when we start running the store, we want to try our best to keep the prices of the products sold in the **TTMIK STORE** very low and reasonable so that MORE people can enjoy learning without spending too much money. One way you can help us make it possible to keep providing great learning material at inexpensive costs is to make **donations**. It doesn't have to be a lot of money, or you don't have to if you don't want to, or can't afford to at the moment. But any small donation you make will be an enormous amount help in keeping all our regular lessons completely FREE and our store products very inexpensive.

Thank you once again. **감사합니다!** We hope you will keep enjoy learning with us and don't forget that all of our regular lessons will be free of charge forever, so help us spread the word!

Level 1 Lesson 1

Please answer the following questions. The answers are on the next page.

1. What is the most commonly used greeting in Korean, when you want to say "Hello," "Good morning," "Good afternoon," or "Hi" to someone?

()

2. How do you say "Thank you" in polite and formal Korean?

()

3. What is the term for referring to the polite and formal language in Korean?

- a. [jan-so-ri] b. [jon-daet-mal] c. [han-gu-geo] d. [an-nyeong]

Workbook for Level 1 Lessons 1 - 10

Answers for Level 1 Lesson 1

1. 안녕하세요. [an-nyeong-ha-se-yo]
2. 감사합니다. [gam-sa-ham-ni-da]
3. b [jon-daet-mal]

Level 1 Lesson 2

Please answer the following questions. The answers are on the next page.

1. Basically, how do you say "Yes" in polite formal Korean?

()

2. Basically, how do you say "No" in polite formal Korean?

()

3. What is the difference between the Korean "Yes" and "No" and the English "Yes" and "No"?

- a. The Korean "Yes" and "No" are stronger than the English "Yes" and "No."
- b. The Korean "Yes" and "No" express your agreement or disagreement to what the other person said, rather than expressing whether the fact itself is true or not.
- c. In Korean, there is no "No" but there is only "Yes."

4. How do you say "That's right" in polite formal Korean?

()

Workbook for Level 1 Lessons 1 - 10

Answers for Level 1 Lesson 2

1. 네. [ne]
2. 아니요. [a-ni-yo]
3. b
4. 맞아요. [ma-ja-yo]

Level 1 Lesson 3

Please answer the following questions. The answers are on the next page.

1. If you are leaving a place and the others are staying, how do you say "Goodbye" in polite formal Korean? The literal translation of this expression is "Please stay in peace."

()

2. If you are the one staying and the others are leaving the place, how do you say "Goodbye" in polite formal Korean? The literal translation of this expression is "Please go in peace."

()

3. If both you and the other person are leaving the place you are in now, and no one is staying, what do you say to the other person to say "Goodbye" in polite formal Korean?

()

Workbook for Level 1 Lessons 1 - 10

Answers for Level 1 Lesson 3

1. 안녕히 계세요. [an-nyeong-hi gye-se-yo]
2. 안녕히 가세요. [an-nyeong-hi ga-se-yo]
3. 안녕히 가세요. [an-nyeong-hi ga-se-yo]

Level 1 Lesson 4

Please answer the following questions. The answers are on the next page.

1. If you made a mistake or did something that you feel bad about, what can you say in polite Korean to apologize?

()

2. You are running up the stairs inside a busy subway station and accidentally stepped on somebody's foot. What can you say to the person to apologize?

()

3. You are in a restaurant and you are now ready to order. What do you say to the waiter to get his or her attention?

()

4. You want to pass through a crowd of people or reach out for a book in a bookstore but there is someone in your way, what can you NOT say to mean "Excuse me"?

- a. 죄송합니다. [joe-song-ham-ni-da]
- b. 잠시만요. [jam-si-man-yo]
- c. 안녕히 가세요. [an-nyeong-hi ga-se-yo]

Workbook for Level 1 Lessons 1 - 10

Answers for Level 1 Lesson 4

1. 죄송합니다. [joe-song-ham-ni-da]
2. 죄송합니다. [joe-song-ham-ni-da]
3. 저기요. [jeo-gi-yo]
4. c (안녕히 가세요 means Goodbye.)

Level 1 Lesson 5

Please answer the following questions. The answers are on the next page.

The expression for "to be" as in "This **is** an apple" in Korean is **이에요** [i-e-yo] or **예요** [ye-yo] depending on whether the last letter of the word that comes before is a consonant or a vowel. Choose which one should be used after each noun.

1. **학생** [hak-saeng] + ()
student
2. **의자** [ui-ja] + ()
chair
3. **이거** [i-geo] + ()
this one
4. **집** [jip] + ()
house
5. **진짜** [jinjja] + ()
real

Workbook for Level 1 Lessons 1 - 10

Answers for Level 1 Lesson 5

1. **학생이에요.** [hak-saeng-i-e-yo] = I'm a student. / He's a student. / They are students.
2. **의자예요.** [ui-ja-ye-yo] = It's a chair.
3. **이거예요.** [i-geo-ye-yo] = It's this one.
4. **집이에요.** [jib-i-e-yo] = It's a house. / I am at home.
5. **진짜예요.** [jin-jja-ye-yo] = It's real.

Please answer the following questions. The answers are on the next page.

6. How do you say "water" in Korean?

()

7. How do you say "what" in Korean?

()

8. How do you say "What is it?" in polite formal Korean?

()

9. How do you say "It's me." in polite formal Korean?

()

Workbook for Level 1 Lessons 1 - 10

Answers for Level 1 Lesson 5

6. 물 [mul]	7. 뭐 [mwo]
8. 뭐예요? [mwo-ye-yo?]	9. 저예요. [jeo-ye-yo]

Level 1 Lesson 6 & 7

Please answer the following questions. The answers are on the next page.

Match words that have the same meaning.

There may be several Korean words for one English word.

1. 이거 [i-geo]	a. this one (near you)
2. 저것 [jeo-geot]	
3. 그거 [geu-geo]	b. that one (far from you and near the other person)
4. 그것 [geu-geot]	
5. 저거 [jeo-geo]	c. that one over there (far from both you and the other person)
6. 이것 [i-geot]	

7. How do you say "What is this?" in polite formal Korean?

()

8. How do you say "What is that over there?" in polite formal Korean?

()

Workbook for Level 1 Lessons 1 - 10

Answers for Level 1 Lesson 6 & 7

1. 이거 - a	2. 저것 - c
3. 그거 - b	4. 그것 - b
5. 저거 - c	6. 이것 - a

7. **이거 뭐예요?** [i-geo mwo-ye-yo?] = What is this?
8. **저거 뭐예요?** [jeo-geo mwo-ye-yo?] = What's that over there?

Please fill in the blanks to make the Korean sentences and the English sentences have the same meaning.

9. () 커피예요?
= Is this coffee?

10. (). 물이에요.
= No. It's water.

11. 그거 ()예요?
= What is it?

12. 저거 뭐()? 저거 커피()?
= What is that? Is that coffee over there?

Workbook for Level 1 Lessons 1 - 10

Answers for Level 1 Lesson 6 & 7

- 9. 이거 [i-geo] = this one, this thing
- 10. 아니요 [a-ni-yo] = No.
- 11. 뭐 [mwo] = what
- 12. 예요 [ye-yo] = to be

Level 1 Lesson 8

Please answer the following questions. The answers are on the next page.

1. In Korean, 우유 [u-yu] is milk. How do you say "This is NOT milk"?

()

2. In Korean, 술 [sul] is alcohol. How do you say "It's NOT alcohol"?

()

3. 저 [jeo] is "I" in polite Korean and 학생 [haksaeng] is a student.
How do you say "I am NOT a student"?

()

4. "My fault" in polite Korean is 제 잘못 [je jal-mot].
How do you say "It's not my fault"?

()

Workbook for Level 1 Lessons 1 - 10

Answers for Level 1 Lesson 8

1. **이거 우유 아니에요.** [i-geo u-yu a-ni-e-yo] = This is not milk.
2. **술 아니에요.** [sul a-ni-e-yo] = It's not alcohol.
3. **저 학생 아니에요.** [jeo haksaeng a-ni-e-yo] = I am not a student.
4. **제 잘못 아니에요.** [je jal-mot a-ni-e-yo] = It's not my fault.

Level 1 Lesson 9

Please answer the following questions. The answers are on the next page.

1. What are the topic marking particles in Korean?

() & ()

2. What are the subject marking particles in Korean?

() & ()

3. **이거 좋아요.** [i-geo jo-a-yo] means "This is good."

How do you say "I don't know about other things, but THIS ONE is good"?

()

Workbook for Level 1 Lessons 1 - 10

Answers for Level 1 Lesson 9

1. 은 [eun] & 는 [neun]
2. 이 [i] & 가 [ga]
3. 이거는 좋아요. [i-geo-neun jo-a-yo]

Please answer the following questions. The answers are on the next page.

4. 피자 비싸요. [pi-ja bi-ssa-yo] means "Pizza is expensive."
How do you say "The other things are not expensive, but PIZZA is expensive"?

()

5. 피자 비싸요. [pi-ja bi-ssa-yo] means "Pizza is expensive." When someone asks you, "WHAT is expensive?" how do you say "It's PIZZA that is expensive"?

()

6. How do you say "What is this?" in polite formal Korean?

()

7. How do you say "What about this one? What is it?" in polite formal Korean?

()

Workbook for Level 1 Lessons 1 - 10

Answers for Level 1 Lesson 9

4. 피자는 비싸요. [pi-ja-neun bi-ssa-yo]
5. 피자가 비싸요. [pi-ja-ga bi-ssa-yo]
6. 이거 뭐예요? [i-geo-mwo-ye-yo?]
7. 이거는 뭐예요? [i-geo-neun mwo-ye-yo?]

Level 1 Lesson 10

Please answer the following questions. The answers are on the next page.

1. How do you say "to have" or "there is" in polite formal Korean?

()

2. How do you say "I have time." in polite formal Korean?

()

3. How do you ask someone "Do you have friends?" or "Do you have a friend?"

()

4. How do you ask someone "Do you have Korean friends?"

()

Workbook for Level 1 Lessons 1 - 10

Answers for Level 1 Lesson 10

1. 있어요 [i-sseo-yo]
2. 시간 있어요 [si-gan i-sseo-yo]
3. 친구 있어요? [chin-gu i-sseo-yo?]
4. 한국 친구 있어요? [han-guk chin-gu i-sseo-yo?]

Please answer the following questions. The answers are on the next page.

5. How do you say that you "don't have" something?

()

6. Let's imagine that you are running a store, and you ran out of bottled water. A customer is looking for some bottled water, so you want to tell him or her "We don't have water." How do you say that?

()

7. Do you remember the Korean word for "fun"? What is it?

()

8. How do you say that something "is no fun" or "is not interesting"?

()

Workbook for Level 1 Lessons 1 - 10

Answers for Level 1 Lesson 10

5. 없어요 [eop-seo-yo]
6. 물 없어요 [mul eop-seo-yo]
7. 재미 [jae-mi]
8. 재미 없어요 [jae-mi eop-seo-yo]

Thank you for downloading this workbook from TalkToMeInKorean.com.

We hope the workbook has been helpful.

If you found it useful, you can help us make more great free learning material by supporting us through donations. It doesn't matter how much you donate, and it is absolutely not an obligation, either. **Thank you** for all the support and we will keep doing our best to provide with the best learning material for your Korean.



Workbook for Level 1 Lessons 11 - 20

Thank you for downloading this workbook from TalkToMeInKorean.com. This **WORKBOOK** has been made to help you reinforce what you have learned from our lessons number 11 to 20 in Level 1 at TalkToMeInKorean.com. The audio files for ALL of the Korean sentences that appear in this workbook are also available for download.

As you know all our regular lessons are free of charge and will stay that way. And for the products on sale in the Store section of the site, we want to try our best to keep their prices very low and reasonable so that MORE people can enjoy learning without spending too much money. One way you can help us make it possible to keep providing great learning material at inexpensive costs is to make **donations**. It doesn't have to be a lot, or you don't even have to if you don't want to or can't afford to at the moment. But any small donation you make will be an enormous amount help in keeping all our regular lessons completely FREE and our store products very inexpensive.

Thank you once again. **감사합니다!** We hope you will keep enjoy learning with us and don't forget that all our regular lessons will be free of charge forever, so help us spread the word!

Level 1 Lesson 11

Please answer the following questions. The answers are on the last page of this PDF.

1. In Korean, 커피 [keo-pi] is coffee. How do you say **"Do you have coffee?"** in Korean?

()

2. How do you say **"Don't you have coffee? / You don't have coffee?"** in Korean?

()

3. How do you say **"Give me some milk, please."** in Korean?

()

Workbook for Level 1 Lessons 11 - 20

Level 1 Lesson 12

Please answer the following questions. The answers are on the last page of this PDF.

1. How do you say **"taste"** in Korean?

()

2. Your friend invites you to dinner and cooks for you and the food is really good!

How do you say **"It's tasty. / It's delicious."** in Korean?

- a. 맛있어요. [ma-si-sseo-yo]
- b. 맛없어요. [ma-deop-seo-yo]
- c. 죄송해요. [joe-song-hae-yo]

3. You have finished your meal, and the food was great. So you want to thank your friend for the meal. The phrase you can say literally means "I have eaten well." but it really means **"Thank you for the food."** How do you say that in Korean?

()

Level 1 Lesson 13

Please answer the following questions. The answers are on the last page of this PDF.

1. There are a lot of delicious foods in Korea. So it's hard to choose just one dish for lunch. You might want to just take the same thing as your friend does. In that case, how do you say **"What do you want to eat?"** in Korean?

()

Workbook for Level 1 Lessons 11 - 20

Match words and sentences which are related to each other.

2. **영화** [yeong-hwa] (movie)

a. **먹고 싶어요.** [meok-go si-peo-yo]

3. **여행** [yeo-haeng] (trip)

b. **보고 싶어요.** [bo-go si-peo-yo]

4. **피자** [pi-ja] (pizza)

c. **가고 싶어요.** [ga-go si-peo-yo]

Level 1 Lesson 14

Please fill in the blanks to make the Korean sentences and the English sentences have the same meaning. The answers are on the last page of this PDF.

A : 이거 1. () 싶어요.

= I want to read this.

B : 이거요?

= This one?

A : 네.

= Yeah.

B : 이거 2. ()예요?

= What is this?

A : 이거 3. ()이에요.

= This is a book.

Workbook for Level 1 Lessons 11 - 20

Level 1 Lesson 15

Please answer the following questions. The answers are on the last page of this PDF.

Do you remember the **Sino-Korean numbers**?

Do you still get confused about how to say years in Korean? Let's practice!

1. How do you count from 1 through 10 using the sino-Korean number system?

()

2. In what year were the Vancouver Winter Olympic Games held? How do you say that in Korean?

()

3. McDonald's Big Mac meal set is ₩4,900 in Korea. How do you say "**₩4,900**" in Korean?

()

Level 1 Lesson 16

Please answer the following questions. The answers are on the last page of this PDF.

In order to conjugate a verb into **the present tense**, you take the verb stem, and add one of these endings: **아요** [a-yo], **어요** [eo-yo], **여요** [yeo-yo]

Which one of these three endings goes after withch verb stem?

Workbook for Level 1 Lessons 11 - 20

1. If the verb stem's last vowel is **ㅏ** [a] or **ㅗ** [o], it is followed by ().
2. Only one verb stem, which is **하** [ha], is followed by ().
3. If the last vowel is **NOT** **ㅏ** [a] or **ㅗ** [o], it is followed by ().
4. "To eat" is 먹다 [meok-da] in Korean. If you want to conjugate the verb 먹다 into the present tense, what does it become?

()

Level 1 Lesson 17

Please fill verb's conjugations in the blanks. The answers are on the last page of this PDF.

In order to conjugate a verb into **the past tense**, you take the verb stem, and add one of these endings: **았어요** [a-sseo-yo], **었어요** [eo-sseo-yo], **였어요** [yeo-sseo-yo]. Now, please fill in the blanks below.

1. **팔다** [pal-da] = to sell
 Present Tense: ()
 Past Tense: **팔았어요** [pa-ra-sseo-yo]
2. **이상하다** [i-sang-ha-da] = to be strange
 Present Tense: **이상해요** [i-sang-hae-yo]
 Past Tense: ()
3. **기다리다** [gi-da-ri-da] = to wait
 Present Tense: **기다려요** [gi-da-ryeo-yo]

Workbook for Level 1 Lessons 11 - 20

Past Tense: ()

4. **쓰다** [sseu-da] = to write, to use

Present Tense: ()

Past Tense: **썼어요** [sseo-sseo-yo]

Level 1 Lesson 18

Please answer the following questions. The answers are on the last page of this PDF.

1. How do you say “where” or “which place” in Korean?

()

There are location marking particles in Korean: **에** [e], **에서** [e-seo]. Please put **에** [e] or **에서** [e-seo] in its appropriate place.

2. **집() 있어요.**

= I am at home.

3. **집() 뭐 해요?**

= What are you doing at home?

4. **집() 일해요.**

= I work at home.

Level 1 Lesson 19

Please answer the following questions. The answers are on the last page of this PDF.

“When” is **언제** [eon-je] in Korean. Let's practice by using the word **언제** [eon-je].

Workbook for Level 1 Lessons 11 - 20

1. How do you say **"When did you do (it)?"** in Korean?

()

2. How do you say **"When do you get up?"** in Korean?

()

3. How do you say **"When did you come?"** in Korean?

()

Level 1 Lesson 20

Please answer the following questions. The answers are on the last page of this PDF.

Do you also remember the **Native-Korean numbers**?

1 = 하나 [ha-na] 2 = 둘 [dul] 3 = 셋 [set] 4 = 넷 [net] 5 = 다섯 [da-seot]

6 = 여섯 [yeo-seot] 7 = 일곱 [il-gop] 8 = 여덟 [yeo-deol] 9 = 아홉 [a-hop] 10 = 열 [yeol]

1. How do you say **"20"** in the native-Korean numbers?

()

2. How do you say **"I am twenty years old."** in Korean?

()

Workbook for Level 1 Lessons 11 - 20

3. How do you say **"I am twenty four years old."** in Korean?

()

4. How do you say **"I am twenty five years old."** in Korean?

()

5. How do you say **"I am twenty seven years old."** in Korean?

()

6. How do you say **"I am twenty nine years old."** in Korean?

()

7. How do you say **"I am forty years old."** in Korean?

()

Workbook for Level 1 Lessons 11 - 20

Great job! Now here are the answers for the questions:

Answers for Level 1 Lesson 11

1. 커피 있어요? [keo-pi i-sseo-yo?]
2. 커피 없어요? [keo-pi eop-seo-yo?]
3. 우유 주세요. [u-yu ju-se-yo.]

Answers for Level 1 Lesson 12

1. 맛 [mat]
2. a
3. 잘 먹었습니다. [jal meo-geo-sseum-ni-da]

Answers for Level 1 Lesson 13

1. 뭐 먹고 싶어요? [mwo meok-go si-peo-yo?]
2. 영화 [yeong-hwa] b.보고 싶어요. [bo-go si-peo-yo]
영화 보고 싶어요.
3. 여행 [yeo-haeng] c.가고 싶어요. [ga-go si-peo-yo]
여행 가고 싶어요.
4. 피자 [pi-ja] a.먹고 싶어요. [meok-go si-peo-yo]
피자 먹고 싶어요.

Answers for Level 1 Lesson 14

1. 읽고 [il-ggo]
A: **이거 읽고 싶어요.** [i-geo il-ggo si-peo-yo]
2. 뭐 [mwo]
B : **이거 뭐예요?** [i-geo mwo-ye-yo]
3. 책 [chaek]
A : **이거 책이에요.** [i-geo chaeg-i-e-yo]

Workbook for Level 1 Lessons 11 - 20

Answers for Level 1 Lesson 15

1. 1 = 일 [il] , 2 = 이 [i], 3 = 삼 [sam], 4 = 사 [sa], 5 = 오 [o],
6 = 륝 [ryuk] or 육 [yuk], 7 = 칠 [chil], 8 = 팔 [pal], 9 = 구 [gu], 10 = 십 [sip]
2. 이천십년 [i-cheon-sim-nyeon]
3. 사천구백원 [sa-cheon-gu-baek-won]

Answers for Level 1 Lesson 16

1. 아요 [a-yo]
2. 여요 [yeo-yo]
3. 어요 [eo-yo]
4. 먹어요 [meo-geo-yo]

Answers for Level 1 Lesson 17

1. 팔아요 [pa-ra-yo]
2. 이상했어요 [i-sang-hae-sseo-yo]
3. 기다렸어요 [gi-da-ryeo-sseo-yo]
4. 써요 [sseo-yo] (**NOT 쓰어요**)

Answers for Level 1 Lesson 18

1. 어디 [eo-di]
2. 예 [e]
3. 에서 [e-seo]
4. 에서 [e-seo]

Answers for Level 1 Lesson 19

1. 언제 했어요? [eon-je hae-sseo-yo]
2. 언제 일어나요? [eon-je i-reo-na-yo]
3. 언제 왔어요? [eon-je wa-sseo-yo]

Workbook for Level 1 Lessons 11 - 20

Answers for Level 1 Lesson 20

1. 스물 [seu-mul]
2. 스무 살이에요. [seu-mu sal-i-e-yo.]
3. 스물 네 살이에요. [seu-mul ne sal-i-e-yo.]
4. 스물 다섯 살이에요. [seu-mul da-seot sal-i-e-yo.]
5. 스물 일곱 살이에요. [seu-mul il-gop sal-i-e-yo.]
6. 스물 아홉 살이에요. [seu-mul a-hop sal-i-e-yo.]
7. 마흔 살이에요. [ma-heun sal-i-e-yo.]

Thank you for downloading this workbook from TalkToMeInKorean.com.

We hope the workbook has been helpful to you.

If you found it useful, you can help us make more great free learning material by supporting us through donations. It doesn't matter how much you donate, and it is absolutely not an obligation either. **Thank you** for all the support and we will keep doing our best to provide with the best learning material for your Korean.

Workbook for Level 1 Lessons 21 - 25

Thank you for downloading this workbook from TalkToMeInKorean.com. This **WORKBOOK** has been made to help you reinforce what you have learned from our lessons number 21 to 25 in Level 1 at TalkToMeInKorean.com. The audio files for ALL of the Korean sentences that appear in this workbook are also available for download.

Please answer the following questions. The answers are on the last pages of this PDF.

Level 1 Lesson 21

Do you remember how to make **negative sentences** in Korean? Let's practice!

1. "To throw away" is 버리다 [beo-ri-da] in Korean.

How do you say "**I threw it away.**" in Korean?

()

2. How do you say "**I DIDN'T throw it away.**" in Korean?

()

Please fill in the blanks to make the Korean sentences and the English sentences have the same meaning.

A: 이거 매워요?

= Is this spicy?

B: 아니요. 3. ()

= No. **It's not spicy.**

Workbook for Level 1 Lessons 21 - 25

ㄱ: 한국어 공부했어요?

= Did you study Korean?

ㄴ: 아니요. 4. ()

= No. **I didn't study Korean.**

Level 1 Lesson 22

Please match the English sentences and the Korean sentences which have the same meaning.

1. **to clean**

a. 노력하다 [no-ryeok-ha-da]

2. **to exercise, to work out**

b. 기억하다 [gi-eok-ha-da]

3. **to regret**

c. 청소하다 [cheong-so-ha-da]

4. **to remember**

d. 운동하다 [un-dong-ha-da]

5. **to make an effort, to try hard**

e. 후회하다 [hu-hoe-ha-da]

Level 1 Lesson 23

1. How do you say "who" in Korean?

()

Please fill in the blanks with "누구" or "누가".

Workbook for Level 1 Lessons 21 - 25

2. 어제 () 왔어요?

= Who came yesterday?

3. 이거 ()예요?

= Who is this?

4. 그거 () 만들었어요?

= Who made that?

Level 1 Lesson 24

Please match the English words and the Korean words which have the same meaning.

1. **why**

a. 누구 [nu-gu]

2. **what**

b. 어떻게 [eo-tteo-ke]

3. **who**

c. 왜 [wae]

4. **where**

d. 뭐 [mwo]

5. **how**

e. 어디 [eo-di]

Please fill in the blanks with "얼마" or "얼마나".

6. ()였어요?

= How much was it?

7. () 자주 와요?

= How much is it?

Level 1 Lesson 25

()

Workbook for Level 1 Lessons 21 - 25

5. How do you say "From head to toe" in Korean?

()

6. How do you say "From morning until evening" in Korean?

()

Answers

Level 1 Lesson 21

1. 버렸어요.
2. 안 버렸어요.
3. 안 매워요.
4. 한국어 공부 안 했어요.

Level 1 Lesson 22

1. to clean = c. 청소하다
2. to exercise, to work out = d. 운동하다
3. to regret = e. 후회하다
4. to remember = b. 기억하다
5. to make an effort, to try hard = a. 노력하다

Workbook for Level 1 Lessons 21 - 25

Level 1 Lesson 23

1. 누구
2. (어제) 누가 (왔어요?)
3. (이거) 누구(예요?)
4. (그거) 누가 (만들었어요?)

Level 1 Lesson 24

1. why = c. 왜
2. what = d. 뭐
3. who = a. 누구
4. where = e. 어디
5. how = b. 어떻게
6. 얼마(였어요?)
7. 얼마나 (자주 와요?)
8. 얼마나 (무거워요?)
9. 얼마(예요?)

Level 1 Lesson 25

1. a (From Seoul)
2. 지금까지
3. 내일까지
4. 여기부터 저기까지, 여기에서 저기까지
5. 머리에서 발끝까지
6. 아침부터 저녁까지

Workbook for Level 1 Lessons 21 - 25

We hope this workbook has been helpful to you.

All our regular lessons are free of charge and will stay that way. And for the products we have for sale in the Store section of the site, we want to try our best to keep their prices very low and reasonable so that MORE people can enjoy learning without spending too much money. One way you can help us make it possible to keep providing great learning material at inexpensive costs is to make donations. It doesn't have to be a lot, or you don't even have to if you don't want to or can't afford to at the moment. But any small donation you make will be an enormous amount help in keeping all our regular lessons completely FREE and our store products very inexpensive.

Thank you once again. **감사합니다!** We hope you will keep enjoying learning with us!

LEVEL 2 LESSON 1

Welcome to **Level 2**!!!!!! And congratulations on making your way through Level 1. In Level 2, we are going to be looking at grammar points and expressions that you can build upon what you have learned through Level 1.

In this lesson, we are going to learn how to talk about the future in Korean.

Future Tense

The most common way of making future tense sentences in Korean is adding **ㄹ/을 거예요** [l/eul geo-ye-yo].

Verb + ㄹ/을 거예요 = future tense!

How to determine whether to use ㄹ 거예요 or 을 거예요:

1. Verb stems ending with a vowel (보다, 가다, 자다) are followed by **ㄹ 거예요**.
2. Verb stems ending with a consonant (먹다, 찾다, 붙다) are followed by **을 거예요**.
(**There is no complex reason for this. It's just for the ease of pronunciation.)
3. Exception: Verb stems already ending with **ㄹ** at the end (놀다, 멀다, 살다) are followed just by **거예요**.

When a verb is changed into this form, it takes the meaning of "to be going to" do something or "will" do something. But as you will find out when you hear more Korean spoken between native speakers, the present tense can also serve to express the future, when the context is very clear.

For example, "I'm going to go tomorrow." is **내일 갈 거예요**. in the future tense. But even if you say **내일 가요**. which is in the present tense, it still makes perfect sense, depending on the situ-

LEVEL 2 LESSON 1

ation.

Examples

가다 [ga-da] = to go

가 + ㄹ 거예요. [ga + l geo-ye-yo]

--> 갈 거예요. [gal geo-ye-yo] = I'm going to go. I will go.

지금 갈 거예요. = I'm going to go (there) now.

혼자 갈 거예요. = I'm going to go alone.

내일 갈 거예요. = I'm going to go tomorrow.

하다 [ha-da] = to do

하 + ㄹ 거예요. [ha + l geo-ye-yo]

--> 할 거예요. [hal geo-ye-yo]

뭐 할 거예요? = What are you going to do?

언제 할 거예요? = When are you going to do (it)?

이거 정말 할 거예요? = Are you really going to do it?

입다 [ip-da] = to wear

입 + 을 거예요. [ip + eul geo-ye-yo]

--> 입을 거예요. [i-beul geo-ye-yo]

청바지 입을 거예요. = I'm going to wear blue jeans.

티셔츠 입을 거예요. = I'm going to wear a t-shirt.

뭐 입을 거예요? = What are you going to wear?

LEVEL 2 LESSON 1

만나다 [man-na-da] = to meet

만나 + ㄹ 거예요. [man-na l geo-ye-yo]

--> 만날 거예요. [man-nal geo-ye-yo]

누구 만날 거예요? = Who are you going to meet?

어디에서 만날 거예요? = Where are you going to meet?

언제 만날 거예요? = When are you going to meet?

팔다 [pal-da] = to sell

팔 + 거예요. [pal geo-ye-yo]

--> 팔 거예요. [pal geo-ye-yo]

뭐 팔 거예요? = What are you going to sell?

어디에서 팔 거예요? = Where are you going to sell?

얼마에 팔 거예요? = At what price are you going to sell it?

LEVEL 2 LESSON 2

In this lesson, we are looking at the **object marking particles**. As we mentioned a few times through our previous lessons, there are different types of particles in Korean, and these particles (subject marking particles, topic marking particles, location marking particles, and so on) are what make it easy to understand Korean sentences, even when the word order changes.

But more often than not, when the meaning of a certain sentence can be still very clear WITHOUT using a certain particle, Korean speakers like to drop the particle and just not say it. Like many other rules in speaking Korean, this is also for the ease of pronunciation and for the shortening of the phrase.

So far, we have looked at many verbs. Verbs can be divided into transitive verbs (verbs that need objects) and intransitive verbs (verbs that do not need objects), and in English this is much more clear because even when a noun is repeatedly referred to (i. e. "Did you find your wallet? / Yes, I found it.), you do not get rid of the part that refers to "the wallet" - you still have it there by saying "it" instead of "the wallet".

But in Korean, since the same mini dialog as above will often go like this: "**지갑 찾았어요?**" (literal translation: "wallet found?" / **네. 찾았어요.** (literal translation: "yes. found."), the distinction between transitive verbs and intransitive verbs is not as strong as in English and many other languages.

And that's where object marking particles come in to play.

LEVEL 2 LESSON 2

Object marking particles:

을 [eul] - used after a noun ending in a **consonant**

를 [reul] - used after a noun ending in a **vowel**

What does an object marking particle do?

In English, if you write "an apple" and do not write the verb that goes with it, there is no way for you to tell what kind of role it is going to take in a sentence.

But in Korean, even if you do not write or say the verb, just by adding the right particle after the noun, you can express the role of the noun or pronoun even before you say the verb.

"An apple" - in English, it's completely neutral as is.

"사과" - in Korean, as is, it's neutral too.

"사과를" - even if you don't say the verb, you know that 사과 is going to be the **OBJECT** of the verb.

So you can predict the verbs to an extent - "eat an apple, buy an apple, sell an apple, find an apple, throw an apple, draw an apple, etc."

"사과가" - you know that 사과 is going to be the **SUBJECT** of the verb.

LEVEL 2 LESSON 2

You can predict the verbs here as well - "the apple is good, is bad, is expensive, will be big, was small, can be good for health, etc."

" 사과는 " - you know that the speaker is going to say something about 사과 in comparison to other things or bring up the topic of 사과 for the first time.

How object marking particles are dropped

If you want to translate "What did you do yesterday?" literally using all the elements, it's very unnatural in Korean.

= "어제 <the name of the other person> 씨는 뭐를 했어요?"

So, unless you are talking about a THIRD person, you don't need to say the name of the other person here, so it becomes

= "어제 뭐를 했어요?"

And since it's also clear that "뭐" (= what) is NOT the subject of the sentence, (it's the PERSON that did WHAT, not the other way around) you can drop 를 there.

= "어제 뭐 했어요?"

LEVEL 2 LESSON 2

When do you need to use object marking particles?

You need to use them when you want to clarify the relation between the object word and the verb. When the object and the verb are close, it's very easy. You can either add the particle or not. It doesn't make too much difference. But when the object word is far away from the verb, the relation or the connection between the words are weakened, so you need the particle to be used to make the meaning clear.

텔레비전 봐요. = I watch TV.

↓

텔레비전 봐요? = Do you watch TV?

↓

텔레비전 자주 봐요? = Do you watch TV often?

↓

텔레비전(을) 일주일에 몇 번 봐요? = How many times a week do you watch TV?

As the object of the sentences (텔레비전) gets further and further away from the verb (봐요), you need to make the relation of the words clearer by using the object marking particle.

LEVEL 2 LESSON 3

After two previous lessons that introduced rather heavy topics (future tense and object marking particles), we would like to introduce something very easy to learn yet very useful to know. Like many languages in the world, there are many conjunctions in the Korean language. In this lesson we are introducing two of them: **그리고** and **그래서**.

1. 그리고 [geu-ri-go]

그리고 [geu-ri-go] has the meaning of "**and**" and "**and then**", depending on the context.

그리고 is used both for linking nouns and phrases, but in colloquial situations, 그리고 is more commonly used for linking phrases.

Example (linking nouns)

- 커피, 빵, 그리고 물 [keo-pi, ppang, geu-ri-go mul] = coffee, bread **and** water

Example (linking phrases)

(1) 친구를 만났어요. [chin-gu-reul man-na-sseo-yo]

- 친구 = friend
- 를 = object marking particle
- 만나다 = to meet
- 만났어요 = past tense of 만나다

LEVEL 2 LESSON 3

(2) 밥을 먹었어요. [ba-beul meo-geo-sseo-yo]

- 밥 = rice, meal
- 을 = object marking particle
- 먹다 = to eat
- 먹었어요 = past tense of 먹다

(1) and (2) = 친구를 만났어요 and 밥을 먹었어요.

= 친구를 만났어요. 그리고 밥을 먹었어요.

2. 그래서 [geu-rae-seo]

그래서 [geu-rae-seo] has the meaning of "therefore" and "so", and just like in English, you can use this word between two sentences to show a logical relation between the two or more sentences.

Example

(1) 오늘 비가 왔어요. [o-neul bi-ga wa-sseo-yo]

- 오늘 = today
- 비가 오다 = to rain
- 비가 왔어요 = past tense of 비가 오다

LEVEL 2 LESSON 3

(2) **집에 있었어요.** [ji-be i-sseo-sseo-yo]

- 집 = house, home
- 있다 = to be
- 있었어요 = past tense of 있다

(1) + (2) = **오늘 비가 왔어요. therefore 집에 있었어요.**

= **오늘은 비가 왔어요. 그래서 집에 있었어요.**

More sample sentences:

1. **김치는 맛있어요. 그리고 한국 음식이에요.**

[gim-chi-neun ma-si-sseo-yo. geu-ri-go han-guk eum-si-gi-e-yo]

= Kimchi is delicious. And it is Korean food.

- 김치 = Kimchi
- 맛있다 = to be delicious
- 한국 음식 = Korean food

2. **저는 학생이에요. 그리고 프랑스어를 공부해요.**

[jeo-neun hak-saeng-i-e-yo. geu-ri-go peu-rang-seu-eo-reul gong-bu-hae-yo]

= I am a student. And I am studying French.

LEVEL 2 LESSON 3

- 저 = I (humble)
- 학생 = student
- 프랑스어 = French (language)
- 공부하다 = to study

3. 저는 학생이에요. 그래서 돈이 없어요.

[jeo-neun hak-saeng-i-e-yo. geu-rae-seo do-ni eop-seo-yo]

= I am a student. So I don't have money.

- 돈 = money
- 없다 = to not be, to not exist

4. 김치는 맛있어요. 그래서 김치를 많이 먹어요.

[gim-chi-neun ma-si-sseo-yo. geu-rae-seo gim-chi-reul ma-ni meo-geo-yo]

= Kimchi is delicious. So I eat a lot of Kimchi.

- 많이 = a lot in quantity or frequency
- 먹다 = to eat

LEVEL 2 LESSON 4

In the previous lesson, one of the words that we introduced was 그리고 [geu-ri-go], which means "and" and is used to link both nouns and phrases. But 그리고 is not the only word in Korean that means "and". In fact there are many different ways to say "and" in Korean. We are going to introduce two more in this lesson.

하고 [ha-go] = and

** 하고 is used like a particle and attached right after a noun without space.

Example

이거 [i-geo] = this, this thing

이거 **하고** 이거 [i-geo-ha-go i-geo] = this and this

이거 **하고** 이거 주세요. [i-geo-ha-go i-geo ju-se-yo] = Give me this and this.

(이)랑 [(i)rang] = and

** If a noun ends in a vowel, you use **랑** after it and if it ends with a final consonant, you use **이랑**, to make it easier to pronounce.

** **(이)랑** and **하고** are almost always interchangeable, but **(이)랑** is more colloquial and casual, so **(이)랑** is not very commonly used in very formal settings.

Example

우유 [u-yu] = milk

빵 [ppang] = bread

우유 **랑** 빵 [u-yu-rang ppang] = milk and bread

우유 **랑** 빵 샀어요. [u-yu-rang ppang sa-sseo-yo] = I bought milk and bread.

LEVEL 2 LESSON 4

Another meaning of 하고 and (이)랑

Both **하고** and **(이)랑** are used to mean "and" and connect nouns, but depending on the context, it can also mean "with". And it is usually very easy to tell which meaning it takes.

친구하고 영화 봤어요.

[chin-gu-ha-go yeong-hwa bwa-sseo-yo]

= I saw a movie with a friend.

** Note that it's unlikely that this sentence means "I watched [a friend and a movie]."

누구랑 갔어요?

[nu-gu-rang ga-sseo-yo?]

= Who did you go with?

If you want to make your meaning much more clear, you can add the word **같이** [ga-chi] after **하고** or **(이)랑**. **같이** means "together" so **하고 같이** or **(이)랑 같이** means "together with".

So while **친구하고** 영화 봤어요. makes perfect sense, if you say **친구하고 같이** 영화 봤어요, it's even better. The same goes for **누구랑** 갔어요? and **누구랑 같이** 갔어요?

More sample sentences by our friends!

LEVEL 2 LESSON 4

경미: **남자친구하고 데이트할 거예요.**

[nam-ja-chin-gu-ha-go de-i-teu-hal geo-ye-yo]

= I'm going to go on a date with my boyfriend.

경미: **매운 거랑 단 거 좋아해요.**

[mae-un geo-rang dan geo jo-a-hae-yo]

= I like spicy foods and sweet foods.

석진: **대통령하고 춤을 출 거예요.**

[dae-tong-ryeong-ha-go chu-meul chul geo-ye-yo]

= I'm going to dance with the President.

석진: **선생님하고 밥을 먹을 거예요.**

[seon-saeng-nim-ha-go ba-beul meo-geul geo-ye-yo]

= I'm going to eat with my teacher.

영주: **내일 선생님하고 경복궁에 갈 거예요.**

[nae-il seon-saeng-nim-ha-go gyeong-bok-gung-e gal geo-ye-yo]

= I'm going to go to 경복 Palace with my teacher tomorrow.

영주: **어제 홍대하고 신촌에 갔어요.**

[eo-je hong-dae-ha-go sin-cho-ne ga-sseo-yo]

= I went to 홍대 and 신촌 yesterday.

** 홍대 and 신촌 are both popular hang out spots for young people.

LEVEL 2 LESSON 5

In this lesson, we are going to introduce the **names of the days in a week**.

월요일 [wo-ryo-il] = Monday

화요일 [hwa-yo-il] = Tuesday

수요일 [su-yo-il] = Wednesday

목요일 [mo-gyo-il] = Thursday

금요일 [geu-myo-il] = Friday

토요일 [to-yo-il] = Saturday

일요일 [i-ryo-il] = Sunday

The only part that changes in the names for the days of the week is the first letter. The second and the third letters together, 요일 means "day of the week" and 월, 화, 수, 목, 금, 토, 일 are the unique names of the days.

월 [wol] = the Moon

화 [hwa] = fire

수 [su] = water

목 [mok] = tree

금 [geum] = gold, iron

토 [to] = earth, soil, ground

일 [il] = the Sun

Many of the names for the days of the week are related to the names of the planets in our Solar System.

화요일 = Tuesday / 화성 [hwa-seong] = Mars

LEVEL 2 LESSON 5

수요일 = Wednesday / 수성 [su-seong] = Mercury

목요일 = Thursday / 목성 [mok-seon] = Jupiter

금요일 = Friday / 금성 [geum-seong] = Venus

토요일 = Saturday / 토성 [to-seong] = Saturn

Sample sentences from our friends!

란: 저는 금요일마다 밤새 술을 마셔요.

[jeo-neun geu-myo-il-ma-da ban-sae su-reul ma-syeo-yo]

= I drink all night long every Friday.

란: 토요일에는 소풍을 갈 거예요.

[to-yo-i-re-neun so-pung-eul gal geo-ye-yo]

= I'm going to go on a picnic on Saturday.

미경: 어제는 진짜 신나는 금요일이었어요.

[eo-je-neun jin-jja sin-na-neun geu-myo-il-i-eo-sseo-yo]

= Yesterday was a really exciting Friday.

미경: 저는 월요일에 영화를 봤어요.

[jeo-neun wo-ryo-i-re yeong-hwa-reul bwa-sseo-yo]

= I watched a movie on Monday.

혜진: 토요일 저녁에는 새로운 언어 공부를 시작해요.

[to-yo-il jeo-nyeo-ge-neun sae-ro-un eo-neo gong-bu-reul si-ja-jae-yo]

= This Saturday evening, I'm going to start studying a new language.

LEVEL 2 LESSON 6

In this lesson, we are introducing two more conjunctive words that you can use at the beginning of sentences. These two words both means "but" or "however".

그렇지만 [geu-reo-chi-man] = but, however

그런데 [geu-reon-de] = but, however

Example

1.

피곤해요. 그렇지만 영화 보고 싶어요.

[pi-gon-hae-yo. geu-reo-chi-man yeong-hwa bo-go si-peo-yo.]

= I'm tired. But I want to see a movie.

2.

피곤해요. 그런데 영화 보고 싶어요.

[pi-gon-hae-yo. geu-reon-de yeong-hwa bo-go si-peo-yo]

= I'm tired. But I want to see a movie.

** 그렇지만 [geu-reo-chi-man] and 그런데 [geu-reon-de] both mean "but" or "however" but there is some difference between the usages of these two words. Look at the following examples.

1.

어제 이거 샀어요. 그렇지만 정말 커요.

[eo-je i-geo sa-sseo-yo. geu-reo-chi-man jeong-mal keo-yo.]

= I bought this yesterday. "그렇지만" it's really big.

LEVEL 2 LESSON 6

2.

어제 이거 샀어요. 그런데 정말 커요.

[eo-je i-geo sa-sseo-yo. geu-reon-de jeong-mal keo-yo.]

= I bought this yesterday. "그런데" it's really big.

In sentence #1, 그렇지만 means "but" or "however" so the speaker is contrasting the two facts - "having bought this yesterday" and "this being too big" - so it sounds like the speaker is disappointed that it's very big.

In sentence #2, 그런데 means "but" but at the same time it can mean "and" as well. If what the speaker is implying is the meaning of "and", the entire sentence can mean "I bought this yesterday, and it's really big." or "I bought this yesterday, and as I found out, it's really big."

In summary,

그렇지만 = "but"

그런데 = "but" or "and", depending on the context

If you want to contrast two sentences and say "A + but + B" you can choose to use either 그렇지만 or 그런데.

If you want to introduce two actions or states that occurred one after another, and if the first sentence works as background information for the second sentence, only use 그런데.

어제 학교에 갔어요. 그렇지만 일요일이었어요.

[eo-je hak-gyo-e ga-sseo-yo. geu-reo-chi-man i-ryo-il-i-eo-sseo-yo.]

LEVEL 2 LESSON 6

= I went to school yesterday. But it was Sunday.

어제 학교에 갔어요. 그런데 일요일이었어요.

[eo-je hak-gyo-e ga-sseo-yo. geu-reon-de i-ryo-il-i-eo-sseo-yo.]

= I went to school yesterday. But it was Sunday.

= I went to school yesterday. And by the way, it was Sunday.

= I went to school yesterday. And as I found out after I went, it was Sunday.

As you can see, 그런데 can be used for a wider variety of meanings, and in addition to that, 그렇지만 has a very formal nuance to it, so in actual everyday conversations, 그런데 is much more commonly used than 그렇지만, and 그렇지만 is more commonly used in written language.

Sample sentences of our friends

경미: 어제 과음했어요. 그런데 말짱해요.

[eo-je gwa-eum-hae-sseo-yo. geu-reon-de mal-jjang-hae-yo.]

과음하다 [gwa-eum-ha-da] = to drink too much

말짱하다 [mal-jjang-ha-da] = 멀쩡하다 [meol-jjeong-ha-da] = to be perfectly okay

= I drank way too much yesterday. But I'm okay now.

미경: 어제 밤 늦게 잤어요. 그런데 전혀 피곤하지 않아요.

[eo-je bam neut-ge ja-sseo-yo. geu-reon-de jeon-hyeo pi-gon-ha-ji a-na-yo.]

늦게 [neut-ge] = late, at a late hour

전혀 [jeon-hyeo] = not at all

피곤하다 [pi-gon-ha-da] = to be tired

= I went to bed late last night. But I'm not tired at all.

LEVEL 2 LESSON 6

미경: 저는 매일 운동을 해요. 그런데 살이 빠지지 않아요.

[jeo-neun mae-il un-dong-eul hae-yo. geu-reon-de sa-ri ppa-ji-ji a-na-yo.]

매일 [mae-il] = everyday

살이 빠지다 [sa-ri ppa-ji-da] = to lose weight

= I work out everyday. But I don't lose any weight.

효성: 어제까지는 친구였어요. 그런데 오늘부터는 애인이예요.

[eo-je-kka-ji-neun chin-gu-yeo-sseo-yo. geu-reon-de o-neul-bu-teo-neun ae-in-i-e-yo.]

애인 [ae-in] = lover, girlfriend or boyfriend

= Until yesterday, we were friends. But from today, we are dating each other.

효성: 저는 친구가 없어요. 그런데 왕따는 아니예요.

[jeo-neun chin-gu-ga eop-seo-yo. geu-reon-de wang-tta-neun a-ni-e-yo.]

왕따 [wang-tta] = outcast, loner, someone who is bullied by others

= I don't have friends, but I'm not a loner.

LEVEL 2 LESSON 7

In this lesson, let us learn how to say 'to' someone, and 'from' someone. Before you learn these expressions, please remember that when it comes to particles that link words together, there aren't always direct (and correct) translations between English and Korean. So it is important to understand the characteristics and roles of these particles and words, rather than just memorizing the similar counterparts in English.

To say "to someone" or "from someone", you can use the words 한테 [han-te] and 한테서 [han-te-seo]. There are words that have the same characteristics, which are 에게 [e-ge] and 에게서 [e-ge-seo], but since 에게 and 에게서 are mainly used in written language, let us focus on 한테 and 한테서 in this lesson.

한테 [han-te] = "to" someone, "from" someone

한테서 [han-te-seo] = "from" someone

Notice the difference?

Yes, just like you are thinking now, 한테 and 한테서 have mixed meanings and functions. And especially 한테 can mean 'to' and 'from'. So the meaning can only be completely understood through looking at the context.

Although 한테 and 한테서 have the meaning of "to" or "from", you can only use them about people. You can not use these words about objects or places.

- "to a friend" = friend + 한테 (O)

- "to Seoul" = Seoul + 한테 (X)

LEVEL 2 LESSON 7

Examples

저한테 [jeo-han-te] = to me, from me

친 구한테 [chin-gu-han-te] = to a friend, from a friend

누구한테 [nu-gu-han-te] = to whom, from whom

저 한테서 [jeo-han-te-seo] = from me

친구한테서 [chin-gu-han-te-seo] = from a friend

누구한테서 [nu-gu-han-te-seo] = from whom

** When used with a verb that already expresses a passive voice, 한테 can mean "by" as well. For example, 맞다 [mat-da] means "to be correct" but in another meaning, it can be "to be beaten" or "to be hit". So A에게 맞다 can be translated as "to be beaten by A".

Sample sentences by our friends

경미: 남자친구한테 차였어요.

[nam-ja-chin-gu-han-te cha-yeo-sseo-yo.]

= I was dumped by my boyfriend.

남자친구 [nam-ja-chin-gu] = boyfriend

차이다 [cha-i-da] = to be dumped

규환: 너한테서 풍기는 암내가 진국이에요.

[neo-han-te-seo pung-gi-neun am-nae-ga jin-gu-gi-e-yo.]

= Your armpit smell is terrible.

풍기다 [pung-gi-da] = give off a smell

암내 [am-nae] = armpit smell

진국이다 [jin-guk-i-da] = to be very strong, to be very hardcore, to be superb

LEVEL 2 LESSON 7

규환: 저한테 암내 나요?

[jeo-han-te-seo am-nae-na-yo?]

= Do I have a strong armpit smell?

나다 [na-da] = to give off a smell

란: 그건 전 남자친구한테서 받은 거예요.

[geu-geon jeon nam-ja-chin-gu-han-te-seo ba-deun geo-ye-yo.]

= That one? I received it from my ex-boyfriend.

전 남자친구 [jeon nam-ja-chin-gu] = ex-boyfriend

받다 [bat-da] = to receive

란: 그 남자한테 얻을 건 별로 없을 거예요.

[geu nam-ja-han-te eo-deul geon byeol-lo eop-seul geo-ye-yo.]

= You won't be getting much out of him.

얻다 [eot-da] = to obtain, to acquire, to get

별로 [byeol-lo] = not so much, not much

석진: 너한테 할 말이 있어.

[neo-han-te hal ma-ri i-sseo.]

= I have something to say to you.

LEVEL 2 LESSON 8

Now it's TIME to talk about TIME!

In Korean, as we have introduced already, there are two number systems, and most of the time, these two number systems are used in separate occasions or they replace each other in a sentence. But when it comes to talking about what time it is, both of the systems are used at the same time.

Let's review the numbers.

Native Korean numbers

- 1 하나 [ha-na]
- 2 둘 [dul]
- 3 셋 [set]
- 4 넷 [net]
- 5 다섯 [da-seot]
- 6 여섯 [yeo-seot]
- 7 일곱 [il-gop]
- 8 여덟 [yeo-deol]
- 9 아홉 [a-hop]
- 10 열 [yeol]
- 11 열하나 [yeol-ha-na]
- 12 열둘 [yeol-dul]

When you say the hour, you use these native Korean numbers. And number 1, 2, 3 and 4 change their forms a little.

Number + 시 [si] = hour

LEVEL 2 LESSON 8

하나 + 시 = 한 시 [han si] = 1 o'clock (not 하나 시)

둘 + 시 = 두 시 [du si] = 2 o'clock (not 둘 시)

셋 + 시 = 세 시 [se si] = 3 o'clock (not 셋 시)

넷 + 시 = 네 시 [ne si] = 4 o'clock (not 넷 시)

다섯 시 [da-seot si] = 5 o'clock

여섯 시 [yeo-seot si] = 6 o'clock

일곱 시 [il-gop si] = 7 o'clock

여덟 시 [yeo-deol si] = 8 o'clock

아홉 시 [a-hop si] = 9 o'clock

열 시 [yeol si] = 10 o'clock

열한 시 [yeol-han si] = 11 o'clock

열두 시 [yeol-du si] = 12 o'clock

Now, let us review some sino-Korean numbers

1 일 [il]

2 이 [i]

3 삼 [sam]

4 사 [sa]

5 오 [o]

6 육 [yuk]

7 칠 [chil]

8 팔 [pal]

9 구 [gu]

10 십 [sip]

From 11 and on are just combinations of these ten numbers.

LEVEL 2 LESSON 8

When you say the minute, you use these sino-Korean numbers.

Number + 분 [bun] = minute

일 분 [il bun] = 1 minute

이 분 [i bun] = 2 minutes

오 분 [o bun] = 5 minutes

십 분 [sip bun] = 10 minutes

십 오 분 [si-bo bun] = 15 minutes

삼십 분 [sam-sip bun] = 30 minutes

오십오 분 [o-si-bo bun] = 55 minutes

So you use these two parts together to tell the time.

1:05 = 1 + 시 + 5 + 분 = 한 시 오 분 [han si o bun]

1:15 = 1 + 시 + 15 + 분 = 한 시 십오 분 [han si si-bo bun]

3:20 = 3 + 시 + 20 + 분 = 세 시 이십 분 [se si i-sip bun]

10:00 = 10 + 시 = 열 시 [yeol si]

10:30 = 10 + 시 + 30 + 분 = 열 시 삼십 분 [yeol si sam-sip bun]

** N o'clock sharp is expressed with the word 정각 [jeong-gak].

** Instead of 30분 [sam-sip-bun] you can say 반 [ban], meaning "half".

How to ask the time

LEVEL 2 LESSON 8

지금 몇 시예요?

[ji-geum myeot si-ye-yo?]

= What time is it now?

지금 몇 시 몇 분이에요?

[ji-geum myeot si myeot-bun-i-e-yo?]

= What hour and what minute is it?

Sample sentences by our friends

미경: 저는 매일 아침 9시까지 출근해요. 퇴근은 보통 6시 30분에 해요.

[jeo-neun mae-il a-chim a-hop-si-kka-ji chul-geun-hae-yo. toe-geu-neun bo-tong yeo-seot-si sam-sip-bun-e hae-yo.]

= I get to work by 9 every morning. I usually leave work at 6:30.

매일 [mae-il] = everyday

출근하다 [chul-geun-ha-da] = to go to work

퇴근 [toe-geun] = leaving work, finishing work

보통 [bo-tong] = usually, normally

영주: 내일 수업이 4시 반에 끝나요.

[nae-il su-eo-bi ne-si ba-ne kkeut-na-yo]

= My classes finish at 4:30 tomorrow.

내일 [nae-il] = tomorrow

수업 [su-eop] = class

끝나다 [kkeut-na-da] = to finish

영주: 오늘 몇 시에 친구를 만나요?

[o-neun myeot si-e chin-gu-reul man-na-yo?]

= What time do you meet your friend today?

LEVEL 2 LESSON 8

만나다 [man-na-da] = to meet

혜진: 아침 7시 지하철 2호선은 전쟁터예요.

[a-chim il-gop-si ji-ha-cheol 2-ho-seo-neun jeon-jaeng-teo-ye-yo]

= At 7 o'clock in the morning, subway line number 2 is a battlefield.

지하철 [ji-ha-cheol] = subway

2 호선 [i-ho-seon] = line number 2

전쟁터 [jeon-jaeng-teo] = battlefield

LEVEL 2 LESSON 9

In Korean, there are many words that are used as counting units. In English, you can just say the number and then the word for what you are counting (i.e. a person, two cats, three houses, etc), but in Korean, you need to use separate counters for different subjects. You can compare the Korean counters to the English words that are used for counting things that are uncountable nouns (i.e. bread, water, butter, etc).

** Since there are too many counters to remember all at once, it is better to learn them one by one as you practice using certain words.

Example

English: number + noun

- a car, two pencils, three books, four people, etc

Korean: noun + number + counter

- "pencil + one + counter for pencil"
- "student + three + counter for people"

There are literally hundreds of counters in the Korean language, but not all of them are always used. As long as they understand each other, some Korean people just use the simplest and easiest counter they remember to count certain words and it does not confuse anyone. For example, in Korean, a pencil is 연필 [yeon-pi] and the counter for pencils is 자루 [ja-ru]. The word 자루 [ja-ru] is also used for counting pens, bags containing grains, and also knives. So instead of using the word 자루 all the time for 연필, many Korean people just use the general counter for things, which is 개 [gae].

LEVEL 2 LESSON 9

연필 한 자루 [yeon-pil han ja-ru] = one pencil

연필 한 개 [yeon-pil han gae] = one pencil

This does NOT always work for all counters. Some counters that are very commonly used are almost never replaced with 개. For example, the counter for cars is 대 [dae], and it is never replaced with 개 [gae] just to simplify it. In other words, changing 연필 한 자루 to 연필 한 개 is okay, but changing 차 한 대 to 차 한 개 is not okay and considered incorrect.

This is only because the counter 대 is much more frequently used than the counter 자루, but basically, as a learner of the Korean language, it is much better to be able to use an incorrect counter and be given feedback rather than choose not to say anything.

In this lesson, remember these two most frequently used counters, 개 and 명.

개 [gae] in Korean means "a dog", but when it's used as a counter, it is used for counting things and objects.

명 [myeong] is used for counting people.

And when you use counters, most of the time, they are used along with native Korean numbers.

Numbers + 개 [gae] (counter for things)

1 = 하나 --> 한 개

2 = 둘 --> 두 개

LEVEL 2 LESSON 9

3 = 셋 --> 세 개

4 = 넷 --> 네 개

** Remember this irregularity rule for the numbers 1, 2, 3, 4, and 20?

5 = 다섯 --> 다섯 개

6 = 여섯 --> 여섯 개

7 = 일곱 --> 일곱 개

8 = 여덟 --> 여덟 개

9 = 아홉 --> 아홉 개

10 = 열 --> 열 개

From 11 to 20

열한 개, 열두 개, 열세 개, 열네 개, 열다섯 개, 열여섯 개, 열일곱 개, 열여덟 개, 열아홉 개, 스무 개

From 21 to 30

스무 개, 스물한 개, 스물두 개, 스물세 개, 스물네 개, 스물다섯 개, 스물여섯 개, 스물일곱 개, 스물여덟 개, 스물아홉 개, 서른 개

Example

one apple = 사과 [sa-gwa] + 1 + 개 [gae] = 사과 한 개 [sa-gwa han gae]

two stones = 돌 [dol] + 2 + 개 [gae] = 돌 두 개 [dol du gae]

five balls = 공 [gong] + 5 + 개 [gae] = 공 다섯 개 [gong da-seot gae]

how many (things) = 몇 [myeot] + 개 [gae] = 몇 개 [myeot gae]

Now, for people, you use the counter 명 [myeong].

LEVEL 2 LESSON 9

one person = 한 명 [han myeong]

two students = 학생 [hak-saeng] + 2 + 명 [myeong] = 학생 두 명 [hak-saeng du myeong]

three friends = 친구 [chin-gu] + 3 + 명 [myeong] = 친구 세 명 [chin-gu se myeong]

how many (people) = 몇 [myeot] + 명 [myeong] = 몇 명 [myeot myeong]

For people, however, the word for 'people' or 'person' itself, which is 사람 [sa-ram] is used as well, when you are just generally referring to a relatively small number of people, without specifying who they are.

Example

Q: How many people are there?

A: There are 10 people.

= Q: 몇 명 있어요? [myeot myeong i-sseo-yo?]

= A: 10명 있어요. [yeol-myeong i-sseo-yo.]

= Q: 몇 사람 있어요? [myeot sa-ram i-sseo-yo?]

= A: 열 사람 있어요. [eol sa-ram i-sseo-yo.] (This is unnatural.)

--> A: 두 사람 있어요. [du sa-ram i-sseo-yo.] (two people - this is okay.)

In case you want to learn about some more counters in advance, here are a few commonly used ones.

병 [byeong] = bottles

마리 [ma-ri] = animals

대 [dae] = cars, punches

권 [gwon] = books

LEVEL 2 LESSON 9

장 [jang] = paper, pages, tickets

Sample sentences by our friends

영주: 아줌마 김치찌개 한 개 주세요.

[a-jum-ma gim-chi-jji-gae han gae ju-se-yo.]

= Ma'am, give me one kimchi stew.

찌개 [jji-gae] = stew

영주: 소주도 한 병 주세요.

[so-ju-do han byeong ju-se-yo.]

= Give me a bottle of soju, as well.

효성: 다 먹고 세 개 남았어요.

[da meok-go se gae na-ma-sseo-yo.]

= I ate everything and there are three left.

다 [da] = all

남다 [nam-da] = to remain, to be left

효성: 사탕 몇 개 먹을래?

[sa-tang myeot gae meo-geul-lae?]

= How many candies do you want to eat?

사탕 [sa-tang] = candy

먹다 [meok-da] = to eat

LEVEL 2 LESSON 10

Here is another addition about TENSES! In this lesson, we are introducing how to make sentences in the present progressive form in Korean.

Examples of present progressive sentences in English.

1. I'm reading a book.
2. What are you watching?
3. He's helping me a lot.

Basic construction:

- to be -ing = Verb stem + -고 있다 [-go it-da]

Present progressive:

- am/are/is -ing = Verb stem + -고 있어요 [-go i-sseo-yo]

Past progressive:

- was/were -ing = Verb stem + -고 있었어요 [-go i-sseo-sseo-yo]

Future progressive:

- will be -ing = Verb stem + -고 있을 거예요 [-go i-sseul geo-ye-yo]

Past and future progressive sentences are certainly very commonly used in everyday Korean as well, but if you basically have a very thorough understanding of how to use the present progressive form, past and future progressive forms are very easy to use too.

When using present progressive tense, there are two important points to remember:

LEVEL 2 LESSON 10

1)

Literal translation between Korean present progressive sentences and English present progressive sentences does not always work. Especially if you use the present progressive form in English to indicate the future.

For example, if you say "I'm not going to work tomorrow." in English, you are not talking about the present but the future, so in Korean you can not use the -고 있어요 form.

2)

In everyday conversations, sentences that need to be in the present progressive form do not always take the -고 있어요 form. Korean people often just use the plain present tense form even for sentences that take the present progress tense in English.

Example

Instead of saying:

A: 지금 뭐 하고 있어요? [ji-geum mwo ha-go i-sseo-yo?] = What are you doing now?

B: 공부하고 있어요. [gong-bu-ha-go i-sseo-yo] = I am studying.

many people say:

A: 지금 뭐 해요? [ji-geum mwo hae-yo?] = What are you doing now?

B: 공부해요. [gong-bu-hae-yo] = I am studying.

Sample sentences

일하다 [il-ha-da] = to work

일하 고 있어요. [il-ha-go i-sseo-yo] = I am working.

LEVEL 2 LESSON 10

일하고 있었어요. [il-ha-go i-sseo-sseo-yo] = I was working.

일하고 있을 거예요. [il-ha-go i-sseul geo-ye-yo] = I'll be working.

듣 다 [deut-da] = to listen

듣고 있어요. [deut-go i-sseo-yo] = I am listening.

듣고 있었어요. [deut-go i-sseo-sseo-yo] = I was listening.

듣고 있을 거예요. [deut-go i-sseul geo-ye-yo] = I will be listening.

Sample sentences by our friends

규환: 너 여기서 뭐 하고 있어요?

[neo yeo-gi-seo mwo ha-go i-sseo-yo?]

= What are you doing here?

여기서 [yeo-gi-seo] = 여기에서 [yeo-gi-e-seo] = here, in this place, at this place

규환: 노숙하고 있어요.

[no-su-ka-go i-sseo-yo.]

= I'm sleeping on the street.

노숙하다 [no-su-ka-da] = to sleep on the street

미경: 지금 당신을 생각하고 있어요.

[ji-geum dang-si-neul saeng-ga-ka-go i-sseo-yo.]

= I'm thinking about you now.

당신 [dang-sin] = you (formal, written language)

효성: 강의가 지루해서 꾸벅꾸벅 졸고 있어요.

[gang-ui-ga ji-ru-hae-seo kku-beok-kku-beok jol-go i-sseo-yo.]

LEVEL 2 LESSON 10

= The lecture is boring so I'm dozing off.

강의 [gang-ui] = lecture, class

지루하다 [ji-ru-ha-da] = to be boring

꾸벅꾸벅 [kku-beok-kku-beok] = an adjective describing the action of dozing off

졸다 [jol-da] = to doze

효성: 잠도 안 자고 영어 공부 하고 있어요.

[jam-do an ja-go yeong-eo gong-bu ha-go i-sseo-yo.]

= I'm even trying to stay awake and I'm studying English.

석진: 저 사람 봐요. 자면서 이야기하고 있어요.

[jeo sa-ram bwa-yo. ja-myeon-seo i-ya-gi-ha-go i-sseo-yo.]

= Look at that person. He is talking while sleeping.

LEVEL 2 LESSON 11

Now in this lesson, we are going to look at how to introduce oneself in Korean. Through our previous lessons, we have looked at various tenses, sentence patterns and grammar points, and using what you have already learned, you can already express a lot about yourself. Here in this lesson, we will introduce some more vocabulary words and phrases that are necessary specifically for introducing oneself.

There can be hundreds and thousands of different manners in which one can introduce oneself, but to generalize the self-introduction process by a great deal, you normally deliver these pieces of information:

- name
- age
- place of living
- work
- school
- family members
- hobby
- greetings

You don't have to try to memorize all the expressions necessary for introducing yourself in Korean as the situation might vary and you might have a lot of information and stories unique to yourself, no single detailed chapter on self-introduction can cover everything you need to know. But basically, the sentences patterns that you get to use a lot are the following:

1. **ABC은/는 XYZ이에요.** [ABC-eun/neun XYZ-i-e-yo.] = ABC is XYZ.

Ex)

I'm a student. = 저는 학생이에요. [jeo-neun hak-saeng-i-e-yo.]

LEVEL 2 LESSON 11

I'm a teacher. = 저는 선생님이에요. [jeo-neun seon-saeng-nim-i-e-yo.]

I'm James. = 저는 제임스예요. [jeo-neun je-im-seu-ye-yo.]

My name is Taliana. = 제 이름은 탈리아나예요. [je i-reum-eun tal-li-a-na-ye-yo.]

My sister's name is Megumitch. = 제 여동생 이름은 메구미치예요. [je yeo-dong-saeng i-reum-eun me-gu-mi-chi-ye-yo.]

I am 30 years old. = 저는 30살이에요. [jeo-neun seo-reun-sal-i-e-yo.]

2. **ABC은/는 XYZ이/가** [ABC-eun/neun XYZ-i/ga] + **VERB** = As for ABC, XYZ + VERB.

Ex)

저는 여동생이 있어요. [jeo-neun yeo-dong-saeng-i i-sseo-yo.] = I have a younger sister. (lit. "As for me, a younger sister exists.")

저는 취미가 수영이에요. [jeo-neun chwi-mi-ga su-yeong-i-e-yo.] = My hobby is swimming. (lit. "As for me, the hobby, swimming is.")

3. **ABC은/는 XYZ에/에서** [ABC-eun/neun XYZ-e/e-seo] + **VERB** = ABC + VERB + in XYZ.

Ex)

저는 서울에 살아요. [jeo-neun seo-u-re sa-ra-yo.] = I live in Seoul.

저는 은행에서 일해요. [jeo-neun eun-haeng-e-seo il-hae-yo.] = I work in a bank.

저는 대학교에서 중국어를 가르쳐요. [jeo-neun dae-hak-gyo-e-seo jung-gu-geo-reul ga-reu-chyeo-yo.] = I teach Chinese in college.

저는 미국에서 태어났어요. [jeo-neun mi-gu-ge-seo tae-eo-na-sseo-yo.] = I was born in the USA.

Some vocabulary words that you might want to know:

나이 [na-i] = age

취미 [chwi-mi] = hobby

LEVEL 2 LESSON 11

직장 [jik-jang] = workplace

직업 [ji-geop] = job = 하는 일 [ha-neun il]

사는 곳 [sa-neun got] = place of living

가족 [ga-jok] = family

친척 [chin-cheok] = relatives, extended family

대학생 [dae-hak-saeng] = university student

고등학생 [go-deung-hak-saeng] = high school student

중학생 [jung-hak-saeng] = middle school student

초등학생 [cho-deung-hak-saeng] = elementary school student

Some greetings:

처음 뵙겠습니다. [cheo-eum boep-ge-sseum-ni-da] = How do you do?

반갑습니다. [ban-gap-seum-ni-da] = It's nice to meet you.

제 명함이에요. [je myeong-ham-i-e-yo] = It's my business card.

다음에 또 뵈요. [da-eu-me tto bwae-yo] = See you again next time.

이야기 많이 들었어요. [i-ya-gi ma-ni deu-reo-sseo-yo] = I've heard a lot about you.

LEVEL 2 LESSON 12

We have talked about numbers (both sino and native) and we also talked about how to tell the time, so why not talk about dates this time?

Names of the months

In Korean, the names for the 12 months in a year are very simple. You just have to add the word 월 [wol], which means 'month' after sino-Korean numbers.

January: 1월 [i-rwol]

February: 2월 [i-wol]

March: 3월 [sa-mwol]

April: 4월 [sa-wol]

May: 5월 [o-wol]

June: 6월 [yu-wol]

July: 7월 [chi-rwol]

August: 8월 [pa-rwol]

September: 9월 [gu-wol]

October: 10월 [si-wol]

November: 11월 [si-bi-rwol]

December: 12월 [si-bi-wol]

Which month: 몇 월 [myeot wol = myeo-dwol]

Days in a month

The days are also quite easy to say in Korean. You just have to say the sino-Korean number and add the word 일 [il], which means 'day' in Korean.

1일, 2일, 3일, 4일, ..., 29일, 30일, 31일

LEVEL 2 LESSON 12

What date: 며칠 [myeo-chil]

**** Note that 몇 월 still has the word '몇' independent from 일, and 며칠 has the word 몇 mixed with 일 and changed to 며칠 altogether.**

What month and what date: 몇 월 며칠 [myeo-dwol myeo-chil]

"What date is it?"

몇 월 며칠이에요? [myeo-dwol myeo-chil-i-e-yo?]

오늘 몇 월 며칠이에요? [o-neul myeo-dwol myeo-chil-i-e-yo?]

= What date is it today?

생일이 몇 월 며칠이에요? [saeng-il-i myeo-dwol myeo-chil-i-e-yo?₩

= What date is your birthday?

If you are mentioning a specific day, you can also use the word 언제 [eon-je], which means "when".

생일이 언제예요? [saeng-il-i eon-je-ye-yo?]

= When is your birthday?

LEVEL 2 LESSON 13

We have learned a few particles so far, such as the topic marking particles -이 and -가, and the subject marking particles -은 and -는, and also the object marking particles -을 and -를. In this lesson, let us learn about one more particle: -도 [-do].

-도 [-do] is used to represent the meaning of "also" and "too".

In English, you add the expression "too" "also" or "as well" to the sentence, but in Korean, you add the particle -도 [-do] after the noun. And when the particle -도 needs to be attached to a noun or a pronoun that already has a particle behind it, -도 can replace the particle.

Examples

- I am a student. = 저는 학생이에요. [jeo-neun hak-saeng-i-e-yo.]

- I am a student, too. = 저도 학생이에요. [jeo-do hak-saeng-i-e-yo.]

* Note that it's NOT "저는도 학생이에요."

- I brought this. = 이것 가져왔어요. [i-geot ga-jyeo-wa-sseo-yo.]

- I brought this, too. = 이것도 가져왔어요. [i-geot-do ga-jyeo-wa-sseo-yo.]

- Do you work today? = 오늘 일해요? [o-neul il-hae-yo?]

- Do you work today as well? = 오늘도 일해요? [o-neul-do il-hae-yo?]

Depending on the location of the particle -도, the meaning of the entire sentence can change.

Examples

"Please give me water." is 물 주세요. [mul ju-se-yo.] in Korean.

Now let's say you want to say "Give that water to me, as well, not just to other people." then

LEVEL 2 LESSON 13

you can say, 저도 물 주세요. [jeo-do mul-ju-se-yo.]

"Please give some water to me, too." = 저도 물 주세요.

But if you want to say "Give me not only other things but water as well." then you can say, 저물도 주세요. [jeo mul-do ju-se-yo.]

"Please also give some water to me." = 저 물도 주세요.

In this lesson, we've looked at how to use -도 with nouns and pronouns. But what if you want to say "also" or "too" about verbs, too? Let us cover that in the following lesson. Stay tuned!

LEVEL 2 LESSON 14

Using -도 with verbs

Using -도 with nouns and pronouns is relatively simple, since you just have to add -도 after a noun or a pronoun as explained in the previous lesson.

Let us review.

물 주세요. [mul ju-se-yo.] = Give me water, please.

물 **도** 주세요. [mul-do ju-se-yo.] = Give me water, **too**, please.

내일 갈 거예요. [nae-il gal geo-ye-yo.] = I will go tomorrow.

내일 **도** 갈 거예요. [nae-il-do gal geo-ye-yo.] = I will go (again) tomorrow, **too**.

Now, in order to use -도 with verbs, we need to learn how to change a verb into a noun.

Using - 도 with verbs

= Noun form of the verb + -도 하다

You can't just use -도 with the verb itself, and you have to change the verb into the noun form.

By doing this and adding the verb 하다, you are literally saying "to do + the verb in the noun form + also". It may sound complicated but this is no different from any other verb conjugation. Just remember -도 하다 [-do hada] as a set.

How do you change a verb into a noun?

There are a few different ways to change a verb into a noun. This is similar to using verbs in the "to do" and "doing" format and also using the nouns for the verbs (i.e. act and action, sing and

LEVEL 2 LESSON 14

song, etc.) but today we are looking at just one of those ways.

Adding -기 [-gi] to the verb stem to change a verb into a noun

보다 [bo-da] = to see

Noun form: 보 + -기 = 보기 [bo-gi]

보다 --> 보기도 하다 [bo-gi-do ha-da] = to also see, to even see

먹다 [meok-da] = to eat

Noun form: 먹 + -기 = 먹기 [meok-gi]

먹기 --> 먹기도 하다 [meok-gi-do ha-da] = to also eat, to even eat

More examples

잡다 [jap-da] = to catch

--> 잡기도 하다 [jap-gi-do ha-da] = to also catch, to even catch

팔다 [pal-da] = to sell

--> 팔기도 하다 [pal-gi-do ha-da] = to also sell, to even sell

사다 [sa-da] = to buy

--> 사기도 하다 [sa-gi-do ha-da] = to also buy, to even buy

**** Note that verbs that are in the form of "Noun + 하다" already (i.e. 공부하다, 청소하다, 노래하다, 준비하다, 요리하다, etc) don't have to be changed in this manner. You can just separate the noun part from 하다 and add -도 after the noun part. (i.e. 공부도 하다, 청소도 하다, 노래도 하다, 준비도 하다, 요리도 하다, etc)**

LEVEL 2 LESSON 14

Sample sentences

1.

저는 영어도 가르쳐요.

[jeo-neun yeong-eo-do ga-reu-chyeo-yo.]

= I teach English as well.

저는 영어를 가르치기도 해요.

[jeo-neun yeong-eo-reul ga-reu-chi-gi-do hae-yo.]

= I also teach English.

= I even teach English.

= I also work as an English teacher.

2.

컴퓨터도 고쳐요.

[keom-pyu-teo-do go-chyeo-yo.]

= I fix computers as well.

컴퓨터를 고치기도 해요.

[keom-pyu-teo-reul go-chi-gi-do hae-yo.]

= I also fix computers.

= I even fix computers.

LEVEL 2 LESSON 15

In this lesson, we are going to learn how to say "only" in Korean. There are a few different ways to say "only" in Korean, but the most basic way of saying it is adding -만 [-man] after a noun, a pronoun or the noun form (-기) of a verb.

1. Adding -만 after nouns and pronouns

이것 + 만 = 이것만 [i-geot-man] = only this

ex) 이것만 살 거예요. [i-geot-man sal geo-ye-yo] = I will only buy this.

저 + 만 = 저만 [jeo-man] = me only, I only

ex) 저만 들었어요. [jeo-man deu-reo-sseo-yo] = Only I heard.

커피 + 만 = 커피만 [keo-pi-man] = only coffee

ex) 아침에에는 커피만 마세요. [a-chi-me-neun keo-pi-man ma-syeo-yo] = I only drink coffee in the morning.

2. Adding -만 after noun forms of verbs

** In order to add -만 after a verb, you need to change the verb into the noun form using -기, and add -만 하다. You literally say "I only do + ~ing."

듣다 [deut-da] = to hear, to listen

듣 + 기 = 듣기 [deut-gi] = listening (noun form)

듣 + -기 + -만 하다 = 듣기만 하다 [deut-gi-man ha-da] = to only listen

LEVEL 2 LESSON 15

Ex) 듣기만 했어요. [deut-gi-man hae-sseo-yo] = I only listened (and didn't talk).

보 다 [bo-da] = to see, to look

보 + 기 = 보기 [bo-gi] = seeing, looking

보 + -기 + -만 하다 = 보기만 하다 [bo-ga-man ha-da] = to only see, to just look

Ex) 보기만 할 거예요. [bo-gi-man hal geo-ye-yo] = I will only look (and not touch it).

More sample sentences

1. 오날만 일찍 왔어요. [oneul-man il-jjik wa-sseo-yo]

= I got here early only today.

2. 맥주만 주문했어요. [maek-ju-man ju-mun-hae-sseo-yo]

= I only ordered beer.

3. 왜 이것만 샀어요? [wae i-geot-man sa-sseo-yo?]

= Why did you only buy this?

4. 어제 놀기만 했어요. [eo-je nol-gi-man hae-sseo-yo]

= I did nothing but played.

5. 영화는 집에서만 봐요. [yeong-hwa-neun ji-be-seo-man bwa-yo.]

= I watch movies only at home.

LEVEL 2 LESSON 16

In this lesson, let's look at some expressions that can make your sentences richer in context and your emphasis stronger. Sure, you can keep your sentences simple, but when you want to "really" emphasize some points, you might want to know how to say that something is "really" nice, "really" bad, or not good "at all".

Here we will introduce five words - 조금, 아주, 정말, 별로, 전혀 - and how they are used inside sentences.

조금 = a little, a bit, a little bit

정말 = really, truly

아주 = very, quite

별로 = not really, not particularly

전혀 = not at all

조금, 아주, and 정말 can be used with any sentence, but 별로 and 전혀 can only be used with negative sentences.

조금 [jo-geum] = a little, a bit, a little bit

Ex)

1. 조금 비싸요. [jo-geum bi-ssa-yo.]

= It's a little expensive.

2. 조금만 주세요. [jo-geum-man ju-se-yo.]

= Give me only a little bit.

LEVEL 2 LESSON 16

** When pronounced quickly, 조금 often becomes 좀 and is often written this way as well.

** Even when you are referring to the meaning of "quite" or "very", you can also use this word, 조금 [jo-geum], based on the assumption that the other person understands what you mean. For example, the first sample sentence, "조금 비싸요." can mean either "It's a little bit expensive." or "It's quite expensive."

정말 [jeong-mal] = really, truly

Ex)

1. 정말 빨라요. [jeong-mal ppal-la-yo.]

= It's really fast.

2. 정말 이상해요. [jeong-mal i-sang-hae-yo.]

= It's really strange.

** A word that has almost the same meaning is 진짜 [jin-jja], and 정말 is considered to be a little less casual than 진짜.

** Whereas the other words introduced here are used to describe the extent to which something is done or to describe the intensity of a certain state (i.e. very 'good', a little 'expensive' or quite 'fast'), 정말 and 진짜 can also be used to just express whether or not what's being said is true or not. (i.e. I 'really' did it.)

아주 [a-ju] = very, quite

Ex)

1. 아주 맛있어요. [a-ju ma-si-sseo-yo.]

LEVEL 2 LESSON 16

= It's very delicious.

2. 아주 멀어요. [a-ju meo-reo-yo.]

= It's very far away.

** 아주 is the most standard way of saying "very" in the written form, but more often than not, in spoken Korean, 아주 is often replaced with 정말 [jeong-mal] or 진짜 [jin-jja].

별로 [byeol-lo] = not really, not particularly

** 별로 is always used in negative sentences, regardless of whether the verb that comes after it has a negative or a positive meaning.

Ex)

1. 별로 안 비싸요. [byeol-lo an bi-ssa-yo.]

= It's not so expensive.

2. 별로 재미없어요. [byeol-lo jae-mi-eop-seo-yo.]

= It's not that interesting.

** Note that 재미없어요 is one word but it has the part '없어요' inside the word, so it's possible to say 별로 재미없어요.

3. 별로 안 나빠요. [byeol-lo an na-ppa-yo.]

= It's not too bad.

** Even if the word 나쁘다 has a negative meaning, the construction '별로 나쁘다' does not work.

LEVEL 2 LESSON 16

전혀 [jeon-hyeo] = not at all

Ex)

1. 전혀 안 바빠요. [jeon-hyeo an ba-ppa-yo.]

= I'm not busy at all.

2. 전혀 안 더워요. [jeon-hyeo an deo-wo-yo.]

= It's not hot at all.

** In spoken Korean, the expression 하나도 [ha-na-do] is more commonly used than 전혀.

LEVEL 2 LESSON 17

After studying with the previous lessons, you can now form various sentence structures in Korean. Now it's time to look at how to say that you "can" or "can't" do something.

The sentence structure you can use to say that you "can" do something is:

-(으)ㄹ 수 있다 [-(eu)l su it-da]

Example:

보다 = to see

--> 보 + -ㄹ 수 있다 = **볼 수 있다** [bol su it-da] = can see

먹다 = to eat

--> 먹 + -을 수 있다 = **먹을 수 있다** [meo-geul su it-da] = can eat

** Verb stems ending in a vowel is followed by -ㄹ 수 있다 and verb stems ending with a consonant is followed by -을 수 있다. The difference is whether you have the extra 으 or not in front of -ㄹ 수 있다, for the ease of pronunciation.

In -(으)ㄹ 수 있다, the word **수** [su] literally means an 'idea' or a 'way' for solving a problem or for getting something done, so -(으)ㄹ 수 있다 literally means "to have a way or an idea for doing" something.

Therefore, when you do NOT have "a way or an idea" for doing something, it means you can NOT do it, and in Korean it becomes -(으)ㄹ 수 없다, using 없다, the opposite word of 있다.

Example:

자다 = to sleep

LEVEL 2 LESSON 17

--> 자 + -ㄹ 수 없다 = **잘 수 없다** [jal su eop-da] = can not sleep

<--> 잘 수 있다 [jal su it-da] = can sleep

잡다 = to catch

--> 잡 + -을 수 없다 = **잡을 수 없다** [ja-beul su eop-da] = can not catch

<--> 잡을 수 있다 [ja-beul su it-da] = can catch

Another way to say -(으)ㄹ 수 없다 is using the word **못** before a verb.

-(으)ㄹ 수 없다 is the basic way to express "can not" but it is not always used in spoken Korean. A more common way to say "can not" or "to be unable to" in spoken Korean is adding **못** before a verb.

갈 수 없다 = 못 가다 [verb: 가다] = can not go

볼 수 없다 = 못 보다 [verb: 보다] = can not see

먹을 수 없다 = 못 먹다 [verb: 먹다] = can not eat

할 수 없다 = 못 하다 [verb: 하다] = can not do

Sample sentences

운전 할 수 있어요? [un-jeon hal su i-sseo-yo?]

= Can you drive? (lit. "Can you do driving?")

일본어 할 수 있어요? [il-bo-neo hal su i-sseo-yo?]

= Can you speak Japanese? (lit. "Can you do Japanese?")

이거 읽을 수 있어요? [i-geo il-geul su i-sseo-yo?]

LEVEL 2 LESSON 17

= Can you read this?

못 읽어요. [mot il-geo-yo.]

= I can't read it.

지 금 못 만나요. [ji-geum mot man-na-yo.]

= I can't meet you now.

LEVEL 2 LESSON 18

In the previous lesson we learned how to say that you "can" and "cannot" do something. In this lesson, let us look at how to say that you are "good at" or "bad at" doing something.

The basic construction for saying "to do something" is [object] + -을/를 (= object marker) + 하다 (= to do), and to this, you add **잘** [jal] or **못** [mot].

~을/를 잘 하다 = to be good at ~ (lit. to do ~ well)

~을/를 못 하다 = to be poor at ~ (lit. to do ~ poorly)

Examples

노래 [no-rae] = singing, song

노래를 잘 하다 [no-rae-reul jal ha-da] = to be good at singing, to sing well

요리 [yo-ri] = cooking, dish

요리를 못 하다 [yo-ri-reul mot ha-da] = to be poor at cooking, to cook poorly

But since 못 하다 can also mean "to be unable to do" something or "can not do" something, 잘 [jal] is often added in front of this and makes it 잘 못 하다, to make the meaning clear. By saying 잘 못 하다, you literally say that you "can not do something well" or "are unable to do something well", which is similar to being poor at it.

요리를 못 하다 = "to be poor at cooking" OR "can not cook"

요리를 잘 못 하다 = "to be poor at cooking"

More examples

수영 [su-yeong] = swimming

LEVEL 2 LESSON 18

수영을 **잘 하다** [su-yeong-eul jal ha-da]

= to be good at swimming

수영을 **못 하다** [su-yeong-eul mot ha-da]

= to be bad at swimming

OR

= can not swim

수영을 **잘 못** 하다 [su-yeong-eul jal mot ha-da]

= to be bad at swimming

Are 잘 and 못 (or 잘 못) only used with -하다 verbs?

No. Other types of verbs can be used with 잘 and 못 as well. Since the first parts of most -하다 verbs are nouns, it is easy to detach the noun part from -하다 and add 잘, 못, or 잘 못 in between, but for other types of verbs that are not in the "noun + -하다" form, you just add 잘, 못, or 잘 못 in front of the verb.

잘 달리다 = to run well, to be good at running

잘 쓰다 = to write well, to be good at writing

But when a verb is used only on their own like this, very often, the meaning isn't very clear, (i.e. 쓰다 can be both 'to write' and 'to use') and the phrase sounds incomplete, so a noun is added to the phrase to go in pairs with the verb.

잘 달리다 --> 달리를 잘 하다

LEVEL 2 LESSON 18

[lit. "to do running well"]

Here, 달리다 was changed to its noun form, 달리기 and was followed by 잘 하다.

잘 쓰다 --> 글씨를 잘 쓰다

[lit. "to write writing/letters well"]

Here, the word 글씨, meaning "writing" or "letters" was used to make the meaning of "writing" more clear, and prevent people from thinking that it might mean "to use".

Sample sentences

저는 노래를 잘 못 해요. [jeo-neun no-rae-reul jal mot hae-yo.]

= I can't sing well. / I'm not good at singing.

제 친구는 수영을 잘 해요. [je chin-gu-neun su-yeong-eul jal hae-yo.]

= My friend is good at swimming.

저는 퍼즐을 잘 풀어요. [jeo-neun peo-jeu-reul jal pu-reo-yo.]

= I am good at solving puzzles.

저는 글씨를 잘 못 써요. [jeo-neun geul-ssi-reul jal mot sseo-yo.]

= My handwriting is not good.

저는 글을 잘 못 써요. [jeo-neun geu-reul jal mot sseo-yo.]

= I'm not good at writing.

매운 거 잘 먹어요? [mae-un geo jal meo-geo-yo?]

= Are you good at eating spicy food?

LEVEL 2 LESSON 19

In Level 2 Lesson number 14, we learned how to change a verb into a noun form, in order to learn how to add the meaning of "also" to a verb in Korean. To review a little, in order to add -도 after a verb, you need to add **-기** after a verb stem and then add 하다. (i.e. 먹기도 해요.)

In this lesson, we are going to look at **a more general way of making nouns out of action verbs**. And understanding how this works will help you a great deal in understanding how to form various other expressions in Korean.

-는 것 [-neun geot]

This is the most basic and general way of changing an action verb into a noun. 것 [geot] originally means "a thing" "an object" or "stuff", but when it is used like this, it can also mean "a fact" or "an act".

Construction:

- Verb stem + -는 것

By changing verbs into nouns, [verb stem + -는 것] can take many different meanings.

1. "doing" something
2. the act of "doing" something
3. the thing that you "do"
4. what you "do"

Examples:

보다 [bo-da] = to see

보는 것 [bo-neun geot] = seeing, the act of seeing, the thing that you see, what I watch

LEVEL 2 LESSON 19

가다 [ga-da] = to go

가는 것 [ga-neun geot] = going, the act of going

먹다 [meok-da] = to eat

먹는 것 [meok-neun geot] = eating, the act of eating, the thing that you eat, what you eat

사다 [sa-da] = to buy

사는 것 [sa-neun geot] = buying, the act of buying, the thing that you buy, what you buy

Note that this is only for verbs in the present tense. We will look at how to say things like "the thing you will buy" or "the thing you bought" in our future lessons, but for your reference, you use -(으)ㄴ 것 for the past tense and -(으)ㄹ 것 for the future tense.

산 것 = what you bought

사는 것 = what you buy

살 것 = what you will buy

먹은 것 = what you ate

먹는 것 = what you eat

먹을 것 = what you will eat

-는 것 vs -는 거

-는 것 is the standard form but often times, except for very formal situations, the form -는 거 is more commonly used because of the ease of pronunciation.

LEVEL 2 LESSON 19

지금 듣는 것은 노래예요.

[ji-geum deut-neun geo-seun no-rae-ye-yo.]

= What I am listening to now is a song.

==> 지금 듣는 거는 노래예요.

오늘 만나는 것 알아요?

[o-neul man-na-neun geot a-ra-yo?]

= Do you know that we are meeting today?

==> 오늘 만나는 거 알아요?

매운 것 잘 먹어요?

[mae-un geot jal meo-geo-yo?]

= Are you good at eating spicy foods?

==> 매운 거 잘 먹어요?

More sample sentences

1. 제 취미는 영화 보는 거예요. [je chwi-mi-neun yeong-hwa bo-neun geo-ye-yo.]

= My hobby is watching movies.

2. 요즘 공부하는 거는 뭐예요? [yo-jeum gong-bu-ha-neun geo-neun mwo-ye-yo?]

= What is it that you are studying recently?

= 요즘 뭐 공부해요?

3. 저는 친구랑 수다떠는 거를 좋아해요.

[jeo-neun chin-gu-rang su-da-tteo-neun geo-reul jo-a-hae-yo.]

= I like chitchatting with my friends.

LEVEL 2 LESSON 20

In this lesson, we are going to take a look at how to say that you **"have to"** or **"should"** do something in Korean. The construction itself is quite simple to understand. You take the verb stem of a verb and add the part (a verb ending) that makes the sentences take the meaning of "have to" or "should".

to have to, should, must

= verb stem + -아/어/여 + -야 되다/하다

Examples:

자다 [ja-da] = to sleep

자 + -아/어/여 + -야 되다/하다

--> 자 + "-아" + -야 되다/하다 (You choose "-아" because 자 ends with the vowel "ㅏ")

--> 자야 되다/하다 (You then drop the -아 because it's the same as "ㅏ")

--> 자야 되다 and 자야 하다 are the same thing.

쓰다 [sseu-da] = to use, to write

쓰 + -아/어/여 + -야 되다/하다

--> 쓰 + "-어" + -야 되다/하다 (You choose "-어" because 쓰 doesn't end in "ㅏ" or "ㅑ")

--> 써야 되다/하다 (쓰 + 어 together change to '써')

--> 써야 되다 and 써야 하다 mean the same thing.

So the construction is basically:

1. verb stems ending in vowels 'ㅏ' or 'ㅑ' + -아야 되다/하다
2. verb stems ending in other vowels + -어야 되다/하다
3. 하 + -여야 되다/하다

LEVEL 2 LESSON 20

one of the three above.

But it is more important to understand WHY -아/어/여야 되다/하다 means "to have to" or "should".

In order to understand this, we can look at the structure in two separate parts.

1. -아/어/여 + -야

This part means "only when ____ is done" or "only when you do ____".

2. 되다 or 하다

되다 means "to be done" or "to be possible" and 하다 means "to do" something.

So if you put 1 and 2 together, it takes the meaning of "only when you do ____, it works" or "only if ____ is done, it's okay." Therefore -아/어/여야 되다/하다 takes the meaning of "to have to" or "should."

What is the difference between 하다 and 되다 here?

- The only difference is that using 되다 is more common in colloquial situations.

Sample sentences

1. 집에 가야 돼요. [ji-be ga-ya dwae-yo.]

= I have to go home.

2. 저는 뭐 해야 돼요? [jeo-neun mwo hae-ya dwae-yo?]

= What should I do?

LEVEL 2 LESSON 20

3. 언제까지 여기에 있어야 돼요? [eon-je-kka-ji yeo-gi-e i-sseo-ya dwae-yo?]

= Until when should I be here?

4. 누구한테 줘야 돼요? [nu-gu-han-te jwo-ya dwae-yo?]

= Who should I give this to?

5. 어디에서 사야 돼요? [eo-di-e-seo sa-ya dwae-yo?]

= Where should I buy it?

LEVEL 2 LESSON 21

After studying with this lesson, you can compare two things or people and say that something is better something else, or someone is taller than someone else, in Korean.

How to say “more” in Korean:

In Korean, the word for “more” is 더 [deo]. In English relatively short words change their forms instead of having the word “more” in front of them, like shorter, hotter, faster, but in Korean all the words just have this word 더 attached before them.

Example:

빠르다 = to be fast

더 빠르다 = to be faster

비싸다 = to be expensive

더 비싸다 = to be more expensive

예뵈. = It's pretty. / You're pretty. / She's pretty.

더 예뵈. = It's prettier. / You're prettier. / She's prettier.

How to say “than” in Korean:

The word for “than” or “compared to” is 보다 [bo-da].

The basic construction for this is not very complicated, but the word order in Korean is completely different from English. Let us compare the two.

English: A watermelon is bigger than an apple.

Korean: 수박은 사과보다 더 커요. [su-ba-geun sa-gwa-bo-da keo-yo.]

LEVEL 2 LESSON 21

** In the English sentence above, the word "than" comes BEFORE "apple" but in Korean, the word -보다 [bo-da] (which means "than") comes AFTER 사과 [sa-gwa], which means "apple".

Construction:

than A = A보다

more (verb/adjective/adverb) than A = A보다 더 (verb/adjective/adverb)

Example

1)

to be big = 크다 [keu-da]

to be bigger = 더 크다 [deo keu-da]

It's bigger. = 더 커요. [deo keo-yo.]

It's bigger than this one. 이거보다 더 커요. [i-geo-bo-da deo keo-yo.]

2)

to be nice (to people) = 착하다 [cha-ka-da]

to be nicer = 더 착하다 [deo cha-ka-da]

현우 is nicer. = 현우 씨는 더 착해요.

현우 is nicer than 경은. = 현우 씨는 경은 씨보다 더 착해요.

** 더 [deo] is not always necessary in Korean sentences. In English, it would be weird if you said "She's busy than me." instead of "She's busier than me." but in Korean the meaning is perfectly clear even without the word 더 [deo].

Sample sentences

1. 오늘은 어제보다 더워요. [o-neu-reun eo-je-bo-da deo-wo-yo.]

LEVEL 2 LESSON 21

= Today is hotter than yesterday.

2. 영어는 한국어보다 어려워요. [yeong-eo-neun han-gu-geo-bo-da eo-ryeo-wo-yo.]

= English is more difficult than Korean.

3. 어제보다 일찍 갈 거예요. [eo-je-bo-da il-jjik gal geo-ye-yo.]

= I'm going to go earlier than yesterday.

4. 현정 씨가 저보다 더 잘 해요. [hyeon-jeong ssi-ga jeo-bo-da deo jal hae-yo.]

= Hyeonjeong is better than me (at doing that).

5. 저는 책을 읽는 것보다 사는 것을 더 좋아해요. [jeo-neun chae-geul il-neun geot-bo-da sa-neun geo-seul deo jo-a-hae-yo.]

= I like buying books more than reading books.

LEVEL 2 LESSON 22

After you started learning Korean, one of the expressions that you must have encountered in various places is the verb 좋다 [jo-ta]. It means "to be good". But then again, you might have also seen this word being used for the meaning "to like".

Examples:

한국어 좋아요. [han-gu-geo jo-a-yo.]

= I like the Korean language.

이거 좋아요. [i-geo jo-a-yo.]

= I like this.

동방신기 좋아요. [dong-bang-sin-gi jo-a-yo.]

= I like DBSK.

Even though the verb 좋다 in the examples above are used as the meaning "to like" the verb originally means "to be good" so in principle the nouns (한국어, 이거, 동방신기) are subjects of the sentences.

So the particles that are hidden after the nouns are NOT objects marking particles, but in fact, subject marking particles.

한국어 좋아요.

--> 한국어를 좋아요. (x)

--> 한국어가 좋아요. (o)

So you are literally saying that Korean is good, likable, enjoyable, and preferable FOR YOU.

LEVEL 2 LESSON 22

The difference between 좋다 and 좋아하다

So if you want to express more precisely that you like something, you can use the verb 좋아하다, which can be translated as "to like" or "to be fond of". The meanings might be similar but since 좋다 means "to be good" the noun that goes with it is the subject of the sentence, and for 좋아하다, the noun that goes with it is the object.

If you just drop the particles altogether, you don't have to worry about this difference.

- 1) 동방신기 좋아요.
- 2) 동방신기 좋아해요.

Sentence number 1 and 2 mean the same. But if you want to specify what is good and who likes whom, you might want to add the particles.

- 3) 동방신기가 좋아요.
- 4) 동방신기를 좋아요.

Sentence number 3 means that you like DBSK. And sentence number 4 is not correct because 좋다 is not a verb that can have an object.

- 5) 동방신기를 좋아해요.
- 6) 동방신기가 좋아해요.

Sentence number 5 means that you (or someone else) like DBSK. And (IMPORTANT!) sentence number 6 means that DBSK likes something or someone. The subject of the sentence is DBSK, so you need to add what it is that DBSK likes.

LEVEL 2 LESSON 22

Descriptive verbs + ~하다 combination

Construction:

Verb stem + -아/어/여 + -하다

As in the case of 좋다 and 좋아하다, there can be many pairs of words that seem similar at first but are actually different in usage.

More examples like this:

1) 싫다 [sil-ta] = to be unlikable, to be undesirable

싫어하다 [si-reo-ha-da] = to hate, to not like

2) 예쁘다 [ye-ppeu-da] = to be pretty, to be cute

예뻐하다 [ye-ppeo-ha-da] = to consider someone pretty and treat them in such a manner

3) 슬프다 [seul-peu-da] = to be sad

슬퍼하다 [seul-peo-ha-da] = to feel sad and therefore express such emotions

Sample sentences

1. 저는 우유를 좋아해요. [jeo-neun u-yu-reul jo-a-hae-yo.]

= I like milk.

2. 우유가 좋아요? 주스가 좋아요? [u-yu-ga jo-a-yo? ju-seu-ga jo-a-yo?]

= Do you like milk? Or do you like juice?

3. 뭐가 제일 좋아요? [mwo-ga je-il jo-a-yo?]

LEVEL 2 LESSON 22

= What is your favorite?

4. 뭐를 제일 좋아해요? [mwo-reul je-il jo-a-hae-yo?]

= What do you like best?

5. 저 좋아하세요? [jeo jo-a-ha-se-yo?]

= Do you like me? Are you in love with me?

LEVEL 2 LESSON 23

After studying with this lesson, you will know how to say "if" in Korean, and how to use it in context in your Korean sentences.

In order to express the meaning "if", you need to know two expressions. One is a noun and one is a verb ending.

1. 만약 [man-yak] = in case, if
2. -(으)면 [-(eu)myeon] = verb ending for "if"

In English, you just have to say the word "if" at the beginning of the sentence to make the sentence conditional, but in Korean you need to conjugate the verb as well. But don't worry, conjugation verbs in this manner is very easy to do.

How to conjugate verbs:

In order to add the meaning "if" to a verb, you take the verb stem and add -(으)면 [-(eu)myeon] to the verb.

1. Verb stems ending with a vowel + -면
Ex) 자다 --> 자면 (if you sleep)
2. Verb stems ending with ㄹ + -면
Ex) 길다 --> 길면 (if it's long)
3. Verb stems ending with consonants other than ㄹ + -으면
Ex) 작다 --> 작으면 (if it's small)

LEVEL 2 LESSON 23

And in front of the verb or the phrase, you add the word 만약 [man-yak] to make the meaning more clear. Since most Korean sentences are heavily affected by the verb endings toward the end of the sentences, adding 만약 at the beginning makes it easier to see that you are saying "if".

Examples:

1)

Verb: 자다 = to sleep

지금 자면 = if I sleep now

만약 지금 자면 = if I sleep now

2)

Verb: 비가 오다 = to rain

내일 밤에 비가 오면 = if it rains tomorrow night

만약 내일 밤에 비가 오면 = if it rains tomorrow night

** In the second sentences for both of the examples, the listener can figure out that the sentence is going to be an "if" sentence when hearing "만약".

But if what you are saying is simple and the sentence is not very long, you don't always have to use the word 만약 in each sentence.

A little more conjugation practice for you:



LEVEL 2 LESSON 23

먹다 [meok-da] = to eat

먹으면 [meo-geu-myeon] = if you eat it, if I eat it

** You can add the -았/었/였 suffix before -으면 to make a past-tense clause.

먹 + 었 + 으면 [meo-geo-sseu-myeon] = if you ate it, if I ate it

사 다 [sa-da] = to buy

사면 [sa-myeon] = if you buy it, if I buy it, if they buy it

샀으면 [sa-sseu-myeon] = if you bought it, if we bought it

** You can even make it into the future tense by using -(으)ㄹ 거면.

보다 [bo-da] = to watch

보면 [bo-myeon] = if you watch it, if I watch it

봤으면 [bwa-sseu-myeon] = if I watched it, if they watched it

볼 거면 [bol geo-myeon] = if you are going to watch it

Sample sentences

1. 내일 비가 오면, 집에 있을 거예요.

[nae-il bi-ga o-myeon, ji-be i-sseul geo-ye-yo.]

= If it rains tomorrow, I'm going to be at home.

2. 이거 다 먹으면, 배가 아플 거예요.

[i-geo da meo-geu-myeon, bae-ga a-peul geo-ye-yo.]

= If you eat all of it, your stomach will hurt.

LEVEL 2 LESSON 23

3. 리모콘을 찾으면, TV를 볼 수 있어요.

[ri-mo-ko-neul cha-jeu-myeon, ti-vi-reul bol su i-sseo-yo.]

= If you find the remote control, you can watch TV.

4. TTMIK에서 공부하면, 재미있어요.

[ttmik-e-seo gong-bu-ha-myeon, jae-mi-i-sseo-yo.]

= If you study at TTMIK, it's fun.

5. 지금 안 오면, 후회할 거예요.

[ji-geum an o-myeon hu-hoe-hal geo-ye-yo.]

= If you don't come now, you will regret it.

This is not everything.

This is the basic way of making "if" sentences in Korean. There are various other expressions such as "only if you had done it, I would have ...". But of course those will have to wait until we learn some other things first, so in the meanwhile, enjoy practicing what we learned today!

LEVEL 2 LESSON 24

In this lesson we are going to learn two new expressions that have the opposite meanings.

1. 아직 [a-jik] means "still" and "not yet".

In English, generally, the word 'still' is used with positive sentences and the word 'yet' is more commonly used with negative sentences, but in Korean, the word 아직 [a-jik] is used for both positive and negative sentences.

아직 10시예요.

[a-jik yeol-si-ye-yo.]

= It's still 10 o'clock.

아직 안 했어요.

[a-jik an hae-sseo-yo.]

= I haven't done it yet.

아직 아침이에요.

[a-jik a-chi-mi-e-yo.]

= It's still morning.

아직 몰라요.

[a-jik mol-la-yo.]

= I don't know yet.

To emphasize the meaning of "still happening" or "still not happening", you can add the particle -도 [-do] after 아직.

LEVEL 2 LESSON 24

아직 몰라요?

[a-jik mol-la-yo?]

= You don't know yet?

아직도 몰라요?

[a-jik-do mol-la-yo?]

= You still don't know? How could you still not know?

아직 안 왔어요?

[a-jik an wa-sseo-yo?]

= He's not here yet?

네, 아직도 안 왔어요.

[a-jik-do an wa-sseo-yo?]

= No, he's still not here.

2. 벌써 [beol-sseo] means "already".

The usage of the word 벌써 [beol-sseo] is very similar to the English word "already". It's generally placed at the beginning of sentences, but it doesn't always have to be at the beginning.

It's already three o'clock.

= 벌써 세 시예요.

It's three o'clock already!

LEVEL 2 LESSON 24

= 세 시예요, 벌써!

Both of the sentences above work.

More sample sentences

벌써 왔어요?

[beol-sseo wa-sseo-yo?]

= Oh, you are already here!

벌써 끝났어요?

[beol-sseo kkeut-na-sseo-yo?]

= Is it already over? Did it already finish?

이미 vs 벌써

Another word that you will often encounter when reading or listening to Korean that has the meaning "already" is 이미 [i-mi].

이미 means "already" as well, so basically 이미 and 벌써 seem to have the same meaning, but in fact, Koreans often distinguish the meanings of these two words.

The difference between 이미 and 벌써 lies in whether you are already aware of the fact or not. When you and/or the speaker know about something already and talk about it, you use 이미. When you are just finding out about it as you speak you use 벌써. People don't always stick to this rule, but this is the basic idea.

LEVEL 2 LESSON 24

Examples

그 사람은 이미 학교를 졸업했어요.

[geu sa-ram-eun i-mi hak-gyo-reul jo-reo-pae-sseo-yo.]

= He already graduated from school.

- You (and probably also the other person) have known about this fact since long before you say this sentence.)

그 사람은 벌써 학교를 졸업했어요!

[geu sa-ram-eun beol-sseo hak-gyo-reul jo-reo-pae-sseo-yo.]

= He already graduated from school.

- You might have found out about this fact recently, or you already knew about this but the other person may have not known about it before you say it.

LEVEL 2 LESSON 25

In English, when you change the word "when" to "someday", "what" to "something", "who" to "someone" or "where" to "somewhere", the words change a lot in form. But when you do this in Korean, there isn't much change to the original word except for an ending that you add.

In Korean, in order to change "when" to "someday", you just add -ㄴ가 (-n-ga) at the end of the word for "when", which is 언제. So 언제 becomes 언젠가.

The same rule applies to some other words.

언제 (when) - 언젠가 (someday)

뭐 (what) - 뭔가 (something)

누 구 (who) - 누군가 (someone)

어디 (where) - 어딘가 (somewhere)

Examples:

언젠가 미국에 가고 싶어요.

[eon-jen-ga mi-gu-ge ga-go si-peo-yo.]

= I want to go to the States someday.

언제 미국에 가고 싶어요?

[eon-je mi-gu-ge ga-go si-peo-yo?]

= When do you want to go to the States?

언젠가 일본에 갈 거예요.

[eon-jen-ga il-bo-ne gal geo-ye-yo.]

= I'm going to go to Japan one day.

LEVEL 2 LESSON 25

언제 일본에 갈 거예요?

[eon-je il-bo-ne gal geo-ye-yo?]

= When are you going to go to Japan?

뭐 찾았어요?

[mwo cha-ja-sseo-yo?]

= What did you find?

뭔가 찾았어요?

[mwon-ga cha-ja-sseo-yo?]

= Did you find something?

뭔가 이상해요.

[mwon-ga i-sang-hae-yo.]

= Something is strange.

뭐가 이상해요?

[mwo-ga i-sang-hae-yo?]

= What is strange?

누구 만날 거예요?

[nu-gu man-nal geo-ye-yo?]

= What will you meet?

누군가 왔어요.

[nu-gun-ga wa-sseo-yo.]

LEVEL 2 LESSON 25

= Someone came.

어디에 있어요?

[eo-di-e i-sseo-yo?]

= Where is it?

여기 어딘가에 있어요.

[eo-din-ga-e i-sseo-yo.]

= It is somewhere here.

BUT!!! (And this is important!) In Korean, like many other expressions, this rule is not always kept by everyone. What does this mean? It means that EVEN when you mean to say "some-day", you can use 언제 instead of 언젠가, you can say 뭐 for something, 어디 for somewhere and 누구 for someone.

The distinction between 언제 and 언젠가 is stronger than the distinction between other words, but you can also replace 언젠가 with 언제 in many situations. When you use the original interrogative words instead of the -ㄴ가 form, you really need to pay attention to your intonation. The emphasis should go on the verbs, not the actual interrogative words themselves.

Examples:

뭐 샀어요? [mwo sa-sseo-yo?] (stress is on 뭐)

= What did you buy?

뭐 샀어요? [mwo sa-sseo-yo?] (stress is on 샀어요)

= Did you buy something?

LEVEL 2 LESSON 25

언제 중국에 갈 거예요? [eon-je jung-gu-ge gal geo-ye-yo?] (stress is on 언제)

= When are you going to go to China?

언제 중국에 갈 거예요? [eon-je jung-gu-ge gal geo-ye-yo?] (stress is on 갈 거예요?)

= Are you going to go to China someday/one of these days?

LEVEL 2 LESSON 26

In this lesson we are looking at how to tell someone to do something in polite Korean. This is one of the most essential things to be able to say, even when you are just asking for a favor.

In order to tell someone to do something, you basically add -(으)세요 [-(eu)se-yo] at the end of the verb stem. Verb stems ending with a consonant are followed by -으세요 and verb stems ending with a vowel or with the consonant "ㄹ" are followed by -세요.

Examples:

오다 [o-da] = to come

오 + -세요 = 오세요 [o-se-yo] = Please come.

쉬다 [swi-da] = to rest

쉬 + -세요 = 쉬세요 [swi-se-yo] = Please get some rest.

고르다 [go-reu-da] = to choose, to pick

고르 + -세요 = 고르세요 [go-reu-se-yo] = Please choose.

접다 [jeob-da] = to fold

접 + -으세요 = 접으세요 [jeo-beu-se-yo] = Please fold it.

Exception:

When a verb stem ends with the last consonant ㄹ, you drop the ㄹ and add -세요.

팔다 [pal-da] = to sell

팔 --> 파 + 세요 = 파세요 [pa-se-yo] = Please sell it.

LEVEL 2 LESSON 26

We are introducing this verb ending, -(으)세요 as a way to tell someone to do something but, in fact, this is one of the many variations where the honorific suffix -시 [-si] is used. Inside -세요, there is this suffix -시 included. But for now, please just focus on this particular usage of asking someone to do something.

Sample sentences

1. 내일 세 시에 오세요.

[nae-il se si-e o-se-yo.]

= Please come here at three o'clock tomorrow.

2. 공부하세요!

[gong-bu-ha-se-yo!]

= Study! Do your studies!

3. 경은 씨, 빨리 일하세요.

[gyeong-eun ssi, ppal-li i-ra-se-yo.]

= 경은, hurry up and get some work done!

4. 경은 씨, 쉬세요.

[gyeong-eun ssi, swi-se-yo.]

= 경은, please take some rest.

5. 이거 저한테 파세요.

[i-geo, jeo-han-te pa-se-yo.]

= Please sell this to me.

LEVEL 2 LESSON 26

6. 조심하세요.

[jo-sim-ha-se-yo.]

= Be careful!

Some fixed expressions using -세요:

1. 어서오세요. [eo-seo-o-se-yo]

= (lit. Come quickly) Welcome.

2. 안녕히 가세요. [an-nyeong-hi ga-se-yo]

= (lit. Go peacefully) Good-bye.

3. 안녕히 계세요. [an-nyeong-hi gye-se-yo]

= (lit. Stay peacefully) Good-bye.

4. 안녕히 주무세요. [an-nyeong-hi ju-mu-se-yo]

= (lit. Sleep peacefully) Good night.

Some words change their forms specifically for the polite language, but we are going to introduce them in our future lessons.

LEVEL 2 LESSON 27

In our previous lesson, we looked at how to tell someone to do something. This could be said in a nice or polite way but, when you want to be nicer and ask for a favor, there is another verb ending you can use.

Instead of just adding -(으)세요 after the verb stem, if you add -아/어/여 + 주세요, the sentences have the nuance of asking for a favor, or asking the other person to do something "for you".

Examples:

오세요. = Please come.

와 주세요. = Please do me a favor and come.

하 세요. = Do it.

해 주세요. = Please do me a favor and do it for me.

Changing -세요 to -아/어/여 주세요 does not only make the sentence more polite, but it also adds the meaning of "for me", so even if you are using the same verb and even if you don't literally say the words "for me (lit. 저를 위해서)" in Korean, just using -아/어/여 주세요 at the end will automatically make the sentence mean "do it for me, please."

For example, if you just want to say "아이스크림 사세요(= Buy ice cream)", it can mean "buy yourself some ice cream" or "buy some ice cream for your friends", but in Korean if you say 아이스크림 사 주세요 using the -아/어/여 주세요 form, you mean "Please buy me some ice cream" or if you are the one who's selling the ice cream, you could mean "Please buy some ice cream from me if you want to help me."

Often times, when you want to ask for help, it is more natural to add -아/어/여 주세요 at the

LEVEL 2 LESSON 27

end. For example, it's not very natural to say "저를 도우세요!" (from the irregular verb, 돕다, to help) when you mean "Help me!". You need to say "저를 도와 주세요" or just "도와 주세요" to sound more natural.

Let's look at some more examples of how -세요 and -아/어/여 주세요 can be used in contrast.

1. 가르치다 [ga-reu-chi-da] = to teach

가르치세요 [ga-reu-chi-se-yo] = Teach. / Please teach. (to whom is unknown)

가르쳐 주세요 [ga-reu-chyeo ju-se-yo] = Please teach me.

경은 씨한테 가르쳐 주세요 [gyeong-eun ssi-han-te ga-reu-chyeo ju-se-yo] = Please teach 경은 (how to do that).

2. 보다 [bo-da] = to see

보세요 [bo-se-yo] = See it. / Please see it.

봐 주세요. [bwa ju-se-yo] = Please see it, and I'd appreciate it. / Please be kind and see it.

Now if you've become somewhat familiar with this 주세요 ending, let us take a closer look at what 주세요 means.

주세요 comes from 주다 [ju-da], which means "to give", so by adding 주세요 after a verb, you add the meaning of "give me the act of" doing something, so it means "do it for me." And -아/어/여 is just a connecting part for make the pronunciation a little softer.

Sample sentences

1. 영어를 배우고 있어요. 도와 주세요.

[yeong-eo-reul bae-u-go i-sseo-yo. do-wa ju-se-yo.]

LEVEL 2 LESSON 27

= I'm learning English. Please help me.

2. 도와 줄 수 있어요?

[do-wa jul su i-sseo-yo?]

= Can you help me?

3. 배 고파요. 김밥 사 주세요.

[bae go-pa-yo. gim-bap sa ju-se-yo.]

= I'm hungry. Buy me some kimbap.

4. 무서워요. 같이 가 주세요.

[mu-seo-wo-yo. ga-chi ga ju-se-yo.]

= I'm scared. Please go with me.

LEVEL 2 LESSON 28

We have learned a few particles through our previous lessons and in this lesson, we are looking at another one: the particle -(으)로 [-(eu)ro].

Construction:

Nouns ending with a consonant + -으로

Nouns ending in a vowel or the consonant "ㄹ" + -로

-(으)로 connects a noun and a verb very closely and can have various functions. -(으)로 can mark the ingredients that an object is made of, the cause of a disease or something that happened, the direction in which someone is going, or the status or identity of a person that is doing something. Let's look at some example below.

Examples:

1. 나무로 만들다 [na-mu-ro man-deul-da]

= 나무 (wood) + -로 + 만들다 (to make)

= to make (something) with wood

2. 왼쪽으로 가다 [oen-jjo-geu-ro ga-da]

= 왼쪽 (left side) + -으로 + 가다 (to go)

= to go to the left

= to go through the left side

3. 이 길로 가다 [i gil-lo ga-da]

= 이 (this) 길 (street / road) + -로 + 가다 (to go)

= to go through this path

= to go through this road

LEVEL 2 LESSON 28

4. 펜으로 쓰다 [pe-neu-ro sseu-da]

= 펜 (pen) + -으로 + 쓰다 (to write)

= to write with a pen

5. 한국어로 말하다 [han-gu-geo-ro ma-ra-da]

= 한국어 (Korean) + 로 + 말하다 (to speak / to talk)

= to talk in Korean

6. 치즈로 유명하다 [chi-jeu-ro yu-myeong-ha-da]

= 치즈 (cheese) + 로 + 유명하다 (to be famous)

= to be famous for cheese

7. 사고로 다치다 [sa-go-ro da-chi-da]

= 사고 (accident) + 로 + 다치다 (to get hurt)

= to get hurt in(from) an accident

Sample sentences

1. 이거 뭐로 만들었어요?

[i-geo mwo-ro man-deu-reo-sseo-yo?]

= What did you make this with?

= What is this made of?

2. 오늘 택시로 왔어요?

[o-neul taek-si-ro wa-sseo-yo?]

= Did you come by taxi today?

LEVEL 2 LESSON 28

3. 버스로 갈 거예요.

[beo-seu-ro gal geo-ye-yo.]

= I'm going to go by bus.

4. 저를 친구로 생각해요?

[jeo-reul chin-gu-ro saeng-ga-kae-yo?]

= Do you think of me as a friend?

5. 2번 출구로 나오세요.

[i-beon chul-gu-ro na-o-se-yo.]

= Come out through exit number 2.

LEVEL 2 LESSON 29

In this lesson, we are introduce how to say "all" in Korean.

- 다 [da] = all, entirely, whole

And also review how to say "more".

- 더 [deo] = more

For many sentences where English speakers will use adjectives and nouns, Korean speakers use adverbs and verbs. This often becomes a challenge for translators and interpreters, but keeping this in mind will help you understand how to form more natural sentences in Korean.

Let's look at how 다 [da] is used.

Examples:

1. 다 주세요. [da ju-se-yo.]

= Give me all of it.

2. 다 했어요. [da hae-sseo-yo.]

= I've done all of it.

3. 다 왔어요? [da wa-sseo-yo?]

= Are we there yet? (lit. Did we all come? / Did we come to all of it?)

= Did everybody come?

4. 다 살 거예요? [da sal geo-ye-yo?]

LEVEL 2 LESSON 29

= Are you going to buy all of it?

In some of the examples above, it looks as if the word 다 [da] is working as a noun, and it is but, in fact, it has a stronger influence on the verbs, so you can actually think of 다 as an adverb.

커피를 마시다 [keo-pi-reul ma-si-da]

= to drink coffee

커피를 다 마시다 [keo-pi-reul da ma-si-da]

= to drink all the coffee

In the second sentence above, the English word "all" was used to describe "the coffee" but in Korean, the word 다 was used to describe the action of drinking (마시다).

책을 읽다 [chae-geul il-da]

= to read a book

책을 다 읽다 [chae-geul da il-da]

= to read all of the book

= to finish reading the book

FAQ

Q: Then how do you say "all of the book" or "the entire book", if the word 다 only modifies verbs?

A: You can use other words like 전체 [jeon-che] or 전부 [jeon-bu]. "The entire book" is 책 전체

LEVEL 2 LESSON 29

or 책 전부, but this might not sound very natural when not used in proper context. So in most cases, it's better to use 다 [da].

Let's look at how 더 [deo] is used.

Examples:

1. 더 주세요. [deo ju-se-yo.]

= Please give me more.

2. 더 있어요. [deo i-sseo-yo.]

= There is more.

3. 더 사고 싶어요. [deo sa-go si-peo-yo.]

= I want to buy more.

4. 뭐가 더 좋아요? [mwo-ga deo jo-a-yo?]

= Which is better?

The same explanation for 다 applies to the word 더 as well when modifying verbs. Although it looks like 더 is used as a noun here but in fact, for example, when you say 더 사고 싶어요, the sentence is closer to saying "I want to do the "buying action" more".

10 분 기다려 주세요. [sip-bun gi-da-ryeo ju-se-yo.]

= Please wait for ten minutes.

10분 더 기다려 주세요. [sip-bun deo gi-da-ryeo ju-se-yo.]

LEVEL 2 LESSON 29

= Please wait for ten more minutes.

In English, you say "ten more minutes" but in Korean, you literally say, "do the action of waiting for ten minutes + more".

If you want to review how to compare two things using -보다 and 더, please check out Level 2 Lesson 21.

Sample sentences:

1. 전화 다 했어요? [jeon-hwa da hae-sseo-yo?]

= Did you finish talking on the phone?

= Did you make all the phone calls?

= Did everyone make a phone call?

2. 준비 다 했어요. [jun-bi da hae-sseo-yo.]

= I finished the preparation..

= I did all the preparation.

= All of us are prepared.

3. 더 보여 주세요. [deo bo-yeo ju-se-yo.]

= Show me more.

= Show me more of it.

4. 더 공부하고 싶으면, TTMIK에 오세요. [deo gong-bu-ha-go si-peu-myeon, TTMIK-e o-seoyo.]

= If you want to study more, come to TTMIK.

= If you want to do more studying, come to TTMIK.

LEVEL 2 LESSON 30

Through some of our previous lessons, we learned how to tell or ask someone to do something. In this lesson, we will look at how to tell someone not to do something or stop doing something.

Since you already know how to use -(으)세요 to tell someone to do something, you just have to know one more verb here:

말다 [mal-da] = to quit doing, to not do, to stop doing

When you use the -(으)세요 ending for this word, it becomes 마세요 [ma-se-yo] but, when you want to combine 마세요 with other verbs and say "don't do" something, you need to add the suffix -지 [-ji] after the verb stem.

Verb stem + -지 마세요 [-ji ma-se-yo]

Examples:

가지 마세요. [ga-ji ma-se-yo.]

= Don't go.

하지 마세요. [ha-ji ma-se-yo.]

= Don't do it.

사 지 마세요. [sa-ji ma-se-yo.]

= Don't buy it.

LEVEL 2 LESSON 30

Sample sentences.

1. 만지지 마세요. [man-ji-ji ma-se-yo.]

= Don't touch it.

2. 웃지 마세요. [ut-ji ma-se-yo.]

= Don't laugh.

3. 걱정하지 마세요. [geok-jeong-ha-ji ma-se-yo.]

= Don't worry.

4. 경은 씨한테 말하지 마세요. [gyeong-eun ssi-han-teo mal-ha-ji ma-se-yo.]

= Please don't tell 경은 (about it).

5. 아직 보내지 마세요. 아직 다 안 썼어요. [a-jik bo-nae-ji ma-se-yo. a-jik da an sseo-sseo-yo.]

= Don't send it yet. I haven't finished writing it.

TalkToMeInKorean Level 2 Dialog

This dialog is based on the grammar points introduced in **TalkToMeInKorean's Level 2 lessons**. First listen to the dialog alone, without looking at the Korean transcript, and then check how much you could understand by comparing your understanding with the original text as well as the translation.

Korean Transcript

민호: 민정 씨 이번 토요일에 뭐 할 거예요?

민정: 이번 토요일에요? 저는 일해야 돼요.

민호: 토요일에도 일해야 돼요?

민정: 네... 그리고 일요일에도 일해야 돼요. 요즘 진짜 바빠요. (한숨) 민호 씨는 뭐 할 거예요?

민호: 저는 일본에 갈 거예요.

민정: 우와... 저도 가고 싶어요. 혼자 갈 거예요?

민호: 네, 혼자 갈 거예요.

민정: 민호 씨 일본어 할 수 있어요?

민호: 네, 조금 할 수 있어요.

민정: 저도 일본어 가르쳐 주세요.

민호: 저도 아직 잘 못 해요. 친구한테서 배우고 있어요.

민정: 중국어보다 일본어가 더 쉬워요?

민호: 네, 별로 안 어려워요. 만약 정말 배우고 싶으면, 저랑 같이 공부해요.

민정: 좋아요! 저도 외국어 공부하는 거 좋아해요.

민호: 좋아요. 저랑 같이 일본어 공부해요. 그런데 민정 씨는 일이 몇 시에 끝나요?

민정: 아홉 시에 끝나요. 정말 너무 바빠요. 그래서 요즘 공부를 못 해요. 그런데 민호 씨는 몇 시에 끝나요?

민호: 아, 저는 별로 안 바빠요. 여섯 시에 일이 끝나요. 만약 일찍 끝나면, 말해 주세요. 저랑 공부

TalkToMeInKorean Level 2 Dialog

해요.

민정: 네... 만...약... 일찍 끝나면.

Korean Transcript + English Translation

민호: 민정 씨 이번 토요일에 뭐 할 거예요?

Minho: Minjeong, what are you going to do this Saturday?

민정: 이번 토요일에요? 저는 일해야 돼요.

Minjeong: This Saturday? I have to work.

민호: 토요일에도 일해야 돼요?

Minho: You have to work on Saturday, too?

민정: 네... 그리고 일요일에도 일해야 돼요. 요즘 진짜 바빠요. (한숨) 민호 씨는 뭐 할 거예요?

Minjeong: Yes... and I have to work on Sunday, too. These days, I'm so busy. (Sigh) Minho, what are you going to do?

민호: 저는 일본에 갈 거예요.

Minho: I'm going to go to Japan.

민정: 우와... 저도 가고 싶어요. 혼자 갈 거예요?

Minjeong: Wow... I want to go, too. Are you going to go alone?

민호: 네, 혼자 갈 거예요.

Minho: Yes, I'm going to go alone.

민정: 민호 씨 일본어 할 수 있어요?

Minjeong: Minho, can you speak Japanese?

민호: 네, 조금 할 수 있어요.

Minho: Yes, I can speak a little bit.

TalkToMeInKorean Level 2 Dialog

민정: 저도 일본어 가르쳐 주세요.

Minjeong: Teach me Japanese, too.

민호: 저도 아직 잘 못 해요. 친구한테서 배우고 있어요.

Minho: I am still not very good at it. I am learning it from a friend.

민정: 중국어보다 일본어가 더 쉬워요?

Minjeong: Is Japanese easier than Chinese?

민호: 네, 별로 안 어려워요. 만약 정말 배우고 싶으면, 저랑 같이 공부해요.

Minho: Yes. It's not that difficult. If you really want to learn, study with me.

민정: 좋아요! 저도 외국어 공부하는 거 좋아해요.

Minjeong: Sounds good! I also like studying foreign languages.

민호: 좋아요. 저랑 같이 일본어 공부해요. 그런데 민정 씨는 일이 몇 시에 끝나요?

Minho: Great! Study Japanese with me. By the way, Minjeong, what time does your work finish?

민정: 아홉 시에 끝나요. 정말 너무 바빠요. 그래서 요즘 공부를 못 해요. 그런데 민호 씨는 몇 시에 끝나요?

Minjeong: It finishes at 9 o'clock. I'm really too busy. So I can't study these days. Then Minho, what time do you finish?

민호: 아, 저는 별로 안 바빠요. 여섯 시에 일이 끝나요. 만약 일찍 끝나면, 말해 주세요. 저랑 공부해요.

Minho: Oh, I'm not very busy. I finish at 6 o'clock. If you finish early, tell me. Let's study with me.

민정: 네... 만...약... 일찍 끝나면.

Minjeong: OK. IF... I finish early.

TalkToMeInKorean Level 2 Dialog

Vocabulary Breakdown

이번 = this time
토요일 = Saturday
뭐 = what
하다 = to do
일하다 = to work
-도 = too, also
그리고 = and
일요일 = Sunday
요즘 = these days
진짜 = really
바쁘다 = to be busy
한숨 = sigh
일본 = Japan
가다 = to go
혼자 = alone
일본어 = Japanese
조금 = a little
가르치다 = to teach
아직 = still, yet
친구 = friend
한테서 = from
배우다 = to learn
중국어 = Chinese
더 = more
-보다 = than
쉽다 = to be easy
별로 = not very
안 = not
어렵다 = to be difficult
만약 = if
정말 = really
-랑 = with
같이 = together
공부하다 = to study

TalkToMeInKorean Level 2 Dialog

좋다 = to be good

외국어 = foreign language

좋아하다 = to like

일 = work

몇 시에 = at what time

끝나다 = to finish

아홉 시 = 9 o'clock

너무 = too, really

그래서 = so, therefore

못 = can't

그런데 = but, by the way

여섯 시 = 6 o'clock

일찍 = early

말하다 = to tell

Workbook for Level 2 Lessons 1 - 10

Thank you for downloading this workbook from TalkToMeInKorean.com. This **WORKBOOK** has been made to help you reinforce what you have learned from our lessons number 1 to 10 in Level 2 at TalkToMeInKorean.com. The audio files for ALL of the Korean sentences that appear in this workbook are also available for download.

Please answer the following questions. The answers are on the last pages of this PDF.

Level 2 Lesson 1

1. "To wear" is 입다 [ip-da] and "blue jeans" is 청바지 [cheong-ba-ji].

How do you say **"I'm going to wear blue jeans."** in Korean?

()

2. "To sell" is 팔다 [pla-da] in Korean.

How do you say **"What are you going to sell?"** in Korean?

()

3. How do you say **"What are you going to do tomorrow?"** in Korean?

()

Level 2 Lesson 2

을 [eul] and 를 [reul] are object marking particles in Korean. Do you remember how to decide

Workbook for Level 2 Lessons 1 - 10

which one is used depending on the certain word? Please fill in the blanks with either "을" or "를".

1. 사과()

2. 핸드폰()

3. 시계()

4. 여행()

Level 2 Lesson 3

Please fill in the blanks with "그리고" or "그래서".

1. 책, 연필 () 공책

= A book, a pencil and a notebook.

2. 저는 학생이에요. () 돈이 없어요.

= I am a student. So I don't have money.

3. 김밥은 맛있어요. () 김밥을 자주 먹어요.

= Kimbap is delicious. So I eat kimbap often.

Level 2 Lesson 4

Workbook for Level 2 Lessons 1 - 10

Fill in the blanks to complete the Korean sentences.

1. 친구() 영화 봤어요.

= I saw a movie with a friend.

2. 누구() 같이 갔어요?

= Who did you go with?

3. 김밥() 라면 좋아해요.

= I like kimbap and ramen noodles.

Level 2 Lesson 5

Match the Korean words with their English equivalents.

1. 일요일	a. Saturday
2. 화요일	b. Sunday
3. 토요일	c. Thursday
4. 목요일	d. Monday
5. 수요일	e. Friday
6. 월요일	f. Wednesday
7. 금요일	g. Tuesday

Level 2 Lesson 6

1. How do you say "but" or "however" in Korean?

Workbook for Level 2 Lessons 1 - 10

()

2. How do you say **"I'm tired. But I'm okay."**?

()

3. How do you say **"It's good. But it's expensive."**

()

4. How do you say **"Yesterday, it rained. But now, it doesn't rain."**

()

Level 2 Lesson 7

1. 받다 [bat-da] is "to receive". How do you say **"I received it from a friend."**?

()

2. 물어보다 [mu-reo-bo-da] is "to ask". How do you say **"Whom did you ask?"**

()

3. 질문 [jil-mun] is "a question." How do you say **"Do you have a question for me?"**

()

Level 2 Lesson 8

Workbook for Level 2 Lessons 1 - 10

1. How do you say "What time is it?" in Korean?

()

2. How do you say "3 o'clock"?

()

3. How do you read "1:15" (time)?

()

4. How do you read "5:47" (time)?

()

Level 2 Lesson 9

1. When you count objects in Korean, how do you say "three things"?

()

2. When you count people in Korean, how do you say "five people"?

()

3. How do you say "three chairs"? The word for "chair" is 의자 [ui-ja].

()

Workbook for Level 2 Lessons 1 - 10

Level 2 Lesson 10

1. 읽다 [il-da] is "to read". How do you say "I am reading a book?"

()

2. How do you ask someone "What are you doing?"

()

3. How do you say "What were you doing?"

()

Answers

Level 2 Lesson 1

1. 청바지 입을 거예요.
2. 뭐 팔 거예요?
3. 내일 뭐 할 거예요?

Level 2 Lesson 2

1. (사과)를
2. (핸드폰)을
3. (시계)를
4. (여행)을

Workbook for Level 2 Lessons 1 - 10

Level 2 Lesson 3

1. (책, 연필) 그리고 (공책)
2. (저는 학생이에요.) 그래서 (돈이 없어요.)
3. (김밥은 맛있어요.) 그래서 (김밥을 자주 먹어요.)

Level 2 Lesson 4

1. (친구)랑/하고 (영화 봤어요.)
2. (누구)랑/하고 (같이 갔어요?)
3. (김밥)이랑/하고 (라면 좋아해요.)

Level 2 Lesson 5

1. 일요일 = b. Sunday
2. 화요일 = g. Tuesday
3. 토요일 = a. Saturday
4. 목요일 = a. Thursday
5. 수요일 = f. Wednesday
6. 월요일 = d. Monday
7. 금요일 = e. Friday

Level 2 Lesson 6

1. 그런데
2. 피곤해요. 그런데 괜찮아요.
3. 좋아요. 그런데 비싸요.
4. 어제는 비 왔어요. 그런데 지금은 비 안 와요.

Level 2 Lesson 7

1. 친구한테 받았어요. / 친구한테서 받았어요.
2. 누구한테 물어봤어요?
3. 저한테 질문 있어요?

Workbook for Level 2 Lessons 1 - 10

Level 2 Lesson 8

1. 몇 시예요?
2. 세 시
3. 한 시 십오 분
4. 다섯 시 사십칠 분

Level 2 Lesson 9

1. 세 개
2. 다섯 명
3. 의자 세 개

Level 2 Lesson 10

1. 책 읽고 있어요.
2. 뭐 하고 있어요?
3. 뭐 하고 있었어요?

We hope this workbook has been helpful to you.

All our regular lessons are free of charge and will stay that way. And for the products we have for sale in the Store section of the site, we want to try our best to keep their prices very low and reasonable so that MORE people can enjoy learning without spending too much money. One way you can help us make it possible to keep providing great learning material at inexpensive costs is to make donations. It doesn't have to be a lot, or you don't even have to if you don't want to or can't afford to at the moment. But any small donation you make will be an enormous amount help in keeping all our regular lessons completely FREE and our store products very inexpensive.

Thank you once again. **감사합니다!** We hope you will keep enjoying learning with us!



Thank you for studying with us at TalkToMeInKorean.com. This PDF workbook has been built to help you reinforce what you have learned from the first ten lessons (Lesson 1 - Lesson 10) of Level 2 at TalkToMeInKorean. If you have any questions or feedback, please feel free to write to us!

Workbook for Level 2 Lessons 11 - 20

Thank you for downloading this workbook from TalkToMeInKorean.com. This **WORKBOOK** has been made to help you reinforce what you have learned from our lessons number 11 to 20 in Level 2 at TalkToMeInKorean.com. The audio files for ALL of the Korean sentences that appear in this workbook are also available for download.

Please answer the following questions. The answers are on the last pages of this PDF.

Level 2 Lesson 11

1. How do you say "**I am a student.**" in Korean?

()

2. The word for "name" is 이름 [i-reum]. "My name" is 제 이름 [je i-reum].

How do you say "**My name is Minsu.**"?

()

3. How do you say "**I am 20 years old.**"?

()

4. How do you say "**I live in Seoul.**"?

()

Workbook for Level 2 Lessons 11 - 20

Level 2 Lesson 12

1. In Korean, the word for month is 월 [wol]. How do you say **September**?

()

2. What is the word for **day** or **days** in Korean?

()

3. How do you say "**September 25th**"?

()

4. How do you ask "**what month**"?

()

5. How do you ask "**what date**"?

()

6. How do you ask "**What date is your birthday**"?

()

Workbook for Level 2 Lessons 11 - 20

Level 2 Lesson 13

1. "I am a teacher." is 저는 선생님이에요. [jeo-neun seon-saeng-ni-mi-e-yo.]

How do you say "**I am a teacher, too.**"?

()

2. "Do you study Korean?" is 한국어 공부해요? [han-gu-geo gong-bu-hae-yo?]

How do you ask "**Do you study Korean, too** (in addition to other languages)?"

()

3. How do you say "**Give me this, too.**"? There can be two ways.

()

Level 2 Lesson 14

1. "To see" is 보다 [bo-da]. How do you say "**to also see**" or "**to even see**"?

()

2. How do you say "**I teach English.**"?

()

Workbook for Level 2 Lessons 11 - 20

3. How do you say "**I also teach English.**" or "**I even teach English.**" with the focus on the act of teaching?

()

Level 2 Lesson 15

1. What is the word for "**only**" that you attach after nouns and pronouns?

()

2. How do you say "**this only**"?

()

3. "To see" is 보다. [bo-da] How do you say "**to only see**"?

()

4. How do you say "**I only drink beer.**"

()

Workbook for Level 2 Lessons 11 - 20

Level 2 Lesson 16

1. How do you say **"It's a bit expensive."**?

()

2. How do you say **"It's very interesting."**?

()

3. How do you say **"It's really strange."**?

()

4. How do you say **"It's not that expensive."**?

()

Level 2 Lesson 17

1. "To go" is 가다. [ga-da] How do you say **"I can go."**?

()

Workbook for Level 2 Lessons 11 - 20

2. How do you say "**I can't do it.**"?

()

3. How do you say "**Can you do this?**"

()

4. How do you say "**Can we meet now?**"

()

Level 2 Lesson 18

1. "To do" is 하다. How do you say "**to do something well**" or "**to be good at doing something**"?

()

2. And how do you say "**to be bad at doing something**"?

()

3. What can you say to imply that you're either bad at doing something or unable to do something?

Workbook for Level 2 Lessons 11 - 20

()

4. How do you say "**I am good at swimming.**"?

()

Level 2 Lesson 19

1. "To eat" is 먹다. [meok-da] How do you say "**eating**" "**the act of eating**" or "**what you eat**" in Korean?

()

2. How do you say "**I like reading books.**"

()

3. How do you say "**I don't like spicy things.**"

()

Level 2 Lesson 20

Workbook for Level 2 Lessons 11 - 20

1. How do you say "I have to go."?

()

2. How do you say "I have to do it now."?

()

3. How do you say "Where do you have to go tomorrow?"

()

Answers

Level 2 Lesson 11

1. 저는 학생이에요. [jeo-neun hak-saeng-i-e-yo.]
2. 제 이름은 민수예요. [je i-reu-meun min-su-ye-yo.]
3. 저는 20살이에요. [jeo-neun seu-mu-sa-ri-e-yo.]
4. 저는 서울에 살아요. [jeo-neun seo-u-re sa-ra-yo.]

Level 2 Lesson 12

1. 9월 [gu-wol]
2. 일 [il]
3. 9월 25일 [gu-won i-si-bo-il]
4. 몇 월 [myeo-dwol]
5. 며칠 [myeo-chil]

Workbook for Level 2 Lessons 11 - 20

6. 생일이 몇 월 며칠이에요? [saeng-i-ri myeo-dwol myeo-chi-ri-e-yo?]

Level 2 Lesson 13

1. 저도 선생님이에요. [jeo-do seon-saeng-ni-mi-e-yo.]
2. 한국어도 공부해요? [han-gu-geo-do gong-bu-hae-yo?]
3. 저도 이것 주세요. [jeo-do i-geot ju-se-yo.] / 저 이것도 주세요. [jeo i-geot-do ju-se-yo.]

Level 2 Lesson 14

1. 보기도 하다 [bo-gi-do ha-da]
2. 저는 영어를 가르쳐요. [jeo-neun yeong-eo-reul ga-reu-chyeo-yo.]
3. 저는 영어를 가르치기도 해요. [jeo-neun yeong-eo-reul ga-reu-chi-gi-do hae-yo.]

Level 2 Lesson 15

1. 만 [man]
2. 이것만 [i-geot-man]
3. 보기만 하다 [bo-gi-man ha-da]
4. 맥주만 마셔요. [maek-ju-man ma-syeo-yo.]

Level 2 Lesson 16

1. 조금 비싸요. [jo-geum bi-ssa-yo.]
2. 아주 재미있어요. [a-ju jae-mi-i-sseo-yo.]
3. 정말 이상해요. [jeong-mal i-sang-hae-yo.]
4. 별로 안 비싸요. [byeol-lo an bi-ssa-yo.]

Level 2 Lesson 17

1. 갈 수 있어요. [gal su i-sseo-yo.]
2. 할 수 없어요. [hal su eop-seo-yo.] / 못 해요. [mot hae-yo.]
3. 이거 할 수 있어요? [i-geo hal su i-sseo-yo?]
4. 지금 만날 수 있어요? [ji-geum man-nal su i-sseo-yo?]

Workbook for Level 2 Lessons 11 - 20

Level 2 Lesson 18

1. 잘 하다 [jal ha-da]
2. 잘 못 하다 [jal mot ha-da]
3. 못 하다 [mot ha-da]
4. 저는 수영을 잘 해요. [jeo-neun su-yeong-eul jal hae-yo.]

Level 2 Lesson 19

1. 먹는 것 [meok-neun geot]
2. 책 읽는 것 좋아해요. [chaek ilk-neun geot jo-a-hae-yo.]
3. 매운 것 안 좋아해요. [mae-un geot an jo-a-hae-yo.]

Level 2 Lesson 20

1. 가야 돼요. [ga-ya dwae-yo.] / 가야 해요. [ga-ya hae-yo.]
2. 지금 해야 돼요. [ji-geum hae-ya dwae-yo.]
3. 내일 어디 가야 돼요? [nae-il eo-di ga-ya dwae-yo?]

We hope this workbook has been helpful to you.

All our regular lessons are free of charge and will stay that way. And for the products we have for sale in the Store section of the site, we want to try our best to keep their prices very low and reasonable so that MORE people can enjoy learning without spending too much money. One way you can help us make it possible to keep providing great learning material at inexpensive costs is to make donations. It doesn't have to be a lot, or you don't even have to if you don't want to or can't afford to at the moment. But any small donation you make will be an enormous amount help in keeping all our regular lessons completely FREE and our store products very inexpensive.

Thank you once again. **감사합니다!** We hope you will keep enjoying learning with us!

Workbook for Level 2 Lessons 21 - 30

Thank you for downloading this workbook from TalkToMeInKorean.com. This **WORKBOOK** has been made to help you reinforce what you have learned from our lessons number 11 to 20 in Level 2 at TalkToMeInKorean.com. The audio files for ALL of the Korean sentences that appear in this workbook are also available for download.

Please answer the following questions. The answers are on the last pages of this PDF.

Level 2 Lesson 21

1. **"To be fast"** is 빠르다 [ppa-reu-da]. How do you say **"to be faster"**?

()

2. **"To be good"** is 좋다 [jo-ta]. How do you say **"to be better"**?

()

3. How do you say **"Coffee is more expensive than water."**?

()

4. How do you say **"This book is more interesting than that book."**?

()

5. How do you say **"I came here earlier than yesterday."**?

Workbook for Level 2 Lessons 21 - 30

()

Level 2 Lesson 22

1. “**좋다** [jo-ta]” and “**좋아하다** [jo-a-ha-da]” are similar in meaning but quite different in usage. Which one is closer to “actively” liking something?

()

2. Using the verb “**좋다** [jo-ta]”, how do you say “**I like the Korean language.**”?

()

3. Using the verb “**좋아하다** [jo-a-ha-da]”, how do you say “**I like the Korean language.**”?

()

4. Using the verb “**좋아하다** [jo-a-ha-da]”, how do you say “**민수 likes 2NE1.**”?

()

5. Using the verb “**좋다** [jo-ta]”, how do you say “**What is your favorite?**”?

()

Workbook for Level 2 Lessons 21 - 30

Level 2 Lesson 23

1. "To sleep" is "자다 [ja-da]", how do you say "If I sleep now"?

()

Match the Korean words with their English equivalents.

2. 보다 [bo-da]	a. if you are going to watch it
3. 보면 [bo-myeon]	b. if you watch it, if I watch it
4. 봤으면 [bwa-sseu-myeon]	c. to watch
5. 볼 거면 [bol geo-myeon]	d. if I watched it, if they watched it

6. How do you say "If it rains tomorrow, I'm going to be at home."?

()

Level 2 Lesson 24

1. How do you say "still" and "not yet" in Korean?

()

Workbook for Level 2 Lessons 21 - 30

2. How do you say **"I don't know yet."** in Korean?

()

3. **"already"** is **"벌써 [beol-sseo]"**. How do you say **"Is it already over? Did it already finish?"**?

()

이미 means **"already"** as well, so basically **이미** and **벌써** seem to have the same meaning, but in fact, Koreans often distinguish the meanings of these two words.

4. How do you say **"He already graduated from school."** - You (and probably also the other person) have known about this fact since long before you say this sentence.)

그 사람은 () 학교를 졸업했어요.

[geu sa-ram-eun () hak-gyo-reul jo-reop-hae-sseo-yo]

5. How do you say **"He already graduated from school."** - You might have found out about this fact recently, or you already knew about this but the other person may have not known about it before you say it.

그 사람은 () 학교를 졸업했어요!

[geu sa-ram-eun () hak-gyo-reul jo-reop-hae-sseo-yo]

Level 2 Lesson 25

1. **"when"** is **"언제 [eon-je]"**, how do you say **"someday"** in Korean?

Workbook for Level 2 Lessons 21 - 30

()

2. "what" is "뭐" [mwo], how do you say "something" in Korean?

()

3. How do you say "When are you going to go to Japan?"?

()

4. How do you say "I'm going to go to Japan one day."?

()

5. How do you say "Something is strange."?

()

Level 2 Lesson 26

1. When you want to tell or ask someone to do something, you add the ending -아/어/여세요 [-a/eo/yeo-se-yo] to the verb stem. How do you say "Do it."?

()

Workbook for Level 2 Lessons 21 - 30

2. "To rest" is "쉬다 [shi-da]". How do you say "Get some rest."?

()

3. "To be careful" is "조심하다 [jo-sim-ha-da]". How do you say "Be careful!"?

()

4. "To study" is "공부하다 [gong-bu-ha-da]" and "doing something hard" is described as doing it "열심히 [yeol-sim-hi]". How do you say "Study hard!"?

()

Level 2 Lesson 27

1. The expression that makes a sentence mean "for me" or "do it for me" is -아/어/여 주세요 [-a/eo/yeo ju-se-yo]. How do you say "Do this for me, please."?

()

2. The verb for "to teach" is "가르치다 [ga-reu-chi-da]". How do you say "Please teach me English?" ?

()

Workbook for Level 2 Lessons 21 - 30

3. How do you say **"Please have a look at this."**?

()

4. **"Can you come with me?"** is **"같이 갈 수 있어요?"** [ga-chi gal su i-sseo-yo] ".
How do you add the nuance of **"Can you do me a favor and come with me?"** to the sentence?

()

Level 2 Lesson 28

1. The word that indicates a method in which or an ingredient with which an object is made is **"-으로 [eu-ro]"** or **"-로 [ro]"**. How do you say **"with a pen"**?

()

2. The word for **"a chair"** is **"의자 [eui-ja]"** and the word for **"wood"** is **"나무 [na-mu]"**. How do you say **"They made this chair with wood."**?

()

3. How do you say **"Please speak in Korean for me."**?

()

Workbook for Level 2 Lessons 21 - 30

4. How do you say **"What did you make this with?"** ?

()

Level 2 Lesson 29

1. What is the word for **"more"** in Korean?

()

2. What is the word for **"all"** in Korean?

()

3. How do you say **"Did you do all of it?"** or **"Did you finish doing it?"**?

()

4. How do you say **"I did all my homework."**?

()

5. How do you say **"I want to buy more."**?

()

Workbook for Level 2 Lessons 21 - 30

6. How do you say **"I want to buy all."**?

()

Level 2 Lesson 30

1. The word for **"to quit doing, to not do, to stop doing"** is **"말다 [mal-da]"**.
How do you say **"Don't do it."**?

()

2. **"To buy"** is **"사다 [sa-da]"**. How do you say **"Don't buy it."**?

()

3. The word for **"not yet"** or **"yet"** is **"아직 [a-jik]"**. How do you say **"Don't do it yet."**?

()

4. The word for **"to give up"** is **"포기하다 [po-gi-ha-da]"**. How do you say **"Don't give up."**?

()

5. **"A lot"** is **"많이 [ma-ni]"** and **"too much"** is **"너무 많이 [neo-mu ma-ni]"**. How do you say **"Don't buy too much of it."**?

Workbook for Level 2 Lessons 21 - 30



Answers

Level 2 Lesson 21

1. 더 빠르다 [deo ppa-reu-da]
2. 더 좋다 [deo jo-ta]
3. 커피는 물보다 더 비싸요. [keo-pi-neun mul-bo-da deo bi-ssa-yo]
4. 이 책은 저 책보다 더 재미있어요. [i chae-geun jeo chaek-bo-da deo jae-mi-i-sseo-yo]
5. 어제보다 더 일찍 왔어요. [eo-je-bo-da deo il-jjik wa-sseo-yo]

Level 2 Lesson 22

1. 좋아하다 [jo-a-ha-da]
2. 한국어 좋아요. [han-gu-geo jo-a-yo]
3. 한국어를 좋아해요. [han-gu-geo-reul jo-a-hae-yo] or 한국어 좋아해요. [han-gu-geo jo-a-hae-yo]
4. 민수 씨는 2NE1을 좋아해요. [Min-su ssi-neun 2NE1-eul jo-a-hae-yo]
5. 뭐가 제일 좋아요? [mwo-ga je-il jo-a-yo]

Level 2 Lesson 23

1. 만약 지금 자면 [man-yak ji-geum ja-myeon]
2. 보다 [bo-da] = c. to watch
3. 보면 [bo-myeon] = b. if you watch it, if I watch it
4. 봤으면 [bwa-sseu-myeon] = d. if I watched it, if they watched it
5. 볼 거면 [bol geo-myeon] = a. if you are going to watch it
6. 내일 비가 오면, 집에 있을 거예요. [nae-il bi-ga o-myeon, ji-be i-sseul-geo-ye-yo]

Level 2 Lesson 24

Workbook for Level 2 Lessons 21 - 30

1. 아직 [a-jik]
2. 아직 몰라요. [a-jik mol-la-yo]
3. 벌써 끝났어요? [beol-sseo kkeun-na-sseo-yo]
4. 이미 [i-mi]

그 사람은 이미 학교를 졸업했어요.

[geu sa-ram-eun i-mi hak-gyo-reul jo-reop-hae-sseo-yo]

5. 벌써 [beol-sseo]

그 사람은 벌써 학교를 졸업했어요!

[geu sa-ram-eun beol-sseo hak-gyo-reul jo-reop-hae-sseo-yo]

Level 2 Lesson 25

1. 언젠가 [eon-jen-ga]
2. 뭔가 [mwon-ga]
3. 언제 일본에 갈 거예요? [eon-je il-bon-e gal geo-ye-yo]
4. 언젠가 일본에 갈 거예요. [eon-jen-ga il-bon-e gal geo-ye-yo]
5. 뭔가 이상해요. [mwon-ga i-sang-hae-yo]

Level 2 Lesson 26

1. 하세요 [ha-se-yo]
2. 쉬세요 [swi-se-yo]
3. 조심하세요! [jo-sim-ha-se-yo]
4. 열심히 공부하세요! [yeol-sim-hi gong-bu-ha-se-yo]

Level 2 Lesson 27

1. 이거 해 주세요. [i-geo hae ju-se-yo]
2. 영어 가르쳐 주세요. [yeong-eo ga-reu-chyeo ju-se-yo]
3. 이거 봐 주세요. [i-geo bwa ju-se-yo]
4. 같이 가 줄 수 있어요? [ga-chi ga jul su i-sseo-yo]

Workbook for Level 2 Lessons 21 - 30

Level 2 Lesson 28

1. 펜으로 [peo-neu-ro]
2. 이 의자는 나무로 만들었어요. [i ui-ja-neun na-mu-ro man-deu-reo-sseo-yo]
3. 한국어로 말해 주세요. [han-gu-geo-ro mal-hae ju-seo-yo]
4. 이거 뭐로 만들었어요? [i-geo mwo-ro man-deu-reo-sseo-yo]

Level 2 Lesson 29

1. 더 [deo]
2. 다 [da]
3. 다 했어요? [da hae-sseo-yo]
4. 숙제를 다 했어요. [suk-je-reul da hae-sseo-yo]
5. 더 사고 싶어요. [deo sa-go si-peo-yo]
6. 다 사고 싶어요. [da sa-go si-peo-yo]

Level 2 Lesson 30

1. 하지 마세요. [ha-ji ma-se-yo]
2. 사지 마세요. [sa-ji ma-se-yo]
3. 아직 하지 마세요. [a-jik ha-ji ma-se-yo]
4. 포기하지 마세요. [po-gi-ha-ji ma-se-yo]
5. 너무 많이 사지 마세요. [neo-mu ma-ni sa-gi ma-se-yo]

We hope this workbook has been helpful to you.

Thank you once again. **감사합니다!** We hope you will keep enjoying learning with us!



Thank you for studying with us at TalkToMeInKorean.com. This PDF workbook has been built to help you reinforce what you have learned from Lessons 11 - 20 of Level 2 at TalkToMeInKorean. If you have any questions or feedback, please feel free to write to us!

LEVEL 3 LESSON 1

Welcome to Level 3 and congratulations on making it through to the 3rd level in the Talk-ToMeInKorean curriculum! In Level 3, we will be building upon what we've already introduced through Level 1 and Level 2, as well as reviewing some grammar points that we already covered in the previous levels.

Today, in this lesson, we are looking at a word that is very commonly used in everyday Korean not only for its original meaning, but for its more colloquial meaning as well.

Basic meaning

- 너무 [neo-mu] = too (much), excessively

The basic meaning of 너무 [neo-mu] is "too much" or "excessively."

For example:

너무 커요. [neo-mu keo-yo]

= It's too big.

너무 비싸요. [neo-mu bi-ssa-yo]

= It's too expensive.

너무 빨라요. [neo-mu ppal-la-yo]

= It's too fast.

Colloquial usage

- 너무 = very, quite (sometimes also used in short as 넘, only in spoken language)

Although the basic meaning of the word 너무 is "too much" or "excessively," in colloquial Ko-

LEVEL 3 LESSON 1

really, it also has the meaning of "very," "quite," or "really."

For example:

너무 맛있어요. [neo-mu ma-si-sseo-yo]

= It's really tasty.

너무 좋아요. [neo-mu jo-a-yo]

= It's really good.

= I'm really happy about it.

너무 잘 했어요. [neo-mu jal dwae-sseo-yo.]

= It's really well done.

= You did such a good job.

Sample sentences

1. 저 사람 너무 멋있어요! [jeo sa-ram neo-mu meo-si-sseo-yo.]

= That guy is really cool.

2. 이거 너무 좋아요. [i-geo neo-mu jo-a-yo.]

= I really like this.

3. 여기 너무 시끄러워요. [yeo-gi neo-mu si-kkeu-reo-wo-yo.]

= It's too noisy here.

4. 너무 좋아요. 그런데 너무 비싸요. [neo-mu jo-a-yo. geu-reon-de neo-mu bi-ssa-yo.]

= It's really good. But it's too expensive.

LEVEL 3 LESSON 1

The word **너무** used to be used only in negative contexts or sentences, but it gradually began to be used in positive meanings as well. Now, most people use **너무** in both ways.

ex)

너무 더워요. [neo-mu deo-wo-yo.] = It's too hot. / It's very hot.

너무 졸려요. [neo-mu jol-lyeo-yo.] = I'm too sleepy. / I'm very sleepy.

너무 바빠요. [neo-mu ba-ppa-yo.] = I'm too busy. / I'm very busy.

너무 is usually combined with adjectives but it can also be used with verbs as well.

ex)

너무 보고 싶어요. [neo-mu bo-go si-peo-yo.] = I miss you/him/her/them so much.

LEVEL 3 LESSON 2

Now, everyone, it's time to start looking at more ways to make compound sentences in Korean. Of course there are many different ways to make compound nouns depending on what you want to say, but in this lesson, we are looking at how to use the verb ending **-고** [-go].

-고 [-go]

What does **-고** do? Do you remember the conjunction, **그리고** [geu-ri-go]? Yes, **그리고** means "and" or "and then" in Korean, and when you use **-고** after a verb stem, it has the same meaning as **그리고**. By using the verb ending **-고** instead of ending the sentence with just one verb and then starting the next one with **그리고**, you can save a lot of time and make the logic in your sentence more clear.

이 책은 재미있어요. 그리고 이 책은 싸요.

[i chae-geun jae-mi-i-sseo-yo. geu-ri-go i chae-geun ssa-yo.]

= This book is interesting. And this book is cheap.

But since you are talking about the same subject in the second sentence, you can just omit "이 책은".

▶ 이 책은 재미있어요. 그리고 싸요.

= This book is interesting. And (it's) cheap.

But you can make it even shorter and combine the two sentences together by saying:

▶ 이 책은 재미있고 싸요.

[i chae-geun jae-mi-it-go ssa-yo.]

LEVEL 3 LESSON 2

= This book is interesting and cheap.

Construction:

Verb stem + -고 + another verb

Ex) 이 책은 재미있고, 싸고, 좋아요.

[i chae-geun jae-mi-it-go, ssa-go, jo-a-yo.]

= This book is interesting, cheap and good.

Attention:

When you make a compound sentence in English using the conjunction "and" to connect two smaller sentences, you need to make the tenses of the verbs agree. However, in Korean, that's not absolutely necessary and sometimes it sounds even unnatural to try to use the same tenses for every verb, especially the future tense and the past tense. Most native Korean speakers usually just use the past tense or the future tense in only one last verb.

Past tense example:

어제 친구를 만났어요.

[eo-je chin-gu-reul man-na-sseo-yo.]

= I met a friend yesterday.

그리고 영화를 봤어요.

[geu-ri-go yeong-hwa-reul bwa-sseo-yo.]

= And I saw a movie.

Let's put the two sentences above together.

LEVEL 3 LESSON 2

어제 친구를 만났어요. 그리고 영화를 만났어요.

▶ 어제 친구를 만났고, 영화를 봤어요.

[eo-je chin-gu-reul man-nat-go, yeong-hwa-reul bwa-sseo-yo.]

= I met a friend yesterday and saw a movie.

But you can also say 어제 친구를 만나고, 영화를 봤어요. with the part "만나고" in the present tense.

Future tense example:

내일 영화를 볼 거예요.

[nae-il yeong-hwa-reul bol geo-ye-yo.]

= I will watch a movie tomorrow.

서점에 갈 거예요.

[seo-jeo-me gal geo-ye-yo.]

= I will go to a bookstore.

Let's put them together.

내일 영화를 볼 거예요. 그리고 서점에 갈 거예요.

▶ 내일 영화를 볼 거고, 서점에 갈 거예요.

[nae-il yeong-hwa-reul bol geo-go, seo-jeo-me gal geo-ye-yo.]

= I will watch a movie, and go to a bookstore.

LEVEL 3 LESSON 2

But you can also just say 내일 영화를 보고, 서점에 갈 거예요.

Remember?

Do you remember that 그리고 (or in this case, -고) has the meaning of "and after that" or "and then"? Therefore, making compound sentences using -고 is a good way of talking about things that happened or will happen in a sequence.

Sample sentences

1. 내일은 친구 만나고, 서점에 갈 거예요.

[nae-i-reun chin-gu man-na-go, seo-jeo-me gal geo-ye-yo.]

= As for tomorrow, I'm going to meet a friend and go to a bookstore.

2. 책 읽고, 공부하고, 운동했어요.

[chaek il-go, gong-bu-ha-go, un-dong-hae-sseo-yo.]

= I read a book, studied, and did some exercise.

3. 9월에는 한국에 가고, 10월에는 일본에 갈 거예요.

[gu-wo-re-neun han-gu-ge ga-go, si-wo-re-neun il-bo-ne gal geo-ye-yo.]

= In September I will go to Korea, and in October I will go to Japan.

4. 커피 마시고, 도너츠 먹고, 케익 먹고, 우유 마셨어요. 배 불러요.

[keo-pi ma-si-go, do-neo-cheu meok-go, ke-ik meok-go, u-yu ma-syeo-sseo-yo. bae bul-leo-

LEVEL 3 LESSON 2

yo.]

= I drank some coffee, ate a donut, ate some cake, and drank some milk. I'm full.

LEVEL 3 LESSON 3

This is a lesson where we will be looking at how to describe relative locations of things and people.

First of all, let's look at how to ask where something or someone is. The word for "where" is 어디 [eo-di] and the word for "to be" is 있다 [it-da]. So for the present tense, you can ask "어디 있어요?" [eo-di i-sseo-yo?]. Or if you want to be more accurate, you can add the location marking particle -에 [-e] and say 어디에 있어요? [eo-di-e i-sseo-yo?]

어디 있어요? [eo-di i-sseo-yo?]

= 어디에 있어요? [eo-di-e i-sseo-yo?]

= Where is it? / Where are you? / Where are they?

Now in order to give response to this question, you need to know these five one-syllable words.

앞 [ap] = front

뒤 [dwi] = back

옆 [yeop] = side

위 [wi] = top

밑 [mit] = bottom

To these words, you add -에 [-e], the location marking particle to use them with other words.

앞에 [a-pe] = in front of

뒤에 [dwi-e] = behind

옆에 [yeo-pe] = beside, next to

LEVEL 3 LESSON 3

위에 [wi-e] = over, on top of

밑에 [mi-te] = under, below

In English, these words come BEFORE the words that they modify, but in Korean, they come AFTER the words.

Examples:

자동차 [ja-dong-cha] = car, automobile

자동차 앞에 = in front of the car

자동차 뒤에 = behind the car

자동차 옆에 = beside the car, next to the car

자동차 위에 = on the car, on top of the car

자동차 밑에 = under the car

Combined with 있다:

자동차 앞에 있어요. = It's in front of the car.

자동차 뒤에 있어요. = It's behind the car.

자동차 옆에 있어요. = It's next to the car.

자동차 위에 있어요. = It's on top of the car.

자동차 밑에 있어요. = It's under the car.

If you remember, -에 [-e] is only used with the status of a person or an object, and when you want to express actions and behaviors that are happening, you need to use -에서 [-e-seo].

For example,



LEVEL 3 LESSON 3

Q: 친구를 어디에서 만날 거예요?

[chin-gu-reul eo-di-e-seo man-nal geo-ye-yo?]

= Where are you going to meet (your) friends?

**은행 [eun-haeng] = bank

A: 은행 앞에서 만날 거예요.

[eun-haeng a-pe-seo man-nal geo-ye-yo.]

= I'm going to meet (them) in front of the bank.

A: 은행 뒤에서 만날 거예요.

[eun-haeng dwi-e-seo man-nal geo-ye-yo.]

= I'm going to meet (them) behind the bank.

A: 은행 옆에서 만날 거예요.

[eun-haeng yeo-pe-seo man-nal geo-ye-yo.]

= I'm going to meet (them) beside the bank.

소파 위에서 자고 있어요.

[so-pa wi-e-seo ja-go i-sseo-yo.]

= I'm sleeping on the sofa.

나무 밑에서 책을 읽고 있어요.

[na-mu mi-te-seo chae-geul il-go i-sseo-yo.]

= I'm reading a book under the tree.

LEVEL 3 LESSON 4

There are times when you want to invite others to do something with you and ask "shall we do this together?" and there are also times when you are making assumptions and ask yourself or others "I wonder what the weather will be like tomorrow" or "what will he say to that?"

In Korean, you can use the same sentence ending for both of these purposes and more!

-(으)ㄴ 까요? [-(eu)l-kka-yo?]

Usage #1

- Asking oneself a question or showing doubt about something

Examples:

"I wonder what is in this bag?"

"Will he be alright?"

"Will it be hot tomorrow?"

"What will she say?"

etc.

Usage #2

- Raising a question and attracting attention of others

Examples:

"Why did this happen? What do you think, everyone?"

"What do you think life is?"

etc.

Usage #3

- Suggesting doing something together

LEVEL 3 LESSON 4

Examples:

"What shall we do now?"

"Shall we go to the movies?"

"Do you want me to help you?"

etc.

How do you know which of these meanings it takes?

- It's fairly clear and easy to see which meaning it takes when you look at the context.

Construction

1. Verb stems ending with a consonant + -을까요?

- 먹다 (to eat) becomes 먹을까요?

2. Verb stems ending with a vowel + -을까요?

- 보다 (to see) becomes 볼까요?

3. (Exception) Verb stems ending with ㅅ + -까요?

- 팔다 (to sell) becomes 팔까요?

Construction for the past tense

You can add the past tense suffix -았/었/였 right after the verb stem and before -(으)을까요 to make an assumption about a past event. Since this is in the past tense, it can ONLY be used for expressing doubt or curiosity.

Ex) 어제 Taliana가 한국에 왔을까요?

[eo-je Taliana-ga han-gu-ge wa-sseul-kka-yo?]

LEVEL 3 LESSON 4

= Do you think Taliana came to Korea yesterday?

More examples

1. 내일 비가 올까요?

[nae-il bi-ga ol-kka-yo?]

= Do you think it will rain tomorrow?

= I wonder if it will rain tomorrow.

= Will it rain tomorrow? What do you think?

(It CANNOT mean "shall we..." because "shall we ... rain tomorrow?" does not make sense.)

2. 내일 우리 영화 볼까요?

[nae-il u-ri yeong-hwa bol-kka-yo?]

= Shall we see a movie tomorrow?

= Do you want to see a movie together tomorrow?

(It CANNOT mean "I wonder if..." because "do you assume that we will see a movie tomorrow?" generally doesn't make sense.)

3. 이 사람은 누구일까요?

[i sa-ram-eun nu-gu-il-kka-yo?]

= Who do you think this person is?

= Who is this person, I wonder?

= I wonder who this person is.

4. 커피 마실까요? 맥주 마실까요?

LEVEL 3 LESSON 4

[keo-pi ma-sil-kka-yo? maek-ju ma-sil-kka-yo?]

= Shall we drink coffee? Shall we drink beer?

= Do you want to drink coffee or beer?

LEVEL 3 LESSON 5

In this lesson, we are going to look at how to say "approximately" or "about" when you talk about quantity, frequency, time, etc. There are many different ways you can say this in Korean, but the most commonly used expression is **쯤** [jjeum].

In English, "about", "approximately", and "around" are used BEFORE nouns. However, in Korean, the word **쯤** [jjeum] is used AFTER nouns.

Examples

1 o'clock = 한 시 [han si]

Around 1 o'clock = 한 시**쯤** [han si-jjeum]

1,000 won = 천 원 [cheon won]

About 1,000 won = 천 원**쯤** [cheon won-jjeum]

One month = 한 달 [han dal]

Approximately one month = 한 달**쯤** [han dal-jjeum]

4km = 4킬로미터 [sa kil-lo-mi-teo]

About 4 km = 4킬로미터 **쯤** [sa kil-lo-mi-teo jjeum]

Similar expressions

Similar words: 정도 [jeong-do], 약 [yak]

정도 [jeong-do] is used after nouns, just like **쯤** [jjeum], whereas **약** [yak] is used BEFORE nouns.

LEVEL 3 LESSON 5

한 달 [han dal] = one month

한 달쯤 [han dal-jjeum] = about a month

한 달 정도 [han dal jeong-do] = about a month

약 한 달 [yak han dal] = about a month

Note that 정도 has a space before it and 쯔 doesn't. Sometimes people also use 약 and 쯔 together or 약 and 정도 together.

약 한 달쯤 [yak han dal-jjeum] = about a month

약 한 달 정도 [yak han dal jeong-do] = about a month

Sample sentences

1. 100명쯤 왔어요.

[baek-myeong-jjeum wa-sseo-yo.]

= About 100 people came.

2. 독일에서 2년쯤 살았어요.

[do-gi-re-seo i-nyeon-jjeum sa-ra-sseo-yo.]

= I lived in Germany for about two years.

3. 언제쯤 갈 거예요?

[eon-je-jjeum gal geo-ye-yo?]

= About when are you going to go?

4. 내일 몇 시쯤 만날까요?

[nae-il myeot si-jjeum man-nal-kka-yo?]

LEVEL 3 LESSON 5

= Around what time shall we meet tomorrow?

5. 다섯 시쯤 어때요?

[da-seot si-jjeum eo-ttae-yo?]

= How about around five o'clock?

LEVEL 3 LESSON 6

Through our previous lessons, we have learned how to use the future tense. In this lesson, we are introducing one more way of talking about a future action and looking at how the two ways of talking about the future are different.

-(으)ㄹ 거예요 vs. -(으)ㄹ 게요

If you pronounce -(으)ㄹ 거예요 [-eu)l geo-ye-yo] very quickly, it sounds similar to -(으)ㄹ 게요 [-eu)l-ge-yo], so a lot of beginner-level and even advanced learners mix up the two very often, but in fact these two sentence endings for the future are used for distinctively different purposes.

Let's look at -(으)ㄹ 거예요 first.

-(으)ㄹ 거예요 [-eu)l geo-ye-yo] is the basic way to express a future plan or action and you attach this at the end of a verb stem.

하다 [ha-da] = to do

하 + -ㄹ 거예요 = 할 거예요 [hal geo-ye-yo] = I will do _____. / I am going to do _____.

보내다 [bo-nae-da] = to send

보내 + -ㄹ 거예요 = 보낼 거예요 [bo-nael geo-ye-yo] = I will send _____. / I am going to send _____.

웃다 [ut-da] = to laugh

웃 + -을 거예요 = 웃을 거예요 [u-seul geo-ye-yo] = I will laugh.

LEVEL 3 LESSON 6

With -(으)ㄹ 거예요, you are just expressing your intention or plan for a future action, or your expectation for a future state, and this is NOT related to or affected by the reaction or the request of the person you're talking to.

And now let's look at -(으)ㄹ 게요.

-(으) ㄹ 게요 [-(eu)ㄹ ge-yo] is also attached after a verb stem and also expresses the future, but it focuses more on your actions or decisions AS A REACTION TO or AS A RESULT OF what the other person says.

Let's compare the two forms.

1.

할 거예요 vs. 할게요

공부할 거예요.

[gong-bu-hal ge-ye-yo.]

= I'm going to study.

= I will study.

(Here, regardless of what the other person is saying, you were ALREADY planning to study so you will, and you are not changing your mind at all because of what the other person says.)

공부할게요.

[gong-bu-hal-ge-yo.]

= I will study.

LEVEL 3 LESSON 6

= (If you say so,) I will study.

= (Since the circumstances are like this,) I will study.

= (If you don't mind,) I will study.

(Here, the other person says something to you, and you think "Oh, in that case, I have to study," so you say "I will study then." Or you could be just saying it before the other person says anything, but after you say this, you wait for the other person's reaction to see if they have anything to say.)

2.

갈 거예요 vs. 갈게요

저도 갈 거예요.

[jeo-do gal geo-ye-yo.]

= I will go (there), too.

= I'm going to go, too.

= I'm coming along, as well.

저도 갈게요.

[jeo-do gal-ge-yo.]

= I will come along, too(, if you don't mind).

= (In that case,) I will go there, too.

= (OK, since you say so,) I will go, too.

So in summary, you use -(으)르게요 (instead of -(으)르 거예요) when:

1. you are changing your plan according to what the other person said

LEVEL 3 LESSON 6

2. you want to check what the other person thinks by saying something and seeing their reaction

3. you decide to do something because of something the other person said

More sample sentences:

1. 지금 어디예요? 지금 나갈게요.

[ji-geum eo-di-ye-yo? ji-geum na-gal-ge-yo.]

= Where are you now? I will go out now.

(+ if you don't mind/if you want me to/unless you don't want me to/what do you think about that?)

--> Here, if you say 지금 나갈 거예요, it means that regardless of where the other person is, you were already going to go out anyway, probably to an unrelated place.

2. 저 갈게요. 안녕히 계세요.

[jeo gal-ge-yo. an-nyeong-hi gye-se-yo.]

= I'm going to go. Take care.

(+ unless you want me to stay longer/unless there's something I have to stay longer to do)

--> Here, if you say 저 갈 거예요, it means you don't care whether the other person wants you to stay or not, and you will just leave any way, and in most cases, you don't want the other person to ask you to stay, and you won't even if you are asked to.

3. 그래요? 다시 할게요.

[geu-rae-yo? da-si hal-ge-yo.]

= Is that so? I'll do it again.

LEVEL 3 LESSON 6

4. 내일 4시쯤에 갈게요. 괜찮아요?

[nae-il ne-si-jjeu-me gal-ge-yo. gwaen-cha-na-yo?]

= I'll be there at around 4 o'clock tomorrow. Is that alright?

LEVEL 3 LESSON 7

In this lesson, we are going to look at another verb ending that you can use to connect two or more verbs in one sentence. We learned the verb ending -고 [-go] in one of our previous lessons; -고 [-go] is used to connect independent actions and states together in one sentence, but they do not necessarily have a strong logical relation to each other.

On the other hand, the verb ending we are looking at in this lesson, -아/어/여+서, is a verb ending that can show logical relation between the verbs.

Do you remember these two conjunctions- 그리고 and 그래서 (from Level 2 Lesson 3)?

그리고 [geu-ri-go] means "and," and 그래서 [geu-rae-seo] means "therefore/so".

The verb ending -고 [-go] has the same meaning as 그리고 [geu-ri-go], and the verb ending -아/어/여+서 has a similar meaning as 그래서 [geu-rae-seo].

Let's look at the construction and usages of -아/어/여+서 in more detail.

Construction

먹다 [meok-da] = to eat

먹 (verb stem) + 어서 = 먹어서

만들다 [man-deul-da] = to make

만들 (verb stem) + 어서 = 만들어서

하다 [ha-da] = to do

하 (verb stem) + 여서 = 해서

LEVEL 3 LESSON 7

오다 [o-da] = to come

오 (verb stem) + 아서 = 와서

Usages

1. Reason + -아/어/여서 + result
2. An action + -아/어/여서 + another action that takes place after the first action
3. An action + -아/어/여서 + the purpose of or the plan after the action
4. Some fixed expressions

Examples for usages

Usage 1

Reason + -아/어/여서 + result

Example:

비가 오다 (it rains) + 못 가다 (can't go)

--> 비가 와서 못 가요. [bi-ga wa-seo mot ga-yo.] = It rains, so I can't go.

--> 비가 와서 못 갔어요. [bi-ga wa-seo mot ga-sseo-yo.] = It rained, so I couldn't go.

** Note that the tense was expressed only through the last verb.

오늘은 바빠요. (Today, I'm busy.) + 영화를 못 봐요. (I can't see the movie.)

--> 오늘은 바빠서 영화를 못 봐요. [o-neu-reun ba-ppa-seo yeong-hwa-reul mot bwa-yo.]

= I'm busy today, so I can't watch the movie.

만나다 (to meet) + 반갑다 (to be glad to see someone)

LEVEL 3 LESSON 7

--> 만나서 반갑습니다. [man-na-seo ban-gap-seum-ni-da]

= I meet you so I'm glad. = It's nice to meet you.

--> 만나서 반가워요. [man-na-seo ban-ga-wo-yo]

= I'm glad to meet you. (Less formal than the sentence above)

Usage 2

An action + -아/어/여서 + another action that takes place after the first action

공원에 가다 (to go to the park) + 책을 읽다 (to read a book)

--> 공원에 가서 책을 읽을 거예요. [gong-wo-ne ga-seo chae-geul il-geul geo-ye-yo.]

= I'm going to go to the park and read a book.

** Note: This does NOT mean "I'm going to the park, so I'm going to read a book."

** Also note that the tense is expressed through the last verb here as well.

친구를 만나다 (to meet a friend) + 밥을 먹다 (to eat)

--> 친구를 만나서 밥을 먹었어요. [chin-gu-reul man-na-seo ba-beul meo-geo-sseo-yo.]

= I met a friend and ate together.

** Note that here, this sentence COULD mean that you met a friend so you ate together, but in most cases, it will mean that you met a friend AND THEN ate together after that.

--> 친구를 만나서 밥을 먹을 거예요. [chin-gu-reul man-na-seo ba-beul meo-geul geo-ye-yo.]

= I'm going to meet a friend and eat together.

Usage 3

An action + -아/어/여서 + the purpose of or the plan after the action

LEVEL 3 LESSON 7

돈을 모으다 (to save up, to save money) + 뭐 하다 (to do what)

--> 돈을 모아서 뭐 할 거예요? (do-neul mo-a-seo mwo hal geo-ye-yo?) = What are you going to do with the money you save up? (lit. You save up money and what will you do?)

케익을 사다 (to buy a cake) + 친구한테 주다 (to give to a friend)

--> 케익을 사서 친구한테 줄 거예요. [ke-i-geul sa-seo chin-gu-han-te jul geo-ye-yo.]

= I'm going to buy a cake to/and give it to a friend.

Usage 4

Fixed expressions

There are some fixed expressions that basically use the same -아/어/여서 structure in them but are not often used in other forms.

-에 따라서 [-e tta-ra-seo] = according to ~

Ex) 계획에 따라서 진행하겠습니다 [gye-hoe-ge tta-ra-seo jin-haeng-ha-ge-sseum-ni-da.]

= I'll proceed according to the plan.

예를 들어서 [ye-reul deu-reo-seo] = for example

Ex) 예를 들어서, 이렇게 할 수 있어요. [ye-reul deu-reo-seo, i-reo-ke hal su i-sseo-yo.]

= For example, you can do it like this.

LEVEL 3 LESSON 7

Sample sentences

1. 한국에 가서 뭐 할 거예요? [han-gu-ge ga-seo mwo hal geo-ye-yo?]

= After you go to Korea, what are you going to do?

2. 서울에 와서 좋아요. [seo-u-re wa-seo jo-a-yo.]

= Since I came to Seoul, I'm glad.

= I'm glad to have come to Seoul.

3. 술을 너무 많이 마셔서 머리가 아파요.

[su-reul neo-mu ma-ni ma-syeo-seo meo-ri-ga a-pa-yo.]

= I drank too much so my head is aching.

4. 비가 와서 집에 있었어요. [bi-ga wa-seo ji-be i-sseo-sseo-yo.]

= It rained so I stayed at home.

5. 요즘에 바빠서 친구들을 못 만나요.

[yo-jeu-me ba-ppa-seo chin-gu-deu-reul mot man-na-yo.]

= These days I'm busy so I can't meet my friends.

6. 열심히 공부해서 장학금을 받을 거예요.

[yeol-sim-hi gong-bu-hae-seo jang-hak-geu-meul ba-deul geo-ye-yo.]

= I'm going to study hard so I can get/and I will get a scholarship.

7. 한국어가 너무 재미있어서 매일 공부하고 있어요.

[han-gu-geo-ga neo-mu jae-mi-i-sseo-seo mae-il gong-bu-ha-go i-sseo-yo.]

= Korean is so much fun that I'm studying it everyday.

LEVEL 3 LESSON 8

In this lesson, we are going to look at how to say that something is like or looks like something else. (i.e. "You are like an angel," "This looks like coffee," or "You are like my teacher.")

First, let's look at how to say that something is similar to something else.

비슷하다 [bi-seu-ta-da] = to be similar

- Present tense: 비슷해요 [bi-seu-tae-yo] = it is similar

In order to say that A is similar to B, you need to use a particle that means "with" or "together with", which is **-랑** or **-하고**. (Go back to Level 2 Lesson 4 to review.)

A랑 비슷해요. [A-rang bi-seu-tae-yo.] = It's similar to A.

B하고 비슷해요. [B-ha-go bi-seu-tae-yo.] = It's similar to B.

Examples:

도쿄는 서울하고 비슷해요? = Is Tokyo similar to Seoul?

참외는 멜론하고 비슷해요. = 참외 (a type of fruit) is similar to melon.

Now, let's look at the word for "to be the same" in Korean.

같다 [gat-da] = to be the same

- Present tense: 같아요 [ga-ta-yo] = it's the same, they are the same

A랑 같아요. [A-rang ga-ta-yo.] = It's the same as A.

A하고 B는 같아요. [A-ha-go B-neun ga-ta-yo.] = A and B are the same.

LEVEL 3 LESSON 8

Examples:

이거랑 이거랑 같아요? [i-geo-rang i-geo-rang ga-ta-yo?] = Are this and this the same?

우리는 나이가 같아요. [u-ri-neun na-i-ga ga-ta-yo.] = We have the same age. (lit. "For us, the age is the same.")

Now you know how to use that something is similar to or the same as something else in Korean, using -랑 비슷하다 and -랑 같다.

But if you use the word **같다** [gat-da] which means "to be the same" **without the particle -랑 or -하고**, it takes a different meaning.

Construction

Noun + 같다 = to be like + Noun / to look like + Noun / to seem to be + Noun

Examples:

커피 같아요. [keo-pi ga-ta-yo] = It's like coffee. / It seems to be coffee. / It looks like coffee.

거짓말 같아요. [geo-jit-mal ga-ta-yo] = It seems to be a lie. / It sounds like a lie.

로봇 같아요. [ro-bot ga-ta-yo] = It's like a robot. / It seems to be a robot. / It looks like a robot.

Sample sentences:

1. 저 사람은 로봇 같아요. [jeo sa-ram-eun ro-bot ga-ta-yo.]

= That person is like a robot.

2. 경은 씨는 천사 같아요. [gyeong-eun ssi-neun cheon-sa ga-ta-yo.]

= Kyeong-eun is like an angel.

LEVEL 3 LESSON 8

3. 현우 씨는 천재 같아요. [hyeo-nu ssi-neun cheon-jae ga-ta-yo.]

= Hyunwoo seems to be a genius.

4. 그 이야기는 거짓말 같아요. [geu i-ya-gi-neun geo-jit-mal ga-ta-yo.]

= That story sounds like a lie.

5. 이 강아지는 고양이 같아요. [i go-yang-i-neun go-yang-i ga-ta-yo.]

= This puppy is like a cat.

**In this lesson, we looked at how to use 같아요 with nouns only. Let's look at how to use
같아요 with verbs and say many more things in the next lesson. Stay tuned!**

LEVEL 3 LESSON 9

In the previous lesson, we looked at how to use 같아요 [ga-ta-yo] after nouns to mean "it looks like" or "it seems to be" something.

Examples:

커피 같아요. [keo-pi ga-ta-yo.] = It looks like coffee. / I think it's coffee.

저 사람 소연 씨 같아요. [jeo sa-ram so-yeon ssi ga-ta-yo.] = That person looks like So-yeon. / I think that person is So-yeon.

In the examples above, both 커피 and 소연 씨 were nouns, so it is relatively simple to use 같아요 in the sentences. You just have to add 같아요 after the nouns.

However, when you want to use 같아요 with verbs, first you need to change the verb into its noun form. There are a few different ways to change a verb into a noun, but here, we are going to use the -ㄴ 것 form. We learned about this noun form in Level 2 Lesson 19.

Let's review a little bit.

1. Descriptive verbs

Verb stem + -(으)ㄴ 것

Ex) 예쁘다 [ye-ppeu-da] = to be pretty

예쁜 것 [ye-ppeun geot] = being pretty, something pretty, the thing that is pretty

2. Action verbs

- Present tense

Verb stem + -는 것

LEVEL 3 LESSON 9

Ex) 말하다 [mal-ha-da] = to talk, to speak, to say

말하는 것 [mal-ha-neun geot] = talking, what one is saying, the act of talking

- Past tense

Verb stem + -(으)ㄴ 것

Ex) 말한 것 [mal-han geot] = what one said, the fact that one talked

- Future tense

Verb stem + -(으)ㄹ 것

Ex) 말할 것 [mal-hal geot] = what one will say, the fact that one will talk

How to use 같아요 with verbs

Now that we've reviewed how to change verbs into the -ㄴ 것 noun forms, we are almost there! Since you already have the verbs in the noun forms, you just have to add 같아요 after the word 것.

-(으)ㄴ 것 같아요 = present tense for descriptive verbs / past tense for action verbs

-는 것 같아요 = present tense for action verbs

-(으)ㄹ 것 같아요 = future tense for action/descriptive verbs

What does -것 같아요 mean?

Even when 같아요 is combined with verbs, since the -것 part already makes them nouns, the basic meanings and usages are the same as "Noun + 같아요".

LEVEL 3 LESSON 9

1. "It looks like..."
2. "It seems to be..."
3. "To me it looks like..."
4. "I think it is..."
5. "I think it will..."
6. "I think it was...."

etc.

Examples

1. 이상하다 [i-sang-ha-da] = to be strange

이상하 + ㄴ 것 같아요 = 이상한 것 같아요 = It seems to be strange. / I think it's strange.

2. 눈이 오다 [nu-ni o-da] = to snow

눈이 오 + 는 것 같아요 = 눈이 오는 것 같아요 = It seems to be snowing. / I think it's snowing.

눈이 오 + ㄹ 것 같아요 = 눈이 올 것 같아요 = I think it will snow. / It seems like it will snow.

3. 이야기하다 [i-ya-gi-ha-da] = to tell, to talk

이야기하 + ㄴ 것 같아요 = 이야기한 것 같아요

= I think they told them. / It looks like they talked.

이야기하 + ㄹ 것 같아요 = 이야기할 것 같아요

= I think they will talk. / It seems like they will talk.

이야기하 + 는 것 같아요 = 이야기하는 것 같아요

= I think they are talking. / They seem to talk to each other.

LEVEL 3 LESSON 9

As you can see from the examples above, when you want to say "I think" in English, you can use 것 같아요 in Korean.

Sample sentences

1. 여기 비싼 것 같아요.

[yeo-gi bi-ssan geot ga-ta-yo.]

= I think this place is expensive.

= It looks expensive here.

= This place seems to be expensive.

2. 그런 것 같아요.

[geu-reon geot ga-ta-yo.]

= I think so.

= It seems to be so.

= It looks like it.

** Verb = 그렇다 (irregular) = to be so, to be that way

3. 이 영화 재미있을 것 같아요.

[i yeong-hwa jae-mi-i-sseul geot ga-ta-yo]

= I think this movie will be interesting.

= This movie looks like it will be interesting (to watch).

4. 이 가방, 여기에서 산 것 같아요.

[i ga-bang, yeo-gi-e-seo san geot ga-ta-yo.]

= This bag, it seems like we bought it here.

= I think I bought this bag here.

LEVEL 3 LESSON 9

5. 아마 안 할 것 같아요.

[a-ma an hal geot ga-ta-yo.]

= I think I probably won't do it.

= It looks like we are probably not going to do it.

LEVEL 3 LESSON 10

In this lesson, we are going to learn how to say "before -ing" in Korean. As with many Korean expressions and prepositions, the order is the opposite from English. In English, the word "before" goes before the clause or the word, but in Korean this part goes after.

The key letter here is 전 [jeon]. The Chinese character for 전 is 前 and it means "before," "front," or "earlier". To this noun, you add the particle -에 [-e] to make it a preposition.

전에 = before (+ noun)

수업 전에 [su-eop jeo-ne] = before class

일요일 전에 [i-ryo-il jeo-ne] = before Sunday

1시 전에 [han-si jeo-ne] = before 1 o'clock

Since 전에 is used after nouns, in order to use it with verbs, like "before going" or "before leaving", you need to change the verbs into nouns.

In our previous lesson, to use verbs before 같다, we changed them into the -ㄴ 것 form, but here, you need to change verbs into the -기 form, the first noun form of verbs that we learned here at TalkToMeInKorean.com.

가다 --> 가기 (going)

사다 --> 사기 (buying)

먹다 --> 먹기 (eating)

+ 전에

--> 가기 전에 = before going

--> 사기 전에 = before buying

LEVEL 3 LESSON 10

--> 먹기 전에 = before eating

Examples

집에 가다

--> 집에 가기 전에 [ji-be ga-gi jeo-ne]

= before going home, before you go home

공부하다

--> 공부하기 전에 [gong-bu-ha-gi jeo-ne]

= before studying, before you study

돈을 내다

--> 돈을 내기 전에 [do-neul nae-gi jeo-ne]

= before paying money, before you pay money

Sample sentences

1. 여기 오기 전에 뭐 했어요?

[yeo-gi o-gi jeo-ne mwo hae-sseo-yo?]

= What did you do before you came here?

2. 집에 가기 전에 술 마실 거예요.

[ji-be ga-gi jeo-ne sul ma-sil geo-ye-yo.]

= I'm going to drink before I go home.

** 집에 가다 = to go back home

3. 들어오기 전에 노크 하세요.

LEVEL 3 LESSON 10

[deu-reo-o-gi jeo-ne no-keu ha-se-yo.]

= Knock before you come in.

** 들어오다 = to come in

4. 사기 전에 잘 생각하세요.

[sa-gi jeo-ne jal saeng-ga-ka-se-yo.]

= Think well before you buy it.

** 사다 = to buy

5. 도망가기 전에 잡으세요.

[do-mang-ga-gi jeo-ne ja-beu-se-yo.]

= Catch him before he runs away.

** 도망가다 = to run away

LEVEL 3 LESSON 11

You have learned a lot about Korean verbs so far - conjugations, rules, etc. But just like many other languages, Korean has some irregularities as well, which people started using more and more often so they have become a fixed rule now.

Korean has much fewer verb irregularities than some other languages do, but you will encounter these irregularities everywhere as you learn and speak Korean. We would like to introduce one of them in this lesson.

ㅁ irregular

This means that if verbs have ㅁ at the end of their verb stems, and they are followed by a suffix that starts with a vowel, the ㅁ part will change to 오 or 우.

If the vowel before ㅁ is 오, you change ㅁ to 오.

If the vowel before ㅁ is not 오, you change ㅁ to 우.

Example

돕다 [dop-da] = to help

= 도 + ㅁ + 다

--> 도 + 오 + 아요 = 도와요

** Note that it is **NOT** 돕아요

어렵다 [eo-ryeop-da] = to be difficult

= 어려 + ㅁ + 다

--> 어려 + 우 + 어요. = 어려워요.

LEVEL 3 LESSON 11

[present tense] 어려워요

[past tense]어려웠어요

[future tense]어려울 거예요

춥다 [chup-da] = to be cold

--> 추 + 우 + 어요 = 추워요.

[present tense] 추워요

[past tense] 추웠어요

[future tense] 추울 거예요

Some other irregular words:

눅다 [nup-da] = to lie down

굽다 [gup-da] = to bake

덥다 [deop-da] = to be hot (weather)

쉽다 [swip-da] = to be easy

맵다 [meap-da] = to be spicy

귀엽다 [gwi-yeop-da] = to be cute

싫다 [mip-da] = to hate, to be dislikeable

아름답다 [a-reum-dap-da] = to be beautiful

Remember that these verbs have irregular forms ONLY WHEN the suffix coming after them start with a VOWEL. So if you have suffixes like -는 or -고, they still keep the ㅁ.

Irregularities in irregular verbs

Although the ㅁ irregular rule is applied to most verbs that have ㅁ in them, some verbs do

LEVEL 3 LESSON 11

not follow this rule.

Action verbs

- 입다 [ip-da] = to wear
- 잡다 [jap-da] = to catch
- 씹다 [ssip-da] = to bite

Descriptive verbs

- 좁다 [job-da] = to be narrow
- 넓다 [neolp-da] = to be wide

These words still keep their ㅁ in front of vowels.

Ex) 입다 --> 입어요 (Not 이워요)

Ex) 좁다 --> 좁아요 (Not 조아요)

Sample sentences

1. 이 문제는 어려워요.

[i mun-je-neun eo-ryeo-wo-yo.]

= This problem is difficult.

2. 이거 너무 귀여워요.

[i-geo neo-mu gwi-yeo-wo-yo.]

= This is so cute.

3. 서울은 겨울에 정말 추워요.

[han-gu-geun gyeo-eu-re jeong-mal chu-wo-yo.]

LEVEL 3 LESSON 11

= In Seoul, it's really cold in winter.

4. TTMIK에서 공부하면, 한국어 공부가 쉬워요.

[ttmik-e-seo gong-bu-ha-myeon, han-gu-geo gong-bu-ga swi-wo-yo.]

= If you study at TTMIK, studying Korean is easy.

LEVEL 3 LESSON 12

We have introduced a few different conjugations so far through our previous lessons, and today we have one more interesting conjugation word to introduce.

The word is **그래도 [geu-rae-do]**.

(In Level 2 Lesson 3, we introduced 그래서 [geu-rae-seo], which means "so", "therefore", and 그래도 is only different at the end.)

그래도 means "but still", "however", or "nonetheless".

Ex)

비가 와요. 그래도 갈 거예요?

[bi-ga wa-yo. geu-rae-do gal geo-ye-yo?]

= It's raining. Are you still going?

Let's break it down:

그래도 = 그래 + 도

- 그래 = 그렇게 해 (to do it in such a way, to do that)

- 도 = also, too, even

So the literal meaning of "그래 + 도" is "even if you do that" "even if that happens" or "if you do that too" and the meaning of "still" is added to the context.

Sample sentences

1. 한국어는 어려워요. 그래도 재미있어요.

[han-gu-geo-neun eo-ryeo-wo-yo. geu-rae-do jae-mi-i-sseo-yo.]

LEVEL 3 LESSON 12

= Korean is difficult. But still, it is interesting.

2. 어제는 비가 왔어요. 그래도 축구를 했어요.

[eo-je-neun bi-ga wa-sseo-yo. geu-rae-do chuk-gu-reul hae-sseo-yo.]

= Yesterday, it rained. But still, we played soccer.

3. 저도 돈이 없어요. 그래도 걱정하지 마세요.

[jeo-do do-ni eop-seo-yo. geu-rae-do geok-jeong-ha-ji ma-se-yo.]

= I don't have money, either. But still, don't worry.

4. 노래방에 가야 돼요. 그래도 노래 안 할 거예요.

[no-rae-bang-e ga-ya dwae-yo. geu-rae-do no-rae an hal geo-ye-yo.]

= I have to go to a 노래방. But still, I'm not going to sing.

5. 요즘 바빠요. 그래도 한국어를 공부하고 있어요.

[yo-jeum ba-ppa-yo. geu-rae-do han-gu-geo-reul gong-bu-ha-go i-sseo-yo.]

= I'm busy these days. But I'm still studying Korean.

LEVEL 3 LESSON 13

Korean and English are different in many ways, but one of the key differences is that in Korean, "adjectives" also take the form of "verbs". For example, if you say "beautiful" in English, that is an adjective and you can look it up in the dictionary, but in Korean, you can only find 예쁘다 [ye-ppeu-da] in the dictionary, which is in the verb form and means "to be beautiful" and you can't find 예쁜 [ye-ppeun], which means "beautiful", in the dictionary.

Therefore, all the adjectives in English have to be in the "to be + adjective" form in order to mean the same thing as the Korean descriptive verbs.

Examples

싸다 [ssa-da]

--> It does NOT mean "cheap". It means "to be cheap".

바쁘다 [ba-ppeu-da]

--> It does NOT mean "busy". It means "to be busy".

Since the "adjectives" are presented in the form of "descriptive verbs" in Korean, you can conjugate them just like other "action verbs" whereas the adjectives never change forms.

For example, if you say "It is fun." "It was fun." and "It will be fun.", the word "fun" does not change its form. But in Korean, since the descriptive verbs are conjugated, you change 재미있다 [jae-mi-it-da] to 재미있어요 [jae-mi-i-sseo-yo] (present tense), 재미있었어요 [jae-mi-i-sseo-sseo-yo] (past tense), and 재미있을 거예요 [jae-mi-i-sseul geo-ye-yo] (future tense).

LEVEL 3 LESSON 13

What if you want to use them as adjectives?

Good question. When you want to use descriptive verbs in the adjective form, you need to change them to the -(으)ㄴ form.

- Verb stems ending with a vowel + -ㄴ
- Verb stems ending with a consonant + -은

Examples

작다 [jak-da] = to be small

--> 작 + -은 = 작은 [ja-geun] = small

빠르다 [ppa-reu-da] = to be fast

--> 빠르 + -ㄴ = 빠른 [ppa-reun] = fast

조용하다 [jo-yong-ha-da] = to be quiet

--> 조용하 + -ㄴ = 조용한 [jo-yong-han] = quiet

비싸다 [bi-ssa-da] = to be expensive

--> 비싸 + -ㄴ = 비싼 [bi-ssan] = expensive

Exceptions

하얗다 --> 하얀 [ha-yan] = white [NOT 하얗은]

그렇다 --> 그런 [geu-reon] = such [NOT 그렇은]

달다 --> 단 [dan] = sweet [NOT 달은]

LEVEL 3 LESSON 13

Common Mistake

A lot of people make the mistake of trying to say "to be (이에요)" + "adjective" just like in English.

예쁜 이에요 (x)

비싼 이에요 (x)

This is incorrect. Since all the "adjectives" in Korea are "descriptive verbs", you need to conjugate them like verbs:

예쁘다 --> 예뻐요 (o)

비싸다 --> 비싸요 (o)

Sample sentences

1. 좋은 아이디어예요.

[jo-eun a-i-di-eo-ye-yo.]

= It's a good idea.

2. 이상한 사람이에요.

[i-sang-han sa-ra-mi-e-yo.]

= He's a strange person.

3. 더 작은 가방 있어요?

[deo ja-geun ga-bang i-sseo-yo?]

= Do you have a smaller bag?

LEVEL 3 LESSON 13

4. 시원한 커피 마시고 싶어요.

[si-won-han keo-pi ma-si-go si-peo-yo.]

= I want to drink some cold coffee.

5. 나쁜 사람이에요.

[na-ppeun sa-ram-i-e-yo]

= He is a bad person.

LEVEL 3 LESSON 14

In the previous lesson, we looked at how to conjugate descriptive verbs and make adjectives in Korean. You are now familiar with the fact that Korean and English have different systems when it comes to using adjectives. But that's not it. In this lesson, let us look at how to make adjectives out of verbs.

Again, "adjectives" are a part of speech that modifies nouns (usually) in front of them (i.e. "good" in "good idea" and "awesome" in "awesome music"). And in Korean, not only descriptive verbs but also "action verbs" can be used as adjectives, or more precisely, used in the form of adjectives.

Example of descriptive verbs used as adjectives

Nice person (nice + person)

= descriptive verb 좋다 + 사람 = 좋은 사람

Fun game (fun + game)

= descriptive verb 어렵다 + 게임 = 어려운 게임

Examples of action verbs used as adjectives

노래하는 사람 [no-rae-ha-neun sa-ram]

= 노래하다 (to sing) + 사람 (person)

= (the/a) person who sings

좋아하는 책 [jo-a-ha-neun chaek]

= 좋아하다 (to like) + 책 (book)

= (the/a) book that I like

---> book who likes (x)

LEVEL 3 LESSON 14

As you can see above, when verbs are changed into the form of adjectives, the meaning can depend on the context, so what you have to do is just know that the adjective is somehow modifying the noun, and from the overall context, figure out what the adjective part means.

Conjugation

: Verb stem + -는

(Verb stems ending with ㄹ drop the ㄹ and are followed by -는)

The adjective part in certain sentences can be longer than just one word.

For example:

좋아하다 [jo-a-ha-da] = to like, to love

Adjective form: 좋아하는 [jo-a-ha-neun]

좋아하는 책 = a book that I/you/they/someone like(s)

내가(제가) 좋아하는 책 = a book that I like

(Here, "내가 좋아하는" is the adjective part.)

내가(제가) 안 좋아하는 책 = a book that I don't like

(Here, "내가(제가) 안 좋아하는 책" is the adjective part.)

Depending on the context and the use of particles, the entire meaning can change.

LEVEL 3 LESSON 14

Now you know that 좋아하는 is the adjective form of 좋아하다 and that it means "that I/ someone like(s). But the meaning can change depending on which particle is used.

Example:

좋아하는 사람 [jo-a-ha-neun sa-ram]

= someone that someone likes

= someone I like

민지가 좋아하는 사람 [min-ji-ga jo-a-ha-neun sa-ram]

= someone that Minji likes

민지를 좋아하는 사람 [min-ji-reul jo-a-ha-neun sa-ram]

= someone that likes Minji

Sample sentences

1. 이 노래는 제가 좋아하는 노래예요.

[i no-rae-neun je-ga jo-a-ha-neun no-rae-ye-yo.]

= This song is a song that I like.

2. 자주 먹는 한국 음식 있어요?

[ja-ju meok-neun han-guk eum-sik i-sseo-yo?]

= Is there any Korean food that you eat often?

3. 자주 가는 카페 있어요?

[ja-ju ga-neun ka-pe i-sseo-yo?]

LEVEL 3 LESSON 14

= Is there a cafe that you go to often?

4. 요즘 좋아하는 가수는 누구예요?

[yo-jeum jo-a-ha-neun ga-su-neun nu-gu-ye-yo?]

= Which singer do you like these days?

5. 요즘 공부하고 있는 외국어는 일본어예요.

[yo-jeum gong-bu-ha-go it-neun oe-gu-geo-neun il-bo-neo-ye-yo.]

= The foreign language I am studying these day is Japanese.

6. 눈이 오는 날에는 영화 보고 싶어요.

[nu-ni o-neun na-re-neun yeong-hwa bo-go si-peo-yo.]

= On a day when it snows, I want to see a movie.

7. 저기 있는 사람, 아는 사람이에요?

[jeo-gi it-neun sa-ram, a-neun sa-ra-mi-e-yo?]

= That person who is over there, is it someone that you know?

8. 배 곯은 사람 (있어요)?

[bae go-peun sa-ram (i-sseo-yo)?]

= Anybody (who is) hungry?

LEVEL 3 LESSON 15

안녕하세요! Welcome back to another lesson on conjunctions!

Today we are introducing a conjunction that means "in that case" or "if so".

그러면 [geu-reo-myeon] = in that case, if so, then

Do you remember -(으)면?

Yes, we introduced it in Level 2 Lesson 23.

만약 -(으)면 or -(으)면 means "if" or "in case".

그러면 is a combination of 그렇다 [geu-reot-ta], which means "to be so" and -면.

A shorter version of 그러면

In spoken Korean (and very often also in casual written Korean), instead of saying 그러면, people just use the shortened form of 그럼 [geu-reom]. Try not to confuse it with 그런 [geu-reon], which means "such".

Sample sentences

1. 그러면 이거는 뭐예요?

[geu-reo-myeon i-geo-neun mwo-ye-yo?]

= Then, what is THIS?

2. 지금 바빠요? 그럼 언제 안 바빠요?

[ji-geum ba-ppa-yo? geu-reom eon-je an ba-ppa-yo?]

= You're busy now? Then WHEN are you not busy?

LEVEL 3 LESSON 15

3. 한국 음식 좋아해요? 그러면 김밥도 좋아해요?

[han-guk eum-sik jo-a-hae-yo? geu-reo-myeon gim-bap-do jo-a-hae-yo?]

= Do you like Korean food? Then do you like kimbap too?

4. 진짜요? 그럼 이제 어떻게 해요?

[jin-jja-yo? geu-reom i-je eo-tteo-ke hae-yo?]

= Really? If so, what do we do now?

5. 그럼 이거는 어때요?

[geu-reom i-geo-neun eo-ttae-yo?]

= Then how about this one?

LEVEL 3 LESSON 16

안녕하세요! Sometimes when you want to do things with other people, you will say things like "Let's go." "Let's do it." or "Let's start." Today in this lesson, let's look at how to say "let's" in Korean.

There are a few different ways to say this in Korean:

1. -아/어/여요 [polite/plain]
2. -(으)시죠 [honorific]
3. -자 [informal]
4. -(으)래요? [polite/casual]
5. -(으)실래요? [polite/formal]

Example:

시작하다 [si-ja-ka-da] = to start, to begin

1. 시작해요. [si-ja-kae-yo] = Let's start. (plain)
2. 시작하시죠. [si-ja-ka-si-jyo] = Let's start. (honorific)
3. 시작하자. [si-ja-ka-ja] = Let's start. (informal)
4. 시작할래요? [si-ja-kal-lae-yo?] = Shall we start? (polite/casual)
5. 시작하실래요? [si-ja-ka-sil-lae-yo?] = Shall we start? (polite/formal)

But the most frequently used one is number 1, -아/어/여요 [-a/eo-/yeo-yo]. The other forms will all be covered through our future lessons.

-아/어/여요

Yes. This is the same form as the plain present tense, but don't worry. You can tell the difference quite easily through context. Let's see how the meaning can be clear through some examples.

LEVEL 3 LESSON 16

1. 저도 서점에 갈 거예요. 같이 가요!

[jeo-do seo-jeo-me gal geo-ye-yo. ga-chi ga-yo!]

= I'm going to the bookstore, too. Let's go together!

2. 배 안 고파요? 우리 햄버거 먹어요.

[bae an go-pa-yo? u-ri haem-beo-geo meo-geo-yo.]

= Aren't you hungry? Let's eat hamburgers.

3. 지금 두 시예요. 세 시에 여기에서 만나요.

[ji-geum du si-ye-yo. se si-e yeo-gi-e-seo man-na-yo.]

= It's two o'clock now. Let's meet here at three o'clock.

4. 저 금요일까지 바빠요. 토요일에 시작해요. 어때요?

[jeo geu-myo-il-kka-ji ba-ppa-yo. to-yo-i-re si-ja-kae-yo. eo-ttae-yo?]

= I'll be busy until Friday. Let's start on Saturday. What do you think?

5. 다른 데 가요. 여기 안 좋은 것 같아요.

[da-reun de ga-yo. yeo-gi an jo-eun geot ga-ta-yo.]

= Let's go somewhere else. I think this place is not so good.

LEVEL 3 LESSON 17

In this lesson, we are introducing an expression that means **"in order to", "in order for", or "for the sake of"**. The key word in the expression is **위하다** [wi-ha-da].

위하다 [wi-ha-da] means **"to make efforts for something/someone"** or **"to do something to best benefit someone"**, but it is rarely used as is without being changed to another form.

위해 = 위해서 = in order to/for

위하다 is rarely used and it is changed to forms like **"위해"** or **"위해서"** to mean "in order to", "in order for", or "for the sake of".

위해 = 위하여

위해서 = 위하여서

Sometimes, you will see 위하여 instead of 위해. 위하여 is the original conjugation form but in everybody language, 위하여 is shortened to 위해 (both in written and spoken languages) for the ease of pronunciation.

Using 위해/위해서 with nouns

Noun + -를 위해/위해서

= in order for + noun

= for the sake of + noun

LEVEL 3 LESSON 17

Ex)

건강을 위해서 [geon-gang-eul wi-hae-seo]

= for health, for the sake of health, in order to be healthy

회사를 위해서 [hoe-sa-reul wi-hae-seo]

= for the company, for the good of the company

Using 위해/위해서 with verbs

Verb stem + -기 위해/위해서

Ex)

한국에 가기 위해서 [han-gu-ge ga-gi wi-hae-seo]

= in order to go to Korea

일본어를 배우기 위해서 [il-bo-neo-reul bae-u-gi wi-hae-seo]

= in order to learn Japanese

** Please note that using 위해/위해서 in a sentence makes your sentence sound very formal. You will hear/see this a lot in song lyrics, books and new articles, but not in casual spoken conversations.

Sample sentences

1. 슈퍼맨은 세계 평화를 위해서 일해요.

[su-peo-mae-neun se-gye pyeong-hwa-reul wi-hae-seo i-rae-yo.]

= Superman works for world peace.

LEVEL 3 LESSON 17

2. 저는 한국에 가기 위해서 열심히 공부했어요.

[jeo-neun han-gu-ge ga-ga wi-hae-seo yeol-si-mi gong-bu-hae-sseo-yo.]

= I studied hard in order to go to Korea.

3. 부모님을 위해서 돈을 모았어요.

[bu-mo-ni-meul wi-hae-seo do-neul mo-a-sseo-yo.]

= I saved up money for my parents.

4. 건강을 위해서 매일 운동하고 있어요.

[geon-gang-eul wi-hae-seo mae-il un-dong-ha-go i-sseo-yo.]

= I am exercising everyday for my health.

LEVEL 3 LESSON 18

In this lesson, we are looking at how to say "nothing but" or "only" in Korean. We already introduced one expression that means "only" in Level 2 Lesson 15, which is -만 [-man].

The expression we are introducing in this lesson consists of two parts:

"밖에 + negative verb conjugation"

The way this works is similar to saying "nothing else but" or "do not do anything other than" in English.

밖 = outside, outdoors

밖에 = outside something, other than something, out of the range of something

밖에 + negative verb conjugation = ONLY + verb

Construction:

Noun + 밖에 + negative conjugation

Examples:

콜라(를) 마시다 [kol-la(-reul) ma-si-da] = to drink cola

콜라 밖에 안 마시다 [kol-la ba-kke an ma-si-da] = to only drink cola

돈(이) 있다 [do-ni it-da] = to have money

돈(이) 없다 [do-ni eop-da] = to not have money

돈 밖에 없다 [don ba-kke eop-da] = to have nothing but money, to only have money

Are -만 and 밖에 interchangeable?

The answer is yes and no. Sometimes, they are interchangeable (and of course you have to

LEVEL 3 LESSON 18

change the verb in the negative form when you use 밖에) but 밖에 is generally more widely used over -만.

You can't use 밖에 with imperative sentences, including -아/어/여 주세요 ("do something for me"). So you have to use -만 with imperative sentences. (i.e. 이것만 주세요 = Give me this one only.)

And when the verb itself has a negative meaning, -만 is more commonly used than 밖에. (i.e. 저는 닭고기만 싫어해요 = I only hate chicken.)

Sample sentences

1.

한국인 친구가 한 명 밖에 없어요.

[han-gu-gin chin-gu-ga han myeon ba-kke eop-seo-yo.]

= I only have one Korean friend.

한국인 친구는 한 명 밖에 없어요.

[han-gu-gin chin-gu-neun han myeon ba-kke eop-seo-yo.]

= As for Korean friends, I only have one.

2.

한국어 조금 밖에 못 해요.

[han-gu-geo jo-geum ba-kke mot hae-yo.]

= I can only speak a little bit of Korean.

3.

LEVEL 3 LESSON 18

이것 밖에 없어요?

[i-geot ba-kke eop-seo-yo?]

= This is it?

= You only have this?

4.

우리 고양이는 참치 밖에 안 먹어요.

[u-ri go-yang-i-neun cham-chi ba-kke an meo-geo-yo.]

= My cat only eats tuna.

5.

왜 공부 밖에 안 해요?

[wae gong-bu ba-kke an hae-yo?]

= Why do you only study?

LEVEL 3 LESSON 19

There are a few different ways to say “**after -ing**” in Korean. Through this lesson, we will introduce the three most common ways to say it. These three expressions all share a common structure:

-(으)ㄴ + 다음에

-(으)ㄴ + 후에

-(으)ㄴ + 뒤에

These three all mean “**after -ing**”. Let’s look at the key nouns

다음 [da-eum] = next time, next

(i.e. 다음 주 = next week)

후 [hu] = after

(i.e. 오후 = afternoon)

뒤 [dwi] = behind, back

(i.e. 등 뒤 = behind the back)

The “**-(으)ㄴ**” part indicates that the action has been done, so it is already in the past tense form. After before this, you put the verb stem.

Verb stem + -(으)ㄴ + 다음(or 후/뒤)에 = after -ing

The meaning doesn’t change depending on the noun part, so these expressions are interchangeable.

Examples

편지를 받다 [pyeon-ji-reul bat-da] = to receive a letter

편지를 받은 다음에 [pyeon-ji-reul ba-deun da-eu-me] = after receiving a letter

LEVEL 3 LESSON 19

집에 가다 [ji-be ga-da] = to go home

집에 간 뒤에 [ji-be gan dwi-e] = after going home

책을 읽다 [chae-geul ilg-da] = to read a book

책을 읽은 후에 [chae-geul il-geun hu-e] = after reading a book

Sample sentences

1. 영화 본 다음에 우리 커피 마세요.

[yeong-hwa bon da-eu-me u-ri keo-pi ma-syeo-yo.]

= After watching the movie, let's drink coffee.

2. 점심을 먹은 다음에, 도서관에 갔어요.

[jeom-si-meul meo-geun da-eu-me, do-seo-gwa-ne ga-sseo-yo.]

= After having lunch, I went to the library.

3. 이거 한 다음에 뭐 할 거예요?

[i-geo han da-eu-me mwo hal geo-ye-yo?]

= After doing this, what are you going to do?

4. 그거요? 이거 한 뒤에 할게요.

[geu-geo-yo? i-geo han dwi-e hal-ge-yo.]

= That one? I'll do it after I do this.

5. 결정한 후에 연락 주세요.

[gyeol-jeong-han hu-e yeol-lak ju-se-yo.]

= Contact me after you decide.

LEVEL 3 LESSON 20

In Level 3 Lesson 12, we introduced a conjunction that means "but still" or "nevertheless," which is **그래도** [geu-rae-do]. Today we are introducing a verb ending that means the same thing as **그래도** but can be used to combine two sentences together.

-아/어/여도 [-a/eo/yeo-do] = even if, even though

Construction

- Verb stems ending with the vowel **ㅏ** or **ㅑ** are followed by **-아도**
- Verb stems ending with other vowels are followed by **-어도**
- Verb stems ending with **하** are followed by **-여도**

Examples

보다 [bo-da] = to see

--> **봐도** [bwa-do] = even if you see, even if you look

울다 [ul-da] = to cry

--> **울어도** [u-reo-do] even if you cry, even though you cry

공부하다 [gong-bu-ha-da] = to study

--> **공부해도** [gong-bu-hae-do] even if you study, even though you study

Combining two sentences together

요즘에 바빠요. + 그래도 운동은 하고 있어요.

[yo-jeu-me ba-ppa-yo] + [geu-rae-do un-dong-eun ha-go i-sseo-yo.]

= I'm busy these days. But still, I'm doing some exercise.

--> 요즘에 바빠도, 운동은 하고 있어요.

= Even though I'm busy these days, I'm still doing some exercise.

Sample sentences

LEVEL 3 LESSON 20

1. 집에 가도, 밥이 없어요.

[ji-be ga-do, ba-bi eop-seo-yo.]

= Even if I go home, there is no food.

2. 택시를 타도, 시간이 오래 걸려요.

[taek-si-reul ta-do, si-ga-ni o-rae geol-lyeo-yo.]

= Even if I take a taxi, it takes a long time.

3. 석진 씨는 제가 전화를 해도 안 받아요.

[seok-jin ssi-neun je-ga jeon-hwa-reul hae-do an ba-da-yo.]

= Even if I call him, 석진 doesn't answer.

4. 냄새는 이상해도 맛있어요.

[naem-sae-neun i-sang-hae-do ma-si-sseo-yo.]

= Even though the smell is weird, it's tasty.

5. 바빠도 한국에 갈 거예요.

[ba-ppa-do han-gu-ge gal geo-ye-yo.]

= Even if I'm busy, I will go to Korea.

LEVEL 3 LESSON 21

In this lesson, we are introducing a verb ending that has a very versatile meaning.

Let's look at the basic structures first. They are all very similar and all end with **-데**, but the words that come right before **"데"** change a bit.

1. **-는데** is used after action verbs, after 있다 and 없다, and after -았 or -겠.
2. **-은데** is used after descriptive verbs that have a last consonant in the verb stem, except for the consonant ㄹ.
3. **-ㄴ데** is used after descriptive verbs that end in a vowel or the consonant ㄹ (in this case, ㄹ is dropped), and after 이다 and 아니다.

Examples

1. 하다 [ha-da] --> 하는데 [ha-neun-de]
2. 있다 [it-da] --> 있는데 [it-neun-de]
3. 먹다 [meok-da] --> 먹는데 [meok-neun-de]
4. 예쁘다 [ye-ppeu-da] --> 예쁜데 [ye-ppeun-de]
5. 작다 [jak-da] --> 작은데 [ja-geun-de]

Usages

The usages of this ending is very diverse.

1. Explaining the background or the situation before making a suggestion, a request, or a question

Ex)

내일 일요일인데, 뭐 할 거예요?

[nae-il i-ryo-il-in-de, mwo hal geo-ye-yo?]

= It's Sunday tomorrow + (-ㄴ데) + what are you going to do?

2. Explaining the situation before explaining what happened

LEVEL 3 LESSON 21

Ex)

어제 자고 있었는데, 한국에서 전화가 왔어요.

[eo-je ja-go i-sseot-neun-de, han-gu-ge-seo jeon-hwa-ga wa-sseo-yo.]

= I was sleeping yesterday + (-는데) + I got a phone call from Korea.

3. Showing a result or situation that is contrasted from the previous action or situation

Ex)

아직 9시인데 벌써 졸려요.

[a-jik a-hop-si-in-de beol-sseo jol-lyeo-yo.]

= It's still 9 o'clock but I am already sleepy.

The second part (after -는데) can be omitted when the meaning can be easily implied.

Ex)

준비 많이 했는데(요)...

[jun-bi ma-ni haet-neun-de...]

= I prepared a lot, but...

4. Showing surprise or exclamation

Ex)

멋있는데(요)!

[meo-sit-neun-de!]

= Oh, that's cool!

5. Asking a question (expecting some explanation about a situation or behavior)

LEVEL 3 LESSON 21

Ex)

지금 어디에 있는데(요)?

[ji-geum eo-di-e it-neun-de(yo)?]

= So where are you now?

6. Expecting an answer or a response

Ex)

지금(요)? 지금 바쁜데(요).

[ji-geum(yo)? ji-geum ba-ppeun-de(yo).]

= Now? I'm busy now, so...

Sample sentences

1. 내일 친구 생일인데, 선물을 아직 못 샀어요.

[nae-il chin-gu saeng-il-in-de, seon-mu-reul a-jik mot sa-sseo-yo.]

= It's my friend's birthday tomorrow, but I haven't been able to buy a present.

2. 이거 일본에서 샀는데, 선물이에요.

[i-geo il-bo-ne-seo sat-neun-de, seon-mu-ri-e-yo.]

= I bought this in Japan, and it's a present for you.

3. 오늘 뉴스에서 봤는데, 그거 진짜예요?

[o-neul nyu-seu-e-seo bwat-neun-de, geu-geo jin-jja-ye-yo?]

= I saw it in the news today. Is that for real?

4. 이거 좋은데요!

[i-geo jo-eun-de-yo!]

= I like this! / This is good!

LEVEL 3 LESSON 21

5. 어? 여기 있었는데요.

[eo? yeo-gi i-sseot-neun-de]

= Huh? It was here...

6. 영화 재미있는데, 무서웠어요.

[yeong-hwa jae-mi-it-neun-de, mu-seo-wo-sseo-yo.]

= The movie is interesting, but it was scary.

7. 영화 봤는데, 무서웠어요.

[yeong-hwa bwat-neun-de, mu-seo-weo-sseo-yo.]

= I saw a movie, and it was scary.

8. 저 지금 학생인데, 일도 하고 있어요.

[jeo ji-geum hak-saeng-in-de, il-do ha-go i-sseo-yo.]

= I am a student now, but I'm working too.

LEVEL 3 LESSON 22

In this lesson, let's have a look at the expression **-(으)ㄹ 수도 있다** [-eu)l su-do it-da]. In fact, this is a combination of two grammar points that we covered in our previous lessons.

-(으)ㄹ 수도 있다 can be broken down into two parts:

1. **-(으)ㄹ 수 있다** was introduced in Level 2 Lesson 17 and it means **"can, to be able to"**.
2. **-도** was introduced in Level 2 Lesson 13 and it means **"also, too"**.

When these two expressions are combined into **-(으)ㄹ 수도 있다**, it means "it could..." "it's possible that..." or "it might...". In order to understand why **-(으)ㄹ 수도 있다** takes such meanings, we need to have a closer look at the expression **-(으)ㄹ 수 있다** first.

Basically, the word **수** [su] is a noun that is most commonly used in this structure and means "way" "method" or "idea". So **-(으)ㄹ 수 있다** means "there is a way to do...", "there is an idea for doing..." or "there is a possibility for doing...".

Therefore when the meaning of **-도** [-do], which is "also" or "too", is added to this, the sentence takes the meaning of "there is also the possibility of ...".

So even though sometimes **-(으)ㄹ 수도 있다** COULD mean "to be also able to do something", it usually means "it might" "it could" or "perhaps...".

Examples

1. **알다** [al-da] = to know (something, someone)

--> **알 수도 있다** [al su-do it-da] = might know (something, someone)

Ex) 제 친구가 알 수도 있어요. [je chin-gu-ga al su-do i-seo-yo]

= My friend might know (the person / the thing).

2. **만나다** [man-na-da] = to meet

--> **만날 수도 있다** [man-nal su-do it-da] = might meet

LEVEL 3 LESSON 22

Ex) 내일 다시 만날 수도 있어요. [nae-il da-si man-nal su-do i-sseo-yo]

= We might meet again tomorrow.

3. 작다 [jak-da] = to be small

--> **작을 수도 있어요** [ja-geul su-do i-sseo-yo] = might be small

Ex) 모자가 작을 수도 있어요. [mo-ja-ga ja-geul su-do i-sseo-yo]

= The hat could be small.

Sample sentences

1. 저 내일 올 수도 있어요.

[jeo nae-il ol su-do i-sseo-yo.]

= I might come here tomorrow.

2. 저 내일 안 올 수도 있어요.

[jeo nae-il an ol su-do i-sseo-yo.]

= I might not come here tomorrow.

3. 저 내일 못 올 수도 있어요.

[jeo nae-il mot ol su-do i-sseo-yo.]

= I might not be able to come here tomorrow.

4. 이거 가짜일 수도 있어요.

[i-geo ga-jja-il su-do i-sseo-yo.]

= This might be fake.

5. 정말 그럴 수도 있어요.

[jeong-mal geu-reol su-do i-sseo-yo.]

= It might really be so.

LEVEL 3 LESSON 23 - WORD BUILDER 1

Welcome to the 1st Word Builder lesson at TalkToMeInKorean.com! Word Builder lessons are designed to help you understand how to expand your vocabulary by learning/understanding some common and basic building blocks of Korean words. The words and letters that are introduced through the Word Builder lessons are not necessarily all Chinese characters (or 한자 [han-ja]). Even though many of them are based on Chinese characters, their meanings can be different from modern-day Chinese, and you don't have to memorize the Hanja characters themselves. Your goal through these lessons is to just understand how words are formed and remember the keyword in Korean and expand your Korean vocabulary from there.

Today's keyword is **학**.

The Chinese character for this word is 學.

The word 학 is related to "learning" "studying" and "school".

학 + 생(person, member, participant) = **학생** [hak-saeng] = student

학 + 교(school) = **학교** [hak-gyo] = school

학 + 원(house, garden) = **학원** [ha-gwon] = private institute

수(numbers) + 학 = **수학** [su-hak] = mathematics

과(subject, class, species) + 학 = **과학** [gwa-hak] = science

어(word) + 학 = **어학** [eo-hak] = language learning

언어(word+word) + 학 = **언어학** [eo-neo-hak] = linguistics

학 + 자(person) = **학자** [hak-ja] = scholar

유(to stay) + 학 = **유학** [yu-hak] = studying abroad

유학(studying abroad) + 생 = **유학생** [yu-hak-saeng] = student studying abroad

LEVEL 3 LESSON 23 - WORD BUILDER 1

전(to roll, to move) + 학 = **전학** [jeon-hak] = to change schools

전학(to change schools) + 생 = **전학생** [jeon-hak-saeng] = student who moved to another school

학 + 년(year) = **학년** [hak-nyeon] = school year

학 + 기(period) = **학기** [hak-gi] = semester

장(recommend) + 학 + 금(money) = **장학금** [jang-hak-geum] = scholarship

장 + 학 + 생 = **장학생** [jang-hak-saeng] = student on scholarship

복(return) + 학 + 생 = **복학생** [bok-hak-saeng]

= student who has returned to school (usually) after a long break

학 + 습(acquire) = **학습** [hak-seup] = learning, studies

한국어 학습 [han-gu-geo hak-seup] = Korean learning

독(alone) + 학 = **독학** [dok-hak] = self-study, studying by oneself

LEVEL 3 LESSON 24 - WORD BUILDER 1

Welcome to another lesson on irregularities. In this lesson, we are looking at the "르" irregular.

르 irregular is applied only to these three occasions:

Verb stem ending with -르 followed by

+ -아/어/여요

+ -아/어/여서

+ -았/었/였어요

In these cases, **르 is changed to ㄹ** and placed at the end of the previous vowel and you add **ONE MORE ㄹ** before the verb ending.

Even if the verb stem ends with -르 [reu], if it is then followed by other endings such as -아/어/여고, -는데, etc, -르 stays the same.

Examples

고르다 [go-reu-da] = to choose, to pick, to select

--> 골라요 [gol-la-yo] = I pick.

--> 골라서 [gol-la-seo] = I pick and then; because I pick

--> 골랐어요 [gol-la-sseo-yo] = I picked.

Sample Sentences

1. 뭐 골랐어요?

[mwo gol-la-sseo-yo?]

= What did you choose?

2. 저도 몰라요.

[jeo-do mol-la-yo.]

= I don't know, either.

LEVEL 3 LESSON 24 - WORD BUILDER 1

3. 비행기는 빨라서 좋아요.

[bi-haeng-gi-neun ppal-la-seo jo-a-yo.]

= Planes are good because they are fast. / I like airplanes because they are fast.

4. 누가 케익 잘랐어요?

[nu-ga ke-ik jal-la-sseo-yo?]

= Who cut the cake?

5. 토끼를 5년 동안 길렀어요.

[to-kki-reul o-nyeon dong-an gil-leo-sseo-yo.]

= I had a rabbit as a pet for five years. / I grew a rabbit for five years.

LEVEL 3 LESSON 25

In this lesson, we are going to look at how to use the verb ending **-네요** [-ne-yo]. You might have heard this ending used a lot in everyday conversational Korean.

As you have seen so far, there are many different types of verb endings in Korean. They all have very specific rules and this one is no exception. If you change a plain sentence into this **-네요** form, you indicate that you are expressing your impression, thought, or surprise.

For example

if you just say "맛있어요" about a dish, it just means that it is delicious. But if you say "맛있네요", the sentence can show that you are impressed or surprised by the taste. While "맛있어요" can do the same thing when said with the right intonation, it cannot convey the same nuance when it is written.

Structure:

The conjugation is very simple. Just add **-네요** after the verb stem.

Examples

1.

크다 [keu-da] = to be big (verb stem = 크)

- 크 + 어요 = 커요 = It's big. (Plain fact)

- 크 + 네요 = 크네요 = (I see that) it is big. / (Oh, I didn't know it was big but) it is big. (Showing surprise)

2.

잘 어울리다 [jal eo-ul-li-da] = to suit someone well, to go well with someone

- 잘 어울리 + 어요 = 잘 어울려요. = It looks good on you. (Plain fact)

- 잘 어울리 + 네요 = 잘 어울리네요. = Oh! I find that it looks good on you. (Showing impression)

3.

맞다 [mat-da] = to be correct

- 맞 + 아요 = 맞아요 = It's correct. (Plain fact)

- 맞 + 네요 = 맞네요 = I see that it's correct! (Finding out a fact for the first time.)

LEVEL 3 LESSON 25

Sample Sentences

1. 여기 있네요!

[yeo-gi it-ne-yo!]

= Oh, here it is!

2. 이 드라마 재미있네요.

[i deu-ra-ma jae-mi-it-ne-yo.]

= I find this drama fun to watch.

** If you already know that this drama is fun and you are telling someone else the fact, you need to say 이 드라마 재미있어요.

3. 별로 안 춥네요.

[byeol-lo an chup-ne-yo.]

= Well, it's not that cold.

4. 아무도 안 왔네요.

[a-mu-do an wat-ne-yo.]

= Oh, look. Nobody is here yet.

5. 벌써 11월이네요.

[beol-sseo si-bil-wol-i-ne-yo.]

= Wow, it's already November!

LEVEL 3 LESSON 26

We have looked at two irregularities in Korean verbs so far - "ㄹ" irregular" and "ㄷ" irregular". In this lesson, we are going to look at one more irregular, which is the "ㄷ" irregular".

How "ㄷ" irregular works:

When the letter "ㄷ" comes at the end of a verb ending and it is followed by a vowel, "ㄷ" is changed to "ㄹ".

Some verbs follow this rule, and some other verbs do not follow this rule.

Examples of ㄷ irregular verbs:

- 듣다 [deut-da] = to listen
- 걷다 [geot-da] = to walk
- 묻다 [mut-da] = to ask
- 싣다 [sit-da] = to load
- 깨닫다 [kkae-dat-da] = to realize

For these verbs, ㄷ changes to ㄹ when they are followed by a vowel.

- 듣 + 어서 --> 들어서 [deu-reo-seo]
- 걷 + 어요 --> 걸어요 [geo-reo-yo]
- 묻 + 으면 --> 물으면 [mu-reu-myeon]
- 싣 + 을 예요 --> 실을 거예요 [si-reul geo-ye-yo]
- 깨달 + 았어요 --> 깨달았어요 [kkae-da-ra-sseo-yo]

Examples of verbs that do NOT follow this rule:

- 받다 [bat-da] = to receive
- 묻다 [mut-da] = to bury
- 닫다 [dat-da] = to close
- 믿다 [mit-da] = to believe

For these verbs, you keep the ㄷ even when it's followed by a vowel.

LEVEL 3 LESSON 26

- 받 + 아서 = 받아서 [ba-da-seo]
- 묻 + 어요 = 물어요 [mu-deo-yo]
- 달 + 으면 = 달으면 [da-deu-myeon]
- 믿 + 어요 = 믿어요 [mi-deo-yo]

Usage examples of ㄷ irregular verbs

1.

듣다 [deut-da] = to listen

--> 듣고 있어요 [deut-go i-sseo-yo] = I am listening. (ㄷ doesn't change because -고 starts with a consonant.)

--> 들었어요 [deu-reo-sseo-yo] = I heard. (ㄷ changes to ㄹ because -었 starts with a vowel.)

2.

걷다 [geot-da] = to walk

--> 걷는 것 좋아해요 [geot-neun geot jo-a-hae-yo] = I like walking. (ㄷ doesn't change because -는 starts with a consonant.)

--> 한 시간 걸었어요 [han si-gan geo-reo-sseo-yo] = I walked for an hour. (ㄷ changes to ㄹ because -었 starts with a vowel.)

Sample Sentences

1. 어디에서 들었어요?

[eo-di-e-seo deu-reo-sseo-yo?]

= Where did you hear that?

2. 많이 걸었는데, 안 피곤해요.

[ma-ni geo-reot-neun-de, an pi-gon-hae-yo.]

= I walked a lot, but I am not tired.

3. 그 이야기를 믿어요?

[geu i-ya-gi-reul mi-deo-yo?]

= Do you remember that story?

LEVEL 3 LESSON 26

4. 물어도 대답이 없어요.

[mu-reo-do dae-da-bi eop-seo-yo.]

= Even if I ask, there is not answer.

LEVEL 3 LESSON 27

So far, through our previous lessons, we have introduced various sentence structures and verb endings. However, all of the sentence endings that we have introduced so far are in the **존댓말** politeness level.

There are three main levels of politeness/formality and now we think it is time for you to learn about the **반말** level (casual language).

What are the three main levels of politeness in Korean?

The politeness level is determined by the end of the verb.

Type 1. -ㅁ니다 [-nida] ending = honorific, most polite, most formal

Type 2. -(아/어/여)요 [-(a/eo/yeo)yo] ending = polite, natural, a bit formal

Type 3. -아/어/여 ending = casual, informal, intimate

Type 1 and 2 are called **존댓말** [jon-daet-mal] and Type 3 is called **반말** [ban-mal]. And in this lesson, we are looking at how to use **반말**, and when NOT to use it.

When do you use 반말?

Generally, **반말** is considered to be the most intimate and casual way of speaking with others in Korean. Therefore, it has no formality in it at all. You can only use **반말** to someone who is obviously and certainly younger than you, someone of the same age as you, or (if the other person is older than you) someone with whom you agreed to mutually use **반말**.

If you don't know the other person's age or social status, you should not use **반말** in any case. Once you know the other person's age and find out the he or she is younger than you, you can use **반말** but it is a nice gesture and also safe to ask the person first whether you can use **반말** to him or her.

Here are some common cases in which you can use 반말

1. You are much older than the other person and you know for sure that the other person won't get offended if you use **반말**.
2. You are older than the other person and you got his or her permission to use **반말**.

LEVEL 3 LESSON 27

3. You are of the same age as the other person and you got his or her permission to use 반말.
4. You are in elementary school, middle school or high school and you know that all your classmates are of the same age as you.
5. You are talking to yourself or writing in your diary.

Here are some common cases in which you SHOULD NOT use 반말

1. You know the other person only through work, and not personally.
2. You are older than the other person but he or she is your business client or customer.
3. You are older than the other person but you are talking to the person in an official environment such as seminars, lessons, etc.
4. You don't know the other person. You just met him/her.
5. You are younger than the other person. You never got permission from him/her that you can use 반말 to him/her.
6. You are the same age as the other person. But you are both adults now and you don't know him/her that well.
7. You are older than the other person but he or she is your boss or the spouse of your older sibling.
8. You are talking to a large group of people or in a video blog.

How do you ask for and give permission to speak in 반말?

There are certain expressions that people say in order to get permission from the other person.

If you are the older one:

1. 말 놔도 돼요?

[mal nwa-do dwae-yo?]

= Can I speak in 반말 with you?

** 말을 놓다 [ma-reul no-ta] literally means to "put down the language" or "lower the language".

2. 말 편하게 해도 돼요?

[mal pyeon-ha-ge hae-do dwae-yo?]

= Can I speak comfortably with you?

If you are the younger one:

LEVEL 3 LESSON 27

1. 말 놓으셔도 돼요.

[mal no-eu-syeo-do dwae-yo.]

= You can speak casually with me.

2. 말 편하게 하셔도 돼요.

[mal pyeon-ha-ge ha-syeo-do dwae-yo.]

= You can speak comfortably with me. / You can speak 반말 with me.

If you are of the same age as the other person:

1. 우리 말 놓을까요?

[u-ri mal no-eul-kka-yo?]

= Shall we speak in 반말 to each other?

2. 말 편하게 해도 되죠?

[mal pyeon-ha-ge hae-do doe-jyo?]

= I can talk in 반말 with you, right?

How to change 존댓말 to 반말

Present tense

-아/어/여요 ---> -아/어/여

-이에요 / -예요 --> -이야 / -야

Past tense

-았/었/였어요 ---> -았/었/였어

Future tense

-(으)ㄹ 거예요 --> -(으)ㄹ 거야

Examples

1. What is this?



This PDF is to be used along with the MP3 audio lesson available at TalkToMeInKorean.com.

Please feel free to share TalkToMeInKorean's free Korean lessons and PDF files with anybody who is studying Korean. If you have any questions or feedback, visit TalkToMeInKorean.com.

LEVEL 3 LESSON 27

존댓말: 이거 뭐예요? [i-geo mwo-ye-yo?]

반말: 이거 뭐야? [i-geo mwo-ya?]

2. I'm going to work tomorrow.

존댓말: 내일 일할 거예요. [nae-il il-hal geo-ye-yo.]

반말: 내일 일할 거야. [nae-il il-hal geo-ya.]

3. I met a friend yesterday.

존댓말: 어제 친구 만났어요. [eo-je chin-gu man-na-sseo-yo.]

반말: 어제 친구 만났어. [eo-je chin-gu man-na-sseo.]

Calling names

When speaking in 존댓말, you add the word "씨" to address the person politely, as in 경은 씨, 현우 씨, 석진 씨, 소연 씨, and 현정 씨. Or you add the title of the person's job or status after that, like 경은 선생님, 현우 선생님, etc.

But when you speak in 반말, you just say the name of the person without "씨". But in order to make the name sound more natural when you are calling the person by name, you need to add "아" or "야" at the end. Names that end WITHOUT a consonant are followed by 야 [ya] and names that end WITH a consonant are followed by 아 [a].

Examples:

경은 ----> 경은아! (Hey Kyeong-eun!)

현우 ----> 현우야! (Hey Hyunwoo!)

Talking about names

For the same reason as above, when Korean people add the letter "이" after the names that end with a consonant, when they are talking about the person using their name. So names like 경은 and 석진 are followed by 이 in sentences.

If 현우 wants to talk about 석진 in a sentence, he says 석진's name as "석진이".

Ex) 석진이가 했어. [seok-jin-i-ga hae-sseo.] = Seokjin did it.

This is the basic information about 반말 and we will look at more expressions using 반말 in the following lesson.



LEVEL 3 LESSON 28

In the previous lesson, we introduced how to use 반말 (casual language) as well as the cases and situations in which you can safely speak in 반말. Now, in this lesson, we are taking a look at how to make "let's" sentences in 반말.

For sentences in the plain present tense and the past tense, you can just drop the suffix "-요" at the end to change a sentence from 존댓말 to 반말. But, if you want to say "let's" do something when speaking in 반말, you need to use a different ending.

Structure

Verb stem + -자 [-ja]

Examples

하다 [ha-da] = to do

하 + 자 = 하자 [ha-ja] = Let's do it.

하지 말다 [ha-ji mal-da] = to not do it

하지 말 + 자 = 하지 말자 [ha-ji mal-ja] = Let's not do it.

먹다 [meok-da] = to eat

먹 + 자 = 먹자 [meok-ja] = Let's eat.

Sample sentences

1. 내일 보자.

[nae-il bo-ja]

= Let's meet tomorrow. / See you tomorrow.

2. 이거 사자.

[i-geo sa-ja]

= Let's buy this.

LEVEL 3 LESSON 28

3. 우리 내일은 쉬자.

[u-ri nae-i-reun swi-ja]

= Let's take a day off tomorrow.

4. 같이 가자.

[ga-chi ga-ja]

= Let's go together.

5. 조금만 더 기다리자.

[jo-geum-man deo gi-da-ri-ja]

= Let's wait a little longer.

More Phrases in 반말

1. 안녕하세요 [an-nyeong-ha-se-yo] -> 안녕 [an-nyeong]

2. 안녕히 가세요 [an-nyeong-hi ga-se-yo] -> 안녕 [an-nyeong] / 잘 가 [jal ga]

3. 안녕히 계세요. [an-nyeong-hi ge-se-yo] -> 안녕 [an-nyeong] / 잘 있어. [jal i-sseo]

4. 저 [jeo] -> 나 [na]

5. ~ 씨 [ssi] / You -> 너 [neo]

6. 네 [ne] / 예 [ye] -> 응 [eung] / 어 [eo]

7. 아니요 [a-ni-yo] -> 아니 [a-ni] / 아니야 [a-ni-ya]

LEVEL 3 LESSON 29

In this lesson, we are looking at one more irregularity in the Korean language. The irregularity that we are introducing in this lesson is the “ㄴ” irregular.

When a verb stem ends with the consonant “ㄴ” and it is followed by a vowel, the consonant “ㄴ” is dropped.

Example:

낫다 [nat-da] = to heal, to recover, to be better (in comparison)

낫 + 아요 (present tense) --> 나아아요 [na-a-yo]

= It's better. / Please feel better.

More examples

1. 젓다 [jeot-da] = to stir (liquid)

젓 + 어요 = 저어요 [ji-eo-yo]

2. 잇다 [it-da] = to connect, to link

잇 + 으면 = 이으면 [i-eu-myeon]

3. 짓다 [jit-da] = to build, to compose

짓 + 었어요 = 지었어요 [ji-eo-sseo-yo]

Sample sentences

1. 잘 저으세요.

[jal jeo-eu-se-yo.]

= Stir it well.

2. 두 개를 이었어요.

[du gae-reul i-eo-sseo-yo.]

= I connected the two (objects).

LEVEL 3 LESSON 29

3. 이 집을 누가 지었어요?

[i ji-beul nu-ga ji-eo-sseo-yo?]

= Who built this house?

4. 좋은 이름을 지을 거예요.

[jo-eun i-reu-meul ji-eul geo-ye-yo.]

= I'm going to make a good name.

5. 감기 다 나았어요?

[gam-gi da na-a-sseo-yo?]

= Did you recover (completely) from the cold?

Exceptions

Some words do not follow this irregularity rule and still keep the consonant “ㄴ” even before a vowel.

1. 웃다 [ut-da] = to smile, to laugh

2. 씻다 [ssit-da] = to wash

3. 벗다 [beot-da] = to take (clothes) off

웃어요. [u-seo-yo.] = Smile. / I smile. / He smiles. / They laugh.

씻을 거예요. [ssi-seul geo-ye-yo.] = I'm going to wash up. / I'm going to wash it.

신발을 벗어 주세요. [sin-ba-reul beo-seo ju-se-yo.] = Please take your shoes off.

LEVEL 3 LESSON 30 - WORD BUILDER 2

Word Builder lessons are designed to help you understand how to expand your vocabulary by learning/ understanding some common and basic building blocks of Korean words. The words and letters that will be introduced through Word Builder lessons are not necessarily all Chinese characters, or 한자 [han-ja]. Though many of them are based on Chinese characters, the meanings can be different from modern-day Chinese. Your goal, through these lessons, is to understand how words are formed and remember the keywords in Korean to expand your Korean vocabulary from there. You certainly don't have to memorize the Hanja characters, but if you want to, feel free!

Today's keyword is 실.

The Chinese character for this is 室.

The word 실 is related to "room".

화장 (make-up) + 실 (room) = 화장실 化粧室 [hwa-jang-sil] = toilet, bathroom

교 (school, teach) + 실 (room) = 교실 教室 [gyo-sil] = classroom

연습 (practice) + 실 (room) = 연습실 練習室 [yeon-seup-sil]
= practice room, practice place

대기 (wait) + 실 (room) = 대기실 待機室 [dae-gi-sil] = waiting room

회 (meet) 의 (discuss) + 실 (room) = 회의실 會議室 [hoe-ui-sil]
= meeting room, conference room

병 (disease) + 실 (room) = 병실 病室 [byeong-sil] = hospital room, patient's room

미용 (beauty treatment) + 실 (room) = 미용실 美容室 [mi-yong-sil]
= beauty parlor, hairdresser's

LEVEL 3 LESSON 30 - WORD BUILDER 2

사 (work) + 무 (work, task) + 실 (room) = **사무실** 事務室 [sa-mu-sil] = office

교 (school) + 무 (work) + 실 (room) = **교무실** 教務室 [gyo-mu-sil] = teacher's office

실 (room) + 장 (head, leader) = **실장** 室長 [sil-jang] = head of the office

실 (room) + 내 (inside) = **실내** 室內 [sil-nae] = indoors

실 (room) + 외 (outside) = **실외** 室外 [sil-oe] = outdoors, outside

Workbook for Level 3 Lessons 1 - 10

Thank you for downloading this workbook from TalkToMeInKorean.com. This **WORKBOOK** has been made to help you reinforce what you have learned from our lessons number 1 to 10 in Level 3 at TalkToMeInKorean.com. The audio files for ALL of the Korean sentences that appear in this workbook are also available for download.

Please answer the following questions. The answers are on the last pages of this PDF.

Level 3 Lesson 1

1. How do you say **"too much"** or **"excessively"**?

()

2. How do you say **"very"** or **"quite"** in a colloquial usage?

()

3. How do you say **"It's too fast"**?

()

4. How do you say **"It's really tasty."**?

()

5. How do you say **"I'm too sleepy."**?

Workbook for Level 3 Lessons 1 - 10

()

Level 3 Lesson 2

1. "I met a friend yesterday." is "어제 친구를 만났어요. [eo-je chin-gu-reul man-na-sseo-yo.]. "And I saw a movie" is "그리고 영화를 봤어요. [geu-ri-go yeong-hwa-reul bwa-sseo-yo.]", how do you say "I met a friend yesterday and saw a movie."?

()

2. "To meet" is "만나다[man-na-da]". How do you say "As for tomorrow, I'm going to meet a friend and go to a bookstore."

내일은 친구 (), 서점에 갈 거예요.

3. "To read" is "읽다[ilk-da]", "To study" is "공부하다[gong-bu-ha-da]", "To do exercise" is "운동하다[un-dong-ha-da]" in Korean. How do you say "I read a book, studied, and did some exercise."?

()

Level 3 Lesson 3

Match the Korean words with their English equivalents.

6. **"To sleep"** is **"자다[ja-da]"** in Korean. How do you say **"I'm sleeping on the sofa."**?

소파 () 자고 있어요.

Level 3 Lesson 4

1. “**보다**[bo-da]” is “**To see**” How do you say “**Shall we see?**”

()

2. “팔다[pal-da]” is “To sell” How do you say “Shall we sell?”

()

3. How do you say **"Do you think it will rain tomorrow?, I wonder if it will rain tomorrow., Will it rain tomorrow? What do you think?"**

내일 비가 () ?

Workbook for Level 3 Lessons 1 - 10

4. **"To drink"** is **"마시다[ma-si-da]"**. How do you say **"Do you want to drink coffee or beer?, Shall we drink coffee? Shall we drink beer?"**?

()

5. How do you say **"Shall we see a movie tomorrow?"**?

()

Level 3 Lesson 5

1. How do you say **"approximately"** or **"about"** when you talk about quantity, frequency, time, etc.?

()

2. **"When"** is **"언제[eon-je]"** in Korean. How do you say **"About when are you going to go?"**?

()

3. **"To meet"** is **"만나다[man-na-da]"** and **"tomorrow"** is **"내일[nae-il]"** in Korean. How do you say **"Around what time shall we meet tomorrow?"**?

()

Workbook for Level 3 Lessons 1 - 10

4. **"To live"** is **"살다[sal-da]"** in Korean. How do you say **"I lived in Korea for about two years."**?

()

Level 3 Lesson 6

1. How do you say **"I'm going to study, I'll study."** regardless of what others are thinking or planning to do?

1) 공부할 거예요. [gong-bu-hal geo-ye-yo]

2) 공부할게요. [gong-bu-hal-ge-yo]

2. How do you say **" I will come along, too(, if you don't mind), (In that case,) I will go there, too., (OK, since you say so,) I will go, too."**

1) 저도 갈 거예요. [jeo-do gal geo-ye-yo]

2) 저도 갈게요. [jeo-do gal-ge-yo]

3. **"Now"** is **"지금[ji-geum]"** in Korean. How do you say **"Where are you now? I will go out now.** (+ if you don't mind/if you want me to/unless you don't want me to/ what do you think about that?)"

()

Workbook for Level 3 Lessons 1 - 10

4. "Again" is "다시[da-si]" in Korean. How do you say "Is that so? I'll do it again."

()

Level 3 Lesson 7

-아/어/여+서, is a verb ending that can show logical relation between the verbs.

그리고 [geu-ri-go] means "and," and 그래서 [geu-rae-seo] means "therefore/so".

The verb ending -고 [-go] has the same meaning as 그리고 [geu-ri-go], and the verb ending -아/어/여+서 has a similar meaning as 그래서 [geu-rae-seo].

Please answer the following questions.

1. 하다 [ha-da] = to do

-> 하 (verb stem) + 여서 = ()

2. 먹다 [meok-da] = to eat

먹 (verb stem) + 어서 = ()

3. 오다 [o-da] = to come

오 (verb stem) + 아서 = ()

Workbook for Level 3 Lessons 1 - 10

Match the Korean words with their English equivalents.

4. according to ~

a. 예를 들어서 [ye-reul deu-reo-seo]

b. 재미있어서 [jae-mi-i-sseo-seo]

5. for example

c. ~에 따라서 [-e tta-ra-seo]

Level 3 Lesson 8

1. "To be the same" is "같다[gat-da]" in Korean. How do you say "We are the same age."?

()

2. "This" is "이거[i-geo]" in Korean. How do you say "Are this and this the same?"?

()

3. "Coffee" is "커피[keo-pi]" in Korean. How do you say "It's like coffee. / It seems to be coffee. / It looks like coffee."?

()

4. "A lie" is "거짓말[geo-jit-mal]" in Korean. How do you say "That story sounds

Workbook for Level 3 Lessons 1 - 10

like a lie.”?



Level 3 Lesson 9

“To tell, to talk” is “이야기하다[i-ya-gi-ha-da]” in Korean.

Match the Korean words with the English equivalents.

1. I think they told them. / It looks like they talked.
2. I think they are talking. / They seem to talk to each other.
3. I think they will talk. / It seems like they will talk.

- a. 이야기할 것 같아요. [i-ya-gi-hal geot ga-ta-yo]
- b. 이야기한 것 같아요. [i-ya-gi-han geot ga-ta-yo]
- c. 이야기하는 것 같아요. [i-ya-gi-ha-neun geot ga-ta-yo]

4. “To be expensive” is “비싸다[bi-ssa-da]” in Korean. How do you say “ I think this place is expensive, It looks expensive, This place seems to be expensive.”?



5. “To be so, to be that way” is “그렇다[geu-reo-ta]” in Korean. How do you say “I think so, It seems to be so, It looks like it.”?

Workbook for Level 3 Lessons 1 - 10

()

Level 3 Lesson 10

1. How do you say **"before (+noun)"** in Korean?

()

2. **"To study"** is **"공부하다[gong-bu-ha-da]"** in Korean. How do you say **"before studying, before you study"**?

()

3. **"To pay money"** is **"돈을 내다[don-eul nae-da]"** in Korean. How do you say **"before paying money, before you pay money"**?

()

4. **"To come in"** is **"들어오다[deu-reo-o-da]"** in Korean. How do you say **"Knock before you come in."**?

()

5. **"To buy"** is **"사다[s-a-da]"** in Korean. How do you say **"Think well before you buy."**?

Workbook for Level 3 Lessons 1 - 10



Answers

Level 3 Lesson 1

1. 너무 [neo-mu]
2. 너무 [neo-mu]
3. 너무 빨라요. [neo-mu ppal-ra-yo]
4. 너무 맛있어요. [neo-mu ma-si-sseo-yo]
5. 너무 졸려요. [neo-mu jol-ryeo-yo]

Level 3 Lesson 2

1. 어제 친구를 만났고, 영화를 봤어요.
[eo-je chin-gu-reul man-nat-go, yeong-hwa-reul bwa-sseo-yo]
You can also say,
어제 친구를 만나고, 영화를 봤어요.
[eo-je chin-gu-reul man-na-go, yeong-hwa-reul bwa-sseo-yo]
2. 만나고 [man-na-go]
3. 책 읽고, 공부하고, 운동했어요.
[chaek ilk-go, gong-bu-ha-go, un-dong-hae-sseo-yo]

Level 3 Lesson 3

1. 앞[ap] a. front
2. 위[wi] d. top
3. 밑[mit] e. bottom
4. 뒤[dwi] b. back
5. 옆[yeop] c. side

Workbook for Level 3 Lessons 1 - 10

6. 위에서[wi-e-seo] : 소파 위에서 자고 있어요. [so-pa wi-e-seo ja-go i-sseo-yo.]

Level 3 Lesson 4

1. 볼까요? [bol-kka-yo]
2. 팔까요? [pal-kka-yo]
3. 내일 비가 올까요? [nae-il bi-ga ol-kka-yo]
4. 커피 마실까요? 맥주 마실까요? [keo-pi ma-sil-kka-yo, maek-ju ma-sil-kka-yo]
5. 내일 영화 볼까요? [nae-il yeong-hwa bol-kka-yo]

Level 3 Lesson 5

1. 쫌 [jjeum]
2. 언제쫌 갈 거예요? [eon-je-jjeum gal geo-ye-yo]
3. 내일 몇 시쫌 만날까요? [nae-il myeot si-jjeum man-nal-kka-yo]
4. 한국에서 2년쫌 살았어요. [han-guk-eseo i-nyeon-jjeum sa-ral-sseo-yo]

Level 3 Lesson 6

1. 1) 공부할 거예요. [gong-bu-hal ge-ye-yo.]
2. 2) 저도 갈게요. [jeo-do gal-ge-yo.]
3. 지금 어디예요? 지금 나갈게요.
[ji-geum eo-di-ye-yo? ji-geum na-gal-ge-yo.]
4. 그래요? 다시 할게요.
[geu-rae-yo? da-si hal-ge-yo.]

Level 3 Lesson 7

1. 해서[hae-seo]
2. 먹어서[meo-geo-seo]
3. 와서[wa-seo]
4. according to~ c. ~에 따라서 [-e tta-ra-seo]
5. for example a. 예를 들어서 [ye-reul deu-reo-seo]

Workbook for Level 3 Lessons 1 - 10

Level 3 Lesson 8

1. 우리는 나이가 같아요. [u-ri-neun na-i-ga ga-ta-yo.]
2. 이거랑 이거랑 같아요? [i-geo-rang i-geo-rang ga-ta-yo?]
3. 커피 같아요. [keo-pi ga-ta-yo]
4. 그 이야기는 거짓말 같아요. [geu i-ya-gi-neun geo-jit-mal ga-ta-yo.]

Level 3 Lesson 9

1. I think they told them. / It looks like they talked.
b. 이야기한 것 같아요. [i-ya-gi han geot ga-ta-yo]
2. I think they are talking. / They seem to talk to each
c. 이야기하는 것 같아요. [i-ya-gi ha-neun geot ga-ta-yo]
3. I think they will talk. / It seems like they will talk.
a. 이야기할 것 같아요. [i-ya-gi hal geot ga-ta-yo]
4. 여기 비싼 것 같아요. [yeo-gi bi-ssan geot ga-ta-yo.]
5. 그런 것 같아요. [geu-reon geot ga-ta-yo.]

Level 3 Lesson 10

1. 전에[jeo-ne]
2. 공부하기 전에 [gong-bu-ha-gi jeo-ne]
3. 돈을 내기 전에 [do-neul nae-gi jeo-ne]
4. 들어오기 전에 노크 하세요.
[deu-reo-o-gi jeo-ne no-keu ha-se-yo.]
5. 사기 전에 잘 생각하세요.
[sa-gi jeo-ne jal saeng-ga-ka-se-yo.]

We hope this workbook has been helpful to you.

Thank you once again. **감사합니다!** We hope you will keep enjoying learning with us!



Thank you for studying with us at TalkToMeInKorean.com. This PDF workbook has been built to help you reinforce what you have learned from Lessons 1 - 10 of Level 3 at TalkToMeInKorean. If you have any questions or feedback, please feel free to write to us!

Workbook for Level 3 Lessons 11 - 20

Thank you for downloading this workbook from TalkToMeInKorean.com. This **WORKBOOK** has been made to help you reinforce what you have learned from our lessons number 11 to 20 in Level 3 at TalkToMeInKorean.com. The audio files for ALL of the Korean sentences that appear in this workbook are also available for download.

Please answer the following questions. The answers are on the last pages of this PDF.

Level 3 Lesson 11

1. **"To help"** is **"돕다[dop-da]"** in Korean. Because of **the irregular system** **"돕다[dop-da]"** changes into **"도와요[do-wa-yo]"**. But there are some verbs that do not follow this rule. **Choose the verb which do not follow this rule.**

- 1) **입다[ip-da]** = to wear
- 2) **눅다[up-da]** = to lie down
- 3) **춡다[chup-da]** = to be cold
- 4) **쉽다[ship-da]** = to be easy

2. **"To be difficult"** is **"어렵다[eo-ryeop-da]"** in Korean. Present tense for **"어렵다[eo-ryeop-da]"** is **"어려워요[eo-ryeo-wo-yo]"**. What's the past tense?

- 1) **어려울 거예요[eo-ryeo-ul geo-ye-yo]**
- 2) **어려웠어요[eo-ryeo-wo-sseo-yo]**

3. **"To be cute"** is **"귀엽다[gwi-yeop-da]"** in Korean. How do you say **"This is so cute."**?

Workbook for Level 3 Lessons 11 - 20

4. "To be difficult" is "어렵다[eo-ryeop-da]" in Korean. How do you say "This problem is difficult."?

()

5. "To be cold" is "춥다[chup-da]" in Korean. How do you say "In Seoul, it's really cold in winter."?

()

Level 3 Lesson 12

1. How do you say "but still", "however", or "nonetheless" in Korean?

()

2. Do you like 노래방[no-rae-bang]? "To sing" is "노래하다[no-rae-ha-da]" in Korean. How do you say "I have to go to a 노래방. But still, I'm not going to sing."?

노래방에 가야 돼요. () 노래 안 할 거예요.

3. "To play soccer" is "축구를 하다[chuk-gu-reul ha-da]" in Korean. How do you say "Yesterday, it rained. But still, we played soccer."?

어제는 (). () 축구를 했어요.

한국어는 (). () 재미있어요.

()

Workbook for Level 3 Lessons 11 - 20

Level 3 Lesson 14

Match the Korean words with their English equivalents.

1. **someone that someone likes = someone I like**
2. **someone that Minji likes**
3. **someone that likes Minji**

- a. **민지를 좋아하는 사람** [min-ji-reul jo-a-ha-neun sa-ram]
- b. **좋아하는 사람** [jo-a-ha-neun sa-ram]
- c. **민지가 좋아하는 사람** [min-ji-ga jo-a-ha-neun sa-ram]

4. **"To eat"** is **"먹다[meok-da]"** and **"often"** is **"자주[ja-ju]"** in Korean. How do you say **"Is there any Korean food that you eat often?"**?

()

5. **"To like, To love"** is **"좋아하다[jo-a-ha-da]"** and **"these days"** is **"요즘[yo-je-um]"** in Korean. How do you say **"Which singer do you like these days?"**?

()

Level 3 Lesson 15

1. How do you say **"in that case", "if so", "then"**?

Workbook for Level 3 Lessons 11 - 20

()

2. **"To be busy"** is **"바쁘다[ba-ppeu-da]"** and **"when"** is **"언제[eon-je]"** in Korean.

How do you say **"You're busy now? Then when are you not busy?"**?

()

3. How do you say **"Then, what is THIS?"**?

()

Level 3 Lesson 16

Sometimes when you want to do things with other people, you will say things like **"Let's go."**, **"Let's do it."** or **"Let's start."**.

1. There are a few different ways to say this in Korean. Choose the way which is not translated **"Let's .."** in Korean.

1) -아/어/여요

2) -(으)시죠

3) -자

4) -(으)ㄴ

2. **"To start, to begin"** is **"시작하다[si-jak-ha-da]"** in Korean. Choose one that doesn't mean **"Let's start!"**.

Workbook for Level 3 Lessons 11 - 20

- 1) 시작해요. [si-jak-hae-yo]
- 2) 시작하자. [si-jak-ha-ja]
- 3) 시작하고 싶어요. [si-jak-ha-go si-peo-yo]
- 4) 시작할래요? [si-jak-hal-rae-yo]

3. "I'm going to the bookstore, too." is "저도 서점에 갈 거예요 [jeo-do seo-jeo-me gal geo-ye-yo]" in Korean. How do you say "I'm going to the bookstore, too. Let's go together!"?

()

4. "Aren't you hungry?" is "배 안 고파요? [bae an go-pa-yo?]" in Korean. How do you say "Aren't you hungry? Let's eat hamburgers."?

()

Level 3 Lesson 17

1. How do you say "in order to", "in order for", or "for the sake of" in Korean?

()

2. "Health" is "건강 [geon-gang]" in Korean. How do you say "for health, for the sake of health, in order to be healthy"?

()

Workbook for Level 3 Lessons 11 - 20

3. "To go" is "가다[ga-da]" in Korean. How do you say "in order to go to Korea"?

()

4. "To study" is "공부하다[gong-bu-ha-da]" in Korean. How do you say "I studied hard in order to go to Korea."?

()

5. "To do exercise" is "운동하다[un-dong-ha-da]" in Korean. How do you say "I am exercising everyday for my health."?

()

Level 3 Lesson 18

Match the Korean words with their English equivalents.

1. To have nothing but money, to only have money
2. To have money
3. To not have money

- a. 돈(이) 없다 [do-ni eop-da]
- b. 돈 밖에 없다 [don ba-kke eop-da]
- c. 돈(이) 있다 [do-ni it-da]

Workbook for Level 3 Lessons 11 - 20

4. **"A Korean friend"** is **"한국인 친구[han-guk-in chin-gu]"** in Korean. How do you say **"As for Korean friends, I only have one."**?

()

Level 3 Lesson 19

1. **"To receive a letter"** is **"편지를 받다[pyeon-ji-reul bat-da]"** in Korean. How do you say **"After receiving a letter"**?

()

2. **"To read a book"** is **"책을 읽다[chae-geul ilg-da]"** in Korean. How do you say **"After reading a book"**?

()

3. **"To watch a movie"** is **"영화 보다[yeong-hwa bo-da]"** and **"to drink coffee"** is **"커피 마시다[keo-pi ma-si-da]"** in Korean. How do you say **"After watching the movie, let's drink coffee."**?

()

4. **"To decide"** is **"결정하다[gyeol-jeong-ha-da]"** in Korean. How do you say **"Contact me after you decide."**?

Workbook for Level 3 Lessons 11 - 20

()

5. "This" is "이거[i-geo]" in Korean. How do you say "After doing this, what are you going to do"?

()

Level 3 Lesson 20

1. "To cry" is "울다[ul-da]" in Korean. How do you say "even if you cry, even though you cry"?

()

2. "To study" is "공부하다 [gong-bu-ha-da]" in Korean. How do you say "even if you study, even though you study"?

()

3. "To see" is "보다[bo-da]" in Korean. How do you say "even if you see, even if you look"?

()

4. "To take a taxi" is "택시를 타다[taek-si-reul ta-da]" in Korean. How do you say

Workbook for Level 3 Lessons 11 - 20

“Even if I take a taxi, it takes a long time.”?

()

Answers

Level 3 Lesson 11

1. 입다[ip-da] = to wear
2. 어려웠어요[eo-ryeo-wo-sseo-yo]
3. 이거 너무 귀여워요. [i-geo neo-mu gwi-yeo-wo-yo.]
4. 이 문제는 어려워요. [i mun-je-neun eo-ryeo-wo-yo.]
5. 서울은 겨울에 정말 추워요. [han-gu-geun gyeo-eu-re jeong-mal chu-wo-yo.]

Level 3 Lesson 12

1. 그래도[geu-rae-do]
2. 그래도[geu-rae-do]
노래방에 가야 돼요. 그래도 노래 안 할 거예요.
[no-rae-bang-e ga-ya dwae-yo. geu-rae-do no-rae an hal geo-ye-yo.]
3. 비가 왔어요. [bi-ga wa-sseo-yo] 그래도 [geu-rae-do]
어제는 비가 왔어요. 그래도 축구를 했어요.
[eo-je-neun bi-ga wa-sseo-yo. geu-rae-do chuk-gu-reul hae-sseo-yo.]
4. 어려워요.[eo-ryeo-wo-yo] 그래도[geu-rae-do]
한국어는 어려워요. 그래도 재미있어요.
[han-gu-geo-neun eo-ryeo-wo-yo. geu-rae-do jae-mi-i-sseo-yo.]

Level 3 Lesson 13

1. 작은 [ja-geun]
2. 비싼 [bi-ssan]
3. 하얀 [ha-yan]

Workbook for Level 3 Lessons 11 - 20

4. 단 [dan]
5. 더 큰 가방 있어요? [deo keun ga-bang i-sseo-yo?]

Level 3 Lesson 14

1. someone that someone likes = someone I like - b. 좋아하는 사람 [jo-a-ha-neun sa-ram]
2. someone that Minji likes - c. 민지가 좋아하는 사람 [min-ji-ga jo-a-ha-neun sa-ram]
3. someone that likes Minji - a. 민지를 좋아하는 사람 [min-ji-reul jo-a-ha-neun sa-ram]
4. 자주 먹는 한국 음식 있어요? [ja-ju meok-neun han-guk eum-sik i-sseo-yo?]
5. 요즘 좋아하는 가수는 누구예요? [yo-jeum jo-a-ha-neun ga-su-neun nu-gu-ye-yo?]

Level 3 Lesson 15

1. 그러면 [geu-reo-myeon]
2. 지금 바빠요? 그럼 언제 안 바빠요? [ji-geum ba-ppa-yo? geu-reom eon-je an ba-ppa-yo?]
3. 그러면 이거는 뭐예요? [geu-reo-myeon i-geo-neun mwo-ye-yo?]

Level 3 Lesson 16

1. 4) -(으)ㄴ
2. 3) 시작하고 싶어요. [si-jak-ha-go si-peo-yo]
3. 저도 서점에 갈 거예요. 같이 가요! [jeo-do seo-jeo-me gal geo-ye-yo. ga-chi ga-yo!]
4. 배 안 고파요? 우리 햄버거 먹어요. [bae an go-pa-yo? u-ri haem-beo-geo meo-geo-yo.]

Level 3 Lesson 17

1. 위해[wi-hae], 위해서[wi-hae-seo]
2. 건강을 위해서 [geon-gang-eul wi-hae-seo]
3. 한국에 가기 위해서 [han-gu-ge ga-gi wi-hae-seo]
4. 저는 한국에 가기 위해서 열심히 공부했어요.
[jeo-neun han-gu-ge ga-ga wi-hae-seo yeol-si-mi gong-bu-hae-sseo-yo.]
5. 건강을 위해서 매일 운동하고 있어요.
[geon-gang-eul wi-hae-seo mae-il un-dong-ha-go i-sseo-yo.]

Workbook for Level 3 Lessons 11 - 20

Level 3 Lesson 18

1. To have nothing but money, to only have money - b. 돈 밖에 없다 [don ba-kke eop-da]
2. To have money - c. 돈(이) 있다 [do-ni it-da]
3. To not have money - a. 돈(이) 없다 [do-ni eop-da]
4. 한국인 친구는 한 명 밖에 없어요. [han-gu-gin chin-gu-ga han myeon ba-kke eop-seo-yo.]

Level 3 Lesson 19

1. 편지를 받은 다음에 [pyeon-ji-reul ba-deun da-eu-me]
2. 책을 읽은 후에 [chae-geul il-geun hu-e]
3. 영화 본 다음에 우리 커피 마세요. [yeong-hwa bon da-eu-me u-ri keo-pi ma-syeo-yo.]
4. 결정한 후에 연락 주세요. [gyeol-jeong-han hu-e yeon-lak ju-se-yo.]
5. 이거 한 다음에 뭐 할 거예요? [i-geo han da-eu-me mwo hal geo-ye-yo?]

Level 3 Lesson 20

1. 울어도 [u-reo-do]
2. 공부해도 [gong-bu-hae-do]
3. 봐도 [bwa-do]
4. 택시를 타도, 시간이 오래 걸려요. [taek-si-reul ta-do, si-ga-ni o-rae geol-lyeo-yo.]

We hope this workbook has been helpful to you.

Thank you once again. 감사합니다! We hope you will keep enjoying learning with us!



Thank you for studying with us at TalkToMeInKorean.com. This PDF workbook has been built to help you reinforce what you have learned from Lessons 11 - 20 of Level 3 at TalkToMeInKorean. If you have any questions or feedback, please feel free to write to us!

Workbook for Level 3 Lessons 21 - 30

Thank you for downloading this workbook from TalkToMeInKorean.com. This **WORKBOOK** has been made to help you reinforce what you have learned from our lessons number 21 to 30 in Level 3 at TalkToMeInKorean.com. The audio files for ALL of the Korean sentences that appear in this workbook are also available for download.

Please answer the following questions. The answers are on the last pages of this PDF.

TTMIK Level 3 Lesson 21

1. **"Sunday"** is **"일요일 [i-ryo-il]"** in Korean. How do you say **"It's Sunday tomorrow + (-ㄴ 데) + what are you going to do?"**? (Explaining the background or the situation before making a suggestion, a request, or a question.)

()

2. **"To get a phone call"** is **"전화가 오다 [jeon-hwa-ga o-da]"** in Korean. How do you say **"I was sleeping yesterday + (-는데) + I got a phone call from Korea."**? (Explaining the situation before explaining what happened)

()

3. **"To be scary"** is **"무섭다 [mu-seop-da]"** in Korean. How do you say **"I saw a movie, and it was scary."**?

()

4. **"The news"** is **"뉴스 [nyu-seu]"** in Korean. How do you say **"I saw it in the news"**

Workbook for Level 3 Lessons 21 - 30

today. Is that for real?"?

()

5. How do you say **"I like this! / This is good!"**? (Showing surprise or exclamation)

()

TTMIK Level 3 Lesson 22

1. **"To know (something, someone)"** is **"알다 [al-da]"** in Korean. How do you say **"might know (something, someone)"**?

()

2. **"To be small"** is **"작다 [jak-da]"** in Korean. How do you say **"might be small"**?

()

3. **"To come"** is **"오다 [o-da]"** in Korean. How do you say **"I might come here tomorrow."**?

()

4. **"To be fake"** is **"가짜이다 [ga-jja-i-da]"** in Korean. How do you say **"This might be fake."**?

Workbook for Level 3 Lessons 21 - 30

()

TTMIK Level 3 Lesson 23

1. The word () is related to **“learning”, “studying”** and **“school”**.

2. The sino-Korean word for **“To move, to roll”** is **“전 [jeon]”**. How do you say **“changing schools”** in Korean

()

3. The sino-Korean word for **“Recommend”** is **“장 [jang]”**. How do you say **“scholarship”** in Korean?

()

4. The sino-Korean word for **“Numbers”** is **“수 [su]”**. How do you say **“mathematics”** in Korean?

()

5. The sino-Korean word for **“Year”** is **“년 [nyeon]”**. How do you say **“school year”** in Korean?

()

Workbook for Level 3 Lessons 21 - 30

Level 3 Lesson 24

1. **"To choose", "to pick" and "to select"** is **"고르다 [go-reu-da]"** in Korean. How do you say **"I picked"**?

()

2. How do you say **"What did you choose?"**?

()

3. **"To be fast"** is **"빠르다 [ppa-reu-da]"** in Korean. How do you say **"I like airplanes because they are fast."**?

()

4. **"To cut"** is **"자르다 [ja-reu-da]"** in Korean. How do you say **"Who cut the cake?"**?

()

Level 3 Lesson 25

1. **"To suit someone well, to go well with someone"** is **"잘 어울리다 [jal eo-ul-ri-da]"** and **"It looks good on you."** is **"잘 어울려요 [jal eo-ul-ryeo-yo]"** in Korean. How do you say **"Oh! I find that it looks good on you. (Showing impression)"**?

Workbook for Level 3 Lessons 21 - 30

()

2. **"To be correct"** is **"맞다 [mat-da]"** and **"It's correct."** is **"맞아요 [ma-ja-yo]"** in Korean. How do you say **"I see that it's correct!"** (Finding out a fact for the first time.)?"

()

3. **"Here"** is **"여기 [yeo-gi]"** in Korean. How do you say **"Oh, here it is."**?

()

4. **"To be cold"** is **"춡다 [chup-da]"** in Korean. How do you say **"Well, it's not that cold."**?

()

5. **"November"** is **"11월 [si-bi-rwol]"** in Korean. How do you say **"Wow, it's already November."**?

()

Level 3 Lesson 26

Match the Korean words with their English equivalents.

Workbook for Level 3 Lessons 21 - 30

1. **듣다** [deut-da] = to listen -> 듣 + 어서
2. **걷다** [geot-da] = to walk -> 걷 + 어요
3. **받다** [bat-da] = to receive -> 받 + 아서
4. **닫다** [dat-da] = to close -> 닫 + 으면
5. **깨닫다** [kkae-dat-da] = to realize -> 깨닫 + 았어요

- a. **발아서** [ba-ra-seo]
- b. **받아서** [ba-da-seo]
- c. **달으면** [da-reu-myeon]
- d. **닫으면** [da-deu-myeon]
- e. **걸어서** [geo-deo-seo]
- f. **걸어서** [geo-reo-seo]
- g. **깨달았어요** [kkae-da-dat-sseo-yo]
- h. **깨달았어요** [Kkae-da-rat-sseo-yo]
- i. **들어서** [deu-reo-seo]
- j. **들어서** [deu-deo-seo]

6. "To hear" is "듣다[deut-da]" in Korean. How do you say "Where did you hear that?"?

()

Level 3 Lesson 27

Please change 존댓말 [jon-dat-mal] (Polite language) into 반말 [ban-mal] (Casual language).

Workbook for Level 3 Lessons 21 - 30

1. **"Hello"** is **"안녕하세요 [an-nyoeng-ha-se-yo]"** in Korean

()

2. **"What is this?"** is **"이거 뭐예요? [i-geo mwo-ye-yo?]"** in Korean.

()

3. **"I met a friend yesterday."** is **"어제 친구 만났어요. [eo-je chin-gu man-na-sseo-yo.]"** in Korean.

()

4. If you want to use **반말 [ban-mal]** (Casual language) to people You have to get permission.

a. **Yes**

b. **NO**

Level 3 Lesson 28

1. **"To do"** is **"하다 [ha-da]"** in Korean. How do you say **"Let's do it."** in **반말 [ban-mal]** (Casual language)?

()

2. **"To not do it"** is **"하지 말다 [ha-ji mal-da]"** in Korean. How do you say **"Let's not**

Workbook for Level 3 Lessons 21 - 30

do it.” in 반말 [ban-mal] (Casual language)?

()

3. “To buy” is “사다 [sa-da]” in Korean. How do you say “Let’s buy this.” in 반말 [ban-mal] (Casual language)?

()

4. “To wait” is “기다리다 [gi-da-ri-da]” in Korean. How do you say “Let’s wait a little longer.” in 반말 [ban-mal] (Casual language)?

()

5. “To go” is “가다 [ga-da]” in Korean. “Let’s go together.” in 반말 [ban-mal] (Casual language)?

()

Level 3 Lesson 29

1. “To heal, to recover, to feel better” is “낫다 [nat-da]” in Korean. How do you say “It’s better. / Please feel better.”?

()

Workbook for Level 3 Lessons 21 - 30

2. **"To build, to compose"** is **"짓다 [jit-da]"** in Korean. How do you say **"Who built this house?"**?

()

3. **"To stir"** is **"젓다 [jeot-da]"** in Korean. How do you say **"Stir it well."**?

()

4. **"To connect"** is **"잇다 [it-da]"** in Korean. How do you say **"I connected the two (objects)."**?

()

5. **"To take off"** is **"벗다 [beot-da]"** in Korean. How do you say **"Please take your shoes off."**?

()

Level 3 Lesson 30

1. The word () is related to **"room"**.

2. The sino-Korean word for **"make-up"** is **"화장 [hwa-jang]"**. How do you say **"toilet, bathroom"** in Korean?

Workbook for Level 3 Lessons 21 - 30

()

3. The sino-Korean word for **“school, teach”** is **“교”** [gyo]. How do you say **“class-room”** in Korean?

()

4. The sino-Korean word for **“disease”** is **“병”** [byeong]. How do you say **“hospital room, patient’s room”** in Korean?

()

5. The sino-Korean word for **“inside”** is **“내”** [nae]. How do you say **“indoors”** in Korean?

()

Answers

Level 3 Lesson 21

1. 내일 일요일인데, 뭐 할 거예요? [nae-il i-ryo-il-in-de, mwo hal geo-ye-yo?]

2. 어제 자고 있었는데, 한국에서 전화가 왔어요.

[eo-je ja-go i-sseot-neun-de, han-gu-ge-seo jeon-hwa-ga wa-sseo-yo.]

3. 영화 봤는데, 무서웠어요. [yeong-hwa bwat-neun-de, mu-seo-weo-sseo-yo.]

4. 오늘 뉴스에서 봤는데, 그거 진짜예요?

[o-neul nyu-seu-e-seo bwat-neun-de, geu-geo jin-jja-ye-yo?]

5. 이거 좋은데요! [i-geo jo-eun-de-yo!]

Workbook for Level 3 Lessons 21 - 30

Level 3 Lesson 22

1. 알 수도 있다 [al su-do it-da]
2. 작을 수도 있다 [ja-geul su-do it-da]
3. 저 내일 올 수도 있어요. [jeo nae-il ol su-do i-sseo-yo.]
4. 이거 가짜일 수도 있어요. [i-geo ga-jja-il su-do i-sseo-yo.]

Level 3 Lesson 23

1. 학 (學) [hak]
2. 전학 (轉學) [jeon-hak]
3. 장학금 (獎學金) [jang-hak-geum]
4. 수학 (數學) [su-hak]
5. 학년 (學年) [hak-nyeon]

Level 3 Lesson 24

1. 골랐어요 [gol-la-sseo-yo]
2. 뭐 골랐어요? [mwo gol-la-sseo-yo?]
3. 비행기는 빨라서 좋아요. [bi-haeng-gi-neun ppal-la-seo jo-a-yo.]
4. 누가 케익 잘랐어요? [nu-ga ke-ik jal-la-sseo-yo?]

Level 3 Lesson 25

1. 잘 어울리네요. [jal eo-ul-ri-ne-yo]
2. 맞네요. [mat-ne-yo]
3. 여기 있네요. [yeo-gi it-ne-yo]
4. 별로 안 춥네요. [byeol-lo an chup-ne-yo.]
5. 벌써 11월이네요. [beol-sseo si-bil-wol-i-ne-yo.]

Workbook for Level 3 Lessons 21 - 30

Level 3 Lesson 26

1. 듣다 [deut-da] = to listen -> 듣 + 어서 - i. 들어서 [deu-reo-seo]
2. 걷다 [geot-da] = to walk -> 걷 + 어요 - f. 걸어서 [geo-reo-seo]
3. 받다 [bat-da] = to receive -> 받 + 아서 - b. 받아서 [ba-da-seo]
4. 닫다 [dat-da] = to close -> 닫 + 으면 - d. 닫으면 [da-deu-myeon]
5. 깨닫다 [kkae-dat-da] = to realize -> 깨닫 + 았어요 - h. 깨달았어요 [Kkae-da-rat-sseo-yo]
6. 어디에서 들었어요? [eo-di-e-seo deu-reo-sseo-yo?]

Level 3 Lesson 27

1. 안녕 [an-nyeong]
2. 이거 뭐야? [i-geo mwo-ya?]
3. 어제 친구 만났어. [eo-je chin-gu man-na-sseo.]
4. a. Yes

Level 3 Lesson 28

1. 하자 [ha-ja]
2. 하지 말자 [ha-ji mal-ja]
3. 이거 사자. [i-geo sa-ja]
4. 조금만 더 기다리자. [jo-geum-man deo gi-da-ri-ja]
5. 같이 가자. [ga-chi ga-ja]

Level 3 Lesson 29

1. 나아요 [na-a-yo]
2. 이 집을 누가 지었어요? [i ji-beul nu-ga ji-eo-sseo-yo?]
3. 잘 저으세요. [jal jeo-eu-se-yo.]
4. 두 개를 이었어요. [du gae-reul i-eo-sseo-yo.]
5. 신발을 벗어 주세요. [sin-ba-reul beo-seo ju-se-yo.]

Workbook for Level 3 Lessons 21 - 30

Level 3 Lesson 30

1. 실 (室) [sil]
2. 화장실 (化粧室) [hwa-jang-sil]
3. 교실 (教室) [gyo-sil]
4. 병실 (病室) [byeong-sil]
5. 실내 (室內) [sil-nae]

We hope this workbook has been helpful to you.

Thank you once again. **감사합니다!** We hope you will keep enjoying learning with us!

LEVEL 4 LESSON 1

In this lesson, let's look at how to say "the more [A] the more [B]" in Korean.

It is expressed through the verb ending **-을수록** [-eul-su-rok], and the latter "the more [B]" part is expressed through another verb.

Conjugation

- Verb stem + -을수록 [-eul-su-rok]

* Verb stems ending in a vowel are followed by -ㄴ수록.

** Verb stems ending with ㄹ are followed by -수록.

Conjugation examples

가다 [ga-da] --> 갈수록 [gal-su-rok] = the more you go, the more ...

예쁘다 [ye-ppeu-da] --> 예뻐수록 [ye-ppeu-su-rok] = the prettier it is, the more ...

비싸다 [bi-ssa-da] --> 비쌀수록 [bi-ssal-su-rok] = the more expensive it is, the more ...

이상하다 [i-sang-ha-da] --> 이상할수록 [i-sang-hal-su-rok] = the stranger it is, the more ...

바쁘다 [bi-ssa-da] --> 바쁠수록 [bi-ssal-su-rok] = the busier you are, the more ...

Usage examples

1.

맛있다 [ma-sit-da] = 맛있 + -을수록 = 맛있을수록 [ma-si-sseul-su-rok]

Ex) 맛있을수록 잘 팔려요. [ma-si-sseul-su-rok jal pal-lyeo-yo.]

= The more delicious it is, the better it sells.

2.

바쁘다 [ba-ppeu-da] = 바쁘 + -ㄴ수록 = 바쁠수록 [ba-ppeul-su-rok]

Ex) 바쁠수록 건강이 중요해요. [ba-ppeul-su-rok geon-gang-i jung-yo-hae-yo.]

= The busier you are, the more important your health is.

LEVEL 4 LESSON 1

3.

사람이 많다 [sa-ra-mi man-ta] = 사람이 많 + -을수록 = 사람이 많을수록 [sa-ra-mi ma-neul-su-rok]

Ex) 사람이 많을수록 좋아요. [sa-ra-mi ma-neul-su-rok jo-a-yo.]

= The more people there are, the better.

Note

Basically, -을수록 means "the more [A], the more [B]", but depending on the context, it can also express the meaning of "Even more so especially when ...", "Especially if ... even more ...", or "Particularly when ...".

Ex)

바쁠수록 잠을 많이 자야 돼요.

[ba-ppeul-su-rok ja-meul ma-ni ja-ya dwae-yo.]

= (lit.) The busier you are, the more you need to sleep.

= You need to sleep even better especially when you are busy.

학생일수록 책을 많이 읽어야 돼요.

[hak-saeng-il-su-rok chae-geul ma-ni il-geo-ya dwae-yo.]

= If you are a student, especially because you are a student, you need to read a lot of books.

Using -을수록 with -(으)면

Using -을수록 on its own is already enough, but sometimes people use -(으)면 and repeat the same verb in front of the "-을수록" part.

바쁠수록 = 바쁘면 바쁠수록

좋을수록 = 좋으면 좋을수록

Ex)

The more, the better.

= 많으면 많을수록 좋아요.

LEVEL 4 LESSON 1

The cheaper it is, the more you can buy it.

= 싸면 쌀수록 많이 살 수 있어요.

Set expression

The expression “**갈수록**” comes from 가다 + -을수록 and literally means “the more you go”, but it is used as a set phrase that means, “more and more so in time” or “as time goes by”.

갈수록 추워요.

[gal-su-rok chu-wo-yo.]

= It keeps getting colder.

사브린 씨는 갈수록 한국어를 잘 해요.

[sa-beu-rin ssi-neun gal-su-rok han-gu-geo-reul jal hae-yo.]

= Sabrin keeps getting better at her Korean.

Sample sentences

1. 친구는 많을수록 좋아요.

[chin-gu-neun ma-neul-su-rok jo-a-yo.]

= (When it comes to friends,) The more friends you have, the better.

= 친구는 많으면 많을수록 좋아요.

2. 비쌀수록 잘 팔려요.

[bi-ssal-su-rok jal pal-lyeo-yo.]

= The more expensive it is, the better it sells.

= 비싸면 비쌀수록 잘 팔려요.

3. 재미있는 사람일수록 좋아요.

[jae-mi-it-neun sa-ra-mil-su-rok jo-a-yo.]

= The more interesting a person s/he is, the better.

LEVEL 4 LESSON 1

4. 재미있는 사람일수록 인기가 많아요.

[jae-mi-it-neun sa-ra-mil-su-rok in-gi-ga ma-na-yo.]

= The more interesting a person s/he is, the more popular s/he is.

= If you are an interesting person, it's more likely that you are popular.

LEVEL 4 LESSON 2

In this lesson, we are looking at the verb ending **-(으)ㄹ래요** [-(eu)l-lae-yo].

Through our previous lessons, we looked at how to talk about the future in various ways: First, you can use the verb ending **-(으)ㄹ 거예요** [-(eu)l geo-ye-yo] for plain future tense sentences. Secondly, if you are expecting the other person's reaction or feedback or are reacting to someone's remark, you can use the verb ending **-(으)ㄹ게요**.

The verb ending **-(으)ㄹ래요** is very similar to those future tense endings, but also very unique.

Meaning

-(으)ㄹ래요 is used when you want to express an intention or a will to do something. If you put a question mark at the end of the sentence, you can ask about someone else's will or intention to do something. It can mean "I want to..." or "I'm going to...", or it can also mean "Do you want to...?" when it is used in a question sentence.

Conjugation

Verb stems ending with a consonant + -을래요

Verb stems ending with the consonant ㄹ + -래요

Verb stems ending with a vowel + -래요

Usage examples

1. 집에 갈래요. [ji-be gal-lae-yo.]

= I want to go home. / I'm going to go home.

** Comparison

집에 가고 싶어요. [ji-be ga-go si-peo-yo] - most general and vague

= "I want to go home."

집에 갈게요. [ji-be gal-ge-yo] - looking for feedback / reacting to the situation

= "(If so) I'm going to go home. (I wonder what you think.)"

LEVEL 4 LESSON 2

집에 갈 거예요. [ji-be gal geo-ye-yo] - most direct

= "I'm going to go home. (That is my plan.)"

2. 혼자 할래요. [hon-ja hal-lae-yo.]

= I'll do it alone. / I want to do it alone.

3. 저는 안 갈래요. [jeo-neun an gal-lae-yo.]

= I don't want to go. / I'm not going to go.

4. 뭐 마실래요? [mwo ma-sil-lae-yo?]

= What do you want to drink? / What are you going to drink?

5. 커피 마실래요, 차 마실래요? [keo-pi ma-sil-lae-yo, cha ma-sil-lae-yo?]

= Do you want to drink coffee or tea?

6. 이거 볼래? [i-geo bol-lae?]

= Do you want to see this?

7. 언제 만날래? [eon-je man-nal-lae?]

= When do you want to meet?

Note

This **-(으)래요** ending is usually used only in casual settings. You can not use this verb ending if you are talking to someone that you have to be very formal with.

LEVEL 4 LESSON 3

In this lesson, we are looking at the structure **-(으)ㄹ 리가 없어요** [-(eu)l li-ga eop-seo-yo].

Meaning

-(으)ㄹ 리가 없어요 means **"it can't be..."** or **"it is impossible that..."**.

Construction

Verb stems ending with a vowel + **ㄹ 리가 없어요**.

Verb stems ending with **ㄹ** + **ㄹ 리가 없어요**.

Verb stems ending with consonants other than **ㄹ** + **-을 리가 없어요**.

Meaning of "리"

리 [li] means "reason" or "logic". It is in the words "이유 [i-yu: reason]" and "논리 [non-li: logic]". Therefore, the structure **-(으)ㄹ 리가 없어요** literally means "There is no reason that ..." or "There is no logic behind the fact that ...", and when it is translated into English, it means "it can't be..." or "it is impossible...".

Examples

1. 그렇다 [geu-reo-ta] is a common expression used everyday in Korean that means "to be so". When 그렇다 is put together with verb endings, the consonant **ㄸ** is usually dropped.

그러 + ㄹ 리가 없어요 = 그럴 리가 없어요. [geu-reol li-ga eop-seo-yo.]

= It can't be!

= It can't be so!

= That's impossible!

2. 눈이 오다 [nu-ni o-da] = to snow

눈이 오 + ㄹ 리가 없어요 = 눈이 올 리가 없어요. [nu-ni ol li-ga eop-seo-yo.]

= It's impossible that it's snowing.

= I can't be snowing!

LEVEL 4 LESSON 3

3. 모르다 [mo-reu-da] = to not know

모르 + ㄹ 리가 없어요 = 모를 리가 없어요. [mo-reul li-ga eop-seo-yo.]

= It can't be that he/she doesn't know.

= It's impossible that he/she doesn't know.

Using -(으)ㄹ 리가 없어요 with the past and future tenses

You can put -을 리가 없어요 after the past suffix -았/었/였. It is always -을 리가 없어요 because the past suffixes always end in the consonant ㅅ.

- 가 + -았 + -을 리가 없어요 = 갔을 리가 없어요 [ga-sseul li-ga eop-seo-yo]

= No way that he/she went.

- 있 + -었 + -을 리가 없어요 = 있었을 리가 없어요 [i-sseo-sseul li-ga eop-seo-yo]

= It's impossible that there was ...

For the future tense, the same structure as for the present tense is used. You can just add words that indicate that the sentence is talking about a future action or state.

내일이 일요일 + -이 + -ㄹ 리가 없어요. = 내일이 일요일일 리가 없어요. [nae-i-ri i-ryo-il-il li-ga eop-seo-yo]

= No way that tomorrow is Sunday.

Sample sentences

1. 정말요? 그럴 리가 없어요!

[jeong-mal-yo? geu-reol li-ga eop-seo-yo!]

= Really? That can't be true!

2. 효진 씨가 안 왔을 리가 없어요.

[hyo-jin ssi-ga an wa-sseul li-ga eop-seo-yo.]

= It's impossible that Hyojin didn't come.

= No way that Hyojin is not here yet.

LEVEL 4 LESSON 3

3. 경은 씨가 노래를 할 리가 없어요.

[kyeong-eun ssi-ga no-rae-reul hal li-ga eop-seo-yo.]

= No way that Kyeong-eun is going to sing.

= It's impossible that Kyeong-eun will sing.

4. 안 추울 리가 없어요. 지금 1월이에요.

[an chu-ul li-ga eop-seo-yo. ji-geum i-rwol-i-e-yo]

= It's impossible that it is not cold. It's January now.

5. 이상하네요. 안 될 리가 없어요.

[i-sang-ha-ne-yo. an doel li-ga eop-seo-yo.]

= It's strange. It can't not work.

LEVEL 4 LESSON 4

In this lesson, we are looking at the verb ending **-지(요)** [-ji(yo)]. Along with **-네(요)** [-ne(yo)], **-지(요)** is a verb ending that gives your Korean sentences a very subtle change in their meanings.

Meaning

-지(요) [-ji(yo)] has several different usages.

You use the **-지(요)** ending when...

- (1) you are talking about something, supposing that the other person also already knows about it.
- (2) both you and the other person know about something or have a common opinion about something, and you are just mentioning the fact again.

You can use the **-지(요)** ending as a question ending when...

- (3) both you and the other person know about something, and you are just reassuring yourself by asking the question.
- (4) you know about something, and you are asking yourself to confirm the fact.
- (5) you don't know about something, and you are asking yourself a question, usually thinking out loud and asking the other people around at the same time.

Structure

Present Tense: verb stem + **-지(요)**

Past Tense: verb stem + **-았/었/였** + **-지(요)**

Future Tense: verb stem + **-(으)ㄹ 거** + **-지(요)**

Contraction

When you speak in 존댓말, the verb ending **-지요** [-ji-yo] often changes to **-죠** [-jyo] for short.

Sample sentences

1. 오늘 날씨 춥지요?

[o-neul nal-ssi chup-ji-yo?]

= The weather is cold today, right?

LEVEL 4 LESSON 4

--> (You know that the other person knows that the weather is cold.)

2. 맞아요. 피자 정말 맛있죠.

[ma-ja-yo. pi-ja jeong-mal ma-sit-jyo.]

= That's right. Pizza really is delicious.

--> (You know that the other person also thinks that pizza is delicious.)

3. 재미있지요?

[jae-mi-it-ji-yo?]

= It's fun, right?

--> (You know that the other person already thinks that it is fun, so you are asking to check again.)

4. 이게 뭐지? (asking oneself)

[i-ge mwo-ji?]

= What is this?

--> (You are not directly asking anybody, so you do not say "이게 뭐야?" or "이게 뭐예요?".)

5. 그럴 수도 있죠.

[geu-reol su-do it-jyo.]

= Yeah, that could be possible.

--> (You and the other person both know that something is possible, and you show your agreement as the other person just mentions it.)

LEVEL 4 LESSON 5

In this lesson, we look at the word **당신** [dang-sin]. This word appears in a lot of Korean songs and TV or movie lines, but it needs to be used with caution in real-life conversations.

What does **당신** [dang-sin] mean?

당신 [dang-sin] basically means “you”.

Why should one use it with caution?

In the dictionary, if you look up the word “you”, you will see “당신” come up first in many dictionaries. But in reality, Korean people rarely use the word “you” in the sentences, especially when they are speaking in 존댓말, formal language.

Then when is it that people DO use the word 당신?

You can use the word 당신 when:

1. you are angry at someone and you don't mind fighting with that person.
2. you are translating from a foreign language and you must have a word for “you”.
3. you are writing or singing a song.
4. you are addressing your spouse (usually common among middle-aged or older people).
5. (rare case) you are talking about someone (who is not present in the place) in an honorific way and want to say “he” or “she”.

Then how do you say “you” in Korean?

If you are speaking in 반말, you can say “너”.

너 + 는 [topic marker] = 너는 [neo-neun]

너 + 가 [subject marker] = 네가 [ne-ga] or 니가 [ni-ga]

If you are speaking in 존댓말, you just say the name of the other person and add words like -씨, -님, or a word that describes his or her position or job.

Ex) 현우 씨 지금 시간 있어요? [hyeo-nu ssi ji-geum si-gan i-sseo-yo?]

= (Talking to 현우) Do you have time now?

LEVEL 4 LESSON 5

Ex) 최경은 선생님, 어디예요? [choe-kyeong-eun seon-saeng-nim eo-di-ye-yo?]

= (Talking to Teacher 최경은) Where are you?

If you are speaking in 존댓말, you can just say the social status of the person.

Ex) 기사님, 여기에서 내려 주세요. [gi-sa-nim yeo-gi-e-seo nae-ryeo ju-se-yo.]

= (Talking to the taxi driver) Let me get off here.

Some examples:

Usage 1

- 당신 뭐야? [dang-sin mwo-ya?] = Who do you think you are? / What are you?
- 당신 뭐가 문제야? [dang-sin mwo-ga mun-je-ya?] = What's your problem?

In this case, you don't mind getting into a quarrel or a fight with the person. Note that you are not speaking in complete 존댓말 any more. Of course, if you are already speaking in 반말, you would say "너".

Usage 2 & 3

- 당신의 눈은 참 아름다워요. [dang-si-neu nu-neun cham a-reum-da-wo-yo.]
= Your eyes are so beautiful.
- 당신에게 이 노래를 바칩니다. [dang-si-ne-ge i no-rae-reul ba-chim-ni-da.]
= I dedicate this song to you.

You are forced to use 당신 here because you don't know the name of the other person without context.

Usage 4

- 당신 지금 어디예요? [dang-sin ji-geum eo-di-ye-yo?]
= Honey, where are you?

Other words that can replace 당신 in this case to address one's spouse are 여보 [yeo-bo] (most common) and 자기 [ja-gi] (usually common among young couples).

LEVEL 4 LESSON 5

Usage 5

This is becoming more and more rare these days. Often times, people just drop the word 당신 even if they want to use it for fear of the other person not understanding them.

LEVEL 4 LESSON 6 - WORD BUILDER 3

Welcome to the Word Builder lesson at TalkToMeInKorean.com! Word Builder lessons are designed to help you understand how to expand your vocabulary by learning/understanding some common and basic building blocks of Korean words. The words and letters that are introduced through the Word Builder lessons are not necessarily all Chinese characters (or 한자 [han-ja]). Even though many of them are based on Chinese characters, their meanings can be different from modern-day Chinese, and you don't have to memorize the Hanja characters themselves. Your goal through these lessons is to just understand how words are formed and remember the keyword in Korean and expand your Korean vocabulary from there.

Today's keyword is **동**.

The Chinese character for this word is 動.

The word 동 is related to "movement" or "move".

운 (to transport) + 동 (to move) = **운동** 運動 [un-dong] = exercise, workout

동 (to move) + 작 (to make) = **동작** 動作 [dong-jak] = movement, move

작 (to make) + 동 (to move) = **작동** 作動 [jak-dong] = operation (of a device)

활 (to flow, to be alive) + 동 (to move) = **활동** 活動 [hwal-dong] = activity

동 (to move) + 사 (language) = **동사** 動詞 [dong-sa] = verb

동 (to move) + 물 (object, material) = **동물** 動物 [dong-mul] = animal

LEVEL 4 LESSON 6 - WORD BUILDER 3

연 (to connect) + 동 (to move) = **연동** 聯動 [yeon-dong] = linkage, interlocking

행 (to do, to go) + 동 (to move) = **행동** 行動 [haeng-dong] = behavior

동 (to move) + 영 (to project) + 상 (image) = **동영상** 動映像 (dong-yeong-sang)
= video

LEVEL 4 LESSON 7

In this lesson, we are looking at the expression “**괜찮아요** [gwaen-cha-na-yo]”. **괜찮아요** is very commonly used in everyday Korean conversations and can have various meanings.

The basic (and the most widely known) meaning of **괜찮아요** is “**It’s okay.**” or “**I’m okay.**” Let’s look at some more examples of how **괜찮아요** can be used.

But before that, let us break down the sentence, **괜찮아요**.

괜찮아요 comes from a much longer sentence that does not necessarily make sense in its entirety.

괜하다 (gwaen-ha-da) = to be pointless, to be meaningless (This word is almost never used as is.)

괜하지 않다 --> **괜치 않다** --> **괜찮다** = It’s okay.

Present tense = **괜찮아요** [gwaen-cha-na-yo]

Past tense = **괜찮았어요** [gwaen-cha-na-sseo-yo]

Future tense = **괜찮을 거예요** [gwaen-cha-neul geo-ye-yo]

Usages of **괜찮아요**

1. “I am okay.” “I am alright.” “Everything is fine.”

Ex)

(You slip and fall on the ground, and someone asks you if you are alright.)

괜찮아요. = I’m okay.

2. “Don’t worry.” “No worries.”

Ex)

(Your friend is worrying about something, and you want to tell her not to worry.)

괜찮아요. = Don’t worry.

LEVEL 4 LESSON 7

3. "It's good."

Ex)

(You refer to something as "cool" "good" or "recommendable".)

이 영화 진짜 괜찮아요. = This movie is really good.

4. "I'm cool." "No, thanks."

Ex)

(Your friend offers you a drink, and you want to politely refuse it.)

괜찮아요. = No, thanks. I'm good.

LEVEL 4 LESSON 8

In this lesson, we are going to look at how to say **"It is okay to..."** and **"don't have to..."** or **"don't need to..."** in Korean. To say these, you will need to use the following common structure:

-아/어/여도 되다 [-a/eo/yeo-do doe-da]

How it works:

되다 [doe-da] means **"to function"** **"to be possible"** or **"can do"**.

Ex) 지금 인터넷 돼요? (Does the Internet work now?)

Ex) 배달 돼요? (Can you deliver it?)

도 [-do] means **"also"** or **"too"** (when used with nouns)

Ex) 저도 갈 거예요. (I'm going to go, too.)

Ex) 이것도 주세요. (Give this one, too.)

-아/어/여 + -도 means **"even if"** **"even when"** (when used with verb stems)

Ex) 먹어도 (even if you eat)

Ex) 몰라도 (even if you don't know)

When combined,

-아/어/여 + -도 + 되다 = -아/어/여도 되다 [-a/eo/yeo-do doe-da] means "it is okay to..." or "it is okay even if you..."

Examples:

켜다 [kyeo-da] = to turn on, to switch on

켜도 되다 [kyeo-do doe-da] = it is okay to turn ... on, it is okay even if you switch ... on

켜도 돼요. = It's okay. You can turn it on.

하다 [ha-da] = to do

LEVEL 4 LESSON 8

해도 되다 [hae-do doe-da] = it is okay to do ..., it is okay even if you do ...

내일 해도 돼요. = It's okay if you do it tomorrow. You can just do it tomorrow.

Sample Sentences

1. 이거 나중에 해도 돼요. [i-geo na-jung-e hae-do dwae-yo?] = You can do this later.

(Question form: 이거 나중에 해도 돼요? = Can I do this later?)

2. 컴퓨터 써도 돼요? [keom-pyu-teo sseo-do dwae-yo?] = Can I use the computer?

3. 오늘 쉬어도 돼요. [o-neul swi-eo-do dwae-yo.] = You can take a day off today.

How to say "don't have to..."

Using the same structure (-아/어/여 + -도 + 되다) and adding **안** [an] in front of it, you can say "don't have to..." or "it is not necessary to..."

해도 돼요. [hae-do dwae-yo.] = You can do it. It is okay if you do it.

안 해도 돼요. [an hae-do dwae-yo.] = You don't have to do it. It is okay if you don't do it.

먹어도 돼요. [meo-geo-do dwae-yo.] = You can eat it. It's okay if you eat it.

안 먹어도 돼요. [an meo-geo-do dwae-yo.] = You don't have to eat it. It's okay if you don't eat it.

안 + -아/어/여 + -도 + 되다 is NOT "you shouldn't...". How to say "you shouldn't" in Korean will be introduced in the next lesson (Level 4 Lesson 9).

LEVEL 4 LESSON 9

In the previous lesson, we looked at how to say "it is okay to..." in Korean. Now in this lesson, let us look at how to say **"you shouldn't..."** or **"you're not supposed to..."** in Korean.

The main structure is:

Verb stem + **-(으)면 안 되다** [-(eu)myeon an doe-da]

-(으)면 안 되다 can be broken into two parts: **-(으)면** and **안 되다**

-(으)면 means "if" (Go to Level 2 Lesson 23 to review). 되다 means "to work", "to function", "to be possible" or "can do", therefore 안 되다 means "it can't be done", "it's not possible" or "it is not okay".

Therefore, **-(으)면 안 되다** literally means **"it is not okay if..."** or **"it is not acceptable if..."**, and it can be more naturally translated to English as **"you shouldn't..."** or **"you're not supposed to..."**

Examples:

1. 열다 [yeol-da] = to open

열면 안 돼요. [yeol-myeon an dwae-yo.] = You shouldn't open it. You are not supposed to open it.

(Opposite: 열어도 돼요. [yeo-reo-do dwae-yo.] = It's okay to open it. You can go ahead and open it.)

2. 만지다 [man-ji-da] = to touch

만지면 안 돼요. [man-ji-myeon an dwae-yo.] = You shouldn't touch it. You can't touch it.

(Opposite: 만져도 돼요. [man-jyeo-do dwae-yo.] = It's okay to touch it. You can go ahead and touch it.)

More Verb Conjugation Practice:

1. 던지다 [deon-ji-da] = to throw

You should not throw it. = 던지면 안 돼요. [deon-ji-myeon an dwae-yo.]

LEVEL 4 LESSON 9

It's okay to throw it. = 던져도 돼요. [deon-jyeo-do dwae-yo.]

2. 팔다 [pal-da] = to sell

You should not sell it. = 팔면 안 돼요. [pal-myeon an dwae-yo.]

It's okay to sell it. = 팔아도 돼요. [pa-ra-do dwae-yo.]

3. 말하다 [mal-ha-da] = to tell, to talk

You should not tell/talk. = 말하면 안 돼요. [ma-ra-myeon an dwae-yo.]

It's okay to tell/talk. = 말해도 돼요. [ma-rae-do dwae-yo.]

LEVEL 4 LESSON 10

In this lesson, let us look at how to say "among" or "between" in Korean.

One expression you can use to say this in Korean is **중에서** [jung-e-seo]. And you can make it shorter by just saying **중에** [jung-e] without the last letter, 서 [seo].

중 [jung] can be written using a Chinese character (中) and it basically means "center" or "middle". So **중에서** literally means "in the middle".

Other words that have the letter "중 (中)" are:

중학교 = 중 (middle) + 학교 (school) = middle school

중식 = 중 (middle) + 식 (eat) = formal name for "lunch"

회의중 = 회의 (meeting, conference) + 중 (middle) = meeting in process

중에서 means "among" or "between" but it can only be used when you are listing a few options to choose from. You can NOT say **중에서** to describe a location and say something like "The house is located between the bank and the park." In that case, you need to use a different expression (which will be introduced later in this lesson).

Expression #1 - **중에서**

When you are choosing from a few options, you put **중에서** at the end of "A and B".

Ex)

Between A and B

= A하고 B **중에서** [A-ha-go B jung-e-seo]

Between this book and that book

= 이 책하고 저 책 **중에서** [i chaek-ha-go jeo chaek jung-e-seo]

Among these three things

= 이 세 개 **중에서** [i se gae jung-e-seo]

LEVEL 4 LESSON 10

Expression #2 - 사이에서

When you are saying "among" in the sense of "popular among friends" or "famous among teenagers", you use the expression, 사이에서 [sa-i-e-seo]. 사이 [sa-i] can refer to a relationship or the space between certain objects or people.

Ex)

He is popular among friends.

= 친구들 사이에서 인기가 많아요. [chin-gu-deul sa-i-e-seo in-gi-ga ma-na-yo.]

This singer is popular among Koreans.

= 이 가수는 한국인들 사이에서 인기가 많아요. [i ga-su-neun han-gu-gin-deul sa-i-e-seo in-gi-ga ma-na-yo.]

Expression #3 - 사이에

When you are referring to a physical space between two objects or two people, you can say "사이에".

Ex)

I am between the bank and the park.

= 은행하고 공원 사이에 있어요. [eun-haeng-ha-go gong-won sa-i-e i-sseo-yo.]

The pharmacy is between the school and the police station.

= 약국은 학교하고 경찰서 사이에 있어요. [yak-gu-geun hak-gyo-ha-go gyeong-chal-seo sa-i-e i-sseo-yo.]

LEVEL 4 LESSON 11

In this lesson, we are going to look at how to say **"anyone"**, **"anything"**, and **"anywhere"** in Korean.

The basic word that you will need to learn is **아무** [a-mu].

아무 [a-mu] basically means "any" and it HAS TO be used along with other nouns. And when it is used in a negative context, it means "no" + noun.

Expressions (positive sentences)

For positive sentences, you add **-나** [-na] at the end of the word.

1. 아무나 [a-mu-na] = anybody, doesn't matter who, anyone

Ex) 아무나 올 수 있어요. [a-mu-na ol su i-sseo-yo.] = Anybody can come.

2. 아무거나 [a-mu-geo-na] = anything, doesn't matter what

Ex) 아무거나 주세요. [a-mu-geo-na ju-se-yo.] = Give me just anything.

(Originally 아무거나 comes from 아무 + 것이나 [amu geo-si-na]. 것 [geot] means "thing".)

3. 아무데나 [a-mu-de-na] = anywhere, any place

Ex) 아무데나 좋아요. [a-mu-de-na jo-a-yo.] = Any place is good.

(Originally 데 [de] means "place" or "spot".)

Expressions (negative sentences)

For negative sentences, you add **-도** [do] at the end of the word.

1. 아무도 [a-mu-do] = nobody, not anybody

Ex) 아무도 없어요? [a-mu-do eop-seo-yo?] = Nobody here?

2. 아무것도 [a-mu-geot-do] = nothing, not anything

LEVEL 4 LESSON 11

Ex) 아무것도 만지지 마세요. [a-mu-geot-do man-ji-ji ma-se-yo.] = Don't touch anything.

Ex) 아무것도 몰라요. [a-mu-geot-do mol-la-yo.] = I don't know anything.

3. 아무데도 [a-mu-de-do] = nowhere, not any place

Ex) 아무데도 안 갈 거예요. [a-mu-de-do an gal geo-ye-yo.] = I'm not going anywhere.

How to say "not just anybody"

If what you imply is "be careful when you make a choice" and if you want to say things like "Don't eat at just any place." "Don't hang out with just about anybody." "Don't buy just about anything (without enough consideration).", you can use the expressions "아무나" "아무거나" or "아무데나" in a negative sentence.

Ex)

- 아무나 올 수 없어요. [a-mu-na ol su eop-seo-yo.] = Not everybody can come.

- 아무"도" 올 수 없어요. [a-mu-do ol su eop-seo-yo.] = Nobody can come.

Ex)

- 아무거나 먹으면 안 돼요. [a-mu-geo-na meo-geu-myeon an dwae-yo.] = You shouldn't eat just anything.

- 아무것도 먹으면 안 돼요. [a-mu-geot-do meo-geu-myeon an dwae-yo.] = You shouldn't eat anything at all.

Ex)

- 아무데나 가고 싶지 않아요. [a-mu-de-na ga-go sip-ji a-na-yo.] = I don't want to go just about anywhere.

- 아무데도 가고 싶지 않아요. [a-mu-de-do ga-go sip-ji a-na-yo.] = I don't want to go anywhere.

More expressions

There are more expressions using 아무 [a-mu], such as 아무때나 [a-mu-ttae-na] for "anytime", but they will be introduced in a future lesson.

LEVEL 4 LESSON 12

In this lesson, we are going to look at the sentence structure **-아/어/여 보다** [-a/eo/yeo bo-da] and how it is used.

Basic meaning

-아/어/여 보다 basically means **"to try doing something"**.

If you break down the structure, it is comprised of two parts. -아/어/여 [-a/eo/yeo] and 보다 [bo-da]. -아/어/여 is the basic suffix that you use after verb stems, and 보다 means "to see". The literal translation of -아/어/여 보다 is "to do something and see (what happens)", so the idiomatic meaning is "to try doing something" or "to give something a try."

Verb conjugation examples:

Ex 1)

쓰다 [sseu-da] = to use

--> 쓰 + -어 보다 = 써 보다 [sseo bo-da] = to try using something

이거 써 봤어요? [i-geo sseo bwa-sseo-yo?] = Have you tried using this?

Ex 2)

들어가다 [deu-reo-ga-da] = to enter, to go in

--> 들어가 + -아 보다 = 들어가 보다 [deu-reo-ga bo-da] = to try going in

들어가 볼까요? [deu-reo-ga bol-kka-yo?] = Shall we try going in (and see what it's like)?

Ex 3)

하다 [ha-da] = to do

--> 하 + -어 보다 = 해 보다 [hae bo-da] = to try doing something

이거 해 보고 싶어요. [i-geo hae bo-go si-peo-yo.] = I want to try doing this.

Fixed expressions and verbs containing -아/어/여 보다

Since -아/어/여 보다 is a very commonly used structure, some verbs are very commonly used in the -아/어/여 보다 structure, and some other verbs are actually already in the form of -아/어/여 보다. And in that case, since -아/어/여 보다 is part of the verbs, the space between -아/어/여 and 보다 is not even necessary.

LEVEL 4 LESSON 12

1. 물어보다 [mu-reo-bo-da] vs 물어 보다 [mu-reo bo-da]
 - 물어보다 = to ask
 - 물어 보다 = to try asking (묻다 + 보다)

2. 알아보다 [a-ra-bo-da] vs 알아 보다 [a-ra bo-da]
 - 알아보다 = to look into something, to recognize
 - 알아 보다 (x)

3. 지켜보다 [ji-kyeo-bo-da] vs 지켜 보다 [ji-kyeo bo-da]
 - 지켜보다 = to keep a watchful eye on someone/something
 - 지켜 보다 (x)

Sample sentences

1. 이거 먹어 봐요.
[i-geo meo-geo bwa-yo.]
= Try eating this. / Try some of this.

2. 저도 거기 안 가 봤어요.
[jeo-do geo-gi an ga bwa-sseo-yo.]
= I haven't been there yet, either. / I haven't tried going there, either.

3. 제가 먼저 해 볼게요.
[je-ga meon-jeo hae bol-ge-yo.]
= I will try doing it first. / I will give it a try first.

4. 누구한테 물어볼까요?
[nu-gu-han-te mu-reo-bol-kka-yo?]
= Whom shall I ask?

5. 제가 알아볼게요.
[je-ga a-ra-bol-ge-yo.]
= I'll look into it.

LEVEL 4 LESSON 13 - WORD BUILDER 4

Welcome to the 4th Word Builder lesson at TalkToMeInKorean.com.

In this lesson, we look at the word **불** [bul]. It is written as 不 in Hanja, and it can sometimes be pronounced as 부 [bu], depending on the entire word. There is no set rule to when 不 is written as "**불**" and when it is written as "**부**" in Korean, so it always depends on the certain word.

부/불 (不) means "**not**" in English.

Examples

불 (not) + 안 (comfortable, relaxed) = **불안** 不安 = anxiety, anxious

불 (not) + 편 (comfortable, convenient) = **불편** 不便 = inconvenient, uncomfortable

불 (not) + 완전 (complete) = **불완전** 不完全 = incomplete

불 (not) + 균형 (balance) = **불균형** 不均衡 = imbalance

불 (not) + 만 (full) = **불만** 不滿 = complaint

부 (not) + 정확 (correct) = **부정확** 不正確 = incorrect

부 (not) + 주의 (attention) = **부주의** 不注意 = carelessness

부 (not) + 당 (correct, right) = **부당** 不當 = wrong, unfair, unjust

LEVEL 4 LESSON 13 - WORD BUILDER 4

부 (not) + 적절 (proper) = **부적절** 不適切 = inappropriate

When **부** is written as "副", it means "**vice**" as in "**vice president**".

LEVEL 4 LESSON 14

In this lesson, we are looking at some words that express **frequency**. It is important to practice using them along with the verbs that you will actually use those frequency words with.

Frequency words in Korean

- 가끔 [ga-kkeum] = sometimes
- 자주 [ja-ju] = often
- 항상 [hang-sang] = always [more common in written language]
- 맨날 [maen-nal] = (lit. everyday,) always, all the time [more common in spoken language]
- 별로 [byeol-lo] = seldom, rarely
- 전혀 [jeon-hyeo] = not at all
- 거의 [geo-ui] = almost not at all

Where do they go inside a sentence?

These frequency words usually go right before the verb of a sentence but the position is very flexible. As long as the meaning of your sentence is clear, it doesn't matter where they are placed. You can, however, emphasize a certain part of a sentence by changing the word order and intonation.

Examples

1. 가끔 서점에 가요.

[ga-kkeum seo-jeo-me ga-yo.]

= I go to the bookstore sometimes.

= 서점에 가끔 가요.

2. 한국 영화 자주 봐요.

[han-guk yeong-hwa ja-ju bwa-yo.]

= I watch Korean movies often.

= 자주 한국 영화 봐요.

LEVEL 4 LESSON 14

3. 항상 물어보고 싶었어요.

[hang-sang mu-reo-bo-go si-peo-sseo-yo.]

= I've always wanted to ask you.

4. 중국어를 맨날 공부하는데, 아직 어려워요.

[jung-gu-geo-reul maen-nal gong-bu-ha-neun-de, a-jik eo-ryeo-wo-yo.]

= I study Chinese all the time, but it's still difficult.

5. 요즘에는 운동을 별로 안 해요.

[yo-jeu-me-neun un-dong-eul byeol-lo an hae-yo.]

= I rarely work out these days.

= These days, I seldom work out.

= These days, I don't work out that often.

6. 시간이 없어서, 친구들을 거의 못 만나요.

[si-ga-ni eop-seo-seo, chin-gu-deu-reul geo-ui mot man-na-yo.]

= I don't have time, so I can hardly meet my friends.

LEVEL 4 LESSON 15

This lesson is a follow-up for Level 4 Lesson 11, where we introduced the expressions **아무나** (anybody), **아무거나** (anything), **아무데나** (anywhere), **아무도** (nobody), **아무것도** (nothing), and **아무데도** (nowhere). In this lesson, let us look at some more expressions that are related to **아무** as well as more sample sentences.

1. **아무때나** [a-mu-ttae-na]

= just anytime, anytime

= 아무 (any) + 때 (moment, time) + -나

Ex)

아무때나 오세요. [a-mu-ttae-na o-se-yo.] = Just come anytime.

2. **아무 말도** [a-mu mal-do] / **아무 이야기도** [a-mu i-ya-gi-do]

= no word, no mention

= 아무 (any) + 말/이야기 (language/word) + -도 (even/also)

Ex)

아무 말도 안 했죠? [a-mu mal-do an haet-jyo?] = You didn't tell them anything, right?

3. **아무렇지도 않다** [a-mu-reot-chi-do an-ta]

= to be alright, to be okay, to be unaffected by

= 아무 (any) + 그렇다 (to be so) + -지 않다 (to be not)

Ex)

저는 아무렇지도 않아요. [jeo-neun a-mu-reot-chi-do a-na-yo.] = I'm okay.

4. **아무한테도** [a-mu-han-te-do]

= to nobody

= 아무 (anybody) + -한테 (to) + -도 (even/also)

LEVEL 4 LESSON 15

Ex)

아무한테도 주지 마세요. [a-mu-han-teo-do ju-ji ma-se-yo.] = Don't give it to anybody.

5. 아무렇게나 [a-mu-reot-ke-na]

= just in any way, however you like it

Ex)

아무렇게나 해도 돼요. [a-mu-reot-ke-na hae-do dwae-yo.] = You can do it whatever way you want.

6. 아무(런) + noun + -도 + (없어요) [a-mu-(reon) + noun + -do + (eop-seo-yo)]

= there is no + noun (of any kind)

Ex)

아무 소식도 없어요. [a-mu so-sik-do eop-seo-yo.] = There is no news (from them).

Ex)

아무 맛도 없어요. [a-mu mat-do eop-seo-yo.] = It is tasteless.

** Fixed expression

아무것도 아니에요.

[a-mu-geot-do a-ni-e-yo.]

= It's nothing.

LEVEL 4 LESSON 16

Among the many rules that you need to know in order to speak fluent Korean, one thing that we have not covered yet is spacing. After learning so much about other grammar points, we feel that now is the right time to look at spacing.

Spacing rules in Korean

Spacing in Korean is basically not so difficult to understand, but it is still very different from English. Independent words can be written separately (with a space between two words), but there are cases in which you should NOT have a space between two words.

There should be a space between:

1. an adjective and a noun

Ex) 예쁜 강아지 [ye-ppeun gang-a-ji] = a pretty puppy

2. an adverb and a verb

Ex) 조용히 걷다 [jo-yong-hi geot-da] = to walk quietly

3. a noun (+ marker) and a verb

Ex) 이거(를) 샀어요. [i-geo(-reul) sa-sseo-yo.] = I bought this.

4. a noun and another noun

Ex) 한국 여행 [han-guk yeo-haeng] = trip to Korea

5. before a noun

There is no space between:

1. a noun/pronoun and a marker

Ex) 저 + 는 = 저는 [jeo-neun] = I + subject marker

2. nouns in a proper name (if they choose their name to be in that format)

Ex) 한국관광공사 [han-guk-gwan-gwang-gong-sa] = Korea Tourism Organization

LEVEL 4 LESSON 16

Exceptions:

1. Words that have formed fixed expressions can be written together without space.

- 이 + 것 = 이 것 --> 이것

- 여자 친구 = 여자친구

(This is very commonly found in sino-Korean words.)

2. "Noun + 하다"

- 공부(를) 하다 = 공부 하다 ---> 공부하다

- 운동(을) 하다 = 운동 하다 ---> 운동하다

LEVEL 4 LESSON 17

In the previous lesson, we looked at the spacing rules in Korean. In addition to the "exceptions" of spacing in Korean, which were cases in which two different words (or more) were written together without space, there are also times when certain words are put together to make a new, shorter form. We are going to take a look at word contractions in Korean through a number of lessons, and this is the first part.

Topic marker contractions

1.

저는 [jeo-neun] ---> 전 [jeon]

Ex)

저는 괜찮아요. [jeo-neun gwaen-cha-na-yo.] = I'm alright.

= 전 괜찮아요. [jeon gwaen-cha-na-yo.]

2.

나는 [na-neun] ---> 난 [nan]

Ex)

나는 여기 있을게. [na-neun yeo-gi i-sseul-ge.] = I'll stay here.

= 난 여기 있을게. [nan yeo-gi i-sseul-ge.]

3.

이것은 [i-geo-seun] ---> 이거는 [i-geo-neun] ---> 이건

Ex)

이것은 뭐예요? [i-geo-seun mwo-ye-yo?] = What is this?

이건 뭐예요? [i-geon mwo-ye-yo?]

4.

서울에는 [seo-u-re-neun] ---> 서울엔 [seo-u-ren]

LEVEL 4 LESSON 17

Ex)

서울에는 왜 왔어요? [seo-u-re-neun wae wa-sseo-yo?] = What brings you to Seoul?

서울엔 왜 왔어요? [seo-u-ren wae wa-sseo-yo?]

5.

어제는 [eo-je-neun] --> 어젠 [eo-jen]

Ex)

어제는 왜 안 왔어요? [eo-je-neun wae an wa-sseo-yo?] = Why didn't you come yesterday?

어젠 왜 안 왔어요? [eo-jen wae an wa-sseo-yo?]

LEVEL 4 LESSON 18

In Level 2 Lesson 29, we introduced how to say **"more"** in Korean.

더 [deo] = **more**

Examples:

1. 조금 더 [jo-geum deo] = a little more
2. 더 많이 [deo ma-ni] = more + much = more
3. 더 주세요. [deo ju-se-yo.] = Give me more.
4. 더 먹고 싶어요. [deo meok-go si-peo-yo.] = I want to eat more.

And now in this lesson, let us look at how to say "the best" or "the most" in Korean.

Most (+ adjective/adverb) = 제일 [je-il] / **가장** [ga-jang]

In English, the words "most" and "best" can be used as both adverbs and nouns. The usage that we are looking at today is its usage only as an adverb. (When "most" works as a noun, other Korean words are used, and they will be introduced in a future lesson.)

제일 and 가장 are almost the same thing and they can be used interchangeably. 제일 is a sino-Korean word while 가장 is a native Korean word.

Example #1

예쁘다 [ye-ppeu-da] = to be pretty

제일 예뻐요. [je-il ye-ppeo-yo.] = (subject) is the prettiest/the most beautiful.

제일 예쁜 여자 [je-il ye-ppeun yeo-ja] = the prettiest girl/the most beautiful girl

제일 = 가장

제일 예뻐요 = 가장 예뻐요

제일 예쁜 여자 = 가장 예쁜 여자

**** 제일 is used more commonly in spoken Korean than 가장.**

LEVEL 4 LESSON 18

Example #2

좋다 [jo-ta] = to be good

제일 좋아요. [je-il jo-a-yo.] = (subject) is the best (most + good).

제일 좋은 것 [je-il jo-eun geot] = the best (most + good) thing

Sample phrases

1. 이게 제일 좋아요. [i-ge je-il jo-a-yo.]

= This is the best (one).

2. 제일 가까운 역이 어디예요? [je-il ga-kka-un yeo-gi eo-di-e-yo?]

= Where is the closest station?

3. 어떤 색깔이 가장 좋아요? [eo-tteon saek-kka-ri ga-jang jo-a-yo?]

= Which color is the best? / Which color is your favorite?

4. 제일 먼저 온 사람이 누구예요? [je-il meon-je on sa-ra-mi nu-gu-ye-yo?]

= Who is the person that came here first?

5. 요즘 가장 인기 있는 가수는 누구예요? [yo-jeum ga-jang in-gi it-neun ga-su-neun nu-gu-ye-yo?]

= These days, who is the most popular singer?

LEVEL 4 LESSON 19

We have looked at how to say "more" and "most" in Korean in our previous lessons. Now in this lesson, let us take a look at how to say "less".

덜 [deol] = **less**

While in English, the word "less" can be used as a noun as well as an adverb/adjective, the Korean word 덜 can only be used as an adverb (modifying verbs only).

Examples:

1. 덜 먹다 [deol meok-da] = to eat (something) less
2. 덜 쓰다 [deol sseu-da] = to use (something) less
3. 덜 춥다 [deol chup-da] = to be less cold
4. 덜 비싸다 [deol bi-ssa-da] = to be less expensive

Sample phrases:

1. 어제보다 덜 추워요. [eo-je-bo-da deol chu-wo-yo.]
= It's less cold than yesterday.
2. 덜 비싼 것 없어요? [deol bi-ssan geot eop-seo-yo?]
= Don't you have a less expensive one?
3. 물은 더 마시고, 술은 덜 마셔야 돼요. [mu-reun deo ma-si-go, su-reun deol ma-syeo-ya dwae-yo.]
= You should drink more water and less alcohol.

덜 can also mean **"not completely yet"**.

덜 basically means "less" but it can also mean "not fully" or "not completely yet". And naturally, the opposite word is 다 [da], which means "all" or "completely".

1.

A: 그 맥주 다 마셨어요?

[geu maek-ju da ma-syeo-sseo-yo?]

LEVEL 4 LESSON 19

Did you drink all of that beer?

B: 아니요. 다 안 마셨어요. 덜 마셨어요.

[a-ni-yo. da an ma-syeo-sseo-yo. deol ma-syeo-sseo-yo.]

No, I didn't drink all of it. I haven't finished it yet.

2.

A: 다 왔어요?

[da wa-sseo-yo?]

Are we there yet?

B: 덜 왔어요.

[deol wa-sse-yo.]

We are not there yet.

3.

A: 제 책 돌려주세요.

[je chaek dol-lyeo-ju-se-yo.]

Give me my book back.

B: 아직 덜 봤어요.

[a-jik deol bwa-sseo-yo.]

I haven't finished it yet.

LEVEL 4 LESSON 20

This is the first in the series **“Sentence Building Drill”**. Through our previous lessons, you have learned how to use and understand a lot of grammar points in the Korean language. In this series, we will be focusing on how you can train yourself to make more Korean sentences more comfortably.

In this lesson, we will start off with THREE key sentences, and practice changing parts of these sentences so that you don't end up just memorizing the same three sentences. We want you to be able to be as flexible as possible with the Korean sentences you can make.

Key sentence #1.

오늘부터 한국어를 더 열심히 공부할 거예요.

[o-neun-bu-teo han-gu-geo-reul deo yeol-si-mi gong-bu-hal geo-ye-yo.]

= From today, I am going to study Korean harder.

Key sentence #2.

아마 내일부터 일요일까지 비가 내릴 거예요.

[a-ma nae-il-bu-teo i-ryo-il-kka-ji bi-ga nae-ril geo-ye-yo.]

= It will probably rain from tomorrow until Sunday.

Key sentence #3.

내일 시간이 있으면, 같이 커피 마실래요?

[nae-il si-ga-ni i-sseu-myeon, ga-chi keo-pi ma-sil-lae-yo?]

= If you have time tomorrow, will you drink coffee together (with me)?

Expansion & variation practice with key sentence #1

0. Original sentence:

오늘부터 한국어를 더 열심히 공부할 거예요.

LEVEL 4 LESSON 20

1.

오늘부터 = from today, starting from today

내일부터 = from tomorrow

지금부터 = from now on

언제부터? = since when?

2.

한국어를 공부할 거예요 = I'm going to study Korean

한국어를 연습할 거예요 = I'm going to practice Korean

한국어를 쓸 거예요 = I'm going to use Korean

한국어로 말할 거예요 = I'm going to talk in Korean

한국어를 배울 거예요 = I'm going to learn Korean

3.

열심히 공부할 거예요 = I'm going to study hard

열심히 일할 거예요 = I'm going to work hard

열심히 준비할 거예요 = I'm going to prepare hard, I'm going to do my best with the preparation

열심히 연습할 거예요 = I'm going to practice hard

4.

열심히 공부하다 = to study hard

더 열심히 공부하다 = to study harder

덜 열심히 공부하다 = to study less hard

Expansion & variation practice with key sentence #2

0. Original sentence:

아마 내일부터 일요일까지 비가 내릴 거예요.

LEVEL 4 LESSON 20

1.

내일부터 일요일까지 = from tomorrow until Sunday

내일부터 모레까지 = from tomorrow until the day after tomorrow

어제부터 오늘까지 = from yesterday until today

지난 주부터 다음 주까지 = from last week until next week

2.

비가 내릴 거예요 = it is going to rain

비가 올 거예요 = it is going to rain

눈이 내릴 거예요 = it is going to snow

눈이 올 거예요 = it is going to snow

비가 그칠 거예요 = it is going to stop raining

눈이 그칠 거예요 = it is going to stop snowing

비가 많이 내릴 거예요 = it is going to rain a lot

눈이 많이 내릴 거예요 = it is going to snow a lot

3.

아마 비가 내릴 거예요 = it will probably rain

분명히 비가 내릴 거예요 = it will certainly rain

어쩌면 비가 내릴지도 몰라요 = maybe it might rain

어쩌면 비가 내릴 수도 있어요 = maybe it could rain

Expansion & variation practice with key sentence #3

0. Original sentence:

내일 시간이 있으면, 같이 커피 마실래요?

1.

시간이 있으면 = if you have time

시간이 없으면 = if you don't have time

LEVEL 4 LESSON 20

시간이 많이 있으면 = if you have a lot of time

시간이 많으면 = if you have a lot of time

시간이 조금 밖에 없으면 = if you have only a little bit of time

시간이 전혀 없으면 = if you have no time at all

2.

내일 시간이 있으면 = if you have time tomorrow

오늘 시간이 있으면 = if you have time today

주말에 시간이 있으면 = if you have time on the weekend

다음 주에 시간이 있으면 = if you have time next week

3.

커피 마실래요? = Do you want to drink coffee?, Shall we drink coffee?

뭐 마실래요? = What do you want to drink?, What shall we drink?

어떤 거 마실래요? = What kind of (drink) do you want to drink?

어디에서 마실래요? = Where do you want to drink (something)?

4.

같이 커피 마실래요? = Do you want to drink coffee together?

저랑 커피 마실래요? = Do you want to drink coffee with me?

저랑 같이 커피 마실래요? = Do you want to drink coffee together with me?

다 같이 커피 마실래요? = Do you want to drink coffee with everyone?

LEVEL 4 LESSON 21

In Level 4 Lesson 16, we looked at the basic spacing rules. We have learned that independent words are written separately with a space between them, but there is no space between a noun or a pronoun and a marker. We have also learned that certain words are used so often together that they are just used and considered as just one independent word. In this lesson, let us take a look at more words that, over time, have formed new meanings and are now being used as independent words. These words generally have different meanings from the combination of the original meanings of the combined words.

Examples

1. 돌려 주다 Vs. 돌려주다

돌리다 [dol-li-da] = to turn, to revolve

돌려 주다 [dol-lyeo ju-da] = to turn something for someone

돌려주다 [dol-lyeo-ju-da] = to return something, to give something back

2. 돌아 가다 Vs. 돌아가다

돌다 [dol-da] = to turn, to turn around

돌아 가다 [do-ra ga-da] = to detour, to go around in a longer path

돌아가다 [do-ra-ga-da] = to return, to go back to some place

3. 빌려 주다 Vs. 빌려주다

빌리다 [bil-li-da] = to borrow

빌려 주다 [bil-lyeo ju-da] = to borrow something (from someone else) for someone

빌려주다 [bil-lyeo-ju-da] = to lend something to someone

4. 알아보다

알다 [al-da] = to know

보다 [bo-da] = to see

LEVEL 4 LESSON 21

알아보다 [a-ra-bo-da] = to recognize something/someone, to look into something

“알아 보다” doesn't exist.

5. 나오다/나가다

나다 [na-da] = to be born, to get out, to be out of (not commonly used on its own)

오다 [o-da] = to come

가다 [ga-da] = to go

나오다 [na-o-da] = to come outside

나가다 [na-ga-da] = to go outside

6. 들어오다/들어가다

들다 [deul-da] = to get in, to be in, to get into (not commonly used on its own)

오다 [o-da] = to come

가다 [ga-da] = to go

들어오다 [deu-reo-o-da] = to come inside

들어가다 [deu-reo-ga-da] = to go inside

LEVEL 4 LESSON 22 - WORD BUILDER 5

Welcome to **the 5th Word Builder lesson** at TalkToMeInKorean.com.

In this lesson, we look at the word **장** [jang]. It is written as 場 in Hanja, and it basically refers to "yard," "place," or "location."

Examples

장 (yard/garden) + 소 (spot) = **장소** (場所) = place, venue

운동 (exercise) + 장 (yard) = **운동장** (運動場) = playground

주 (to stay) + 차 (car) + 장 (place) = **주차장** (駐車場) = parking lot

장 (place) + 면 (aspect/surface) = **장면** (場面) = scene

시 (city) + 장 (place) = **시장** (市場) = marketplace

목 (to grow) + 장 (yard) = **목장** (牧場) = farm, ranch

수영 (swimming) + 장 (place) = **수영장** (水泳場) = swimming pool = 풀장

예 (courtesy, etiquette) + 식 (ritual) + 장 (place) = **예식장** (禮式場) = wedding hall

** 자 (magnetic) + 기 (energy) + 장 (field) = **자기장** (磁氣場) = magnetic field

** 중 (heavy) + 력 (force) + 장 (field) = **중력장** (重力場) = gravity field

LEVEL 4 LESSON 23

In Level 4 Lesson 17, we had our first Word Contractions lesson. In that lesson, we looked at how the subject markers are contracted to shorter forms and be attached to the previous words.

Examples:

1. 저는 --> 전
2. 이것은 --> 이건

And now in this lesson, let us look at some more examples of word contractions in Korean.

Do you remember how to say "this" "that" and "it" in Korean?

For "this/the/that + noun", the words 이 [i], 그 [geu] and 저 [jeo] are used.

이 책 [i chaek] = this book

그 가방 [geu ga-bang] = the/that bag

저 자동차 [jeo ja-dong-cha] = that car over there

When "this/it/that" are used as pronouns, the words 이것 [i-geot], 그것 [geu-geot] and 저것 [jeo-geot] are used.

And the following are some expressions related to these words:

이렇다 [i-reo-ta] = to be like this, to be this way

그렇다 [geu-reo-ta] = to be like that, to be that way

저렇다 [jeo-reo-ta] = to be like that (over there), to be that way (over there)

If you want to use these as adverbs and say "like this" "in this way" or "in that way", you can say:

이렇게 [i-reo-ke] = like this, in this way

그렇게 [geu-reo-ke] = like that, in such a way

저렇게 [jeo-reo-ke] = like that (over there)

LEVEL 4 LESSON 23

Do you remember how to say "if" in Korean? It's "verb + -(으)면". If you want to review, go back to Level 2 Lesson 23, Level 3 Lesson 15, or Level 4 Lesson 1.

Now let's try to say "if you do it like this" in Korean:

이렇게 하면 [i-reo-ke ha-myeon] = if you do it like this

그렇게 하면 [geu-reo-ke ha-myeon] = if you do it in such a way

저렇게 하면 [jeo-reo-ke ha-myeon] = if you do it like that

When you want to combine "이렇다" (to be like this) with -(으)면 (if) and say "if it is like this", it changes to **이러면** (the consonant ㅎ is dropped).

이렇다 ---> **이러면** [i-reo-myeon]

그렇다 ---> **그러면** [geu-reo-myeon]

저렇다 ---> **저러면** [jeo-reo-myeon]

But even when you say things like "if you DO it like this", using the verb 하다, it's also contracted to the same form.

이렇게 하면 ---> **이러면** [i-reo-myeon]

그렇게 하면 ---> **그러면** [geu-reo-myeon]

저렇게 하면 ---> **저러면** [jeo-reo-myeon]

So this is the first group of contracted words for this lesson.

And now, on to something similar. Do you remember how to say "how" in Korean?

(We introduced this in Level 1 Lesson 24.)

어떻게 [eo-tteo-ke]

LEVEL 4 LESSON 23

When 어떻게 is combined with the 하다 verb, a similar contraction happens.

어떻게 하다 [eo-tteo-ka hada] ---> **어떡하다** [eo-tteo-ka-da]

Examples:

- 어떻게 해요? [eo-tteo-ke hae-yo?]
= 어떡해요? [eo-tteo-kae-yo?]
= What are we supposed to do?
= How should we deal with this?
- 어떻게 할 거예요? [eo-tteo-ke hal geo-ye-yo?]
= 어떡할 거예요? [eo-tteo-kal geo-ye-yo?]
= What are you going to do?
= How are you going to take care of this?

어떡할 거예요? can be contracted one more time to **어쩔 거예요?** [eo-jjeol geo-ye-yo?]

Examples:

- 이거 어떡할 거예요? [i-geo eo-tteo-kal geo-ye-yo?]
= 이거 어쩔 거예요? [i-geo eo-jjeol geo-ye-yo?]
= How are you going to take care of this?
= What are you going to do about this?
- 이제 어떡할 거예요? [i-je eo-tteo-kal geo-ye-yo?]
= 이제 어쩔 거예요? [i-je eo-jjeol geo-ye-yo?]
= Now what?
= How are you going to take care of it now?

LEVEL 4 LESSON 24

In Level 2 Lesson 21 and Level 2 Lesson 29, we looked at how to say "more" and also how to say that something is "more + adjective + than something else". In this lesson, we will look at how to say **"much more + adjective + than something"**.

Although the Korean word for "much" (as an adverb) is 많이 [ma-ni] (we will cover this word in a later lesson), in this case, you need to use a different word: 훨씬 [hwol-ssin].

훨씬 [hwol-ssin] = **much (more), far (more), etc**

Example:

멋있다 [meo-sit-da] = to be cool, to be stylish

더 멋있다 [deo meo-sit-da] = to be cooler, to be more stylish

훨씬 더 멋있다 [hwol-ssin deo meo-sit-da] = to be much cooler, to be much more stylish

Sample sentences:

1. 이게 훨씬 좋아요. [i-ge hwol-ssin jo-a-yo.]

= This is much better.

2. 서울에서 도쿄까지보다, 서울에서 뉴욕까지가 훨씬 멀어요. [seo-u-re-seo do-kyo-kka-ji-bo-da, seo-u-re-seo nyu-yok-kka-ji-ga hwol-ssin meo-reo-yo.]

= From Seoul to New York is much farther away than from Seoul to Tokyo.

3. 일본어보다 한국어가 훨씬 쉬워요. [il-bo-neo-bo-da han-gu-geo-ga hwol-ssin swi-wo-yo.]

= Korean is much easier than Japanese.

= 한국어가 일본어보다 훨씬 쉬워요.

** Go back to Level 3 Lesson 11 to review on the "ㅁ irregular"

훨씬 basically is the "much" in the phrase "much more", but when you use 훨씬, people already know that you are comparing, so sometimes, (only) when you want to say "much more + adjective/adverb", you can drop the word 더 from 훨씬 더.

LEVEL 4 LESSON 24

** You can't drop 덜 from **훨씬 덜**, which means "much less + adjective/adverb".

Examples:

훨씬 더 좋아요. = 훨씬 좋아요.

훨씬 더 재미있어요. = 훨씬 재미있어요.

Examples of using 훨씬 with 덜.

** Go back to Level 4 Lesson 19 if you want to review on 덜.

덜 [deol] = less

비싸다 [bi-ssa-da] = to be expensive

덜 비싸다 [deol bi-ssa-da] = to be less expensive

훨씬 덜 비싸다 [hwol-ssin deol bi-ssa-da] = to be much less expensive

가깝다 [ga-kkap-da] = to be near

덜 가깝다 [deol ga-kkap-da] = to be less near

훨씬 덜 가깝다 [hwol-ssin deol ga-kkap-da] = to be much less near

LEVEL 4 LESSON 25

In Level 2 Lesson 14 and Level 2 Lesson 19, we looked at two different ways of changing a verb into the noun forms. They were -기 [-gi] and -는 것 [-neun geot] and they both express the meaning of "the act of doing something" or the verb in the "-ing" noun form.

In today's lesson, we will look at how to make and use "future tense noun groups".

-(으)ㄹ [-eu)] + **noun**

The usages of this verb ending can be best explained through examples, but basically, this expresses the adjective form of a verb in the future tense.

Examples:

1. 읽다 = to read

--> 읽 + -(으)ㄹ = **읽을**

--> ex) 읽을 책 [il-geul chaek] = a book that (someone) will read, a book to read

2. 초대하다 = to invite

--> 초대하 + -(으)ㄹ = **초대할**

--> ex) 초대할 사람 [cho-dae-hal sa-ram] = a person that (someone) will invite, a person to invite

3. 보내다 = to send

--> 보내 + -(으)ㄹ = **보낼**

--> ex) 보낼 편지 [bo-nael pyeon-ji] = a letter that (someone) will send, a letter to send

All of the examples above were in the **"verb stem + -(으)ㄹ + noun"** form.

When you do not use a specific noun and just use the word "것" [geot] which means "thing" or "the fact", the noun group can mean "something to + verb".

Examples:

1. 먹다 = to read

LEVEL 4 LESSON 25

--> 먹 + -(으)ㄴ = **먹을**

--> ex) **먹을 것** [meo-geul geot] = something to eat = **food**

2. 타다 = to ride

--> 타 + -(으)ㄴ = **탈**

--> ex) **탈 것** [tal geot] = something to ride = **vehicles**

3. 마시다 = to drink

--> 마시 + -(으)ㄴ = **마실**

--> ex) **마실 것** [ma-sil geot] = something to drink = **beverages**

Now, do you recognize this ending -(으)ㄴ 것 from the future tense?

In the future tense, you add -(으)ㄴ 거예요 after a verb stem.

-(으)ㄴ 것 + 이에요 = -(으)ㄴ 것이예요 ---> -(으)ㄴ 거예요

** Note

Since the future tense stems from this form, -(으)ㄴ 것, a Korean sentence like this can be translated in two different ways.

이거 누가 먹을 거예요?

[i-geo nu-ga meo-geul geo-ye-yo?]

If you think of it as "누가 먹다 (who + eat) + future tense", it will be translated as "Who will eat this?".

If you think of it as "누가 먹을 거 (who + will + eat + thing) + to be", it will be translated as "This thing, it is something that WHO will eat?".

Sample sentences

1. 내일 할 일이 많아요.

[nae-il hal il-i ma-na-yo.]

LEVEL 4 LESSON 25

= I have a lot (of work) to do tomorrow.

= There is a lot of stuff that I will do tomorrow.

2. 지금은 할 이야기가 없어요.

[ji-geu-meun hal i-ya-gi-ga eop-seo-yo.]

= Right now, I have nothing to say.

= For now, there is nothing I will say.

3. 냉장고에 먹을 것이 전혀 없어요.

[naeng-jang-go-e meo-geul geo-si jeon-hyeo eop-seo-yo.]

= In the refrigerator, there isn't any food at all.

LEVEL 4 LESSON 26

In the previous lesson, we looked at how to make "future tense" noun groups, using the verb ending -(으)ㄹ with a noun. Today, we are going to look at how to do something similar, except this time, it's going to be **"past tense" noun groups**.

-(으)ㄴ [-(eu)n] + **noun**

The noun here can be either the subject of the verb or the object of the verb, so you need to check the context to figure out which one it is, but basically it means "something that did ..." or "something that someone did ..."

Examples:

1. **보다** = to watch, to see

--> 보 + -(으)ㄴ = **본**

--> ex) 어제 본 영화 [eo-je bon yeong-hwa] = the movie that I saw yesterday

2. **오다** = to come

--> 오 + -(으)ㄴ = **온**

--> ex) 어제 온 사람들 [eo-je on sa-ram-deul] = the people who came here yesterday

3. **말하다** = to say, to talk about

--> 말하 + -(으)ㄴ = **말한**

--> ex) 친구가 말한 카페 [chin-gu-ga mal-han ka-pe] = the cafe that a friend talked about

Now let's compare a few different tenses for noun groups, since we learned three different tenses for noun groups.

Using what you have already learned from our previous lessons, you can say things like "a place I often go to", "the book I bought yesterday", "the person that I will invite", etc.

Examples:

1. **보다** = to watch, to read, to see

LEVEL 4 LESSON 26

Present tense noun group: 보는 + noun

Past tense noun group: 본 + noun

Future tense noun group: 볼 + noun

제가 보는 책이에요. = It's a book that I'm reading.

제가 본 책이에요. = It's a book that I've read.

제가 볼 책이에요. = It's a book that I will read.

2. 공부하다 = to study

Present tense noun group: 공부하는 + noun

Past tense noun group: 공부한 + noun

Future tense noun group: 공부할 + noun

요즘 공부하는 외국어예요. = It's a foreign language that I am studying these days.

어제 공부한 외국어예요. = It's a foreign language that I studied yesterday.

내일 공부할 외국어예요. = It's a foreign language that I will study tomorrow.

LEVEL 4 LESSON 27

In this lesson, we are going to learn how to say "I think that ..." or "it seems to me that ..." in Korean.

The verb for "to think" is 생각하다 [saeng-gak-ha-da] but it is not very commonly used for contexts where you would want to say "I think" in Korean. This is because many Korean people think that saying **"I think that ..."** is too direct. Instead, they like to say **"it seems that ..."** using the following expression:

... 것 + 같다

같다 [gat-da] on its own means "to be the same" but when it is used with other nouns, it means "it is like ..."

Examples:

학생 같아요. [hak-saeng ga-ta-yo.] = You are like a student. / You look like a student.

저 사람 한국 사람 같아요. [han-guk sa-ram ga-ta-yo.] = He looks like a Korean person. / He is like a Korean.

Now back to how to say "I think that ..." in Korean.

So we looked at how to say that something seems like a "noun". In order to say "I think that ...", what you need to do is know how to say that "something seems like" plus a "sentence".

Remember how to make noun groups for various tenses?

Past tense: -(으)ㄴ 것

Present tense: -는 것

Future tense: -(으)ㄹ 것

After that, you just add 같다.

Past tense: -(으)ㄴ 것 같다

Present tense: -는 것 같다

Future tense: -(으)ㄹ 것 같다

LEVEL 4 LESSON 27

Examples:

**하다 = to do

Past tense: 한 것 같다

Present tense: 하는 것 같다

Future tense: 할 것 같다

벌써 한 것 같아요. [beol-sseo han geot ga-ta-yo.] = I think (they/he/she/I/you) already did it.

지금 하는 것 같아요. [ji-geum ha-neun geot ga-ta-yo.] = I think (someone) does/is doing it now.

내일 할 것 같아요. [nae-il hal geot ga-ta-yo.] = I think (someone) will do it tomorrow.

Sample sentences:

1. 내일 비 올 것 같아요. [nae-il bi ol geot ga-ta-yo.]

= I think it will rain tomorrow.

2. 이게 더 좋은 것 같아요. [i-ge deo jo-eun geot ga-ta-yo.]

= I think this is better.

3. 이거 뭐인 것 같아요? [i-geo mwo-in geot ga-ta-yo?]

= What do you think this is?

4. 누가 한 것 같아요? [nu-ga han geot ga-ta-yo?]

= Who do you think did it?

5. 곧 도착할 것 같아요. [got do-chak-hal geot ga-ta-yo.]

= I think I'll arrive soon.

While making sentences and hearing other people talk, you will realize that these are all of the ways to express "I think" in Korean. But don't worry. We will look at some other ways of saying "I think" in our future lessons. Until then, practice how to use this - 것 같다 form!

LEVEL 4 LESSON 28

In this lesson, let us look at how to say "to become + adjective" in Korean. The basic and most common way to do this is by applying the following verb ending:

-아/어/여지다 [-a/eo/yeo-ji-da]

Since all adjectives are originally in the verb form in Korean, in order to say **"to become + adjective"** you need to know the original verb/dictionary form (-다) of the adjective.

Examples

예쁘다 [ye-ppeu-da] = to be pretty

예쁘 + -어지다 = **예뻐지다** [ye-ppeo-ji-da] = to become pretty

작다 [jak-da] = to be small

작 + -아지다 = **작아지다** [ja-ga-ji-da] = to become small

이상하다 [i-sang-ha-da] = to be strange

이상하 + -여지다 = **이상해지다** [i-sang-hae-ji-da] = to become strange

재미있다 [jae-mi-it-da] = to be interesting, to be fun

재미있 + -어지다 = **재미있어지다** [jae-mi-i-sseo-ji-da] = to become interesting

Sample sentences

1. 날씨가 따뜻해졌어요. [nal-ssi-ga tta-tteu-tae-jyeo-sseo-yo.]

= The weather has become warm.

2. 컴퓨터가 빨라졌어요. [keom-pyu-teo-ga ppal-la-jyeo-sseo-yo.]

= The computer has become fast.

3. 한국어 공부가 재미있어졌어요. [han-gu-geo gong-bu-ga jae-mi-i-sseo-jyeo-sseo-yo.]

= Studying Korean has become fun.

LEVEL 4 LESSON 28

4. 줄이 길어졌어요. [ju-ri gi-reo-jyeo-sse-yo.]

= The line has become long/longer.

5. 내일 다시 추워질 거예요. [nae-il da-si chu-wo-jil geo-ye-yo.]

= It will become cold again tomorrow.

LEVEL 4 LESSON 29

In the previous lesson, we looked at how to say "to become + adjective" in Korean. Today, we are going to look at how to say "to gradually get to do something", "to eventually find oneself doing something" or "to end up doing something".

The structure that you can use to say these is:

-게 되다 [-ge doe-da]

But in order to understand how this works, you need to first break this down into two parts.

-게 [-ge] = **in such a way that ... / so that ...**

되다 [doe-da] = **to become**

Meanings of "-게 + 되다"

= things happen in a way that someone gets to do something

= to get into a state where someone does something

Conjugation

Verb stem + -게 되다

Example #1

하다 (= to do) + -게 되다

= 하게 되다

[present tense] 하게 돼요.

[past tense] 하게 됐어요.

[future tense] 하게 될 거예요.

Example #2

알다 (= to know) + -게 되다

= 알게 되다

LEVEL 4 LESSON 29

[present tense] 알게 돼요.

[past tense] 알게 됐어요.

[future tense] 알게 될 거예요.

Usages of -게 되다

-게 되다 can be used in various usages.

1. When you don't want to do something but you have to and you eventually end up doing something, you can use the -게 되다 structure.

안 먹고 싶어요. 그런데 먹게 돼요.

[an meok-go si-peo-yo. geu-reon-de meok-ge dwae-yo.]

= I don't want to eat it, but I keep eating it anyway.

2. When you didn't intend on doing or didn't expect to do something but you got into a situation where you did it, you can use the -게 되다 structure.

지난 주에 영화를 보게 됐어요.

[ji-nan ju-e yeong-hwa-reul bo-ge dwae-sseo-yo.]

= I wasn't planning to in the first place, but I got to see a movie last week.

3. When talking about the future, if you want to say that someone or you will eventually do something whether or not that person wants to, you can use the -게 되다 structure in the future tense.

그렇게 하게 될 거예요.

[geu-reo-ke ha-ge doel geo-ye-yo.]

= You will eventually end up doing it that way.

Sample sentences

1. 내일 알게 될 거예요.

[nae-il al-ge doel geo-ye-yo.]

= You will find out tomorrow.

LEVEL 4 LESSON 29

2. 다 사게 됐어요.

[da sa-ge dwae-sseo-yo.]

= I ended up buying everything.

3. 다시 학교에 다니게 됐어요.

[da-si hak-gyo-e da-ni-ge dwae-sseo-yo.]

= (Things have happened so that) now I can go back to (going to) school.

4. 어떻게 여기에 오게 됐어요?

[eo-tteo-ke yeo-gi-e o-ge dwae-sseo-yo?]

= How did you get to come here?

5. 만나게 되면 말해 주세요.

[man-na-ge doe-myeon mal-hae ju-se-yo.]

= If you get to meet him, tell me.

LEVEL 4 LESSON 30

This is the second lesson in the series **“Sentence Building Drill”**. In this series, we focus on how you can use the grammatical rules and expressions that you have learned so far to train yourself to make more Korean sentences more comfortably and more flexibly.

We will start off with THREE key sentences, and practice changing parts of these sentences so that you don't end up just memorizing the same three sentences. We want you to be able to be as flexible as possible with the Korean sentences you can make.

Key sentence #1

열 명 초대했는데, 아무도 안 올 수도 있어요.

[yeol myeong cho-dae-haet-neun-de, a-mu-do an ol su-do i-sseo-yo.]

= I've invited 10 people, but it's possible that no one will come.

Key sentence #2

오늘은 어제보다 훨씬 따뜻한 것 같아요.

[o-neu-reul eo-je-bo-da hwol-ssin tta-tteu-tan geot ga-ta-yo.]

= I think today is much warmer than yesterday.

Key sentence #3

지금 카페에서 어제 산 책을 읽고 있어요.

[ji-geum ka-pe-e-seo eo-je san chae-geul il-go i-sseo-yo.]

= Right now I am in a cafe, reading a book that I bought yesterday.

Expansion & variation practice with key sentence #1

0. Original sentence:

열 명 초대했는데, 아무도 안 올 수도 있어요.

LEVEL 4 LESSON 30

1.

열 명 = ten people

한 명 = one person

두 명 = two people

세 명 = three people

2.

초대했는데 = I invited (someone) but

말했는데 = I said but / I told (someone) but

조심했는데 = I was careful but

열심히 공부했는데 = I studied hard but

3.

아무도 안 올 거예요 = no one will come

아무도 모를 거예요 = no one will know

아무도 안 할 거예요 = no one will do it

아무도 초대 안 할 거예요 = I will invite no one

4.

안 올 수도 있어요 = (someone) might not come

안 줄 수도 있어요 = (someone) might not give (somebody else) (something)

안 그럴 수도 있어요 = it might not be so / it might not be the case

안 웃길 수도 있어요 = it might not be funny

Expansion & variation practice with key sentence #2

0. Original sentence:

오늘은 어제보다 훨씬 따뜻한 것 같아요.

LEVEL 4 LESSON 30

1.
어제보다 = than yesterday / compared to yesterday
지난 주보다 = than last week / compared to last week
지난 달보다 = than last month / compared to last month
작년보다 = than last year / compared to last year
2.
어제보다 훨씬 따뜻해요 = it's much warmer than yesterday
이거보다 훨씬 좋아요 = it's much better than this one
한국어보다 훨씬 어려워요 = it's much more difficult than the Korean language
3.
훨씬 따뜻한 것 같아요 = I think it's much warmer
훨씬 좋은 것 같아요 = I think it's much better
훨씬 재미있는 것 같아요 = I think it's much more interesting/fun

Expansion & variation practice with key sentence #3

0. Original sentence:

지금 카페에서 어제 산 책을 읽고 있어요.

1.
지금 책을 읽고 있어요 = I am reading a book now.
지금 운동을 하고 있어요 = I am working out now.
지금 음악을 듣고 있어요 = I am listening to some music now.
2.
카페에서 책 읽고 있어요 = I am reading a book in a cafe.
한국에서 일 하고 있어요 = I am working in Korea.
여기에서 뭐 하고 있어요? = What are you doing here?

LEVEL 4 LESSON 30

3.

어제 산 책 = the book I bought yesterday

그제 산 책 = the book I bought the day before yesterday

이번 주에 만난 친구 = the friend that I met this week

작년에 찍은 사진 = the picture that I took last year

LEVEL 5 LESSON 1

Welcome to Level 5!!! In the first lesson of Level 5, we are going to look at how to say that you "almost did" something or "nearly did" something. This is used both in situations where you "wanted" to do something (but only almost did it) and in situations where you "didn't want" to do something and fortunately didn't do it but almost did it.

Ex) I almost lost my keys.

Ex) I almost passed the exam!

Conjugation

Verb stem + -(으)ㄴ다

The word **ㄴ다** is a noun that describes "nearly getting into a situation where something happens" and in order to use a verb with **ㄴ다**, you need to change the verb into the future tense conjugation and add **ㄴ다** after that.

Examples

사다 [sa-da] = to buy

→ **살 ㄴ다 했어요.** [sal ppeon hae-sseo-yo.] = I almost bought it.

믿다 [mit-da] = to believe

→ **믿을 ㄴ다 했어요.** [mi-deul ppeon hae-sseo-yo.] = I almost believed it.

울다 [ul-da] = to cry

→ **울 ㄴ다 했어요.** [ul ppeon hae-sseo-yo.] = I almost cried.

Sample sentences

1. 무서워서 울 ㄴ다 했어요. [mu-seo-wo-seo ul ppeon hae-sseo-yo.]

= It was scary so I almost cried.

= I almost cried because I was scared.

2. 무거워서 떨어뜨릴 ㄴ다 했어요. [mu-geo-wo-seo tteo-rreo-tteu-ril ppeon hae-sseo-yo.]

= It was heavy and I almost dropped it.

LEVEL 5 LESSON 1

3. 돈을 잃을 뻔 했어요. [do-neul i-reul ppeon hae-sseo-yo.]

= I almost lost money.

4. 죽을 뻔 했어요. [ju-geul ppeon hae-sseo-yo.]

= I almost died.

5. 갈 뻔 했는데, 안 갔어요. [gal ppeon haet-neun-de, an ga-sseo-yo.]

= I almost went there, but I didn't go.

LEVEL 5 LESSON 2

Welcome everybody to the 2nd lesson of Level 5. In this lesson we are going to introduce how the honorific suffix -시- [-si-] is used in "politer" and "more formal" situations. Even if this is the first time you have heard about this "honorific suffix", you probably have already seen some expressions before that have this word -시- in them, such as 안녕하세요, 안녕히 가세요 or 주세요.

What is -시-?

-시- is a "suffix" so it is never used on its own. When combined with other verbs, -시- makes a sentence "honorific", which means that the speaker is showing respect for the person that he or she is talking about. If the speaker wants to show respect for the other person talking with him or herself, he or she can show respect for that person, too, by using this honorific suffix, -시-.

How is it used?

-시- can be used in any tense. You add -시- between the verb stem and other verb endings.

PLAIN

Present tense: verb stem + -아/어/여요

Past tense: verb stem + -았/었/였어요

Future tense: verb stem + -ㄹ 거예요

HONORIFIC

Present tense: verb stem + -시- + -어요

Past tense: verb stem + -시- + -었어요

Future tense: verb stem + -시- + -ㄹ 거예요

** When the verb stem ends with a consonant, you need to add 으 [eu] in front of 시 to make the pronunciation easier.

Examples



LEVEL 5 LESSON 2

1. 보다 [bo-da] = to see

Present tense

[plain] 보 + -아요 = 봐요 [bwa-yo]

[honorific] 보 + -시- + -어요 = 보셔요 [bo-syeo-yo]

Past tense

[plain] 보 + -았- + -어요 = 봤어요 [bwa-sseo-yo]

[honorific] 보 + -시- + -었- + -어요 = 보셨어요 [bo-syeo-sseo-yo]

Future tense

[plain] 보 + -ㄹ 거예요 = 볼 거예요 [bol geo-ye-yo]

[honorific] 보 + -시- + ㄹ 거예요 = 보실 거예요 [bo-sil geo-ye-yo]

2. 웃다 [ut-da] = to laugh, to smile

Present tense

[plain] 웃 + -어요 = 웃어요 [u-seo-yo]

[honorific] 웃 + -으시- + -어요 = 웃으셔요 [u-seo-syeo-yo]

Past tense

[plain] 웃 + -었- + -어요 = 웃었어요 [u-seo-sseo-yo]

[honorific] 웃 + -으시- + -었- + -어요 = 웃으셨어요 [u-seu-syeo-sseo-yo]

Future tense

[plain] 웃 + -을 거예요 = 웃을 거예요 [u-seul geo-ye-yo]

[honorific] 웃 + -으시- + -ㄹ 거예요 = 웃으실 거예요 [u-seu-sil geo-ye-yo]

Honorific subject marker

You already know what subject markers are. They are 이 [i] and 가 [ga] and they show "WHO" did the action or

LEVEL 5 LESSON 2

"WHO" is the subject of the verb.

Ex)

A: 누가 했어요? (Who did it?)

B: 제가 했어요. (I did it.)

In honorific sentences, the subject markers change to 께서 [kke-seo]. You can only use 께서 after subjects that you are being honorific to, showing respect toward and lowering yourself against.

Ex) A가 → A께서

Often times, the word for the subject itself can change accordingly. For example, the word 선생님 is already in the honorific form because it has the word "님" but in casual situations you can use 이 or 가 as subject markers. But other words need to change forms when they are used in honorific sentences.

Ex)

친구가 → 친구분께서 (adding the word 분 [bun])

사장이 → 사장님께서 (adding the word 님 [nim])

현우 씨가 → 현우 님께서 (changing the word 씨 [ssi] to 님 [nim])

But in everyday conversations, if you are talking with people that you are somewhat close to, you can drop 께서 while still keeping the basic honorific forms using -시-.

Ex)

1. 현우 씨, 언제 오실 거예요? = Hyunwoo, when are you going to come here?

2. 선생님이 주셨어요. = My teacher gave it to me.

3. 아빠 오셨어요. = My father is here.

Irregular verbs examples

1. 듣다 [deut-da] = to listen

→ [honorific] 들으시다 [deu-reu-si-da]

2. 팔다 [pal-da] = to sell

LEVEL 5 LESSON 2

→ [honorific] 파시다 [pa-si-da]

3. 먹다 [meok-da] = to eat

→ [honorific] 드시다 [deu-si-da]

4. 마시다 [ma-si-da] = to drink

→ [honorific] 드시다 [deu-si-da] (** the same as 먹다)

Fixed expressions (noun + 하시다)

There are some nouns that are only used in honorific situations. They are used with 하시다 to form utmost honorific and polite expressions.

말 [mal] = talk, speech, story, speaking

→ 말씀 [mal-sseum]

→ 말씀하시다 [mal-sseum-ha-si-da] = to talk

먹다 [meok-da] = to eat

→ 식사 [sik-sa] = meal

→ 식사하시다 [sik-sa-ha-si-da] = to have a meal

-셔요 becoming -세요

Originally, when -시- is combined with -아/어/여요, the present tense ending, it becomes -셔요. But over time, people have started pronouncing it and even writing it as -세요 because it's easier to pronounce. This is only found in present tense sentences and imperative sentences.

Present tense:

Ex) 어디 가셔요? → 어디 가세요?

(어디 가셔요 is still correct, but people say 어디 가세요 more commonly.)

Imperative:

Ex) 하지 마셔요. → 하지 마세요.

(하지 마셔요 is still correct, but people say 하지 마세요 more commonly.)

LEVEL 5 LESSON 3

Welcome to the 3rd lesson in Level 5 at TalkToMeInKorean! After studying the lengthy previous lesson on the honorific suffix -시- (Level 5 Lesson 2), it is time to take a little break from grammar rules and have a light lesson. In this lesson, we are going to look at an expression that Koreans say very often that is somewhat difficult to be translated into English.

The keyword is **수고** [su-go].

Literally, the word 수고 itself is a noun that means "trouble", "effort" or "hard work". But 수고 is rarely used on its own and is usually used inside some fixed expressions. These expressions using 수고 are used in everyday Korean conversations so often that we decided that they need a separate TalkToMeInKorean lesson on them.

Fixed expressions using 수고

1. **수고하세요.** [su-go-ha-se-yo.]

This expression literally means "continue working hard", "keep up the effort", "keep doing the work you are doing" or "continue taking the trouble to do it" but it is not taken as such meanings.

When you want to comment on the fact that someone is making a lot of effort to do something, and you want to show either your appreciation or your support for that person by saying something as you leave the place or see someone leave, you can say 수고하세요. Sometimes 수고하세요 almost means "Good-bye" or "See you".

** To someone younger than you, you can say 수고해요 [su-go-hae-yo] or even 수고해 if you are close friends with that person. 수고하세요 is much more polite than 수고해요.

Possible situations

- You received a parcel or a letter from a mailman. You want to say "thanks" but add something after that meaning "Thank you for the effort. Keep it up!".
- You visit or pass by someone who is working at the moment. As you walk away, you want to say "See you again and I know you are working hard. Continue doing what you do."

Inappropriate situations



LEVEL 5 LESSON 3

When you are talking to someone much older than you or someone you need to show respect toward, it is inappropriate to say 수고하세요. If you are much younger than the other person, he or she might think that you are rude and arrogant.

2. 수고하셨습니다.[su-go-ha-syeot-sseum-ni-da]

This expression literally means "you made a lot of effort" or "you went through a lot of trouble doing this".

You can use this expression to someone who just finished doing some work. If you are the one who made that person work, 수고하셨습니다 could mean "Thank you for the great job you did". If you are just commenting on the fact that this person worked hard and has just finished something, it means "Good work" or "Congratulations on finishing it".

** To someone younger than you, you can say 수고했어요 [su-go-hae-sseo-yo] or even 수고했어 if you are close friends with that person. But if you are not the oldest member of the group, it is still better to say 수고하셨습니다.

Possible situations

- You worked with other people as a group on a task or a project. The work is now finished. You want to casually celebrate the fact that the work is over and lightly thank the others for working so hard.
- Other people did some work and you became aware of it. You want to say "I know you put a lot of effort into it. It's finished now." as a gesture of acknowledgement.

3. 수고 많으셨습니다. [su-go ma-neu-syeot-sseum-ni-da] / 수고 많았어요. [su-go ma-na-sseo-yo]

This expression literally means "your effort has been a lot".

You can use this expression in situations similar to those where you would say 수고하셨습니다, but 수고 많으셨습니다 is more specifically said in order to appreciate the effort. After finishing a task as a group, you would say 수고하셨습니다 all together, but individually, you can go up to someone and say 수고 많으셨습니다.

LEVEL 5 LESSON 4

In this lesson, we look at how to say "I guess ...", "I assume ..." or "I suppose ..." in Korean. We have already learned how to use -것 같다 [-geot gat-da] to express "I think ..." or "it seems that ..." in a previous lesson. Today's key structure is somewhat similar to -것 같다 in meaning, but it has a stronger nuance of "I assume ... based on this fact" or "I suppose ... because ...".

-나 보다 [-na bo-da] = I assume, I suppose, I guess

This is usually only used when you are talking about people other than yourself. But when you talk about yourself using this -나 보다 structure, you are referring to yourself as a third person, making assumptions about why or how you have done something.

Ex) I guess you don't like coffee.

Ex) I guess I never heard about it.

-나 보다 is only used with action verbs.

For descriptive verbs, you need to use a different structure, which we will introduce in the next lesson.

Conjugation:

[present tense]

Verb stem + -나 보다 [-na bo-da]

[past tense]

Verb stem + -았/었/였 + -나 보다 [-at/eot/yeot + -na bo-da]

Ex)

하다 = to do

하 + -나 보다 = 하나 보다 [ha-na bo-da] = I guess they do + something

→ [present tense] 하나 봐요.

→ [past tense] 했나 봐요

(For future tense, you need to use a different structure, but we will cover that in a future lesson.)

LEVEL 5 LESSON 4

Examples:

1.

모르다 [mo-reu-da] = to not know

모르 + -나 봐요 = **모르나 봐요.** [mo-reu-na bwa-yo.]

= I guess he(she/they) don't know.

[past tense]

몰랐나 봐요. [mol-lat-na bwa-yo.]

= I guess he(she/they) didn't know.

2.

없다 [eop-da] = to be not there, to not exist

없 + -나 봐요 = **없나 봐요.** [eop-na bwa-yo.]

= I guess he(she/they/it) is not there.

[past tense]

없었나 봐요. [eop-seot-na bwa-yo.]

= I guess he(she/they/it) wasn't there.

3.

재미있다 [jae-mi-it-da] = to be fun, to be interesting

재미있 + -나 봐요 = **재미있나 봐요.** [jae-mi-it-na bwa-yo.]

= I guess it's fun. / I suppose it's interesting.

[past tense]

재미있었나 봐요. [jae-mi-i-sseot-na bwa-yo.]

= I guess it was fun.

4.

사다 [sa-da] = to buy

사 + -나 봐요 = **사나 봐요.** [sa-na bwa-yo.]

LEVEL 5 LESSON 4

= I guess he(she/they) buys.

[past tense]

샀나 봐요. [sat-na bwa-yo.]

= I guess he(she/they) bought.

Sample sentences:

1. 효진 씨는 아직 모르나 봐요.

[hyo-jin ssi-neun a-jik mo-reu-na bwa-yo.]

= I guess Hyojin still doesn't know.

2. 또 비가 오나 봐요.

[tto bi-ga o-na bwa-yo.]

= I guess it's raining again.

3. 어제 재미있었나 봐요.

[eo-je jae-mi-i-sseot-na bwa-yo.]

= I guess it was fun yesterday. / I assume you had a good time yesterday.

4. 아무도 없나 봐요.

[a-mu-do eop-na bwa-yo.]

= I guess there's no one there.

5. 고장났나 봐요.

[go-jang-nat-na bwa-yo.]

= I guess it broke.

LEVEL 5 LESSON 5

In the previous lesson, we looked at the structure -나 보다 [-na bo-da], which can be used with action verbs to mean "I guess ..." or "I assume ...". In this lesson, we are going to look at how to say the same thing but with descriptive verbs.

For action verbs:

-나 보다 [-na bo-da]

Ex)

하다 → 하나 보다 (I guess they do ...)

오다 → 오나 보다 (I guess they come ...)

For descriptive verbs:

-(으)ㄴ가 보다 [-(eu)n-ga bo-da]

Ex)

예쁘다 → 예쁜가 보다 (I guess it's pretty ...)

비싸다 → 비싼가 보다 (I guess it's expensive ...)

작다 → 작은가 보다 (I guess it's small ...)

For -이다 [-i-da] (= to be):

-이다 changes to **-인가 보다**

* Note that -이다 is not a descriptive verb on its own but it is usually combined with nouns to make a descriptive statement, so it is followed by -ㄴ가 보다.

Conjugation for -(으)ㄴ가 보다

Verb stems ending with a vowel + -ㄴ가 보다

Ex) 크다 → 크 + -ㄴ가 보다 = 큰가 보다

Verb stems ending with a consonant + -은가 보다

LEVEL 5 LESSON 5

Ex) 작다 → 작 + -은가 보다 = 작은가 보다

Commonly accepted exceptions and irregularities

Even though the rule is that action verbs are followed by -나 보다 and descriptive verbs are followed by -(으)ㄴ가 보다, Korean people often use -나 보다 for descriptive verbs too, when the verb stem ends with a last consonant.

You can't use -(으)ㄴ가 보다 for action verbs, but you will often hear Korean people using -나 보다 with descriptive verbs.

Ex)

작다 [jak-da] = to be small

Originally, 작 has to be followed by -(으)ㄴ가 보다 because it is a descriptive verb.

작은가 보다 [ja-geun-ga bo-da] = I guess it's small.

But people often say 작나 보다 [jak-na bo-da] to mean the same thing.

Ex)

맵다 [maep-da] = to be spicy

→ 매운가 보다 or 맵나 보다

Present tense and past tense conjugations

[present tense]

-(으)ㄴ가 보다 → -(으)ㄴ가 봐요

[past tense]

For the past tense, you would add the suffix -았/었/였 to the verb stem of the descriptive verb, and after you do that, for ease of pronunciation, you need to always use -나 봐요 after -았/었/였.

So even though descriptive verb stems are followed by -(으)ㄴ가 봐요 in the present tense, they are always followed by -았/었/였나 봐요 in the past tense.

LEVEL 5 LESSON 5

Ex)

아프다 [a-peu-da] = to be sick

→ [present tense] 아프 + -(으)ㄴ가 봐요 = 아픈가 봐요

→ [past tense] 아프 + -았/었/였나 봐요 = 아팠나 봐요

Exceptions

When the descriptive verb is composed of a noun and the verb 있다 [it-da] or 없다 [eop-da], i.e. 재미있다, 맛있다, 재미없다 or 맛없다, you need to add -나 봐요 after 있 or 없.

재미있다 → 재미있나 봐요 / 재미있었나 봐요

맛있다 → 맛있나 봐요 / 맛있었나 봐요

Sample sentences

1.

학생이 많아요. [hak-saeng-i ma-na-yo.] = There are a lot of students.

→ 학생이 많은가 봐요. [hak-saeng-i ma-neun-ga bwa-yo.] = I guess there are a lot of students.

→ 학생이 많았나 봐요. [hak-saeng-i ma-nat-na bwa-yo.] = I guess there were a lot of students.

2.

요즘 바빠요. [yo-jeum ba-ppa-yo.] = He's busy these days.

→ 요즘 바쁜가 봐요. [yo-jeum ba-ppeun-ga bwa-yo.] = I guess he's busy these days.

→ 바빴나 봐요. [ba-ppat-na bwa-yo.] = I guess he was busy.

3.

아이들이 졸려요. [a-i-deu-ri jol-lyeo-yo.] = The kids are sleepy.

→ 아이들이 졸린가 봐요. [a-i-deu-ri jol-lin-ga bwa-yo.] = I guess the kids are sleepy.

4.

그래요. [geu-rae-yo.] = It is so. That's right.

→ 그런가 봐요. [geu-reon-ga bwa-yo.] = I guess so.

5.

이쪽이 더 빨라요. [i-jjo-gi deo ppal-la-yo.] = This way is faster.

→ 이쪽이 더 빠른가 봐요. [i-jjo-gi deo ppa-reun-ga bwa-yo.] = I guess this way is faster.

LEVEL 5 LESSON 6 - WORD BUILDER 6

Word Builder lessons are designed to help you understand how to expand your vocabulary by learning/understanding some common and basic building blocks of Korean words. The words and letters that will be introduced through Word Builder lessons are not necessarily all Chinese characters, or **한자** [han-ja]. Though many of them are based on Chinese characters, the meanings can be different from modern-day Chinese. Your goal, through these lessons, is to understand how words are formed and remember the keywords in Korean to expand your Korean vocabulary from there. You certainly don't have to memorize the Hanja characters, but if you want to, feel free!

Today's keyword is **문**.

These Chinese character for this is 文.

The word **문** is related to "writing" or "letter".

문 (writing) + 화 (to become) = **문화** 文化 [mun-hwa] = **culture**

문 (writing) + 서 (writing) = **문서** 文書 [mun-seo] = **document, papers**

문 (writing) + 장 (writing) = **문장** 文章 [mun-jang] = **sentence**

문 (writing) + 자 (letter) = **문자** 文字 [mun-ja] = **letter, character**

문 (writing) + 학 (to learn) = **문학** 文學 [mun-hak] = **literature**

문 (writing) + 법 (law) = **문법** 文法 [mun-beop] = **grammar**

LEVEL 5 LESSON 6 - WORD BUILDER 6

주 (to pour) + 문 (writing) = **주문** 注文 [ju-mun] = **order**

논 (to discuss) + 문 (writing) = **논문** 論文 [non-mun] = **thesis, research paper**

문 (writing) + 화 (to become) + 재 (property) = **문화재** 文化財 [mun-hwa-jae]
= **cultural assets, cultural properties**

LEVEL 5 LESSON 7

In this lesson, we are going to introduce how to say "as soon as" you something or "right after" you do something in Korean.

The key structure you need to learn in order to say this is **-자마자** [-ja-ma-ja].

Conjugation

Verb stem + -자마자

Examples:

보다 [bo-da] = to see

보 + -자마자 = 보자마자 [bo-ja-ma-ja] = As soon as you see/meet/look,

끝나다 [kkeut-na-da] = to finish

끝나 + -자마자 = 끝나자마자 [kkeut-na-ja-ma-ja] = As soon as it finishes/ends

Just like "as soon as + S + V" or "right after + S + V" is not a complete sentence in English, you still need to complete the sentence in Korean by adding other parts. Unlike in English, however, the "tense" is not applied to the -자마자 part.

For example, even when you say something like "As soon as I got there, I realized ..." in English, you don't have to say the "to get" part in the past tense in Korean. The "tense" of the entire sentence is expressed once through the main verb of the sentence.

Ex)

가자마자 전화를 했어요.

[ga-ja-ma-ja jeon-hwa-reul hae-sseo-yo.]

= As soon as I went there, I made a phone call.

** Note that it's just "가자마자" and not "갔자마자" - the past tense is expressed only through the "했어요" part, the main and final verb of the sentence.

LEVEL 5 LESSON 7

Sample sentences

1. 집에 오자마자 잠들었어요.

[ji-be o-ja-ma-ja jam-deu-reo-sseo-yo.]

= I fell asleep as soon as I came home.

** 잠들다 = to fall asleep

2. 졸업하자마자 일을 시작할 거예요.

[jo-reop-ha-ja-ma-ja i-reul si-jak-hal geo-ye-yo.]

= I will start working as soon as I graduate.

** 졸업하다 = to graduate

** 일 = work

** 시작하다 = to start

3. 도착하자마자 전화할게요.

[do-chak-ha-ja-ma-ja jeon-hwa-hal-ge-yo.]

= I will call you as soon as I arrive.

** 도착하다 = to arrive

** 전화하다 = to call someone

4. 보자마자 마음에 들었어요.

[bo-ja-ma-ja ma-eu-me deu-reo-sseo-yo.]

= As soon as I saw it, I liked it.

** 보다 = to see, to look

** 마음에 들다 = to like

5. 들어가자마자 다시 나왔어요.

[deu-reo-ga-ja-ma-ja da-si na-wa-sseo-yo.]

= I came outside again right after I went in.

LEVEL 5 LESSON 7

** 들어가다 = to go inside

** 다시 = again

** 나오다 = to come outside

LEVEL 5 LESSON 8

In this lesson, we are going to look at another way of talking about a future action or state. In Level 2 Lesson 1, we introduced how to make the most standard future tense using -(으)ㄹ 거예요 and in Level 3 Lesson 6, we introduced how to use -(으)ㄹ 게요 to look for or ask for the other person's reaction or feedback on what you are thinking of doing, and in Level 4 Lesson 2, we looked at how to express your strong intention for doing something or ask someone else's intention using -(으)래요.

Quick review

** 하다 = to do

1. 할 거예요 = I'm going to do / I will do (plain future tense)
2. 할게요 = I'm going to do ... what do you think? (looking for the other person's reaction)
3. 할래요 = I want to do / I'm going to do (showing determined intention)

** Important **

It might seem like there are just way more types of future tenses in Korean than necessary, but they all serve their specific purpose, so they will all come in handy when you need to say certain things in some specific situations. English also has a variety of future tense forms, such as "I am going to", "I will", "I am about to", "I am thinking of", "I am planning to"...etc.

Today's Key Structure:

-(으)려고 하다 [-(eu)ryeo-go ha-da]

Conjugation is simple

가 + -려고 하다 = 가려고 하다

먹 + -으려고 하다 = 먹으려고 하다

잡 + -으려고 하다 = 잡으려고 하다

하 + -려고 하다 = 하려고 하다

-(으)려고 하다 is used when:

- 1) someone is about to do something or wants/tries to do something
- 2) something looks like it is about to happen

LEVEL 5 LESSON 8

Usage 1) - showing intention for action

사다 [sa-da] = to buy

사려고 하다 = to be about to buy, to be intending on buying, to be planning to buy

[past tense]

사려고 했어요 = I was going to buy it.

[noun group]

사려고 하는 사람 = someone who is planning to buy it

[present tense + -는데]

사려고 하는데 = I am thinking of buying it and/but....

For showing intentions for doing something, -려고 하다 is not very commonly used for the plain present tense (-려고 해요) in spoken Korean. So if you say "사려고 해요." it might sound very textbook-like and formal. You can use it, though, in very formal situations.

Usage 2) - talking about a state of the near future

떨어지다 [tteo-reo-ji-da] = to drop, to fall

떨어지려고 하다 = to be about to drop, to be going to drop

Example:

비가 오려고 해요. [bi-ga o-ryeo-go hae-yo.] = It looks like it's going to rain.

How is it compared to the plain future tense?

비가 올 거예요. = It is going to rain. (You know this for a fact.)

비가 오려고 해요. = It is about to rain, judging from what I see.

Sample sentences

1. 어제 친구 만나려고 했는데, 못 만났어요.

[eo-je chin-gu man-na-ryeo-go haet-neun-de, mot man-na-sseo-yo.]

= I wanted to meet a friend yesterday, but I couldn't meet her.

LEVEL 5 LESSON 8

= I was going to meet a friend yesterday, but I couldn't meet her.

= I was planning to meet a friend yesterday, but I couldn't meet her.

2. 외국에서 공부하려고 하는 학생들이 많아요.

[oe-gu-ge-seo gong-bu-ha-ryeo-go ha-neun hak-saeng-deu-ri ma-na-yo.]

= There are many students who want to study abroad.

= There are many students who are planning to study abroad.

** "-려고 하다" is easier for making noun groups like this than "-(으)ㄹ 것이다"

3. 카메라 사려고 하는데, 뭐가 좋아요?

[ka-me-ra sa-ryeo-go ha-neun-de, mwo-ga jo-a-yo?]

= I'm planning to buy a camera. Which one is good?

4. 친구가 울려고 해요.

[chin-gu-ga ul-lyeo-go hae-yo.]

= My friend is going to cry.

= My friend is about to cry.

5. 친구가 이사하려고 해요.

[chin-gu-ga i-sa-ha-ryeo-go hae-yo.]

= My friend is planning to move.

= My friend is going to move.

= My friend want to move.

6. 아이스크림이 녹으려고 해요.

[a-i-seu-keu-ri-mi no-geu-ryeo-go hae-yo.]

= The ice cream is about to melt.

LEVEL 5 LESSON 9

Welcome to another exciting Korean grammar lesson! In this lesson, we look at how to use this verb ending

-다가 [-da-ga]. This is very commonly used in Korean when you talk about gradual transition from one action to another or one situation to another.

When you want to say things like:

"I was on my bike and I fell."

"I was cleaning my room when I found this."

"She was watching a movie when she fell asleep."

or

"She was studying in her room and then suddenly came up with this idea."

you can use the verb ending **-다가** [-da-ga] with the first verb.

** The subject of the sentence usually should be the same for both of the verbs.

Conjugation

Verb stem + **-다가**

Ex)

가다 (= to go) → 가다가

먹다 (= to eat) → 먹다가

놀다 (= to play) → 놀다가

자다 (= to sleep) → 자다가

전화하다 (= to call) → 전화하다가

Examples

뛰다가 멈추다 [ttwi-da-ga meom-chu-da] = to be running and then stop

전화를 하다가 [jeo-nwa-reul ha-da-ga] = while talking on the phone ...

LEVEL 5 LESSON 9

전화를 하다가 잠이 들다 [jeo-nwa-reul ha-da-ga ja-mi deu-reo-sseo-yo.] = to fall asleep while talking on the phone

Sample sentences

1. 집에 오다가 친구를 만났어요.

[ji-be o-da-ga chin-gu-reul man-na-sseo-yo.]

= On my way home, I met a friend.

= While coming home, I bumped into a friend.

2. 텔레비전을 보다가 잠이 들었어요.

[tel-le-bi-jeo-neul bo-da-ga ja-mi deu-reo-sseo-yo.]

= I was watching television and I fell asleep.

= I fell asleep while watching TV.

3. 여행을 하다가 감기에 걸렸어요.

[yeo-haeng-eul ha-da-ga gam-gi-e geol-lyeo-sseo-yo.]

= I was traveling and I caught a cold.

= I caught a cold while traveling.

4. 서울에서 살다가 제주도로 이사 갔어요.

[seo-u-re-seo sal-da-ga je-ju-do-ro i-sa ga-sseo-yo.]

= I was living in Seoul and then I moved to Jeju Island.

5. 뭐 하다가 왔어요?

[mwo ha-da-ga wa-sseo-yo?]

= What were you doing before coming here?

= What is it that you were doing before you came here?

6. 집에서 공부하다가 나왔어요.

[ji-be-seo gong-bu-ha-da-ga na-wa-sseo-yo.]

= I was studying at home and came outside.

= I was studying at home before I came outside.

LEVEL 5 LESSON 9

7. 밥 먹다가 전화를 받았어요.

[bap meok-da-ga jeon-hwa-reul ba-da-sseo-yo.]

= I was eating when I received the phone call.

= I was eating and then I received a phone call.

8. 밖에 있다가 들어왔어요.

[ba-kke it-da-ga deu-reo-wa-sseo-yo.]

= I was outside and came inside.

= I was outside before I came inside.

9. 어디에 있다가 지금 왔어요?

[eo-di-e it-da-ga ji-geum wa-sseo-yo.]

= Where were you before you came here now?

= Where have you been?

10. 일하다가 잠깐 쉬고 있어요.

[il-ha-da-ga jam-kkan swi-go i-sseo-yo.]

= I was working and now I'm taking a short break.

= I'm taking a short break from work.

LEVEL 5 LESSON 10

In this TalkToMeInKorean lesson, we take a look at how to use **-(이)라고** [-(i)-ra-go].

-(이)라고 is usually not used alone but used with words that are related to speaking, such as **말하다** [ma-ra-da] (to speak), **이야기하다** [i-ya-gi-ha-da] (to talk), **대답하다** [dae-da-pa-ha] (to answer) and also with **하다** [ha-da], which in this case means "to say".

-(이)라고 말하다 [-ra-go mal-ha-da] = to say that it is + NOUN

-(이)라고 대답하다 [-ra-go dae-da-pa-da] = to answer that it is + NOUN

As you can see above, -(이)라고 is used with nouns and is a way to quote the words before -(이)라고 and take the meaning of "(say) that S + be"

Construction

Nouns ending with a last consonant + -이라고

Nouns ending with a vowel + -라고

Ex)

하늘 [ha-neul] (sky) + 이라고 = 하늘이라고

나무 [na-mu] (tree) + 라고 = 나무라고

Meaning

하늘 = sky

하늘이라고 = that it is sky, "sky"

이거 = this

이거라고 = that it is this, "this"

Used with other words

-(이)라고 is usually used with words like 말하다, 이야기하다, 대답하다, etc and when used with -(이)라고, the verb 하다, which originally means "to do" takes the meaning of "to say".

LEVEL 5 LESSON 10

Examples

이거라고 말하다

[i-geo-ra-go ma-ra-da]

= to say that it is this, to say that this is it

학생이라고 말하다

[hak-saeng-i-ra-go ma-ra-da]

= to say that he/she is a student

"감사합니다"라고 말하다

[gam-sa-ham-ni-da-ra-go ma-ra-da]

= to say "감사합니다"

All these expressions above can be respectively substituted with:

- 이거라고 하다
- 학생이라고 하다
- "감사합니다"라고 하다

Stating the SUBJECT

Here's an interesting part where the subject markers in the Korean language come in to play. Even though in the sentence 학생이라고 말하다, 학생 and 말하다 are closely related and look like 학생 is the OBJECT of the verb 말하다, 학생 can still take a subject and be explained as to WHO that 학생 is.

학생이라고 말하다 = to say that he/she is a 학생 (student)

이 사람이 학생이라고 말하다 = to say that 이 사람 (this person) is a 학생 (student)

이 사람은 학생이라고 말하다 = to say that 이 사람 (this person) is a 학생 (student)

공짜라고 하다 = to say that something is free of charge

이 책이 공짜라고 하다 = to say that this book is free of charge

이 책은 공짜라고 하다 = to say that this book is free of charge

LEVEL 5 LESSON 10

You can think of this in two ways:

1. "이 책은 공짜" acts like a noun, so you add -라고 하다 after that.
2. "이 책은" adds meaning and specification to the existing phrase "공짜라고 하다"

Sample sentences

1. 이거라고 했어요.

[i-geo-ra-go hae-sseo-yo.]

= He/She/They said that it was this.

2. 한국 사람이라고 했어요.

[han-guk sa-ra-mi-ra-go hae-sseo-yo.]

= He/She/They said that he/she/they was a Korean person.

3. 뭐라고 말했어요?

[mwo-ra-go ma-rae-sseo-yo?]

= What did you say?

= What did you tell them?

= 뭐라고 했어요?

4. 제가 일등이라고 들었어요.

[je-ga il-deung-i-ra-go deu-reo-sseo-yo.]

= I heard that I was the first place winner.

5. 여기가 TTMiK 사무실이라고 해요.

[yeo-gi-ga TTMiK sa-mu-si-ri-ra-go hae-sseo-yo.]

= They say that this is the TalkToMeInKorean office.

6. 저는 "(person's name)"(이)라고 해요.

= [jeo-neun (person's name)-i-ra-go hae-yo.]

= My name is (person's name).

** This is a part of a series of lessons about -라고, -라는, -다고, and -다는. The other expressions will be introduced in the future lessons. Stay tuned!

LEVEL 5 LESSON 11

This is the second lesson in the series **“Sentence Building Drill”**. In this series, we focus on how you can use the grammatical rules and expressions that you have learned so far to train yourself to make more Korean sentences more comfortably and more flexibly.

We will start off with THREE key sentences, and practice changing parts of these sentences so that you don't end up just memorizing the same three sentences. We want you to be able to be as flexible as possible with the Korean sentences you can make.

Key sentence #1

이 중에서 아무거나 골라도 돼요?

[i jung-e-seo a-mu-geo-na gol-la-do dwae-yo?]

= Among these, can I pick just any one?

Key sentence #2

어제 너무 피곤해서 집에 가자마자 아무것도 못 하고 바로 잠들었어요.

[eo-je neo-mu pi-go-nae-seo ji-be ga-ja-ma-ja a-mu-geot-do mot ha-go ba-ro jam-deu-reo-sseo-yo.]

= Yesterday I was so tired so as soon as I got home, I couldn't do anything and just fell asleep right away.

Key sentence #3

날씨가 더워서 사람들이 별로 안 온 것 같아요.

[nal-ssi-ga deo-wo-seo sa-ram-deu-ri byeol-lo an on geot ga-ta-yo.]

= I think not so many people came because the weather is hot.

Expansion & variation practice with key sentence #1

LEVEL 5 LESSON 11

0. Original sentence:

이 중에서 아무거나 골라도 돼요?

= Among these, can I pick just any one?

1.

이 중에서 = among these

저 중에서 = among those

이 사람들 중에서 = among these people

친구들 중에서 = among my friends

2.

이 중에서 고르세요. = Choose among these.

이 중에서 뭐가 제일 좋아요? = What's your favorite among these.

이 중에서 하나만 고르세요. = Pick just one out of these.

3.

아무거나 고르세요. = Pick anything.

아무거나 주세요. = Give me anything.

아무거나 괜찮아요. = Anything is fine.

아무나 괜찮아요. = Anyone is okay.

4.

아무거나 골라도 돼요? = Can I pick anything?

아무거나 사도 돼요? = Is it okay to buy anything?

아무거나 입어도 돼요? = Is it okay to wear whatever I want?

아무거나 써도 돼요? = Can I write just anything?

Expansion & variation practice with key sentence #2

LEVEL 5 LESSON 11

0. Original sentence:

어제 너무 피곤해서 집에 가자마자 아무것도 못 하고 바로 잠들었어요.

= Yesterday I was so tired so as soon as I got home, I couldn't do anything and just fell asleep right away.

1.

너무 피곤해요. = I am so tired.

너무 이상해요. = It's so strange.

너무 비싸요. = It's too expensive.

너무 웃겨요. = It's so funny.

2.

피곤해서 집에 갔어요. = I was tired so I went home.

피곤해서 안 갔어요. = I was tired so I didn't go.

피곤해서 일찍 잤어요. = I was tired so I went to bed early.

3.

집에 가자마자 잠들었어요. = As soon as I went home, I fell asleep.

집에 도착하자마자 다시 나왔어요. = As soon as I arrived home, I came outside again.

소식을 듣자마자 전화를 했어요. = As soon as I heard the news, I called.

전화를 받자마자 나왔어요. = As soon as I got the phone call, I came out.

4.

아무것도 못 했어요. = I couldn't do anything.

아무것도 못 먹었어요. = I couldn't eat anything.

아무도 못 만났어요. = I couldn't meet anybody.

아무데도 못 갔어요. = I couldn't go anywhere.

5.

아무것도 못 하고 바로 잠들었어요. = I couldn't do anything and just fell asleep.

아무것도 못 보고 나왔어요. = I couldn't see anything and came out.

아무것도 못 사고 돌아왔어요. = I couldn't buy anything and came back.

LEVEL 5 LESSON 11

Expansion & variation practice with key sentence #3

0. Original sentence:

날씨가 더워서 사람들이 별로 안 온 것 같아요.

= I think not so many people came because the weather is hot.

1.

날씨가 더워요. = The weather is hot.

날씨가 추워요. = The weather is cold.

날씨가 좋아요. = The weather is good.

날씨가 흐려요. = It's cloudy.

2.

더워서 사람들이 안 왔어요. = It's hot so people didn't come.

바빠서 사람들이 안 왔어요. = People were busy so they didn't come.

늦어서 사람들이 돌아갔어요. = It's late so people went back.

비싸서 사람들이 안 샀어요. = It's expensive so people didn't buy it.

3.

사람들이 별로 안 왔어요. = Not so many people came.

별로 안 예뻐요. = It's not so pretty.

별로 마음에 안 들어요. = I don't particularly like it.

별로 안 어려워요. = It's not too difficult.

4.

사람들이 안 온 것 같아요. = I think people didn't come.

사람들이 벌써 도착한 것 같아요. = I think people already arrived here.

친구들이 온 것 같아요. = I think my friends are here.

LEVEL 5 LESSON 12

In Level 5 Lesson 10, we introduced the expression -(이)라고 [- (i)ra-go] and how it is used after nouns along with verbs related to speaking and having conversations.

Ex)

학생이라고 말하다 [hak-saeng-i-ra-go mal-ha-da]

= to say that (someone) is a student

Ex)

최고라고 하다 [choe-go-ra-go ha-da]

= to say that (something) is the best

This is when the word AFTER the -(이)라고 part FINISHES the sentence. But if you want to say another NOUN after -(이)라고, you need to change the verb into the adjective form.

학생이라고 말하다 → 학생이라고 말하는

최고라고 하다 → 최고라고 하는

** Check out Level 3 Lesson 14 to review how to use this structure to turn action verbs into the adjective form.

Shortened form

So when you want to say things like "the person who they say is the best" and "the boy that says he is my friend", you use this -(이)라고 하다 plus -는, which is **-(이)라고 하는** when combined together.

But since -(이)라고 하는 is a bit lengthy, a shortened form is commonly used, which is -(이)라는 [- (i)ra-neun].

Ex)

학생이라고 하는 사람 = the person who (they) say is a student

→ 학생이라는 사람

책이라고 하는 것 = the thing that (they) call a book

LEVEL 5 LESSON 12

→ 책이라는 것

Usages

You can use this NOUN + -(이)라는 + NOUN form when:

1) you want to talk about an abstract concept and its innate characteristics

Ex) LOVE is ... / This thing called LOVE is... = 사랑은 = 사랑이라는 것은 ...

2) you want to introduce what something is called or how it is described

Ex) The person who they say is a doctor ... = 의사라는 사람은 ...

Ex) This person called Hyunwoo is ... = 현우라는 사람은 ...

Sample sentences

1. 여기에, "스쿨푸드"라는 식당이 있어요.

[yeo-gi-e seu-kul-pu-deu-ra-neun sik-dang-i i-sseo-yo.]

= Here, there is a restaurant called "School Food".

2. 진석진이라는 선생님이 있어요.

[jin-seok-jin-i-ra-neun seon-saeng-nim-i i-sseo-yo.]

= There is a teacher called 진석진.

3. TalkToMeInKorean이라는 웹사이트 알아요?

[TalkToMeInKorean-i-ra-neun wep-sa-i-teu a-ra-yo?]

= Do you know the website called "TalkToMeInKorean"?

4. 공부라는 것은, 재미없으면 오래 할 수 없어요.

[gong-bu-ra-neun geo-seun, jae-mi-eop-seu-myeon hal su eop-seo-yo.]

= Studying is ... (something that) you can't do for a long time if it's not interesting.

5. 내일, 알렉스라는 친구가 올 거예요.

[nae-il, al-lek-seu-ra-neun chin-gu-ga ol geo-ye-yo.]

= Tomorrow, a friend called Alex will come here.

LEVEL 5 LESSON 13 - WORD BUILDER 7

Word Builder lessons are designed to help you understand how to expand your vocabulary by learning/understanding some common and basic building blocks of Korean words. The words and letters that will be introduced through Word Builder lessons are not necessarily all Chinese characters, or 한자 [han-ja]. Though many of them are based on Chinese characters, the meanings can be different from modern-day Chinese. Your goal, through these lessons, is to understand how words are formed and remember the keywords in Korean to expand your Korean vocabulary from there. You certainly don't have to memorize the Hanja characters, but if you want to, feel free!

Today's keyword is **회**.

These Chinese character for this is 會.

The word **회** is related to "to gather" or "gathering".

회 (to gather) + 사 (to gather) = **회사** 會社 [hoe-sa] = **company**

회사 (company) + 원 (member) = **회사원** 會社員 [hoe-sa-won] = **employee, worker**

회 (to gather) + 의 (to discuss) = **회의** 會議 [hoe-ui] = **meeting**

회의 (meeting) + 실 (house, residence) = **회의실** 會議室 [hoe-ui-sil] = **meeting room, conference room**

회 (to gather) + 식 (food, to eat) = **회식** 會食 [hoe-sik] = **get-together dinner, company dinner**

LEVEL 5 LESSON 13 - WORD BUILDER 7

회 (to gather) + 계 (to count, to calculate) = **회계** 會計 [hoe-gyeo] = **accounting**

회 (to gather) + 비 (to spend) = **회비** 會費 [hoe-bi] = **(membership) fee, (membership) dues**

회 (to gather) + 원 (the number of people) = **회원** 會員 [hoe-won] = **member**

회 (to gather) + 화 (word, to talk) = **회화** 會話 [hoe-hwo] = **conversation**

사 (to gather) + 회 (to gather) = **사회** 社會 [sa-hoe] = **society**

국 (country, nation) + 회 (to gather) = **국회** 國會 [guk-hoe] = **National Assembly**

대 (big) + 회 (to gather) = **대회** 大會 [dae-hoe] = **competition, tournament**

교 (to teach) + 회 (to gather) = **교회** 教會 [gyo-hoe] = **church**

동 (the same) + 호 (to like) + 회 (to gather) = **동호회** 同好會 [dong-ho-hoe] = **club, society**

LEVEL 5 LESSON 14

In this lesson, we take a look at the verb ending **-(으)니까** [-(eu)ni-kka]. Through our previous lessons, we have introduced how to use **그래서** and **-아/어/여서** to link sentences and show a reason/result relationship between them. This verb ending, **-(으)니까**, is used when the verb before **-(으)니까** is the reason for another action or the basis of a judgement.

Construction

Verb #1 Stem + -(으)니까 + Verb #2

The verb (Verb #1) before **-(으)니까** is the reason or the basis of judgement for Verb #2.

Difference between **-아/어/여서** and **-(으)니까**

- Both of these structures show the reason/result or cause/effect relationship of two verbs, but **-아/어/여서** can't be used in imperative sentences or with "Let's".

Ex)

지금 바쁘니까 나중에 전화해 주세요. (O)

= I am busy now so call me later.

지금 바빠서 나중에 전화해 주세요. (X)

** **-아/어/여서** can't be used with imperative sentences.

Ex 2)

지금 피곤하니까 우리 영화 내일 봐요. (O)

= I am tired now so let's watch the movie tomorrow.

지금 피곤해서 우리 영화 내일 봐요. (X)

** **-아/어/여서** can't be used with "Let's".

(우리 영화 내일 봐요 can be translated in two ways. When 봐요 is translated as "let's watch", the entire sentence can NOT exist. But when 봐요 just means "we are watching" or "we are going to watch", the whole sentence can mean "We are tired now so we are going to watch the movie tomorrow.")

LEVEL 5 LESSON 14

- For basic greetings and when talking about your own feelings or situations, you can't use -(으)니까 and you have to use -아/어/여서.

Ex)

와 줘서 고마워요. (O)

= Thank you for coming.

와 주니까 고마워요. (X)

Ex 2)

어제 아파서 못 왔어요. (O)

= I was sick yesterday so I couldn't come.

어제 아프니까 못 왔어요. (X)

Sometimes, -(으)니까 can mark the end of the sentence when you are simply answering a question or providing a basis for a judgement or an action.

Ex)

Q. 이거 왜 샀어요? = Why did you buy this?

A. 맛있으니까. = Because it is delicious. (반말/casual language)

= 맛있으니까요. (존댓말/polite and formal language)

Ex)

괜찮아요. 아까 봤으니까.

= It is okay. (Because) I already saw it earlier.

** In this sentence, if you are speaking in 존댓말, you need to add -요 after 봤으니까 but it is still OKAY not to add it because this can be understood as a simple change of order of the sentence parts. (아까 봤으니까 괜찮아요 --> 괜찮아요, 아까 봤으니까.)

Sample sentences

1. 더우니까 에어컨 켜까요? = It's hot, so shall we turn on the airconditioner?

LEVEL 5 LESSON 14

- 더워서 에어컨 켜까요? (X)

- 더워서 에어컨 켜어요. (O)

(= It was hot so I turned on the airconditioner.)

2. 저 지금 바쁘니까 나중에 전화해 주세요. = I am busy now so call me later.

- 저 지금 바빠서 나중에 전화해 주세요. (X)

- 저 지금 바쁘니까 나중에 전화할게요. (O)

(= I am busy now so I will call you later.)

3. 냉장고에 불고기 있으니까 먹어. = There is some bulgogi in the refrigerator so eat it.

- 냉장고에 불고기 있어서 먹어. (X)

- 냉장고에 불고기 있어서 먹었어요. (O)

(= There was some bugogi in the refrigerator so I ate it.)

4. 내일 일요일이니까 내일 하세요. = Tomorrow is Sunday so do it tomorrow.

- 내일 일요일이어서 내일 하세요. (X)

- 내일 일요일이어서 일 안 할 거예요. (O)

(= Tomorrow is Sunday so I am not going to work.)

LEVEL 5 LESSON 15

How is **-(이)라도** used?

- It is attached after nouns, adverbs or particles to add one of the following meanings:

1) something is suggested but is not the best out of all choices

Ex) 이거라도, 저라도, 커피라도, etc

when used after 아무 (any), 누구 (who), 어디 (where), 언제 (when), or 어느 (which),

2) any choice is fine

Ex) 언제라도, 누구라도, etc

when it is used after certain adverbs or words describing number or quantity, and

3) the speaker wants to emphasize the number or quantity and add the meaning of "even"

Ex) 하루라도, 잠시라도, 1달러라도, etc

4) the speaker is showing some suspicion about a certain possibility

Ex) 혹시 감기라도, 어떤 문제라도, etc

**** Construction is very simple:**

- Words ending with a vowel + -라도

(Ex: 이거 + 라도 = 이거라도)

- Words ending with a last consonant + -이/라도

(Ex: 물 + 이라도 = 물이라도)

LEVEL 5 LESSON 15

Sample sentences

1. 그거라도 주세요. [geu-geo-ra-do ju-se-yo.]

(In this case, "그거 (that one)" is not the best choice, but you ask for it anyway.)

= Give me that (if you don't have anything better/else).

2. 과자라도 먹을래요? [haem-beo-geo-ra-do meo-geul-lae-yo?]

(In this case, you don't have any other proper food, so you are suggesting having snack at least.)

= (I don't have any better food, but) Would you like some snack (at least)?

3. 내일 영화라도 볼래요? [nae-il yeong-hwa-ra-do bol-lae-yo?]

(In this case, you mean that watching a movie is not the best or most that you could do together, but you suggest it anyway because it's better than nothing. If you are very excited about watching a movie, you would instead just say 내일 영화 볼래요?)

= Maybe we can watch a movie or something tomorrow?

= Do you want to watch a movie or something tomorrow?

4. 이렇게라도 해야 돼요. [i-reo-ke-ra-do hae-ya dwae-yo.]

(In this case, you imply that there are other things that could be done but you can't do all of them, and this is what you can at least do to either stay out of trouble or to solve a situation.)

= I should at least do this.

= This should at least prevent further trouble.

= I should at least do this, or else...

5. 저는 언제라도 갈 수 있어요. [jeo-neun eon-ja-ra-do gal su i-sseo-yo.]

(In this case, you imply that "when" you go wouldn't make much difference.)

= I can go anytime.

6. 뭐라도 마세요. [mwo-ra-do ma-syeo-yo.]

(In this case, 뭐 means "something", you are telling the other person to at least drink SOMETHING, since you think it would be at least better than nothing.)

= Drink something (since it would be uncomfortable for me to see you not drinking anything).

LEVEL 5 LESSON 15

7. 하루라도 빨리 끝내야 돼요. [ha-ru-ra-do ppal-li kkeut-nae-ya dwae-yo.]

= I need to finish it quickly. Even one day sooner would make a lot of difference.

(하루라도 빨리 can also be understood as a fixed expression that means "as soon as possible".)

8. 사고라도 났어요? [sa-go-ra-do na-sseo-yo?]

(사고가나다 means "an accident happens" and here, if you add -라고 after 사고, you imply that you have no concrete evidence or fact but you have suspicion that something happened, so you ask the other person meaning "You had an accident or what?")

= You had an accident or what?

= By any chance, did you have an accident?

LEVEL 5 LESSON 16

In this lesson, let us take a look at how to make narrative present tense sentences using **-(ㄴ/는)다**. This verb ending is usually used when you are talking to someone NOT older than you and on close terms with. It is also often used in writing when describing what is happening.

When **-(ㄴ/는)다** is used in writing, there is no distinction between formal language (존댓말) and casual language (반말).

Construction

Action verbs:

- Verb stems ending with a vowel + -ㄴ다

Ex) 자다 (to sleep) → 잔다

- Verb stems ending with a last consonant + -는다

Ex) 굽다 (to bake) → 굽는다

* If a verb stem ends with ㄹ, you drop the ㄹ and add -ㄴ다.

Ex) 팔다 (to sell) → 파 + ㄴ다 → 판다

Descriptive verbs:

- Verb stem + -다

Ex) 예쁘다 → 예쁘다

** In the case of descriptive verbs, since the verb stem is what you have after you take away -다 from the verb, the narrative present tense form is actually the same as the verb's dictionary form.

LEVEL 5 LESSON 16

있다/없다:

- 있다 and 없다 are conjugated in the same way as descriptive verbs, therefore they stay the same in the narrative present tense.

Usage Type 1 (In speaking & writing)

- This is ONLY when you are talking to someone NOT older than you.

You use -(ㄴ/는)다 when:

1) you want to show your reaction or impression when talking about a present action, situation.

Ex) 이거 좋다! = This is good!

(In 반말, you would say "이거 좋아" to the other person in the plain present tense, but 이거 좋다 has a stronger nuance that you saw something for the first time and shows your reaction better.)

Ex) 여기 강아지 있다! = Over there! There is a puppy here!

(In 반말, you would say "여기 강아지 있어!", but 여기 강아지 있다 generally shows your surprise or excitement better.

Ex) 저기 기차 지나간다. = Over there, there is a train passing by.

(In the plain 반말, you would say "저기 기차 지나가", but 저기 기차 지나간다 is generally more commonly used when you want to show your surprise or discovery of a certain fact.)

Ex) 전화 온다. = The phone is ringing.

(In the plain 반말, you would say 전화 와. But here, you are describing a certain situation or action AS it's happening in the narrative form.)

LEVEL 5 LESSON 16

2) you want to talk about a present action, situation or a regular activity.

Ex) 나 먼저 간다. = I'm leaving now (before you).

(In the plain 반말, you would say 나 먼저 가. or 나 먼저 갈게, but here, you are describing the current situation in the narrative form. It is as if you are saying "Hey, I am leaving now, as you can see. Tell me now if you want to show some reaction.")

Ex) 그러면, 다음에는 너 초대 안 한다. = If you do that(If that's the case), next time, I won't invite you (and make that a rule).

(In the plain 반말, you would say 그러면, 다음에는 너 초대 안 할게. or 그러면 다음에는 너 초대 안 할 거야. since you are talking about the future, but if you want to talk about it as a rule or a habit, you can say 너 초대 안 한다.)

Usage Type 2 (Only in writing)

When you use -(ㄴ/는)다 In writing, the distinction between formal language and casual language disappears. In fact, this is a very common way of describing a series of actions, therefore this -(ㄴ/는)다 is very commonly used in personal journals, recipes, narration scripts for documentary films, etc, wherever a very neutral and narrative voice is required.

Ex) 경은은 오늘도 아침 8시에 일어난다. 일어나서 제일 먼저 하는 일은 핸드폰을 보는 것이다.

(In a documentary film) (Kyeong-eun gets up at 8 AM as usual. The first thing she does after she gets up is checking her cellphone.)

Ex) 이 학교에서는 500명의 학생들이 한국어를 배운다.

(In this school, 500 students learn Korean.)

LEVEL 5 LESSON 16

Sample sentences

1. 오늘 날씨 좋다!

[o-neul nal-ssi jo-ta]

= The weather is good today!

2. 전화가 안 돼요. 어? 다시 된다!

[jeon-hwa-ga an dwae-yo. eo? da-si doen-da!]

= The phone is not working. Huh? It's working again!

3. 저기 내 친구들 온다.

[jeo-gi nae chin-gu-deul on-da]

= There come my friends.

4. 그럼 나는 여기서 기다린다?

[geu-reom na-neun yeo-gi-seo gi-da-rin-da?]

= Then I will wait here, okay?

5. 한국어를 잘 하고 싶으면, 매일 공부해야 한다.

[han-gu-geo-reul jal ha-go si-peu-myeon mae-il gong-bu-hae-ya han-da]

= If you want to speak good Korean, you need to study everyday.

LEVEL 5 LESSON 17

In this lesson, we take a look at the verb ending **-(ㄴ/는)다는** and **-(ㄴ/는)다고**. Before we go on and explain this, however, it would be a good idea to briefly review some of the previously introduced verb endings that are related to this.

Level 5 Lesson 10: NOUN + **-(이)라고** + VERB related to speaking or communication

Ex)

NOUN + **-(이)라고** + 말하다 = to say that something is NOUN, to say "NOUN"

NOUN + **-(이)라고** + 쓰다 = to write that something is NOUN, to write down "NOUN"

Level 5 Lesson 12: NOUN + **-(이)라는** + NOUN

Ex)

NOUN + **-(이)라는** + 사람 = a person who says he is NOUN, a person who's called NOUN

NOUN + **-(이)라는** + 곳 = a place that's called NOUN

Level 5 Lesson 16: VERB + **-(ㄴ/는)다**

Ex)

가다 (= to go) → 나 먼저 간다. (= Hey, I'm going to go.)

먹다 (= to eat) → 나 이거 먹는다. (= Hey, I'm going to eat this.)

오다 (= to come) → 전화 온다. (= Hey, the phone is ringing.)

And the verb ending we are introducing in this lesson is a COMBINATION of **-(이)라고** and **-(ㄴ/는)다**.

LEVEL 5 LESSON 17

The "NOUN + -(이)라고 + VERB" structure is used when you want to say "(they) say that (something is) + NOUN". And when you want to say "(they) say that (something) + VERB", you change "라" to "다".

NOUN + -라고 → VERB + -다고

But this is not it. In order to change a verb into the -다고 form, you need to use the narrative form, which we introduced in the previous lesson.

NOUN + -(이)라고 + 말하다/하다/쓰다/적다/부르다/etc

VERB + -(ㄴ/는)다고 + 말하다/하다/쓰다/적다/부르다/etc

(* 말하다 = to say / 하다 = to say / 쓰다 = to write / 적다 = to write down / 부르다 = to call)

Examples

- Combined with 말하다 (= to say)

Action Verbs

가다 → 간다고 말하다 (= to say that someone is going, to say that someone will go)

보다 → 본다고 말하다 (= to say that someone sees something, to say that someone is going to see something)

Descriptive Verbs

좋다 → 좋다고 말하다 (= to say that something is good)

크다 → 크다고 말하다 (= to say that something is big)

LEVEL 5 LESSON 17

- Combined with 듣다 (= to hear)

Action Verbs

오다 → 온다고 듣다 (= to hear that something/someone is coming)

먹다 → 먹는다고 듣다 (= to hear that someone is eating something)

Descriptive Verbs

비싸다 → 비싸다고 듣다 (= to hear that something is expensive)

맛있다 → 맛있다고 듣다 (= to hear that something is delicious)

Sample Sentences (of both -(이)라고 and -(ㄴ/는)다고)

1. 뭐라고 했어요?

[mwo-ra-go hae-sseo-yo?]

= What did you say?

2. 전화 온다고 했어요.

[jeon-hwa on-da-go hae-sseo-yo.]

= I said that your phone is ringing.

3. 그 사람이 내일 온다고 해요.

[geu sa-ra-mi nae-il on-da-go hae-yo.]

= He says that he will come tomorrow.

4. 그 사람이 언제 온다고 했어요?

[geu sa-ra-mi eon-je on-da-go hae-sseo-yo?]

LEVEL 5 LESSON 17

= When did he say he would come?

5. 그 사람이 이거 뭐라고 했어요?

[geu sa-ra-mi i-geo mwo-ra-go hae-sseo-yo?]

= What did he say this was?

6. 한국은 겨울에 정말 춥다고 들었어요.

[han-gu-geun gyeo-u-re jeong-mal chup-da-go deu-reo-sseo-yo.]

= I heard that it's very cold in winter in Korea.

7. 여기에 뭐라고 써야 돼요?

[yeo-gi-e mwo-ra-go sseo-ya dwae-yo?]

= What should I write here?

8. TTMIK이 좋다고 쓰세요.

[TTMIK-i jo-ta-go sseu-se-yo.]

= Write that TTMIK is good.

9. 저도 간다고 말해 주세요.

[jeo-do gan-da-go ma-rae ju-se-yo.]

= Please tell them that I am going to go, too.

10. 이거 재미있다고 들었어요.

[i-geo jae-mi-it-da-go deu-reo-sseo-yo.]

= I heard that this is fun.

** Bonus Sample Sentences (using -(ㄴ/는)다는 before nouns)

LEVEL 5 LESSON 17

11. TTMIK이 재미있다는 이야기를 들었어요.

[TTMIK-i jae-mi-it-da-neun i-ya-gi-reul deu-reo-sseo-yo.]

= I heard (a story that) someone (was) saying that TTMIK is fun.

12. 저도 간다는 메시지를 남겼어요.

[jeo-do gan-da-neun me-si-ji-reul nam-gyeo-sseo-yo.]

= I left a message saying that that I would go too.

13. 한국어를 공부한다는 내용이에요.

[han-gu-geo-reul gong-bu-han-da-neun nae-yong-i-e-yo.]

= It's a story/content that (someone) is studying Korean.

14. 경은 씨가 제주도에 간다는 이야기를 들었어요.

[gyeong-eun ssi-ga je-ju-do-e gan-da-neun i-ya-gi-reul deu-reo-sseo-yo.]

= I heard (a story that) someone (was) saying that Gyeong-eun was going to Jeju Island.

15. 지금 간다는 사람이 없어요.

[ji-geum gan-da-neun sa-ra-mi eop-seo-yo.]

= There is no one that says that they will go.

LEVEL 5 LESSON 18

The verb ending **-(으)ㄴ/는지** is basically used with verbs related to knowing, guessing, informing, thinking, etc, for expressing the meaning "whether or not".

It can also be used with words such as 누구 (who), 어디 (where), 어떻게 (how), 왜 (why), 언제 (when), 뭐 (what) and 얼마나 (how + adverb/adjective) to mark the end of a question inside a compound sentence.

Conjugation:

(1) Action verbs

- Verb stem + -는지

Ex)

먹다 → 먹는지

사다 → 사는지

- When the verb stem ends with ㄹ, you drop the ㄹ and add -는지

Ex)

놀다 → 노는지

풀다 → 푸는지

(2) Descriptive verbs

- Verb stems ending with a vowel + -ㄴ지

(The verb 이다 (to be) is included in this category as well.)

LEVEL 5 LESSON 18

Ex)

크다 → 큰지

예쁘다 → 예쁜지

- Verb stems ending with a consonant + -은지

Ex)

작다 → 작은지

좁다 → 좁은지

Examples

(1)

이거 뭐예요? [i-geo mwo-ye-yo?] (= What is this?)

+ 알아요? [a-ra-yo?] (= Do you know)

→ Do you know what this is? = 이거 뭔지 알아요?

이거 뭐이다 → 이거 뭐이 + -ㄴ지 → 이거 뭐인지 → 이거 뭔지

→ 이거 뭔지 알아요?

(2)

뭐가 좋아요? [mwo-ga jo-a-yo?] (= What is good?)

+ 몰라요. [mol-la-yo.] (= I don't know.)

→ I don't know what is good. = 뭐가 좋은지 몰라요.

뭐가 좋다 → 뭐가 좋 + -은지 → 뭐가 좋은지

→ 뭐가 좋은지 몰라요.

LEVEL 5 LESSON 18

(3)

문제가 있다 [mun-je-ga it-da] (= There is a problem.)

+ 물어보세요. [mu-reo-bo-se-yo.] (= Ask.)

→ Ask (them) whether there is a problem. = 문제가 있는지 물어보세요.

문제가 있다 → 문제가 있 + -는지 → 문제가 있는지

→ 문제가 있는지 물어보세요.

Sample Sentences

1. 이 사람 누구인지 아세요?

[i sa-ram nu-gu-in-ji a-se-yo?]

= Do you know who this person is?

2. 이거 괜찮은지 봐 주세요.

[i-geo gwaen-cha-neun-ji bwa ju-se-yo.]

= See if this is okay.

3. 뭐 사고 싶은지 말해 주세요.

[mwo sa-go si-peun-ji mal-hae ju-se-yo.]

= Tell me what you want to buy.

4. 내일 우리 만날 수 있는지 알고 싶어요.

[nae-il man-nal su it-neun-ji al-go si-peo-yo.]

= I want to know whether we can meet tomorrow or not.

5. 제가 왜 걱정하는지 몰라요?

LEVEL 5 LESSON 18

[je-ga wae geok-jeong-ha-neun-ji mol-la-yo?]

= Do you not know why I worry?

LEVEL 5 LESSON 19

In this lesson, we are looking at how to use the structure **“Verb + -(으)라고 + Verb”**.

Through our previous lessons, we have learned that -(으)라고, -ㄴ/은/는다고, etc. are used for quoting what something is called or what someone said. And today, let us look at how -(으)라고 is used after a verb to make a quoted imperative statement.

Conjugation

Verb stems ending with a vowel + -라고 + 하다/말하다/쓰다/듣다/etc.

Ex) 보다 → 보라고 하다/말하다/쓰다/듣다/etc.

Verb stems ending with a last consonant + -(으)라고 + 하다/말하다/쓰다/듣다/etc.

Ex) 먹다 → 먹으라고 하다/말하다/쓰다/듣다/etc.

Examples

보다 (= to see)

→ 보라고 하다 = to tell (someone) to look at (something)

먹다 (= to eat)

→ 먹으라고 말하다 = to tell (someone) to eat (something)

앉다 (= to sit)

→ 앉으라고 하다 = to tell (someone) to sit down

Sample sentences

1. 조용히 하라고 말해 주세요.

[jo-yong-hi ha-ra-go mal-hae ju-se-yo.]

= Please tell them/him/her to be quiet.

LEVEL 5 LESSON 19

2. 걱정하지 말라고 했어요.

[geok-jeong-ha-ji mal-la-go hae-sseo-yo.]

= They told me not to worry.

= I told them not to worry.

3. 누가 가라고 했어요?

[nu-ga ga-ra-go hae-sseo-yo?]

= Who told you/her/him/them to go?

4. 어디로 오라고 했어요?

[eo-di-ro o-ra-go hae-sseo-yo?]

= Where did they ask you to come?

= Where did you ask them to come?

5. 효진 씨한테 주라고 했어요.

[hyo-jin ssi-han-te ju-ra-go hae-sseo-yo.]

= They told me to give this to Hyojin.

= I told them to give that to Hyojin.

LEVEL 5 LESSON 20

In this series, we focus on how you can use the grammatical rules and expressions that you have learned so far to train yourself to make more Korean sentences more comfortably and more flexibly.

We will start off with THREE key sentences, and practice changing parts of these sentences so that you don't end up just memorizing the same three sentences. We want you to be able to be as flexible as possible with the Korean sentences you can make.

Key sentence #1

지금 효진 씨가 바빠서 못 간다고 하는데, 저라도 갈까요?

[ji-geum hyo-jin ssi-ga ba-ppa-seo mot gan-da-go ha-neun-de, jeo-ra-do gal-kka-yo?]

= Hyojin says she can't go because she's busy now, so if you don't mind me going instead, shall I go?

Key sentence #2

어제 친구랑 영화 보려고 했는데, 영화관에 사람이 너무 많아서 영화를 못 봤어요.

[eo-je chin-gu-rang yeog-hwa bo-ryeo-go haet-neun-de, yeong-hwa-gwan-e sa-ra-mi neo-mu ma-na-seo yeong-hwa-reul mot bwa-sseo-yo.]

= I was going to watch a movie with a friend yesterday, but there were too many people so we couldn't watch the movie.

Key sentence #3

그거 비밀이니까 아직 아무한테도 말하지 마세요.

[geu-geo bi-mi-ri-ni-kka a-jik a-mu-han-te-do ma-ra-ji ma-se-yo.]

= It's a secret so don't tell anyone yet.

Expansion & variation practice with key sentence #1

LEVEL 5 LESSON 20

0. Original sentence:

지금 효진 씨가 바빠서 못 간다고 하는데, 저라도 갈까요?

= Hyojin says she can't go because she's busy now, so if you don't mind me going instead, shall I go?

1.

못 간다고 하다 = to say that one can't go (somewhere)

못 먹는다고 하다 = to say that one can't eat (something)

못 한다고 하다 = to say that one can't do (something)

못 했다고 하다 = to say that one couldn't do (something)

2.

저라도 갈까요? = Shall I go instead, if you don't mind?

지금이라도 갈까요? = It might be a little late, but shall we go now at least?

공원에라도 갈까요? = Shall we go to a park or something (even though it might not be the best place to go to)?

Expansion & variation practice with key sentence #2

0. Original sentence:

어제 친구랑 영화 보려고 했는데, 영화관에 사람이 너무 많아서 영화를 못 봤어요.

= I was going to watch a movie with a friend yesterday, but there were too many people so we couldn't watch the movie.

1.

어제 친구랑 영화 보려고 했어요. = I wanted to (and I was going to) watch a movie with a friend yesterday.

어제 이야기하려고 했어요. = I was going to tell you yesterday.

내일 이야기하려고 했어요. = I was going to tell you tomorrow.

혼자 해 보려고 했어요. = I wanted to try doing it by myself.

2.

LEVEL 5 LESSON 20

사람이 너무 많아서 영화를 못 봤어요. = There were too many people so I couldn't watch the movie.

너무 바빠서 아직 휴가를 못 갔어요. = I've been too busy so I couldn't go on a vacation yet.

너무 긴장해서 잊어 버렸어요. = I was so nervous that I forgot.

오늘은 회의가 너무 많아서 일을 못 했어요. = Today I had too many meetings so I couldn't work.

Expansion & variation practice with key sentence #3

0. Original sentence:

그거 비밀이니까 아직 아무한테도 말하지 마세요.

= It's a secret so don't tell anyone yet.

1.

비밀이니까 말하지 마세요. = It's a secret so don't tell anyone.

중요하니까 잊어 버리지 마세요. = It's important so don't forget.

무거우니까 혼자 들지 마세요. = It's heavy so don't lift it alone.

뜨거우니까 손 대지 마세요. = It's hot so don't touch it.

2.

아직 아무한테도 말하지 마세요. = Don't tell anyone yet.

아직 아무데도 가지 마세요. = Don't go anywhere yet.

아직 아무것도 사지 마세요. = Don't buy anything yet.

아직 아무도 만나지 마세요. = Don't meet anybody yet.

LEVEL 5 LESSON 21

In Level 4 Lesson 17 and Level 4 Lesson 23, we had our first two lessons on word contractions in Korean. Let us review them very briefly.

Ex)

(1)

이것 (= this) → 이거

이거 + 는 → 이건

(2)

저것 (= that) → 저거

저거 + 는 → 저건

(3)

이렇게 하면 → 이러면 = if you do it like this

저렇게 하면 → 저러면 = if you do it like that

(4)

어떻게 해요? → 어떡해요? = How do we (deal with the situation)?

Now in this lesson, we are going to look at how **the object marker -를** is combined with the word that comes before it in everyday Korean.

As you already know -을 and -를 are object markers in Korean sentences. -을 is used after words that end with a last consonant and -를 is used after words that end with a vowel.

LEVEL 5 LESSON 21

But in everyday spoken (and sometimes written) Korean, after words that end with a vowel, -를 is often changed to -ㄹ and -ㄹ is just attached at the end of the last vowel of the previous word. (Therefore, -을 stays the same.)

Examples

1. 저 = I, me (honorific)

저 + 를 = **저를** (me + object marker) → **절**

2. 이거 = this

이거 + 를 = **이거를** (this + object marker) → **이걸**

3. 여기 = here, this place

여기 + 를 = **여기를** (this place + object marker) → **여길**

4. 뭐 = what

뭐 + 를 = **뭐를** (what + object marker) → **뭘**

** Note that the examples above only contain words that are very frequently used on daily basis. Those are words that most people habitually use shortened forms for quite often. As for words that are not as frequently used as those above, such as 우유 (milk), 머리 (head), etc, it's entirely up to the speaker whether they want to shorten them (for example, to 우울, 머릴, etc) or not. In most cases, however, contracted forms such as 우울, 머릴, etc, using words that are not always used everyday, are often used in spoken Korean but not in written Korean.

Sample sentences

1. 누가 절 불렀어요?

LEVEL 5 LESSON 21

[nu-ga jeol bul-leo-sseo-yo?]

= Who called me?

2. 여길 어떻게 알았어요?

[yeo-gil eo-tteo-ke a-ra-sseo-yo?]

= How did you find out about this place?

3. 뭘 기다리고 있어요?

[mwol gi-da-ri-go i-sseo-yo?]

= What are you waiting for?

4. 이걸 누구한테 줘야 돼요?

[i-geol nu-gu-han-te jwo-ya dwae-yo?]

= Whom should I give this to?

5. 어딜 눌러야 돼요?

[eo-dil nul-leo-ya dwae-yo?]

= Where should I press?

LEVEL 5 LESSON 22 - WORD BUILDER 8

Word Builder lessons are designed to help you understand how to expand your vocabulary by learning/understanding some common and basic building blocks of Korean words. The words and letters that will be introduced through Word Builder lessons are not necessarily all Chinese characters, or 한자 [han-ja]. Though many of them are based on Chinese characters, the meanings can be different from modern-day Chinese. Your goal, through these lessons, is to understand how words are formed and remember the keywords in Korean to expand your Korean vocabulary from there. You certainly don't have to memorize the Hanja characters, but if you want to, feel free!

Today's keyword is **식**.

These Chinese character for this is 食.

The word **식** is related to "food" and "to eat".

식 (eat) + 사 (work, job) = **식사** 食事 [sik-sa] = **meal**

식 (eat) + 당 (house) = **식당** 食堂 [sik-dang] = **restaurant**

식 (eat) + 품 (thing, stuff, item) = **식품** 食品 [sik-pum] = **food product, groceries**

식 (eat) + 탁 (table) = **식탁** 食卓 [sik-tak] = **(dining) table**

음 (drink) + 식 (eat) = **음식** 飲食 [eum-sik] = **food**

음 (drink) + 식 (eat) + 점 (store) = **음식점** 飲食店 [eum-sik-jeom] = **restaurant**

간 (gap, space) + 식 (eat) = **간식** 間食 [gan-sik] = **snack**

LEVEL 5 LESSON 22 - WORD BUILDER 8

분 (powder, flour) + 식 (food) = **분식** 粉食 [bun-sik] = **flour-based food**

외 (outside, exterior) + 식 (food) = **외식** 外食 [oe-sik] = **to eat out, to dine out**

과 (excessive) + 식 (food) = **과식** 過食 [gwa-sik] = **overeating, excessive eating**

후 (back, after) + 식 (food) = **후식** 後食 [hu-sik] = **dessert**

시 (test) + 식 (food) = **시식** 試食 [si-sik] = **sample food, food sampling**

LEVEL 5 LESSON 23

In Level 5 Lesson 4, we introduced the structure -나 보다 for action verbs, and in Level 5 Lesson 8, we explained how -(으)려고 하다 is used. When you combine those two structures together, you get -(으)려고 하나 보다.

And this can be made even shorter:

-(으)려고 하나 보다 → -(으)려나 보다

Meaning:

-(으)려나 보다 is a way of expressing your assumption about a future action that you "assume" someone is going to take or something that you "assume" will happen. For a similar meaning, you can use -(으)ㄹ 것 같다, but -(으)ㄹ 것 같다 generally has a stronger meaning than -(으)려나 보다, and you sound more certain of your statement when you use -(으)ㄹ 것 같다.

When you are making an assumptive statement based on what you saw, the reason that -(으)려나 보다 has a weaker meaning than -(으)ㄹ 것 같다 is that you are talking about what you see as someone else's intention for doing something.

Construction:

Verb stems ending with a vowel + -려나 보다

Verb stems ending with a last consonant + -으려나 보다

Examples:

1. 닫다 [dat-da] = to close

닫 + -으려나 보다 = 닫으려나 보다

→ 닫으려나 봐요. [da-deu-ryeo-na bwa-yo.] = I guess they are going to close it. / It looks like they want to close it.

LEVEL 5 LESSON 23

* 닫을 것 같아요. [da-deul geot ga-ta-yo.] = I think they will close it.

2. 걸어가다 [geo-reo-ga-da] = to walk somewhere

걸어가 + -려나 보다 = 걸어가려나 보다

→ 걸어가려나 봐요. [geo-reo-ga-ryeo-na bwa-yo.] = It looks like he is going to walk there.

* 걸어갈 것 같아요. [geo-reo gal geot ga-ta-yo.] = I think he will walk there.

** Note that you cannot use -(으)려나 보다 for descriptive verbs, since you can't have an intention for "being" in a state. You can talk about "becoming + adjective" or about your effort for getting in a certain state, but not for generally describing a state that you ARE definitely in.

Sample sentences

1. 카페 문을 닫으려나 봐요.

[ka-pe mu-neul da-deu-ryeo-na bwa-yo.] [Original verb: 닫다 = to close]

= It looks like they are going to close the cafe.

2. 지금 시작하려나 봐요.

[ji-geum si-ja-ka-ryeo-na bwa-yo.] [Original verb: 시작하다 = to start]

= It looks like they are going to start now.

3. 다 같이 들어오려나 봐요.

[da ga-chi deu-reo-o-ryeo-na bwa-yo.] [Original verb: 들어오다 = to come in]

= I guess they are all going to come in together.

LEVEL 5 LESSON 23

4. 가족하고 여행을 가려나 봐요.

[ga-jo-ka-go yeo-haeng-eul ga-ryeo-na bwa-yo.] [Original verb: 가다 = to go]

= It looks like she's planning to go on a trip with her family.

5. 내일도 날씨가 추우려나 봐요.

[nae-il-do nal-ssi-ga chu-u-ryeo-na bwa-yo.] [Original verb: 춥다 = to be cold]

= It looks like the weather is going to be cold again tomorrow.

LEVEL 5 LESSON 24

In Level 2 Lesson 30, we introduced how to use **-지 마세요** [-ji ma-se-yo] after verb stems to tell someone NOT to do something. The key verb is **말다** [mal-da], which means to not do something or to drop the intention of doing something.

Ex)

가지 마세요. [ga-ji ma-se-yo.] = Don't go.

하지 마세요. [ha-ji ma-se-yo.] = Don't do it.

방해하지 마세요. [bang-hae-ha-ji ma-se-yo.] = Don't interrupt me.

In this lesson, we are looking at how to use the verb 말다 in the form "말고" and make expressions such as "Not this one but THAT one." "Not here but over there." or "Don't buy it and use this one."

Construction

When you want to say "not A but B" with nouns, you just need to use **말고** between them.

Ex) A 말고 B

When you want to say "don't do A but/and do B" with verbs, you need to add **-지** after the verb stem, just like you would with sentences ending in **-지 마세요**.

Ex) [Verb A]-지 말고 [Verb B]

*Note that **-고** [-go] is the same ending you see in the word **그리고**, meaning "and".

Examples with nouns

1. 우유 말고 커피 주세요.

[u-yu mal-go keo-pi ju-se-yo.]

LEVEL 5 LESSON 24

= Give me NOT milk BUT coffee.

= Give me coffee, NOT milk.

2. 이거 말고 저거 살게요.

[i-geo mal-go jeo-geo sal-ge-yo.]

= Not this one, but that one over there, I will buy it.

= I will buy that one over there, not this one.

*Here you are using verbs such as "to give" and "to buy", but when the main verb of the sentence is "to be", instead of using 말고, you need to use -이/가 아니고, because the opposite of "to be" (-이다) is not 말다 but 아니다.

Examples with verbs

1. 걱정하지 말고 그냥 해 봐요.

[geok-jeong-ha-ji mal-go geu-nyang hae bwa-yo.]

= Don't worry and just give it a try.

2. 늦지 말고 일찍 오세요.

[neut-ji mal-go il-jjik o-se-yo.]

= Don't be late and come early.

Sample Sentences

1. 전화하지 말고 문자 메시지 보내 주세요.

[jeong-hwa-ha-ji mal-go mun-ja me-si-ji bo-nae ju-se-yo.]

= Don't call me but send me a text message.

LEVEL 5 LESSON 24

2. 저 기다리지 말고 먼저 가도 돼요.

[jeo gi-da-ri-ji mal-go meon-jeo ga-do dwae-yo.]

= Don't wait for me. You can go first.

= You can go first without waiting for me.

3. 차가운 물에 넣지 말고 뜨거운 물에 넣으세요.

[cha-ga-un mu-re neot-chi mal-go tteu-geo-un mu-re neo-eu-se-yo.]

= Don't put it in cold water but put it in hot water.

4. 내일은 여기 말고 다른 곳에서 만날 거예요.

[nae-i-reun yeo-gi mal-go da-reun go-se-seo man-nal geo-ye-yo.]

= Tomorrow, we are going to meet NOT here BUT in a different place.

= Tomorrow we are going to meet at a different place instead of here.

5. 지금 사지 말고 조금만 기다리세요.

[ji-geum sa-ji mal-go jo-geum-man gi-da-ri-se-yo.]

= Don't buy it now and wait just a little while.

LEVEL 5 LESSON 25

There are many expressions in Korean that make a sentence less direct and less straightforward, and therefore a bit "softer". What we are introducing today is also one of those expressions.

-ㄴ/은/는 편이다

[-n/eu/neun pyeo-ni-da]

Originally, the word 편 [pyeon] means "side" as found in words such as "opposite side (맞은편)" or "same side/team (같은 편)". But you can use the word 편 in the structure "adjective + 편 + -이다 (to be)" to say that something or someone is "rather + adjective", "somewhat + adjective", "on the + adjective + side" or they "tend to be + adjective".

Let's look at some examples.

When you want to straightforwardly say that something is big, you can just say "커요." [keo-yo.] using the verb 크다 [keu-da]. But if you use the same verb but use it in the -ㄴ/은/는 편이다 form, "큰 편이에요.", the meaning changes to "It's on the bigger side." "It's rather big." "It's somewhat big." or even "It's not small." or "It tends to be small."

Construction

Descriptive verbs: Verb stems ending with a vowel + -ㄴ 편이다

Verb stems ending with a last consonant + -은 편이다

Action verbs: Present tense → Verb stem + -는 편이다

Past tense → Verb stem + -ㄴ/은 편이다

More examples:

LEVEL 5 LESSON 25

작다 → 작아요 = It's small.

→ 작은 편이에요. = It's rather small. It's on the smaller side. It's not the biggest. It tends to be small.

비싸다 → 비싸요. = It's expensive.

→ 비싼 편이에요. = It's rather expensive. It's not the cheapest. It's a bit expensive.

피아노를 잘 치다 → 피아노를 잘 쳐요. = I play the piano well.

→ 피아노를 잘 치는 편이에요. = I play the piano rather well.

-에 비해서 / -에 비하면

[-e bi-hae-seo / -e bi-ha-myeon]

Now you know how to describe something somewhat less straightforwardly. You can still use the -(으)ㄴ 편이다 structure when you want to compare two or more things or people with one another.

You already know how to say "than" in Korean. It's -보다 [-bo-da]. So you can say things like "이것보다 큰 편이에요.", "저보다 바쁜 편이에요.", etc.

Another commonly used expression is **-에 비해서** [-e bi-hae-seo].

The letter 비 comes from the word 비교, and both 비 and 비교 mean "comparison" (*Note that 비 is never used on its own to mean "comparison"). So -에 비해서 means "compared to (something)".

LEVEL 5 LESSON 25

Examples:

지난 주에 비해서 바쁜 편이에요.

[ji-nan ju-e bi-hae-seo ba-ppeun pyeo-ni-e-yo.]

= We are somewhat busier compared to last week.

(Similar: 지난 주보다 바쁜 편이에요.)

한국어에 비해서 일본어는 발음이 쉬운 편이에요.

[han-gu-geo-e bi-hae-seo il-bo-neo-neun ba-reu-mi swi-un pyeo-ni-e-yo.]

= Compared to Korean, Japanese tends to have an easier pronunciation.

-에 비하면

-에 비하면 is similar to -에 비해서, but since it has the ending -(으)면, it contains the meaning of "IF". So whereas -에 비해서 means just "compared to (something)", -에 비하면 means "if you compare it to (something)".

Sample Sentences:

1. 저에 비하면 잘하는 편이에요.

[jeo-e bi-ha-myeon jal-ha-neun pyeo-ni-e-yo.]

= If you compare to me, you are pretty good at it.

LEVEL 5 LESSON 25

2. 저에 비해서 잘하는 편이에요.

[jeo-e bi-hae-seo jal-ha-neun pyeo-ni-e-yo.]

= Compared to me, you are pretty good at it

3. 여기는 다른 곳에 비해서 조용한 편이에요.

[yeo-gi-neun da-reun go-se bi-hae-seo jo-yong-han pyeo-ni-e-yo.]

= This place is, compared to other places, pretty quite.

4. 그래도 버스에 비해서 지하철이 빠른 편이에요.

[geu-rae-do beo-seu-e bi-hae-seo ji-ha-cheo-ri ppa-reun pyeo-ni-e-yo.]

= But still, compared to the bus, the subway is faster.

5. 저도 여기 자주 오는 편이에요.

[jeo-do yeo-gi ja-ju o-neun pyeo-ni-e-yo.]

= I come here quite frequently, too.

LEVEL 5 LESSON 26

In this lesson, we are going to look at how to say "instead of" in Korean. The key expression to remember here is "**대신에**" [dae-si-ne]. The word 대신 [dae-sin] literally means "substitution" or "replacing" and the verb 대신하다 [dae-sin-ha-da] means "to substitute" or "to replace" someone or something.

In English, you use the expression "instead of" BEFORE the noun or the verb, but in Korean, you need to put "대신에" after the noun or the verb.

Examples

(With nouns)

1. 이거 대신에 [i-geo dae-si-ne]

= instead of this

2. 이거 대신에 저거 [i-geo dae-si-ne jeo-geo]

= that one instead of this one

*Please note the difference in word order in English and in Korean.

3. 저 대신에 [jeo dae-si-ne]

= instead of me

4. 저 대신에 제 친구가... [jeo dae-si-ne]

= instead of me, my friend (subject) ...

When you want to use 대신에 with verbs and say things like "instead of doing this", "instead of buying it", or "instead of working", you need to change the verb into the adjective form so that

LEVEL 5 LESSON 26

it can modify 대신에.

Construction:

Verb stem + -는

Ex)

사다 (= to buy) --> 사는 대신에 (= instead of buying)

만나다 (= to meet) --> 만나는 대신에 (= instead of meeting)

Another meaning of **대신에**

Basically "Noun + 대신에" or "Verb + -는 대신에" means "instead of", but when used with verbs, **대신에** can also have the meaning of **"in return for + V-ing"**.

For example, using this, you can say things like the following:

1. I will help you this time. But "in return", you have to help me next time.
2. You can watch TV now but "in return/to make up for it" you should study hard later.
3. I will teach you English, but "in return" you have to teach me Korean.

Examples

1. 이번에는 제가 도와 줄게요. 대신에 다음에는 저를 도와 줘야 돼요.

[i-beo-ne je-ga do-wa jul-ge-yo. dae-si-ne da-eu-me-neun jeo-reul do-wa jwo-ya dwae-yo.]

= I will help you this time. But in return, next time, you have to help me.

= 이번에는 제가 도와 주는 대신에, 다음에는 저를 도와 줘야 돼요.

2. 제가 이거 빌려 주는 대신에, 저 영어 공부 도와 줘야 돼요.

LEVEL 5 LESSON 26

[je-ga i-geo bil-lyeo ju-neun dae-si-ne, jeo yeong-eo gong-bu do-wa jwo-ya dwae-yo.]

= I will lend you this, but in return, you have to help me learn English.

Sample sentences

1. 컴퓨터 대신에 카메라를 샀어요.

[keom-pyu-teo dae-si-ne ka-me-ra-reul sa-sseo-yo.]

= I bought a camera instead of a computer.

2. 여행을 가는 대신에 아르바이트를 했어요.

[yeo-haeng-eul ga-neun dae-si-ne a-reu-ba-i-teu-reul hae-sseo-yo.]

= Instead of traveling, I did a part-time job.

3. 오늘 일찍 가는 대신에, 내일 일찍 와야 돼요.

[o-neul il-jjik ga-neun dae-si-ne, nae-il il-jjik wa-ya dwae-yo.]

= Since you are leaving early, to make up for it, you have to be here early tomorrow.

4. 저 대신에 가고 싶은 사람 있어요?

[jeo dae-si-ne ga-go si-peun sa-ram i-sseo-yo?]

= Is there anybody who wants to go instead of me?

5. 아빠 대신 엄마가 올 거예요.

[a-ppa dae-sin eom-ma-ga ol geo-ye-yo.]

= Instead of my father, my mother will come here.

*In both spoken and written Korean, people often drop the particle "-에" and just say 대신 or -
는 대신.

LEVEL 5 LESSON 27

In this lesson, we are looking at a very popular verb ending in Korean, **-잖아(요)** [-ja-na(-yo)]. -잖아(요) is used in various contexts and therefore has various meanings, but you can use -잖아(요) most commonly when you want to ask the other person to agree with you or when you are correcting the other person's remark.

Meaning of -잖아(요)

-잖아(요) originally comes from the structure -지 않아(요) (Go to Level 1 Lesson 21 to review on this grammar point.), which means "to not + Verb", but now has an independent meaning is that quite different from the original form.

When you attach -잖아(요) at the end of a verb stem, the sentence takes the meaning of "You see?" "No, that's not true. In fact, ..." "Come on, ..." etc. So you can use this structure when you are correcting what someone else said or insisting that what you are saying or have said is correct. You can also sometimes use -잖아(요) when you are providing an excuse or a reason for something.

Construction

Verb stem + -잖아 (Casual form)

Verb stem + -잖아요 (Formal form)

Verb stem + -잖습니까 (Most formal form)

Past Tense

Verb stem + -았/었/였 + -잖아(요)

Future Tense



LEVEL 5 LESSON 27

Verb stem + -(으)ㄴ 거 + -잖아(요)

Examples and comparisons with -지 않아(요)

1. 춥다 [chup-da] = to be cold

Plain present tense: 추워요. [chu-wo-yo.]

Verb stem: 춥 [chup]

-잖아(요) form: 춥잖아요. [chup-ja-na-yo.]

= Come on, it's cold.

= You see? It's cold.

= No, that's not true. It's cold!

-지 않아(요) form: 춥지 않아요. [chup-ji a-na-yo.]

= It is not cold.

2. 하다 [ha-da] = to do

Plain present tense: 해요. [hae-yo.]

Verb stem: 하 [ha]

-잖아(요) form: 하잖아요. [ha-ja-na-yo.]

= You see that I'm doing it now.

= No, that's not correct. I do.

= I'm doing it now. Give me a break.

LEVEL 5 LESSON 27

-지 않아(요) form: 하지 않아요. [ha-ja a-na-yo.]

= I do not do it.

Sample sentences

1. 어제 말했잖아요.

[eo-je ma-raet-ja-na-yo.]

= I told you yesterday! (Don't you remember?)

= Come on. I told you yesterday (already).

2. 귀엽잖아요.

[gwi-yeop-ja-na-yo.]

= Because it's cute!

= You see? It's cute!

= Isn't it obvious why? It's cute!

3. 어차피 내일도 시간 있잖아요.

[eo-cha-pi nae-il-do si-gan it-ja-na-yo.]

= We have time tomorrow, too, anyway. Give me a break.

= Don't you see that we also have time tomorrow?

= Why not? We still have time tomorrow, right?

4. 오늘 일요일이잖아요.

[o-neul i-ryo-i-ri-ja-na-yo.]

= Come on. It's Sunday today.

= It's because it's Sunday today!

LEVEL 5 LESSON 27

5. 알잖아.

[al-ja-na.]

= Come on. You know.

= You know exactly (what I am talking about).

LEVEL 5 LESSON 28

In this lesson, we are looking at the structure **-(으)ㄹ 수 밖에 없다** [-(eu)l su ba-kke eop-da]. This is a combination of the two grammar points that were already introduced in our previous lessons. In Level 2 Lesson 17, we introduced how to use **-(으)ㄹ 수 없다** to say that you can't do something, and in Level 3 Lesson 18, we looked at how **밖에** is used in negative sentences to express the meaning of "only".

-(으)ㄹ 수 없다 [-(eu)l su eop-da] = can't

ex) 할 수 없어요. [hal su eop-seo-yo.] = You can't do it.

ex) 볼 수 없어요. [bol su eop-seo-yo.] = You can't see it.

밖에 + negative sentence = only

ex) 이거 밖에 없어요. [i-geo ba-kke eop-seo-yo.] = I only have this. (lit. I don't have anything other than this.)

ex) 3명 밖에 안 왔어요. [se myeong ba-kke an wa-sseo-yo.] = Only three people came.

When you put those two grammar points together, **밖에** [ba-kke] goes after **수** [su] because **밖에** is used with nouns and **수** [su] is a noun that means "way", "idea", "method" or "solution".

→ **-(으)ㄹ 수 없다 + 밖에 = -(으)ㄹ 수 밖에 없다**

-(으)ㄹ 수 밖에 없다 literally means "other than THIS, there is nothing else you can do" or "outside of these options, there is none". When naturally translated to English, it means "can only" or "to have no other choice but to" do something.

Examples

1. 사다 → 살 수 밖에 없다

LEVEL 5 LESSON 28

= to have no other choice but to buy

2. 포기하다 → 포기할 수 밖에 없다

= to have no other choice but to give up

3. 좋아하다 → 좋아할 수 밖에 없다

= can only like, can't not like

-(으)ㄴ 수 밖에 없다 can also mean "it is more than natural" or "it is obviously expected" to do something or to be in a certain state.

Examples

1. 어렵다 → 어려울 수 밖에 없다

= to be obviously expected to be difficult

2. 비싸다 → 비쌀 수 밖에 없다

= to be obviously going to be expensive

3. 시끄럽다 → 시끄러울 수 밖에 없다

= to be bound to be noisy

Sample Sentences

1. 어제 술을 많이 마셔서, 오늘 피곤할 수 밖에 없어요.

[eo-je su-reul ma-ni ma-syeo-seo, o-neul pi-gon-hal su ba-kke eop-seo-yo.]

= He drank a lot yesterday, so he's bound to be tired today.

LEVEL 5 LESSON 28

= He drank a lot yesterday, so there is no way that he can not be tired.

2. 미안하지만 이렇게 할 수 밖에 없어요.

[mi-an-ha-ji-man i-reo-ke hal su ba-kke eop-seo-yo.]

= I am sorry but there is no other choice for me but to do it this way.

3. 그럴 수 밖에 없어요.

[geu-reol su ba-kke eop-seo-yo.]

= It's bound to be that way.

= It's expected to be that way.

= That can't be helped.

4. 또 이야기할 수 밖에 없어요.

[tto i-ya-gi-hal su ba-kke eop-seo-yo.]

= I have no other choice but to talk to them (about this) again.

5. 걱정이 될 수 밖에 없어요.

[geok-jeong-i doel su ba-kke eop-seo-yo.]

= Of course I am worried.

= I'm obviously going to be worried.

**** You can replace -(으)ㄴ 수 밖에 없어요 with 안 -(으)ㄴ 수가 없어요 in most cases.**

LEVEL 5 LESSON 29

In this TalkToMeInKorean lesson, we are looking at how to say the following:

ex 1) He said that he would help me.

ex 2) They said that it would be fun.

ex 3) She said that she had studied Korean for three years.

Through some of our previous lessons, we looked at various forms used for "quoting" someone.

Level 5 Lesson 10: Noun + -라고 + Verb

Level 5 Lesson 12: Noun + -라는 + Noun

Level 5 Lesson 16: Verb + -(ㄴ/는)다고 + Verb, Verb + -(ㄴ/는)다는 + Noun [Present Tense]

And in this lesson, we are going to take a look at how to use -라고 with the future tense and the past tense. If you already know how to make a future tense or a past tense sentence, it's very simple.

Past Tense + Quoting

Verb Stem + -**았/었/였** + -**다고** (+ 하다/말하다/이야기하다/듣다/etc)

Ex)

하다 → 했다고

먹다 → 먹었다고

사다 → 샀다고

살다 → 살았다고

보다 → 봤다고

했다고 말하다 = to say that they did it

LEVEL 5 LESSON 29

봤다고 듣다 = to hear that they saw it

했다고 말했어요. = They said that they had done it.

봤다고 들었어요. = I heard that they had seen it.

Future Tense + Quoting

Verb Stem + **-(으)ㄹ 거 + -라고** (+ 하다/말하다/이야기하다/듣다/etc)

Ex)

하다 → 할 거라고

먹다 → 먹을 거라고

사다 → 살 거라고

살다 → 살 거라고

보다 → 볼 거라고

할 거라고 말하다 = to say that they will do it

볼 거라고 듣다 = to hear that they will see it

할 거라고 말했어요. = They said that they will do it.

볼 거라고 들었어요. = I heard that they were going to see it.

Sample Sentences

1. 오늘 비가 올 거라고 했어요.

[o-neul bi-ga ol geo-ra-go hae-sseo-yo.]

= They said that it would rain today.

LEVEL 5 LESSON 29

2. 그 사람은 내일 다시 올 거라고 했어요.

[geu sa-ra-meun nae-il da-si ol geo-ra-go hae-sseo-yo.]

= He said he would come again tomorrow.

3. 친구들이 도와 줄 거라고 했어요.

[chin-gu-deu-ri do-wa jul geo-ra-go hae-sseo-yo.]

= My friends told me that they would help me.

4. 생일 파티를 할 거라고 들었어요.

[saeng-il pa-ti-reul hal geo-ra-go deu-reo-sseo-yo.]

= I heard that they were going to have a birthday party.

5. 이사했다고 들었어요.

[i-sa-haet-da-go deu-reo-sseo-yo.]

= I heard that you moved.

6. 어제 그 영화 봤다고 했어요?

[eo-je geu yeong-hwa bwat-da-go hae-sseo-yo?]

= Did you say that you saw that movie yesterday?

7. 어제 친구들한테 영화 볼 거라고 했어요?

[eo-je chin-gu-deu-ran-te yeong-hwa bol geo-ra-go hae-sseo-yo?]

= Did you tell your friends yesterday that you would watch a movie?

8. 내일 다시 올 거라고 말해 주세요.

[nae-il da-si ol geo-ra-go ma-rae ju-se-yo.]

LEVEL 5 LESSON 29

= Please tell them that I will come again tomorrow.

9. 다음 주에 끝날 거라고 했잖아요.

[da-eum ju-e kkeun-nal geo-ra-go haet-ja-na-yo.]

= You said that it would end next week, didn't you?

10. 지갑을 잃어 버렸다고 들었는데, 찾았어요?

[ji-ga-beul i-reo beo-ryeot-da-go deu-reot-neun-de, cha-ja-sseo-yo?]

= I heard that you lost your wallet. Did you find it?

LEVEL 5 LESSON 30 - Sentence Building Drill 5

In this series, we focus on how you can use the grammatical rules and expressions that you have learned so far to train yourself to make more Korean sentences more comfortably and more flexibly.

We will start off with THREE key sentences, and practice changing parts of these sentences so that you don't end up just memorizing the same three sentences. We want you to be able to be as flexible as possible with the Korean sentences you can make.

Key sentence #1

벌써 10시니까, 오늘 가지 말고 내일 가요.

[beol-sseo yeol-si-ni-kka, o-neul ga-ji mal-go nae-il ga-yo.]

= It's already 10 o'clock, so don't go today and go tomorrow (instead).

Key sentence #2

제가 이거 도와 주는 대신에, 다음 번에 제가 부탁이 있으면 들어 줘야 돼요.

[je-ga i-geo do-wa ju-neun dae-si-ne, da-eum beo-ne je-ga bu-ta-gi i-sseu-myeon deu-reo jwo-ya dwae-yo.]

= I'm helping you with this one, but in return, you have to help me when I have a favor next time.

Key sentence #3

지금은 다른 사람이 없으니까 저라도 갈 수 밖에 없어요.

[ji-geu-meun da-reun sa-ra-mi eop-seu-ni-kka jeo-ra-do gal su ba-kke eop-seo-yo.]

= There is no one else now so there's no other way but for me to go there (even though I'm not the best person for it).

LEVEL 5 LESSON 30 - Sentence Building Drill 5

Expansion & variation practice with key sentence #1

0. Original sentence:

벌써 10시니까, 오늘 가지 말고 내일 가요.

= It's already 10 o'clock, so don't go today and go tomorrow (instead).

1.

벌써 1시예요. = It's already one o'clock.

벌써 2시니까 = since it's already two o'clock

아직 3시예요. = It's still three o'clock.

아직 4시니까 = since it's still four o'clock

2.

오늘 가지 말고 내일 가요. = Don't(Let's not) go today but go tomorrow.

혼자 가지 말고 같이 가요. = Don't(Let's not) go there alone but go together (with me/them).

이거 사지 말고 저거 사요. = Don't(Let's not) buy this but buy that one.

오늘 가지 말고 내일 갈까요? = Shall we not go there today and go tomorrow (instead)?

Expansion & variation practice with key sentence #2

0. Original sentence:

제가 이거 도와 주는 대신에, 다음 번에 제가 부탁이 있으면 들어 줘야 돼요.

LEVEL 5 LESSON 30 - Sentence Building Drill 5

= I'm helping you with this one, but in return, you have to help me when I have a favor next time.

1.

이거 하는 대신에 = instead of doing this

오늘 영화 보는 대신에 = instead of watching a movie today, in return for letting you watch a movie today

오늘 안 가는 대신에 = instead of not going there today, to make up for not going there today

2.

다음 번에 제가 부탁이 있으면 = next time if I have a favor (to ask)

다음 번에 저를 만나면 = next time you meet me, when you see me next time, if you see me next time

다음 번에 다시 오면 = when you come back next time

3.

부탁이 있어요. = I have a favor (to ask).

부탁 하나 들어 주세요. = Please do me a favor.

부탁이 있는데, 들어 줘야 돼요. = I have a favor (to ask of you), and I need you to do me that favor.

Expansion & variation practice with key sentence #3

0. Original sentence:



This PDF is to be used along with the MP3 audio lesson available at TalkToMeInKorean.com. Please feel free to share TalkToMeInKorean's free Korean lessons and PDF files with anybody who is studying Korean. If you have any questions or feedback, visit TalkToMeInKorean.com.

LEVEL 5 LESSON 30 - Sentence Building Drill 5

지금은 다른 사람이 없으니까 저라도 갈 수 밖에 없어요.

= There is no one else now so there's no other way but for me to go there (even though I'm not the best person for it).

1.

다른 사람이 없어요. = There is no other person.

지금은 다른 사람이 없어요. = There is no other person now.

지금은 다른 사람이 없으니까 = since there is no one else now

지금은 아무도 없으니까 = since there is no one now

2.

갈 수 밖에 없어요. = I can't not go., There is no other way but to go.

저라도 갈 수 밖에 없어요. = Even though I might not be the best person for it, I have to go there.

저라도, 혼자라도 갈 수 밖에 없어요. = Even though I might not be the best person for it, and even though going alone might not be the best choice, I have no other choice but to go there.

LEVEL 6 LESSON 1

Welcome to Level 6 of TalkToMeInKorean. You have already come a long way in learning the Korean language and we are really looking forward to helping you take your Korean to the next level.

From Level 6, we will be introducing more "sentence patterns" than in the previous lessons, as well as still introducing some new grammar points. In "grammar point" lessons, we start from a Korean grammar point and introduce how it is used, but in "sentence pattern" lessons, we will start from an English sentence pattern and explain how to say that in Korean.

In this lesson, let us take a look at how to say "How about ...?" in Korean. There can be many ways to say this, but the most basic and common translation is "어때요?".

How about ...?

= Noun + 어때요?

= Verb stem + -는 거 어때요?

어때요? comes from the verb 어떻게 [eo-tteo-ta], which literally means "to be how". Therefore when you want to say phrases such as "How about this one?", "How about that one?", "How about eating here?", etc, you can use this verb, 어떻게.

Examples (with nouns)

1. 이거 어때요?

[i-geo eo-ttae-yo?]

= How about this?

LEVEL 6 LESSON 1

2. 생일 선물로 카메라 어때요?

[saeng-il seon-mul-lo ka-me-ra eo-ttae-yo?]

= How about a camera as your/his/their birthday present?

3. 내일 어때요?

[nae-il eo-ttae-yo?]

= How about tomorrow?

Examples (with verbs)

1. 다시 하는 거 어때요?

[da-si ha-neun geo eo-ttae-yo?]

= How about doing it again?

2. 다른 사람한테 물어보는 거 어때요?

[da-reun sa-ra-man-te mu-reo-bo-neun geo eo-ttae-yo?]

= How about asking other people?

3. 안으로 들어가는 거 어때요?

[a-neu-reo geu-reo-ga-neun geo eo-ttae-yo?]

= How about going inside?

Sample Sentences

1. 이거 싫어요? 이거(는) 어때요?

[i-geo si-reo-yo? i-geo(-neun) eo-ttae-yo?]

= You don't like this? How about this one?

LEVEL 6 LESSON 1

2. 내일 만나서 이야기하는 거 어때요?

[nae-il man-na-seo- i-ya-gi-ha-neun geo eo-ttae-yo?]

= How about meeting and talking about it tomorrow?

3. 이렇게 하는 거 어때요?

[i-reo-ke ha-neun geo eo-ttae-yo?]

= How about doing it this way?

Word contractions

-는 거 + subject marker (이/가) → -는 것 + 이 → -는 것이 → -는 게

-는 거 + topic marker (은/는) → -는 거 + 는 → -는 건

이렇게 하는 거 어때요? [Neutral]

= How about doing it this way?

이렇게 하는 게 어때요? [+ Subject Marker]

= How about doing it this way?

* The meaning is almost the same as the neutral sentence.

이렇게 하는 건 어때요? [+ Topic Marker]

= (Since you aren't too sure about the other ideas,) how about doing it THIS way (then)?

LEVEL 6 LESSON 12

In this lesson, let us take a look at how to say "What do you think about ...?" in Korean. In our previous lesson, we introduced the expression **어때요?** [eo-ttae-yo?], which means "How about ...?". Sometimes this expression, **어때요?**, can also be used to mean "What do you think?".

어때요?

[eo-ttae-yo?]

= How is it?

= How about ...?

= What do you think?

But when you want to add more details to the sentence and say **"What do you think about + NOUN?"** or **"What do you think about + VERB-ing?"**, you need to use different expressions.

There are various ways to say "What do you think?" in Korean, but here let us take a look at the two most commonly used expressions.

1. **어떻게 생각해요?**

[eo-tteo-ke saeng-ga-kae-yo?]

= What do you think?

2. **어떤 것 같아요?**

[eo-tteon geot ga-ta-yo?]

= What do you think?

The word "what" is used in English because you ask "what" is on someone's mind or "what" are

LEVEL 6 LESSON 12

their thoughts about a certain topic, but in Korean, you use the word for "how" because you are asking about "how" someone looks at the matter or "how" they think something is.

The basic verb for "to be how" is 어떻게 [eo-tteo-ta] and when you change it to the adverb form, it becomes 어떻게 [eo-tteo-ke].

어떻게 생각해요? is literally translated as "HOW think?"

어떤 것 같아요? is literally translated as "HOW it seems?" or "What kind of thing it seems like?"

(**To review on the -(으/느)ㄴ 것 같다, go back to Level 3 Lesson 9.)

What do you think ABOUT + NOUN?

The expression for "about" in Korean is -에 대해서 [-e dae-hae-seo].

About school = 학교에 대해서

About me = 저에 대해서 (formal language), 나에 대해서 (casual language)

About what = 뭐에 대해서

What do you think about _____?

= _____에 대해서 어떻게 생각해요?

= _____ 어떤 것 같아요?

What do you think ABOUT + VERB-ing?

In order to use "about / -에 대해서" after it, the verb needs to be changed to the noun form of -는 것 [-neun geot].

LEVEL 6 LESSON 12

이렇게 하다 = to do it like this

→ “이렇게 하는 것”에 대해서 = about doing it this way

물어보다 = to ask

→ “물어보는 것”에 대해서 = about asking

Sample Sentences

1. 이 책에 대해서 어떻게 생각하세요?

[i chae-ge dae-hae-seo eo-tteo-ke saeng-ga-ka-se-yo?]

= What do you think about this book?

이 책 어떤 것 같아요?

[i chaek eo-tteon geot ga-ta-yo?]

= What do you think about this book?

2. 어릴 때 유학을 가는 것에 대해서 어떻게 생각하세요?

[eo-ril ttae yu-ha-geul ga-neun geo-se dae-hae-seo eo-tteo-ke saeng-ga-ka-se-yo?]

= What do you think about studying abroad at a young age?

어릴 때 유학 가는 거, 어떤 것 같아요?

[eo-ril ttae yu-hak ga-neun geo, eo-tteon geot ga-ta-yo?]

= What do you think about studying abroad at a young age?

3. 제 아이디어에 대해서 어떻게 생각하세요?

[je a-i-di-eo-e dae-hae-seo eo-tteo-ke saeng-ga-ka-se-yo?]

= What do you think about my idea?

LEVEL 6 LESSON 12

제 아이디어 어떤 것 같아요?

[je a-i-di-eo eo-tteon geot ga-ta-yo?]

= What do you think about my idea?

LEVEL 6 LESSON 3

In this lesson, we are taking a look at how to say "one of the most ..." in Korean. After studying with this lesson, you will be able to say things such as "He's one of my closest friends.", "It's one of the most popular places in Seoul.", etc.

Now before we talk about how to say this in Korean, we'd like to point out that this expression actually started being used as a result of many Korean people being exposed to the English language. At first there were some people who tried not to use this expression because it sounded too much like a "translated" sentence, but now it is so commonly used that not many people actually care.

One of the most ... = 가장 ~ 중의 하나

First of all, let's break down the phrase word by word.

1. one = 하나 [ha-na]
2. of = ~의 [-ui]
3. "The" is not translated into Korean in this case.
4. most + adjective + noun = 가장 + adjective + noun

** If you'd like to review on 가장 (= most), go back to Level 4 Lesson 18.

Word order difference between Korean and English around "-의 / of"

In Korean, -의 [-ui] is the particle that makes possession, belonging, origin or characteristics, and it basically means "of". The word order, however, is very different around -의 or "of" in these two languages. If you say "A of B", in Korean you need to switch it to "B의 A". To make it

LEVEL 6 LESSON 3

simpler, you can just think of "-의" as <'s>, as in "my friend's house", "my teacher's name", etc.

So in English, the word "one" comes at the beginning of this expression, but 하나 (= one) comes at the end of it.

하나 can be replaced by other words

하나 is the most basic form of saying "one" but depending what you are counting, you can use different counting units. Let's take a look at some of the most commonly used ones.

Person = 한 사람 [han sa-ram], 한 명 [han myeong], or 한 분 (honorific) [han bun]

Place = 한 곳 [han got], 한 군데 [han gun-de]

Thing, Kind, Type = 한 가지 [han ga-ji]

* Go back to Level 2 Lesson 9 to review a lesson on counters.

Using 가장 with adjectives or verbs

To understand how to use this, there are three lessons that you need to have studied.

- Level 4 Lesson 18 (on how to say "best" or "most" using the superlatives "가장" and "제일")
- Level 3 Lesson 13 + 14 (on how to make adjectives out of descriptive and action verbs in Korean)

Examples

가장 + 예쁘다 → 가장 예쁜

가장 + 좋다 → 가장 좋은

LEVEL 6 LESSON 3

가장 + 괜찮다 → 가장 괜찮은

1. 가장 예쁜 친구

[ga-jang ye-ppeun chin-gu]

= the prettiest friend

2. 가장 좋은 책

[ga-jang jo-eun chaek]

= the best book

3. 가장 괜찮은 카페

[ga-jang gwaen-cha-neun ka-pe]

= the best cafe

How to use 중 as "among" or "of"

중 [jung] literally means "middle" or "center" but used after a noun and followed by -의 [-ui], it means "among" or "(one) of (the ...)".

→ Noun (plural or singular) + 중

Examples

1. 가장 예쁜 친구들 중(의)

= 가장 예쁜 친구 중(의)

2. 가장 좋은 방법들 중(의)

= 가장 좋은 방법 중(의)

LEVEL 6 LESSON 3

가장 ~ 중의 하나

Now let us look at some examples of the entire structure.

1. 가장 좋은 방법들 중의 하나

= 가장 좋은 방법 중의 하나

= 가장 좋은 방법 중 하나

= one of the best methods

2. 가장 빠른 길들 중의 하나

= 가장 빠른 길 중의 하나

= 가장 빠른 길 중 하나

= one of the fastest ways/paths

3. 가장 자주 만나는 친구들 중의 한 명

= 가장 자주 만나는 친구 중의 한 명

= 가장 자주 만나는 친구 중 한 명

= one of the friends that I meet most often

Sample Sentences

1. 여기가 제가 제일 자주 오는 카페 중(의) 하나예요.

[yeo-gi-ga je-ga je-il ja-ju o-eun ka-pe jung(ui) ha-na-ye-yo.]

= This is one of the cafes that I visit most often.

2. 제가 가장 좋아하는 가수들 중(의) 한 명이에요.

[je-ga ga-jang jo-a-ha-neun ga-su-deul jung(ui) han myeong-i-e-yo.]

= He/she is one of my favorite singers.

LEVEL 6 LESSON 3

= He/she is one of the singers I like the most.

3. 한국에서 가장 인기 있는 영화 중(의) 하나예요.

[han-gu-geo-seo ga-jang in-gi in-neun yeong-hwa jung(ui) ha-na-ye-yo]

= It's one of the most popular movies in Korea.

LEVEL 6 LESSON 4

In this lesson, we take a look at how to ask someone if they would mind if you did something, or if it is okay to do something.

Basically, in order to say this in Korean, you use structures **-아/어/여도 되다** and **-아/여/여도 괜찮다**. (You can go back to Level 4 Lesson 8 to review on how to use -아/어/여도 되다.) Therefore, you literally say "Is it okay if I ...?" or "Is it okay for me to ...?".

Let's look at the various ways of saying this in Korean.

1. Verb stem + **-아/어/여도 돼요?**

This is the simplest structure. The verb 되다 [doe-da] here means "to be okay", "to be doable", or "to be possible" and -아/어/여도 means "even if ..." or "even when". So all together, -아/어/여도 되다 [-a/eo/-yeo-do doe-da] means "to be okay (even) if ...".

Sample Sentences

(1) 여기 앉아도 돼요?

[yeo-gi an-ja-do dwae-yo?]

(Verb: 앉다 /an-da/ to sit)

= Do you mind if I sit here?

(2) 창문 닫아도 돼요?

[chang-mun da-da-do dwae-yo?]

(Verb: 닫다 /dat-da/ to close)

= Do you mind if I close the window?

LEVEL 6 LESSON 4

(3) 나중에 전화해도 돼요?

[na-jung-e jeon-hwa-hae-do dwae-yo?]

(Verb: 전화하다 /jeon-hwa-ha-da/ to telephone)

= Do you mind if I call you later?

2. Verb stem + -아/어/여도 괜찮아요?

This is almost the same structure as -아/어/여도 되다, except the verb here is 괜찮다 [gwaen-chan-ta]. These two structures are interchangeable, but -아/어/여도 괜찮아요 has a slightly softer nuance, whereas -아/어/여도 돼요 tends to be a little more direct. By using -아/어/여도 괜찮아요, you can give the other person an impression that you are being more careful.

Sample Sentences

(1) 저 먼저 가도 괜찮아요?

[jeo meon-jeo ga-do gwaen-cha-na-yo?]

(Verb: 가다 /ga-da/ to go)

= Do you mind if I leave first (before other people)?

(2) 이거 열어 봐도 괜찮아요?

[i-geo yeo-reo bwa-do gwaen-cha-na-yo?]

(Verb: 열다 /yeol-da/ to open)

= Do you mind if I open this?

= Do you mind if I try opening this?

(3) 내일 말해 줘도 괜찮아요?

[nae-il ma-rae jwo-do gwaen-cha-na-yo?]

LEVEL 6 LESSON 4

(Verb: 말하다 /ma-ra-da/ to tell)

= Do you mind if I tell you tomorrow?

3. Verb stem + -아/어/여도 될까요?

This structure uses the verb 되다 [doe-da] again, but here, it is used in the -(으)ㄹ까요 form, which we introduced in Level 3 Lesson 4. By using -(으)ㄹ까요, you can express your curiosity or uncertainty about something, therefore naturally asking for the other person's response or feedback. Therefore asking 될까요? makes your sentence softer and more polite than saying 돼요?

Sample Sentences

(1) 여기 앉아도 될까요?

[yeo-gi an-ja-do dwael-kka-yo?]

(Verb: 앉다 /an-da/ to sit)

= Do you mind if I sit here?

= Would you mind if I sit here?

= I wonder if I can sit here?

(2) 창문 닫아도 될까요?

[chang-mun da-da-do dwael-kka-yo?]

(Verb: 닫다 /dat-da/ to close)

= Do you mind if I close the window?

= Could I close the window?

(3) 나중에 전화해도 될까요?

LEVEL 6 LESSON 4

[na-jung-e jeon-hwa-hae-do dwael-kka-yo?]

(Verb: 전화하다 /jeon-hwa-ha-da/ to telephone)

= Do you mind if I call you later?

= Can I call you later?

4. Verb stem + -아/어/여 주실래요?

With all the three structures above, you can express "Do you mind if I ...?", asking the other person if it would be okay if YOU did something. But if you want to ask THE OTHER PERSON whether he or she would mind doing something, you can use the structure -아/어/여 주실래요? [-a/eo/yeo ju-sil-lae-yo?].

주다 [ju-da] means "to give" but when you combine it with other verbs, -아/어/여 주다 means "to do something for someone", and the honorific suffix -시- [-si-] makes your sentence more polite.

Sample Sentences

(1) 조금 기다려 주실래요?

[jo-geum gi-da-ryeo ju-sil-lae-yo?]

(Verb: 기다리다 /gi-da-ri-da/ to wait)

= Do you mind waiting for a bit?

** In casual language, you can say 조금 기다려 줄래?

(2) 한 번 더 설명해 주실래요?

[han beon deo seol-myeong-hae ju-sil-lae-yo?]

LEVEL 6 LESSON 4

(Verb: 설명하다 /seol-myeong-ha-da/ to explain)

= Do you mind explaining one more time?

** In casual language, you can say 한 번 더 설명해 줄래?

Keeping the same kind of nuance, you can change the sentence ending to the following:

(1) -아/어/여 주실래요? → -아/어/여 줄래요?

(줄래요? is a little less formal than 주실래요? without the suffix -시-.)

(2) -아/어/여 주실래요? → -아/어/여 주시겠어요?

(주시겠어요? is interchangeable with 주실래요? but a little more polite and formal.)

LEVEL 6 LESSON 5

In this lesson, we are going to learn how to say that you are "in the middle of doing" something in Korean. In Level 2 Lesson 10, we introduced the structure -고 있다 [-go it-da] as the plain present progressive and now in this lesson, let us take a look at some other ways of expressing the present progressive, using the word 중 [jung].

중 [jung] = **middle, center, medium**

The word 중 [jung] can be used with many other words to form various meanings that are related to middle, center or medium. When you want to say "I am in the middle of doing something", you can use 중 in the form of "-고 있는 중이다".

-고 있는 중이다 [-go it-neun jung-i-da] = **to be in the middle of + Verb-ing**

The basic form of the present progressive is -고 있다 [-go it-da]. To this, you can add the ending -는 to change the verb into the adjective form to modify the noun "중".

→ -고 있 (progressive) + -는 중 (in the middle of Verb-ing)

→ -고 있는 중 + -이다 (to be)

→ -고 있는 중이다 (to be in the middle of Verb-ing)

** You only conjugate the verb -이다 at the end to express the tense of the sentence.

Sample Sentences

1. 가고 있는 중이에요.

LEVEL 6 LESSON 5

[ga-go it-neun jung-i-e-yo.]

(Verb: 가다 /ga-da/ to go)

= I am on my way.

= I am in the middle of going.

** You can say 가고 있어요 to mean the same thing, but -는 중 emphasizes the fact that you are in doing something right at this very moment.

2. 뭐 하고 있는 중이었어요?

[mwo ha-go it-neun jung-i-eo-sseo-yo?]

(Verb: 하다 /ha-da/ to do)

= What were you doing?

= What were you in the middle of doing?

3. 열쇠를 찾고 있는 중이었어요.

[yeol-soe-reul chat-go it-neun jung-i-eo-sseo-yo.]

= I was in the middle of looking for the key.

** For all the sentences above, you can change -고 있는 중 to -는 중 to mean the same thing.

가고 있는 중이에요. → 가는 중이에요.

뭐 하고 있는 중이에요? → 뭐 하는 중이에요?

열쇠를 찾고 있는 중이었어요. → 열쇠를 찾는 중이었어요.

Sample Mini Dialogs



LEVEL 6 LESSON 5

1.

A: 공부해요! 언제 공부할 거예요?

B: 하는 중이에요!

A: Study! When are you going to study?

B: I am!

2.

A: 뭐 하는 중이었어요?

B: 아무것도 안 했어요.

A: What were you doing?

B: I didn't do anything.

3.

A: 다 샀어요?

B: 아직 고르는 중이에요.

(Verb: 고르다 = to choose, to pick)

A: Did you buy everything?

B: I am still in the middle of choosing.

LEVEL 6 LESSON 6 - WORD BUILDER 9

Word Builder lessons are designed to help you understand how to expand your vocabulary by learning/understanding some common and basic building blocks of Korean words. The words and letters introduced through Word Builder lessons are not necessarily all Chinese characters, or 한자 [han-ja]. Though many of them are based on Chinese characters, the meanings can be different from modern-day Chinese. Your goal, through these lessons, is to understand how words are formed and remember the keywords in Korean to expand your Korean vocabulary from there. You certainly don't have to memorize the Hanja characters, but if you want to, feel free!

In this lesson, we are looking at **a native Korean suffix**, **-님** [-nim].

The word **-님** [-nim] basically has the same goal as **-씨** [-ssi], which is to show respect to the person being addressed or mentioned, but **-님** is much more formal and polite than **-씨**, and therefore it is used very commonly with formal social titles.

You can use **-님** after a person's name when addressing him or her in the most formal way. For example, if your acquaintance's name is 현우, and you are speaking casual language with him, you can just say the name alone - 현우. But if you want to be more polite and formal, you add **-씨** after the name and say 현우 씨. But if you want to be even more formal, you can use **-님** instead and say 현우 님.

And sometimes on the Internet, people who don't know each other's name but still want to be formal with each other just use the word "님" alone to address each other. This is mostly only common among young people.

The following are some of the most commonly used words in Korean in which you can find the suffix **-님**. Many of these words are **FIXED**, which means they **CAN'T** be used **WITHOUT** the suffix **-님**. And some of them **CAN** be used without **-님**, but the nuance can change.

1. **선생님** [seon-saeng-nim] = **teacher**

** Almost always used with **-님** attached. If you only say 선생, you may sound disrespectful. 선생님 is used both when you address a teacher directly and when you talk about a teacher when

LEVEL 6 LESSON 6 - WORD BUILDER 9

he or she is not present.

2. **장님** [jang-nim] = a blind person

** Some people think it's more appropriate to use the term 시각장애인 (visually handicapped person), but the word 장님 is still very commonly used and you can NOT use the word without -님 attached.

3. **의사선생님** [ui-sa-seon-saeng-nim] = doctor

** The job itself is 의사 [ui-sa] but when you address and talk to a doctor, you can not call him/her "의사". You need to use the word 의사선생님.

4. **교수님** [gyo-su-num] = professor

** The job itself is 교수 [gyo-su] but when you talk to a professor, you need to put the suffix -님 and call that person "NAME + 교수님" or just "교수님".

5. **어머님** [eo-meo-nim] = mother

** You can call your own mother 엄마 [eom-ma] or 어머니 [eo-meo-ni] if you want to be more polite, but when you refer to someone else's mother in a polite way or even your own in the most formal way, you use the word 어머님. It is not natural, however, to use the term 어머님, to talk about your own mother to someone else. In that case, 저희 어머니 [jeo-hui eo-meo-ni], "my mother", is better.

6. **아버님** [a-beo-nim] = father

** The same with 어머님. You can call your own father 아빠 [a-ppa] or 아버지 [a-beo-ji], and the most formal term is 아버님 [a-beo-nim].

7. **형님** [hyeong-nim] and **누님** [nu-nim] = brother and sister

** When men address an older man, they use the term 형 [hyeong]. But when they want to be very polite (not necessarily "formal" in this case), they attach the suffix -님 at the end. The same goes for 누나 [nu-na], a term for men to use to address an older female, except 누나 changes to 누님 [nu-nim] instead of 누나님.

LEVEL 6 LESSON 6 - WORD BUILDER 9

8. 손님 [son-nim] = guest

** In the past, the sino-Korean word 손 [son] could be used on its own to mean "a guest", but in modern-day Korean, the suffix -님 is ALWAYS attached at the end of the word. In a more business-related context, you can call your customers "고객님 [go-gaek-nim]". And in the case of the word 고객님, it is OKAY to drop -님 when you are NOT addressing a person directly.

More examples of job titles

9. 사장님 = head of company + 님

10. 과장님 = section chief + 님

11. 부장님 = head of department (or manager) + 님

12. 총장님 = dean or president of a college + 님

LEVEL 6 LESSON 7

In this lesson, we are taking a look at the Korean expression, 어차피 [eo-cha-pi]. 어차피 can be translated to many things in English and sometimes doesn't translate very well. In most cases it is used as part of a sentence, but it is used on its own very often as well.

Various translations of 어차피 [eo-cha-pi]

- anyway
- one way or the other
- not even ____ to begin with
- in any case
- after all

The basic meaning of 어차피 is “whether you choose this or choose that” or “no matter what choice you make” and you use 어차피 when you are talking with an expected result in mind or to show your skepticism for someones worry or expectation.

The usages of 어차피 can be best explained through examples.

Examples

1. 다시 올 거예요.

[da-si ol geo-ye-yo.]

= I will come back.

= I will come again.

= They/he/she will come again.

→ 어차피 다시 올 거예요.

[eo-cha-pi da-si ol geo-ye-yo.]

LEVEL 6 LESSON 7

= I will come back anyway. (So don't worry if I forget something. I can take it when I come back.)

= They will come again one way or the other. (So don't even bother asking them to come back.)

2. 제가 할 수 있는 일이 아니에요.

[je-ga hal su it-neun i-ri a-ni-e-yo.]

= It's not something that I can do.

→ 어차피 제가 할 수 있는 일이 아니에요.

[eo-cha-pi je-ga hal su it-neun i-ri a-ni-e-yo.]

= Even if I try, it's not something that I can do.

= Don't bother asking me. It's not something that I can do.

= It's already obvious. I can't do it.

3. 늦었으니까 빨리 와.

[neu-jeo-sseu-ni-kka ppal-li wa.]

= You're late, so hurry up!

→ 어차피 늦었으니까 천천히 와.

[eo-cha-pi neu-jeo-sseu-ni-kka cheon-cheo-ni wa.]

= You're late already, so take your time.

= Even if you hurry up now, you are already very late, so just take your time.

More Examples

4. 어차피 해야 되는 거니까, 재미있게 해요.

LEVEL 6 LESSON 7

[eo-cha-pi hae-ya doe-neun geo-ni-kka, jae-mi-it-ge hae-yo.]

= One way or the other, you have to do it anyway, so (you'd better) try to have fun while doing it.

5. 어차피 저도 지금 거기 가는 중이에요.

[eo-cha-pi jeo-do ji-geum geo-gi ga-neun jung-i-e-yo.]

= I am on my way there anyway.

= Even if you hadn't asked me, I'm already in the middle of going there anyway, so don't worry.

LEVEL 6 LESSON 8

In this lesson, let us take a look at how to say **"I'm not sure if ..."** in Korean. First of all, you need to remember that this is not going to be translated word for word.

"To be sure" and **"to not be sure"** in Korean

The word for "to be sure" or "to be certain" in Korean is **확실하다** [hwak-si-ra-da]. Therefore, the literal translation of "to not be sure" is **확실하지 않다** [hwak-si-ra-ji an-ta], but this form is not commonly used in everyday spoken Korean.

"Are you sure?"

When asking someone if they are sure or certain of something, you can still use the word **확실하다** and say **"확실해요?"** [hwak-si-rae-yo?]. Or, sometimes you can say **"정말이에요?"** [jeong-ma-ri-e-yo?] if you want to say "Are you serious?" or "Is that real?".

How to say **"I'm not sure"**

The most natural Korean expression for "I'm not sure" is **"잘 모르겠어요"** [jal mo-reu-ge-sseo-yo]. The word **모르다** means "to not know" and if you say **"잘 몰라요"** it means "I don't know well." or "I don't know much (about it)."

The suffix **-겠-** adds the nuance of assumption or intention (-겠- will be covered in more detail in a future lesson in Level 6.), so when you say **모르겠어요**, you mean "I don't seem to know" or "I would like to know, but I really don't."

잘 모르겠어요 means the same thing as **모르겠어요** because you don't actually need the word **"잘"** there, but **"잘 모르겠어요"** is a common and fixed expression used by many Korean people to mean "I'm not sure" or "I don't know for sure."

LEVEL 6 LESSON 8

How to say **"I'm not sure if ..."**

"If or not" or "whether or not" in Korean is expressed through the structure -(으/느)ㄴ지 [-(eu/neu)n-ji] (Go back to Level 5 Lesson 18 to review).

-(으/느)ㄴ지 잘 모르겠어요 = I'm not sure if ...

You can use interrogative words (when/what/where/how/who/why/which) with this structure, too.

Present Tense

= -(으/느)ㄴ지 잘 모르겠어요.

Ex)

이거 누구 책인지 잘 모르겠어요.

[i-geo nu-gu chae-gin-ji jal mo-reu-ge-sseo-yo.]

= I'm not sure whose book this is.

Past Tense

= -았/었/였는지 잘 모르겠어요.

Ex)

다 끝났는지 잘 모르겠어요.

[da kkeut-nat-neun-ji jal mo-reu-ge-sseo-yo.]

= I'm not sure if it all ended.

LEVEL 6 LESSON 8

Future Tense

= -(으)ㄹ지 잘 모르겠어요.

= -(으)ㄹ 건지 잘 모르겠어요.

Ex)

서점이 내일 문을 열지 잘 모르겠어요.

[seo-jeo-mi nae-il mu-neul yeol-ji jal mo-reu-ge-sseo-yo.]

= I'm not sure if the bookstore will open tomorrow.

And if you want to add "or not" at the end, you can use the structure Verb stem + -(으/는)ㄴ지 + Verb stem + 안 -(으/는)ㄴ지.

Sample Sentences

1. 어디로 갈지 잘 모르겠어요.

[eo-di-ro gal-ji jal mo-reu-ge-sseo-yo.]

= I'm not sure where we will go.

2. 내일 만날지 안 만날지 잘 모르겠어요.

[nae-il man-nal-ji an man-nal-ji jal mo-reu-ge-sseo-yo.]

= I'm not sure if we will meet tomorrow or not.

3. 여기가 맞는지 잘 모르겠어요.

[yeo-gi-ga mat-neun-ji jal mo-reu-ge-sseo-yo.]

= I'm not sure if this is the right place.

4. 뭘 해야 될지 잘 모르겠어요.

LEVEL 6 LESSON 8

[mwol hae-ya doel-ji jal mo-reu-ge-sseo-yo.]

= I am not sure what to do.

= I am not sure what I (will) have to do.

5. 이게 무슨 뜻인지 잘 모르겠어요.

[i-ge mu-seun tteu-sin-ji jal mo-reu-ge-sseo-yo.]

= I'm not sure what this means.

LEVEL 6 LESSON 9

In this lesson, let us take a look at the expression **-(으)ㄴ/는 김에** [-eun/neun gi-me] and how to use it to say things like "while you are there", "while I'm at it", or "since you are going to do it".

The word 김 [gim] here is a noun that literally means "an opportunity" or "a reason to do something". It is NOT, however, commonly used on its own to mean "opportunity" or "reason". It is almost always used in the structure, **-(으)ㄴ/는 김에**.

-(으)ㄴ/는 김에 [-eun/neun gi-me]

= **While you are there**

= **While you are at it**

= **While I am there**

= **Since you are already going to do it**

Usages

1. You can use **-(으)ㄴ/는 김에** when talking about something (usually not originally planned) that you do while you are doing something else, because it's convenient, effective, or easy that way.

ex) While I was visiting the library, I also stopped by the post office inside it.

2. You can use **-(으)ㄴ/는 김에** when you want to ask someone to do something for you while they are going somewhere or while they are already planning to do something.

ex) While you are at it, can you please make one for me, too?

3. You can use **-(으)ㄴ/는 김에** when you want to suggest doing something based on the fact that you are already going to do something similar or near to the place where you already are.

LEVEL 6 LESSON 9

Conjugation

You use -(으)ㄴ 김에 in past tense sentences and -는 김에 in present and future tense sentences.

Examples

1. 백화점에 가는 김에 [baek-hwa-jeo-me ga-neun gi-me]

= While I am/you are going to the department store,

(** The act of going (= 가다) hasn't happened yet, so it's in the present tense "가는".)

+ 영화도 볼 거예요. [yeong-hwa-do bol geo-ye-yo.]

= I'm also going to see a movie.

+ 서점에도 갈까요? [seo-jeo-me-do gal-kka-yo?]

= shall we go to the bookstore, too?

2. 서울에 온 김에 [seo-u-re on gi-me]

= While you are/I am visiting Seoul, Since you/I came to Seoul,

(** The act of coming (= 오다) has already happened, so it's in the past tense, "온".)

+ 친구들을 만났어요. [chin-gu-deu-reul man-na-sseo-yo.]

= I met some friends.

+ 며칠 더 있을 거예요. [myeo-chil deo i-sseul geo-ye-yo.]

= I'm going to stay for a few more days.

LEVEL 6 LESSON 9

Sample sentences

1. 도서관에 가는 김에, 제 책도 반납해 주세요.

[do-seo-gwa-ne ga-neun gi-me, je chaek-do ban-na-pae ju-se-yo.]

= While you are at the library (Since you are going to the library anyway), please return my book, too.

2. 여기 온 김에 커피 마실까요?

[yeo-gi on gi-me keo-pi ma-sil-kka-yo?]

= While we are here, shall we have some coffee?

3. 시작한 김에 제가 끝까지 할게요.

[si-ja-kan gi-me je-ga kkeut-kka-ji hal-ge-yo.]

= While I'm doing it (Since I've started it anyway), I'll finish it (I will do it until it's finished).

4. 밖에 나간 김에 제 부탁 하나만 들어 주세요.

[ba-kke na-gan gi-me je bu-tak ha-na-man deu-reo ju-se-yo.]

= While you are outside, please do me a favor.

5. 말이 나온 김에, 우리 피자 먹을까요?

[ma-ri na-on gi-me, u-ri pi-ja meo-geul-kka-yo?]

= Speaking of which, shall we have some pizza?

LEVEL 6 LESSON 10

In this series, we focus on how you can use the grammatical rules and expressions that you have learned so far to train yourself to make more Korean sentences more comfortably and more flexibly.

We will start off with THREE key sentences, and practice changing parts of these sentences so that you don't end up just memorizing the same three sentences. We want you to be able to be as flexible as possible with the Korean sentences you can make.

Key Sentence #1

우리 어차피 늦을 것 같은데, 다음에 갈까요?

[u-ri eo-cha-pi neu-jeul geot ga-teun-de, da-eu-me gal-kka-yo?]

= It looks like we are going to be late anyway. Shall we go next time?

Key Sentence #2

일하는 중이어서 전화 못 받으니까 나중에 전화할게요.

[i-ra-neun jung-i-eo-seo jeon-hwa mot ba-deu-ni-kka na-jung-e jeon-hwa-hal-ge-yo.]

= I'm in the middle of working so I can't take the call, so I'll call you later.

Key Sentence #3

여기가 제가 제일 자주 가는 카페들 중 한 곳인데, 같이 가 볼래요?

[yeo-gi-ga je-ga je-il ja-ju ga-neun ka-pe-deul jung han go-sin-de, ga-chi ga bol-lae-yo?]

= This is one of the cafes that I visit most often. Do you want to go there together?

Expansion & variation practice with key sentence #1

LEVEL 6 LESSON 10

0. Original Sentence:

우리 어차피 늦을 것 같은데, 다음에 갈까요?

= It looks like we are going to be late anyway. Shall we go next time?

1.

우리 어차피 늦을 거예요.

어차피 늦었어요.

어차피 이거 지금 못 해요.

2.

다음에 갈까요?

내일 할까요?

같이 할까요?

Expansion & variation practice with key sentence #2

0. Original Sentence:

일하는 중이어서 전화 못 받으니까 나중에 전화할게요.

= I'm in the middle of working so I can't take the call, so I'll call you later.

1.

일하는 중이에요. = I'm (in the middle of) working.

공부하는 중이에요. = I'm (in the middle of) studying.

책 읽는 중이었어요. = I was (in the middle of) reading a book.

LEVEL 6 LESSON 10

뭐 하는 중이었어요? = What were you doing?

2.

지금 전화 못 받으니까 나중에 전화할게요. = I can't answer the phone now so I'll call you later.

오늘 바쁘니까 내일 만나요. = I'm busy today so let's meet tomorrow.

밖에 비 오니까 우산 가져가세요. = It's raining outside so take your umbrella with you.

이거 무거우니까 같이 들어요. = It's heavy so let's lift it together.

Expansion & variation practice with key sentence #3

0. Original Sentence:

여기가 제가 제일 자주 가는 카페들 중 한 곳인데, 같이 가 볼래요?

= This is one of the cafes that I visit most often. Do you want to go there together?

1.

제가 제일 자주 가는 카페들 중 한 곳이에요. = It's one of the cafes that I visit most often.

제가 제일 자주 만나는 친구들 중 한 명이에요. = It's one of the friends that I meet most often.

제가 제일 좋아하는 영화들 중 하나예요. = It's one of the movies that I like the most.

2.

같이 가 볼래요? = Do you want to go (check out the place) together?

내일 만날래요? = Do you want to meet tomorrow?

친구들 만날 건데, 같이 갈래요? = I'm going to meet my friends. Do you want to go there together?

이거 마셔 볼래요? = Do you want to try drinking this?

LEVEL 6 LESSON 11

In this lesson, let us take a look at how to say "I mean ..." in Korean. There are many ways of saying this in Korean as the expression "I mean" has various usages in English, too. Here, we would like to introduce four main ways to express this in Korean.

How to say "to mean" in Korean

Most English-Korean dictionaries will introduce the word "의미하다" as the first translation of the verb "to mean", but in Korean "의미하다" sounds very formal, and therefore it isn't used in everyday conversation. When you want to say "ABC means XYZ", you can say "**ABC + -은/는 + XYZ + -라는 뜻이에요**".

Ex) ABC + -은/는 + XYZ + -라는 뜻이에요.

The word "**뜻**" [tteut] is a noun defined as "meaning", and when used with the verb -이다, it becomes **뜻이다** [tteu-si-da], expressing "it is the meaning". When used with -라는 [-ra-neun], which works as a quoting marker, -라는 뜻이다 means "it is the meaning of ..." or "it has the meaning of ...".

How to say "I mean/you mean" in Korean

1) **그러니까** [geu-reo-ni-kka]

When you want to reassure someone of what you are saying or make your point one more time, you can use 그러니까. In this context, 그러니까 can be translated as "so..." in English. After you say 그러니까, you summarize what you said before or make a more detailed explanation. Depending on the context, however, in Korean, this can be used to mean "you mean..." when you are checking with the other person on what he or she has said.

LEVEL 6 LESSON 11

2) **제 말 뜻은** [je mal tteu-seun] or **제 말은** [je ma-reun]

When you want to make sure that the other person is understanding what you are saying, and you want to rephrase something you've already said, you can say "제 말 뜻은" (meaning "what I mean is...") or "제 말은" (meaning "what I'm saying is...").

3) **-(이)라고요** [-(i)-ra-go-yo] or **-(ㄴ/은/는)다고요** [-(n/eun/neun)-da-go-yo]

When you start a sentence with 그러니까 or 제 말 뜻은, you normally end the sentence with -라고요 or -다고요. -라고 and -다고 are both verb endings that are used to quote or cite what someone has said. Since you are delivering your point one more time with "I mean...", you need to use the endings -라고 or -다고. The word -요 at the end is, as you know, used to make your sentence polite. -(이)라고요 is used after nouns and -다고요 is used after verb stems. If your sentence after "I mean..." is an imperative sentence, you use -(으)라고요.

4) **-(이)라는/-다는** 말이에요 [ma-ri-e-yo]

In addition to -라고요 and -다고요, another commonly used sentence ending for saying "I mean..." in Korean is -(이)라는/-다는 말이에요. Here, the word 말 means "words" or "phrases", and -라는 or -다는 is used to quote or cite what someone has said. -라는 is used after nouns, and -다는 is used after verb stems.

Sample Sentences

1. 정지훈, 그러니까, "비" 좋아해요?

[jeong-ji-hun, geu-reo-ni-kka, "Bi" jo-a-hae-yo?]

= Do you like Jihoon Jeong, I mean, Rain?

2. 그러니까 이거 저 준다고요?

LEVEL 6 LESSON 11

[geu-reo-ni-kka i-geo jeo jun-da-go-yo?]

= You mean you are giving this to me?

= I mean, you are giving this to me?

= So (I mean/you mean) you are giving this to me?

3. 그러니까, 벌써 다 했다고요.

[geu-reo-ni-kka, beol-sseo da haet-da-go-yo.]

= I mean, I already finished it.

4. 그러니까 제 말은, 이 일에는 이 사람이 최고라고요.

[geu-reo-ni-kka je ma-reun, i i-re-neun i sa-ra-mi choe-go-ra-go-yo.]

= I mean, for this work, this person is the best.

5. 그러니까 혼자 간다는 말이에요?

[geu-reo-ni-kka hon-ja gan-da-neun ma-ri-e-yo?]

= You mean you are going there alone?

= I mean, you are going there alone?

Using "I mean" to correct what you've said

When you want to say "I mean" in the middle of a sentence to correct yourself, you can say "

아니" in Korean.

Ex)

I went there last Saturday, I mean, Sunday.

= 지난 주 토요일에, 아니, 일요일에 갔어요.

LEVEL 6 LESSON 11

Give me this one, I mean, this one.

= 이거, 아니, 이거 주세요.

How to say "I mean it" in Korean

When "I mean it" is used as a fixed expression, the most commonly used equivalent in Korean is "**진짜예요.**" or "**진심이에요.**"

LEVEL 6 LESSON 12

In the previous lesson, we introduced how the phrase "I mean..." can be translated into various Korean expressions. In this lesson, let's take a look at how to ask someone in Korean, "what do you mean?", "what does that mean?", or "what's that suppose to mean?" when you can't believe what you've just heard or when you don't understand someone's remark or point very well.

무슨 말이에요?

[mu-seun ma-ri-e-yo?]

= What do you mean?

= What's that supposed to mean?

= What does that mean?

= What are you talking about?

무슨 [mu-seun] means "what kind of" or "which" and 말 [mal] means "word" or "language".

Therefore, 무슨 말 [mu-seun mal] means "what word" "which word" or "what kind of things (to be said or written)"

무슨 말이에요? literally means "what word/language is it?", but it is more correctly translated as "What do you mean?" You can use 무슨 말이에요? when you are in disbelief after you hear someone say something or when you have not clearly understood what they mean.

Ex)

A: 카메라 팔 거예요. (I'm going to sell my camera.)

B: 무슨 말이에요? 카메라도 없잖아요. (What do you mean? You don't even have a camera!)

무슨 소리에요?

[mu-seun so-ri-ye-yo?]

LEVEL 6 LESSON 12

무슨 소리에요? is the same as 무슨 말이에요? but it is less formal and less polite. Therefore, it is not advised to use it to someone older than you or someone you're supposed to be polite to. This is because 말 means "words", but 소리 means "sounds". You don't want to refer to the words of the other person as mere "sounds". You can use 무슨 소리에요? more safely, however, when you are literally saying "What's that sound?"

무슨 말씀이세요?

[mu-seun mal-sseu-mi-se-yo?]

In Korean, there are many ways of making a phrase "honorific" and one of the ways is to use "honorific" nouns. 말씀 is the honorific version of 말.

How to literally ask "What does this mean?"

As we've introduced in the previous lesson, when you want to LITERALLY ask what a certain expression means, you can use the expression "무슨 뜻이에요?" [mu-seun tte-si-e-yo?]

Sample Sentences

1. 네? 그게 무슨 말이에요?

[ne? geu-ge mu-seun ma-ri-e-yo?]

= What? What do you mean?

= Huh? What does THAT mean?

2. 그만둘 거라고요? 갑자기 무슨 말이에요?

[geu-man-dul geo-ra-go-yo? gap-ja-gi mu-seun ma-ri-e-yo?]

= You are going to quit? What do you mean all of a sudden?

3. 무슨 말이에요? 제가 왜요?

LEVEL 6 LESSON 12

[mu-seun ma-ri-e-yo? je-ga wae-yo?]

= What do you mean? Why (do) I (have to ...)?

= What do you mean? Why me?

4. 무슨 말인지 잘 모르겠어요.

[mu-seun ma-rin-ji jal mo-reu-ge-sseo-yo.]

= I'm not sure what you mean.

= I don't know what you are talking about.

5. 무슨 말인지 알겠어요.

[mu-seun ma-rin-ji al-ge-sseo-yo.]

= I know what you mean.

= I understand what you are saying.

LEVEL 6 LESSON 13 - WORD BUILDER 10

Word Builder lessons are designed to help you understand how to expand your vocabulary by learning/understanding some common and basic building blocks of Korean words. The words and letters introduced through Word Builder lessons are not necessarily all Chinese characters, or **한자** [han-ja]. Though many of them are based on Chinese characters, the meanings can be different from modern-day Chinese. Your goal, through these lessons, is to understand how words are formed and remember the keywords in Korean to expand your Korean vocabulary from there. You certainly don't have to memorize the Hanja characters, but if you want to, feel free!

In this lesson, we are looking at the word **과** [gwa]. When 과 is written in Hanja as "過", it means "**to surpass**", "**to go over**", "**to pass**" or "**too much**".

과 (to surpass, too much) + 식 (eat) = **과식** 過食 [gwa-sik] = **eating too much, overeating**

과 (to surpass, too much) + 음 (drink) = **과음** 過飲 [gwa-eum] = **drinking too much, excessive drinking**

과 (to surpass, too much) + 속 (to be fast) = **과속** 過速 [gwa-sok] = **speeding**

통 (to go through) + 과 (to pass) = **통과** 通過 [tong-gwa] = **pass, passing through, passing (a test)**

간 (to see) + 과 (to pass) = **간과** 看過 [gan-gwa] = **failure to notice, passing over**

과 (too much) + 민 (agile, quick) = **과민** 過敏 [gwa-min] = **being hypersensitive**

LEVEL 6 LESSON 13 - WORD BUILDER 10

과 (too much) + 로 (labor) = **과로** 過勞 [gwa-ro] = **working too much, too much labor**

과 (to pass) + 거 (to go) = **과거** 過去 [gwa-geo] = **the past**

과 (to surpass, too much) + 대 (to be big) = **과대** 過大 [gwa-dae] = **too big, oversized**

과 (to pass) + 정 (way, limit) = **과정** 過程 [gwa-jeong] = **process**

과 (to surpass, too much) + 소비 (consumption) = **과소비** 過消費 [gwa-so-bi] = **overspending, excessive consumption**

과 (too much) + 신 (to believe) = **과신** 過信 [gwa-sin] = **overconfidence**

LEVEL 6 LESSON 14

In this lesson, we take a look at the expression **-(으)ㄴ 겸** [-(eu)n gyeom] and how it is used. **-(으)ㄴ 겸** is used to express something or an action that has dual purposes or positions. It can be translated as “/ (slash)” or “and” when used with nouns, and as “(while doing something else) to do XYZ as well” when used with verbs.

겸

When you want to say “breakfast/lunch” or “singer/actor”, you use the word 겸 [gyeom].

Examples

1. 아침 겸 점심

[a-chim gyeom jeom-sim]

= breakfast/lunch, brunch

2. 가수 겸 배우

[ga-su gyeom bae-u]

= singer and actor, singer/actor

3. 화가 겸 작곡가

[hwa-ga gyeom jak-gok-ga]

= painter/composer, painter and composer

-(으)ㄴ 겸

When you want to talk about an action that has two or more purposes, you can list them using **-(으)ㄴ 겸** [-(eu)n gyeom]. When you just mention one purpose using **-(으)ㄴ 겸** in a sentence, the other purpose has to be understood from the context. And since **-(으)ㄴ 겸** usually has the nuance of “both at the same time”, you often use the particle **-도** (meaning “also”) after the

LEVEL 6 LESSON 14

noun that comes before "Verb + -(으)ㄴ 겸".

Examples

1. 바람 좀 쐬 겸 밖에 나왔어요.

[ba-ram jom ssoel gyeom ba-kke na-wa-sseo-yo.]

= (There's another reason/purpose, too, but) I came outside to get some fresh air.

2. 영어 공부도 할 겸, 영어로 된 소설을 읽고 있어요.

[yeong-eo gong-bu-do hal gyeom, yeong-eo-ro doen so-seo-reul il-go i-sseo-yo.]

= (I'm doing it because it's fun, too, but) I'm reading a novel written in English to study English as well.

3. 친구 생일 선물도 살 겸, 제 옷도 볼 겸, 백화점에 갈 거예요.

[chin-gu saeng-il seon-mul-do sal gyeom, je ot-do bol gyeom, bae-kwa-jeo-me gal geo-ye-yo.]

= I'm going to go to the department store to buy a present for my friend's birthday and, at the same time, look at some clothes for myself.

4. 산책도 할 겸, 사진도 찍을 겸, 남산에 갔어요.

[san-cheok-do hal gyeom, sa-jin-do jji-geul gyeom, nam-sa-ne ga-sseo-yo.]

= I went to Namsan to take a walk and also to take some photos.

-(으)ㄴ 겸 해서

Sometimes, when people feel that just saying -(으)ㄴ 겸 is a little too short, they add the word 해서 after that and say -(으)ㄴ 겸 해서. It has the same meaning as -(으)ㄴ 겸, but -(으)ㄴ 겸 해서 is usually used with the second verb when there are two verbs used as "purposes" for doing something.

LEVEL 6 LESSON 14

Ex)

산책도 할 겸, 사진도 찍을 겸 = 산책도 할 겸 해서, 사진도 찍을 겸 해서

LEVEL 6 LESSON 15

In Korean, when you are talking about the definition of something or when you want to express what you think is the definition or the nature of something, you can use the expression -(이)라는 것은. It can be followed by various types of sentence endings, including -라고 생각해요 (I think that...), -인 것 같아요 (It seems that...), etc.

-(이)라는 것은

-(이)라는 것은 is a shortened form of -(이)라고 하는 것은. The structure -(이)라고 하다 means "to say ...", and 것 [geot] means "thing" or "fact", so together, -(이)라고 하는 것 means "the thing that is called" or "what they call ...".

Examples

부자라는 것은

[bu-ja-ra-neun geo-seun]

= What they call "부자" is ...

= A rich man is ...

= (I think that) A rich man is ...

자유라는 것은

[ja-yu-ra-neun geo-seun]

= What they call "자유" is...

= Freedom is ...

= (I think that) Freedom is ...

우정이라는 것은

[u-jeong-i-ra-neun geo-seon]

= What they call "friendship" is...

LEVEL 6 LESSON 15

= Friendship is...

사람의 마음이라는 것은

[sa-ra-mui ma-eu-mi-ra-neun geo-seun]

= I think a person's mind/heart is...

More Examples

사랑이라는 것은

[sa-rang-i-ra-neun geo-seun]

= Love is...

삶이라는 것은

[sal-mi-ra-neun geo-seun]

= Life is...

꿈이라는 것은

[kku-mi-ra-neun geo-seun]

= Dream is...

Shortening -(이)라는 것은 to -(이)란

To make it even more convenient to say, people often shorten -(이)라는 것은 to -(이)란.

Ex)

사랑이라는 것은 → 사랑이란

삶이라는 것은 → 삶이란

LEVEL 6 LESSON 15

Sample Sentences

1. 사랑이란 무엇일까요?

[sa-rang-i-ran mu-eo-sil-kka-yo?]

= What is love?

2. 사랑이란 쉽지 않아요.

[sa-rang-i-ran swip-ji a-na-yo.]

= Love is not easy.

3. 자유라는 것은 (자유란), 아무거나 마음대로 하는 것이 아니에요.

[ja-yu-ra-neun geo-seun, a-mu-geo-na ma-eum-dae-ro ha-neun geo-si a-ni-e-yo.]

= Freedom doesn't mean doing whatever (you want to do) in any way you like.

4. 진정한 친구란, 어려울 때 도와 주는 친구예요.

[jin-jeong-han chin-gu-ran, eo-ryeo-ul ttae do-wa ju-neun chin-gu-ye-yo.]

= A true friend is a friend who helps (you) when things are difficult.

LEVEL 6 LESSON 16

In this lesson, let us take a look at the suffix -겠-. It is very commonly used in everyday Korean, but often not understood very well by learners, mainly because it has so many different meanings and usages.

Various Usages of -겠-

You can use -겠- to ask someone's intention, to express what you are going to do, to talk about something that will happen, to show your assumption about something, or to talk about possibilities or capabilities. It is also often used in fixed expressions such as 처음 뵙겠습니다 (= Nice to meet you.) and 잘 먹겠습니다 (= Thank you for the food.).

1. -시겠어요? / -시겠습니까? = "Would you ...?" "Would you like to ...?"

This usage is only used in very formal Korean. In more casual Korean, you would use -(으)래(요)? (Review Level 4 Lesson 2 for this grammar point). The honorific suffix -시- is always used with -겠- in this usage.

Ex)

어디로 가시겠어요?

[eo-di-ro ga-si-ge-sseo-yo?]

= Where would you like to go?

Similar: 어디로 갈래(요)?

2. -겠- (used to express one's intention) = I'm going to ..., I'd like to ...

Mostly used in formal Korean, -겠- can also express one's intention to do something. In more casual Korean, the same meaning can be expressed through -(으)르게(요) (Review Level 3 Lesson 6 for this grammar point).

LEVEL 6 LESSON 16

Ex)

제가 하겠습니다.

[je-ga ha-ge-sseum-ni-da]

= I'll do it.

말하지 않겠습니다.

[ma-ra-ji an-ke-sseum-ni-da]

= I won't tell you.

3. -겠- (used to express one's opinion/idea/assumption) = I think, I guess, I assume

This is the most common usage of -겠- in casual and everyday conversation in Korean. You can use -겠- to show your opinion or assumption about something or what will happen, but you also give a nuance that you are somewhat careful with your opinion.

Ex)

아프겠어요.

[a-peu-ge-sseo-yo.]

= That must hurt.

Ex)

이게 좋겠어요.

[i-ge jo-ke-sseo-yo.]

= I think this will be good.

Ex)

LEVEL 6 LESSON 16

늦겠어요.

[neut-ge-sseo-yo.]

= (I think) You'll be late.

**** When you want to express your assumption or ask someone else's opinion about a possibility or a capability, you can use -겠-.**

Ex)

혼자서도 되겠어요?

[hon-ja-seo-do doe-ge-sseo-yo?]

= Do you think you could handle it on your own?

저도 들어가겠네요.

[jeo-do deu-reo-ga-get-ne-yo.]

= Even I would (be able to) fit in.

4. -겠- used in fixed expressions

In addition to the usages above, -겠- is also commonly used in some fixed expressions.

Ex)

알겠습니다.

[al-ge-sseum-ni-da.]

= I got it. I understand.

Ex)

모르겠어요.

LEVEL 6 LESSON 16

[mo-reu-ge-sseo-yo.]

= I don't get it. I don't know. I am not sure.

Ex)

힘들어 죽겠어요.

[him-deu-reo juk-ge-sseo-yo.]

= I'm so tired. This is so tough.

LEVEL 6 LESSON 17

In this lesson, we are going to take a look at the commonly used verb ending, **-거든(요)**. It has a very subtle meaning, and when used correctly and appropriately, it can make your Korean sound much more natural and fluent.

Usages of **-거든(요)**

1. -거든(요) can be used to express a reason or some background explanation for something, except, -거든(요) forms a separate sentence from the sentence expressing a result. Other expressions that can express reasons for something are -아/어/여서, -(으)니까, and -기 때문에, but these are used in the same sentence with the result. However, -거든(요) is mostly added separately to your statement about what happened or will happen.

Ex)

저도 모르겠어요. 저 방금 왔거든요.

[jo-do mo-reu-ge-sseo-yo. jeo bang-geum wat-geo-deun-yo.]

= I don't know either. I just got here.

내일은 안 바빠요. 오늘 일을 다 끝냈거든요.

[nae-i-reun an ba-ppa-yo. o-neul i-reul da kkeut-naet-geo-deun-yo.]

= I'm not busy tomorrow. (Because) I finished all the work today.

2. -거든(요) can also be used when you are implying that your story is continued. When you mention one thing in a sentence that ends with -거든(요), the other person will expect you to mention another thing that's related to what you just said in the next sentence.

Ex)

제가 지금 돈이 없거든요. 만원만 빌려 주세요.

LEVEL 6 LESSON 17

[je-ga ji-geum do-ni eop-geo-deun-yo. ma-nwon-man bil-lyeo ju-se-yo.]

= I don't have any money now. (So...) Please lend me just 10,000 won.

지난 주에 제주도에 갔거든요. 그런데 계속 비가 왔어요.

[ji-nan ju-e je-ju-do-e gat-geo-deun-yo. geu-reon-de gye-sok bi-ga wa-sseo-yo.]

= I went to Jeju Island last week. But it kept raining.

Sample Sentences

1. 제가 지금 좀 바쁘거든요.

[je-ga ji-geum jom ba-ppeu-geo-deun-yo.]

= I'm a little busy now, so...

2. 아까 효진 씨 만났거든요. 그런데 이상한 말을 했어요.

[a-kka hyo-jin ssi man-nat-geo-deun-yo. geu-reon-de i-sang-han ma-reul hae-sseo-yo.]

= I met Hyojin earlier. But she said something strange.

3. 아직 말할 수 없어요. 비밀이거든요.

[a-jik mal-hal su eop-seo-yo. bi-mi-ri-geo-deun-yo.]

= I can't tell you yet. (Because) it's a secret.

**** Generally, -거든요 is used when you want to soften your speech or express a reason for something indirectly, but sometimes when you are upset, you can use -거든요 as the sentence ending to express the reason that supports or explains your anger.**

LEVEL 6 LESSON 17

Ex)

필요 없거든요!

[pi-ryo eop-geo-deun-yo!]

= I don't need it!

이미 늦었거든요!

[i-mi neu-jeot-geo-deun-yo!]

= It's already too late!

LEVEL 6 LESSON 18

Welcome back to another TalkToMeInKorean lesson. Sometimes very simple words in English can become something more complicated in Korean and vice versa. Today's key expression is an example of that. In this lesson, let us learn how to say "or" in Korean.

The word "or" can be used to link nouns, adverbs, adjectives, verbs, or even sentences. You don't need to use a different expression for all of these different usages in English, but in Korean, depending on what kind of word you are linking, the translations for "or" can be different.

Noun + OR + noun

In order to link two nouns, you need to use **-(이)나**.

Ex)

공원이나 영화관

[gong-won-i-na yeong-hwa-gwan]

= a park or a movie theater

학생이나 선생님

[hak-saeng-i-na seon-saeng-nim]

= a student or a teacher

여기나 저기

[yeo-gi-na jeo-gi]

= here or there

You can also use the word **아니면**, which originally literally means "if not".

LEVEL 6 LESSON 18

Ex)

- 공원 아니면 영화관
- 학생 아니면 선생님
- 여기 아니면 저기

Verb + OR + verb

Since adjectives are essentially "descriptive verbs" in Korean, adjectives and verbs are linked in the same manner. After verb stems, you need to use **-거나**.

Ex)

먹거나

[meok-geo-na]

= eat or ...

전화하거나

[jeon-hwa-ha-geo-na]

= make a phone call or ...

집에 가거나

[ji-be ga-geo-na]

= go home or ...

The tense (present, past or future) is expressed through the last verb, so the last verb has to be conjugated accordingly to show the tense of the entire sentence.

LEVEL 6 LESSON 18

Ex)

집에 가거나 친구를 만날 거예요.

[ji-be ga-geo-na chin-gu-reul man-nal geo-ye-yo.]

= I will (either) go home or meet a friend.

Sometimes people add -거나 to all of the sentences (Ex: 집에 가거나, 친구를 만나거나) and in that case, they use the verb **하다** (= to do) to finish the sentence.

Ex)

집에 가거나 친구를 만나거나 할 거예요.

In addition to using -거나 at the end of the sentence, you can add **아니면** as well between the two actions.

Ex)

집에 가거나 아니면 친구를 만날 거예요.

** There are other ways of saying "or" with verbs, such as "-든지" and "-든가" but more on those in future lessons!

Sentence + OR + Sentence

In the previous usages, we've seen that -(이)나 is used with nouns and -거나 is used with verbs. When you want to say "or" between two sentences, you simply use **아니면**. **아니면** is broken down to "아니다 (= to be not) + -(으)면 (= if)". **아니면** literally means "if not" or "if that's not the case".

LEVEL 6 LESSON 18

Ex)

집에 갈 거예요? 아니면 친구를 만날 거예요?

[ji-be gal geo-ye-yo? a-ni-myeon chin-gu-reul man-nal geo-ye-yo?]

= Are you going to go home? Or are you going to meet a friend?

이거 살 거예요? 아니면 다른 거 살 거예요?

[i-geo sal geo-ye-yo? a-ni-myeon da-reun geo sal geo-ye-yo?]

= Are you going to buy this? Or are you going to buy something else?

LEVEL 6 LESSON 19

In **Level 4 Lesson 28**, we introduced the verb ending **-아/어/여지다** and how it is used to express "to become + adjective".

Examples:

예쁘다 = to be pretty

예뻐지다 = to become pretty

조용하다 = to be silent

조용해지다 = to become silent

But some adjective words (or descriptive verb) are so commonly used in this **-아/어/여지다** form that they are almost considered as independent verbs and have a single-word translation in English as well.

#1

달라지다 [dal-la-ji-da]

다르다 [da-reu-da] = to be different

다르 → 달라 + -아지다 = 달라지다 = to change, to become different

Sample Sentences

여기 많이 달라졌어요.

[yeo-gi ma-ni dal-la-jyeo-sseo-yo.]

= This place has changed a lot.

뭔가 달라진 것 같아요.

LEVEL 6 LESSON 19

[mwon-ga dal-la-jin geot ga-ta-yo.]

= I feel like something has changed.

#2

좋아지다 [jo-a-ji-da]

좋다 [jo-ta] = to be good, to be likeable

좋 → 좋 + -아지다 = 좋아지다 = to get better, to improve, to be enhanced, to start to like

Sample Sentences

이 가수가 좋아졌어요.

[i ga-su-ga jo-a-jyeo-sseo-yo.]

= I started to like this singer.

= I like this singer now.

노래 실력이 좋아졌어요.

[no-rae sil-lyeo-gi jo-a-jyeo-sseo-yo.]

= My singing skills have improved.

#3

많아지다 [ma-na-ji-da]

많다 [man-ta] = to be a lot, to be abundant

많 → 많 + -아지다 = 많아지다 = to increase

Sample Sentences

LEVEL 6 LESSON 19

한국으로 여행 오는 사람들이 많아졌어요.

[han-gu-geu-ro yeo-haeng o-neun sa-ram-deu-ri ma-na-jyeo-sseo-yo.]

= The (number of) people who come to Korea for traveling have increased.

학생이 많아졌어요.

[hak-saeng-i ma-na-jyeo-sseo-yo.]

= The students have increase.

#4

없어지다 [eop-seo-ji-da]

없다 [eop-da] = to be not there, to not exist, to not have

없 → 없 + -어지다 = 없어지다 = to disappear

Sample Sentences

제 핸드폰이 없어졌어요.

[je haen-deu-po-ni eop-seo-jyeo-sseo-yo.]

= My cellphone has disappeared.

아까 여기 있었는데 없어졌어요.

[a-kka yeo-gi i-sseot-neun-de eop-seo-jyeo-sseo-yo.]

= It was here earlier but it disappeared.

LEVEL 6 LESSON 20

In this series, we focus on how you can use the grammatical rules and expressions that you have learned so far to train yourself to make more Korean sentences more comfortably and more flexibly.

We will start off with THREE key sentences, and practice changing parts of these sentences so that you don't end up just memorizing the same three sentences. We want you to be able to be as flexible as possible with the Korean sentences you can make.

Key Sentence #1

쇼핑도 할 겸, 친구도 만날 겸, 홍대에 갈 수도 있어요.

[syo-ping-do hal gyeom, chin-gu-do man-nal gyeom, hong-dae-e gal su-do i-sseo-yo.]

= I might go to Hongdae, so I could do some shopping as well as meet a friend while I'm here.

Key Sentence #2

내일 다시 오거나, 아니면 다른 사람에게 부탁할게요.

[nae-il da-si o-geo-na, a-ni-myeon da-reun sa-ra-me-ge bu-ta-kal-ge-yo.]

= I will either come again tomorrow or ask someone else.

Key Sentence #3

그러니까, 누구하고 같이 갈 거라고요?

[geu-reo-ni-kka, nu-gu-ha-go ga-chi gal geo-ra-go-yo?]

= So I mean, who did you say you were going to go with?

Expansion & variation practice with key sentence #1

LEVEL 6 LESSON 20

0. Original Sentence:

쇼핑도 할 겸, 친구도 만날 겸, 홍대에 갈 수도 있어요.

= I might go to Hongdae, so I could do some shopping as well as meet a friend while I'm here.

1.

친구도 만날 겸 = so I could meet a friend as well

공부도 할 겸 = to do some studying (as well as do something else)

인사도 할 겸 = to say hi (to someone while I'm here)

가격도 알아볼 겸 = to check the prices as well (while I'm here doing something else)

2.

홍대에 갈 수도 있어요. = I might go to Hongdae.

친구를 만날 수도 있어요. = I might meet a friend.

제 친구가 알 수도 있어요. = My friend might know.

다시 올 수도 있어요. = I might come back again.

Expansion & variation practice with key sentence #2

0. Original Sentence:

내일 다시 오거나, 아니면 다른 사람에게 부탁할게요.

= I will either come again tomorrow or ask someone else.

1.

LEVEL 6 LESSON 20

내일 다시 오거나 = come again tomorrow or

친구를 만나거나 = meet a friend or

친구한테 물어보거나 = ask a friend or

여기에서 기다리거나 = wait here or

2.

아니면 다른 사람에게 부탁할게요. = or I will ask someone else.

아니면 나중에 다시 할게요. = or I will do it again later.

아니면 그냥 제가 할게요. = or I will just do it myself.

아니면 여기에 있을 수도 있어요. = or it might be here.

Expansion & variation practice with key sentence #3

0. Original Sentence:

그러니까, 누구하고 같이 갈 거라고요?

= So I mean, who did you say you were going to go with?

1.

그러니까, 누구하고 갈 거예요? = So, who are you going to go with?

그러니까 이거 뭐예요? = I mean, what is this?

그러니까 혼자 왔다고요? = You mean you came here alone?

그러니까 제가 안 했어요. = What I'm saying is, I didn't do it.

2.

누구하고 같이 갈 거라고요? = You said you were going to go with whom? / Again, who are

LEVEL 6 LESSON 20

you going with?

언제 할 거라고요? = You said you were going to do it when? / Again, when are you going to do it?

이게 뭐라고요? = What did you say this was? / Again, what is this?

LEVEL 6 LESSON 21

In this lesson, we take a look at how to make sentences in the passive voice.

What is Passive Voice?

Passive voice is a form of sentence in which the focus is on the recipient of an action, rather than the subject. For example, when you *make* something, that something is *made* by you. When you recommend a book to someone, the book *is recommended* by you. That is passive voice, and the opposite of passive voice is active voice.

How to make passive voice sentences in Korean

In English, you change the verb into its "past participle" form and add it after the BE verb, but in Korean you need to conjugate the verb in the "passive voice" form by adding a suffix or a verb ending.

Suffixes for passive voice in Korean

Verb stem + **-이/히/리/기**

Verb stem + **-아/어/여지다**

Passive voice in English and passive voice in Korean are a little different, since, just by adding one of these suffixes to the verb stem, the "passive voice" verb itself can actually work like a stand-alone active verb in Korean.

Meanings

In English, passive voice sentences are just 'passive voice' sentences. But in Korean, the verbs take the meaning of "can/to be possible/to be doable/would" as well. Therefore it's almost even incorrect to call it the 'passive voice' in this case. But in this Part 1, let's look at the 'passive voice' meaning of these verb endings.

LEVEL 6 LESSON 21

Difference between -아/어/여지다 and -이/히/리/기

There is no clear rule about which verb stem should be followed by -아/어/여지다 and which should be followed by -이/히/리/기. Native speakers usually determine which ending to use, based on their previous experience of hearing the words being used.

Conjugation rule #1: Verb stem + -아/어/여지다

In Level 4 Lesson 28, we introduced -아/어/여지다 as the conjugation for changing an adjective into the "to become + adjective" form, but when you use -아/어/여지다 with ACTION verbs, the verbs take the passive voice meaning.

1. Change the verb into the present tense.
2. Drop -(아/어/여)요.
3. Add -(아/어/여)지다.

Example 1

자르다 [ja-reu-da] = to cut

자르다 is a "르 irregular" verb so it's conjugated to 잘라요 in the present tense. You drop -요 and add -지다, and you have 잘라지다.

자르다 → 잘라지다

Example 2

풀다 [pul-da] = to let loose

풀다 → 풀(어요) → 풀어지다

LEVEL 6 LESSON 21

Example 3

주다 [ju-eo-ji-da] = to give

주다 → 주(어요) → 주어지다

Conjugation rule #2 Verb stem + -이/히/리/기

There is no 'single' rule that determines which verb stem or letter is followed by which among 이, 히, 리 and 기, but the general rule is as follows:

(1) 이

When the dictionary form of the verb ends in

-흥다,

이 is added to the verb ending and it is changed to

-흥이다

Ex)

놓다 (to put down) → 놓이다 (to be put down)

쌓다 (to pile up) → 쌓이다 (to be piled up)

(2) 히

When the dictionary form of the verb ends in

-ㄱ다, -ㄷ다 or -ㅂ다,

히 is added to the verb ending and it is changed to

-ㄱ히다, -ㄷ히다 or -ㅂ히다.

LEVEL 6 LESSON 21

Ex)

먹다 (to eat) → 먹히다 (to be eaten)

닫다 (to close) → 닫히다 (to get closed)

잡다 (to catch) → 잡히다 (to get caught)

(3) 리

When the dictionary form of the verb ends in

-르다,

-리 is added to the verb ending and it is changed to

-르리다.

Ex)

밀다 (to push) → 밀리다 (to be pushed)

(4) 기

When the dictionary form of the verb ends in

-ㄴ다, ㄹ다, ㅅ다 or ㅈ다

-기 is added to the verb ending and it is changed to

-ㄴ기다, -ㄹ기다, -ㅅ기다 or -ㅈ기다

Ex)

안다 (to hug) → 안기다 (to be hugged)

담다 (to put something in a basket/bag) → 담기다 (to be put into a basket/bag)

씻다 (to wash) → 씻기다 (to be washed)

LEVEL 6 LESSON 21

쫓다 (to chase) → 쫓기다 (to be chased)

-이/히/리/기 + -아/어/여지다 (Double Passive Voice)

Sometimes, these two types of verb endings are used TOGETHER in one verb.

Ex)

놓다 → 놓이다 → 놓여지다

안다 → 안기다 → 안겨지다

There is no 'standard' explanation for this, but this is most likely because people want to clarify and emphasize the passive voice of the verb. Some grammarians argue that this 'double passive voice' is incorrect, but it is already being widely used.

Passive Voice of 하다 Verbs

하다 verbs are combinations of other nouns and 하다, such as 이용하다 (to use), 연구하다 (to research), etc. In order to change these 하다 verbs into the passive voice, you need to change 하다 to 되다.

이용하다 → 이용되다 (to be used)

연구하다 → 연구되다 (to be researched)

Even for 하다/되다, double passive voice is often used.

이용되다 = 이용되어지다

LEVEL 6 LESSON 21

연구되다 = 연구되어지다

This is Part 1 of the Passive Voice lesson. In Part 2, let us look at how passive voice in Korean takes the meaning of "possibility" or "capability".

LEVEL 6 LESSON 22 - WORD BUILDER 11

Word Builder lessons are designed to help you understand how to expand your vocabulary by learning/understanding some common and basic building blocks of Korean words. The words and letters introduced through Word Builder lessons are not necessarily all Chinese characters, or 한자 [han-ja]. Though many of them are based on Chinese characters, the meanings can be different from modern-day Chinese. Your goal, through these lessons, is to understand how words are formed and remember the keywords in Korean to expand your Korean vocabulary from there. You certainly don't have to memorize the Hanja characters, but if you want to, feel free!

Today's keyword is **무**.

These Chinese character for this is 無.

The word **무** is related to "none", "nothing", and "non-existence".

무 (none) + 공해 (pollution) = **무공해** 無公害 [mu-gong-hae] = **pollution-free, clean**

무 (none) + 료 (fee) = **무료** 無料 [mu-ryo] = **free of charge**

무 (none) + 시 (to see) = **무시** 無視 [mu-si] = **to overlook, to neglect, to disregard**

무 (none) + 책임 (responsibility) = **무책임** 無責任 [mu-chae-gim] = **irresponsibility**

무 (none) + 조건 (condition) = **무조건** 無條件 [mu-jo-geon] = **unconditionally**

무 (none) + 죄 (sin, guilt) = **무죄** 無罪 [mu-joe] = **innocent, not guilty**

무 (none) + 능력 (ability) = **무능력** 無能力 [mu-neung-ryeok] = **incapability**

LEVEL 6 LESSON 22 - WORD BUILDER 11

incompetence

무 (none) + 한 (limit) = **무한** 無限 [mu-han] = **infinite, limitless**

무 (none) + 적 (enemy) = **무적** 無敵 [mu-jeok] = **unbeatable, invincible**

무 (none) + 사고 (accident) = **무사고** 無事故 [mu-sa-go] = **no accident**

무 (none) + 관심 (interest) = **무관심** 無關心 [mu-gwan-sim] = **indifference, showing no interest**

무 (none) + 명 (name) = **무명** 無名 [mu-myeong] = **not popular, unknown**

무 (none) + 인 (person) = **무인** 無人 [mu-in] = **unmanned, uninhabited**

LEVEL 6 LESSON 23

Welcome to Part 2 of the Passive Voice lesson! In Part 1, we learned how sentences in the Passive Voice are made in general. In this part, let us take a look at how the passive voice in English and in Korean are different, as well as some more example sentences.

Let's review a little bit first.

Suffixes for passive voice in Korean

Verb stem + -이/히/리/기

Verb stem + -아/어/여지다

Again, there is no fixed rule for which verb stem should be followed by one of the -이/히/리/기 suffixes and which should be followed by -아/어/여지다. And some verbs have the identical meaning when followed by either of these two.

So for example, "to make" in Korean is 만들다 [man-deul-da]. And when you conjugate this using -아/어/여지다, you have 만들어지다 [man-deu-reo-ji-da] and that's how you say that something "gets made" or "gets created".

만들다 = to make

→ 만들어지다 = to be made, to get made

주다 = to give

→ 주어지다 = to be given

자르다 = to cut

→ 잘리다 = to be cut

LEVEL 6 LESSON 23

→ 잘라지다 = to be cut

Another meaning for passive voice sentences in Korean

In Korean, in addition to the meaning of an action "being done", the meaning of "possibility" or "capability" is also very commonly used with the passive voice sentences. (The basic idea is that, when you do something, if something gets done, it is doable. If something doesn't get done when you do or try to do it, it's not doable or not possible to do.)

This meaning of "possibility" or "capability" does not signify YOUR ability or capability so much as it does the general "possibility" of that certain action being done.

Examples

만들다 is "to make", and when you say 만들어지다, in the original passive voice sense, it would mean "to be made." But 만들어지다 can not only mean "to be made", but it can also mean "can be made".

Ex)

이 핸드폰은 중국에서 만들어져요.

[i haen-deu-po-neun jung-gu-ge-seo man-deu-reo-jyeo-yo.]

= This cellphone is made in China.

케익을 예쁘게 만들고 싶은데, 예쁘게 안 만들어져요.

[ke-i-geul ye-ppeu-ge man-deul-go si-peun-de, ye-ppeu-ge an man-deu-reo-jyeo-yo.]

= I want to make this cake in a pretty shape, but I can't make it pretty.

(In the 2nd example sentence, you can see that the person is NOT directly saying that he or

LEVEL 6 LESSON 23

she CAN'T make a pretty cake, but that the cake DOESN'T get made in a pretty shape.)

More Examples

1. 이거 안 잘라져요.

[i-geo an jal-la-jyeo-yo.]

= This doesn't get cut.

= I can't cut it. (more accurate)

2. 안 들려요.

[an deul-lyeo-yo.]

= It is not heard.

= I can't hear you. (more accurate)

3. 안 보여요.

[an bo-yeo-yo.]

= It is not seen.

= I can't see it.

하다 vs 되다

Since the passive voice form represents "possibility" or "capability", the passive voice form of 하다, which is 되다, takes the meaning of "can".

하다 = to do (active voice)

되다 = to be done, to get done (passive voice)

되다 = can be done, can do (possibility/capability)

LEVEL 6 LESSON 23

Ex)

이거 안 돼요.

[i-geo an dwae-yo.]

= This doesn't get done.

= I can't do this. (more accurate)

= I can't seem to do it. (more accurate)

이해가 안 돼요.

[i-hae-ga an dwae-yo.]

= Understanding is not done.

= It is not understood.

= I can't understand. (more accurate)

= I don't understand. (more accurate)

More examples with 되다

And from there, more usages of 되다 are formed.

Originally, 되다 means "to be done" but it can also mean things like:

- can be served
- to be available
- can be spoken
- can be done
- can be made
- can be finished

etc

LEVEL 6 LESSON 23

Ex)

여기 김밥 돼요?

[yeo-gi gim-bap dwae-yo?]

= Do you have/serve kimbap here?

영어가 안 돼서 걱정이예요.

[yeong-eo-ga an dwae-seo geok-jeong-i-e-yo.]

= I'm worried because I can't speak English.

오늘 안에 돼요?

[o-neul a-ne dwae-yo?]

= Can you finish it today?

So how often does the passive voice take the meaning of "possibility"?

Through Part 1 and 2 of this lesson, we have looked at how the passive voice sentences are formed and used. First, you need to figure out (by being exposed to a lot of Korean sentences) which of the endings is used in the passive voice form. And also, you need to tell from the context of the sentence whether the verb is used in the original "passive" voice or in the sense of "possibility/capability".

Often times, though, sentences that would be certainly be in the passive voice are written in the active voice in Korean. This is because, in English, in order to NOT show the subject of a certain action in a sentence, you used the passive voice, but in Korean, you can easily drop the subject, so you don't have to worry about it as much.

For example, when you say "this was made in Korea", who are you referring to? Who made it? Do

LEVEL 6 LESSON 23

you know? Probably not. Therefore, in English, you just say that "it was made in Korea". But in Korean, you don't have to worry about the subject of the verb, so you can just use the active voice form and say 한국에서 만든 거예요. or 한국에서 만들었어요. In these two sentences, the verbs are in the active voice, but no one asks "so who made it?" and understands it as the same meaning as "it was made (by somebody) in Korea".

LEVEL 6 LESSON 24

When you want to emphasize an action or state in English, you either do it by adding more stress to the verb in the intonation, or by adding the word "do" in front of the verb.

Example #1

A: It's not easy.

B: No, it IS easy!

Example #2

A: Why did you not go there?

B: I DID go, but I came back early.

Example #3

A: Do you think you can do it?

B: Well, I COULD do it, but I don't want to do it.

Now in this lesson, let us take a look at how to express these in Korean.

The simplest way to do this is by changing the intonation.

A: 왜 안 했어요? [wae an hae-sseo-yo?] = Why didn't you do it?

B: 했어요! [hae-sseo-yo!] = I DID do it!

The above is when you are simply disagreeing with the other person and presenting a different fact.

But if you want to add some conditions or premises to your sentence and say "I did do it, but..." or "I do like it, but..." you need to use a different verb ending.

Example #1

A: So you didn't even do it?

B: I did!! I DID do it, but I had some help.

LEVEL 6 LESSON 24

Example #2

A: Can you do it?

B: I COULD do it, but I don't want to do it.

Now let's look at how to express these in Korean.

The key is "-기는". This is the noun form -기 plus the topic marker -는. The topic marker is used to show contrast.

Example #1

갔어요. [ga-sseo-yo.] = I went (there).

→ 가기는 갔어요. [ga-gi-neun ga-sseo-yo.] = I DID go (there) but...

→ 가기는 했어요. [ga-gi-neun hae-sseo-yo.] = I DID go (there) but...

→ 가기는 갔는데, 일찍 왔어요. [ga-gi-neun gat-neun-de, il-jjik wa-sseo-yo.] = I DID go there, but I came back early.

→ 가기는 갈 거예요. [ga-gi-neun gal geo-ye-yo.] = I WILL go, but ... (+ other premises)

Example #2

봤어요. [bwa-sseo-yo.] = I saw (it).

→ 보기는 봤어요. [bo-gi-neun bwa-sseo-yo.] = I DID see (it) but ...

→ 보기는 했어요. [bo-gi-neun hae-sseo-yo.] = I DID see (it) but ...

→ 보기는 봤는데 기억이 안 나요. [bo-gi-neun bwat-neun-de gi-eo-gi an-na-yo.] = I DID see it, but I don't remember.

How to say "I COULD do it but ..."

To say that you can do something, you use the structure, -(으)ㄴ 수 있다. And since here, -(으)ㄴ 수 is a NOUN GROUP that literally means "a method for doing something" or "possibility/ability", you can JUST use the topic marker without having to change it again into the noun form. It's already a noun.

Example

LEVEL 6 LESSON 24

할 수 있어요. [hal su i-sseo-yo.] = I can do (it).

→ 할 수는 있어요. [hal su-neun i-sseo-yo.] = I COULD do it, but ...

→ 할 수는 있는데, 안 하고 싶어요. [hal su-neun it-neun-de, an ha-go si-peo-yo.] = I COULD do it, but I don't want to.

→ 할 수는 있는데, 조건이 있어요. [hal su-neun it-neun-de, jo-geo-ni i-sseo-yo.] = I COULD do it, but there's a condition.

More Sample Sentences

1. 어제 친구를 만나기는 했는데, 금방 헤어졌어요.

[eo-je chin-gu-reul man-na-gi-neun haet-neun-de, geum-bang he-eo-jyeo-sseo-yo.]

= I DID meet a friend yesterday, but we parted soon.

2. 시간 맞춰서 도착하기는 했는데, 준비를 못 했어요.

[si-gan mat-chwo-seo do-cha-ka-gi-neun haet-neun-de, jun-bi-reul mot hae-sseo-yo.]

= I DID manage to get there on time, but I couldn't prepare.

3. 읽기는 읽었는데 이해가 안 돼요.

[il-gi-neun il-geot-neun-de i-hae-ga an dwae-yo.]

= I DID read it, but I don't understand it.

4. 좋기는 좋은데, 너무 비싸요.

[jo-ki-neun jo-eun-de, neo-mu bi-ssa-yo.]

= It IS good, but it's too expensive.

5. 맛있기는 맛있는데, 좀 짜요.

[ma-sit-gi-neun ma-sit-neun-de, jom jja-yo.]

= It IS delicious, but it's a bit salty.

LEVEL 6 LESSON 25

In this lesson, let us take a look at how to say that something is easy or difficult to do. To say this, you need to use the noun form of verbs, ending with -기.

To be easy to + V = **-기 쉽다**

To be difficult to + V = **-기 어렵다**

"Verb stem + -기" is a noun form, therefore in principle, there has to be a marker after it, but in the forms above, the marker is dropped.

Which markers were dropped?

It depends on the context, but -기 쉽다/어렵다 can be either originally -기에 쉽다/어렵다 or originally -기가 쉽다/어렵다.

-기에 쉽다/어렵다

When you use the marker -에, it means that something is easy/difficult FOR + V-ing.

-기가 쉽다/어렵다

When you use the marker -가, it means that "DOING something" is easy/difficult.

Let's look at some examples.

Example #1

제 이름은 발음하기(가) 어려워요.

[je i-reu-meun ba-reum-ha-gi-ga eo-ryeo-wo-yo.]

= My name is difficult to pronounce.

= As for my name, pronouncing it is difficult.

Example #2

이건 만들기(가) 어려워요.

[i-geon man-deul-gi-ga eo-ryeo-wo-yo.]

= This is difficult to make.

LEVEL 6 LESSON 25

= As for this, making it is difficult.

Example #3

이건 어린이가 사용하기(에) 어려워요.

[i-geon eo-ri-ni-ga sa-yong-ha-gi-e eo-ryeo-wo-yo.]

= This is difficult for a child to use.

= Using this is difficult for a child.

** In this example, since the subject of the verb **사용하다** is **어린이** and **어린이** is followed by **-가**, the subject marker, it sounds rather repetitive to use **-가** again, so in this kind of sentence, people tend to use **-에** instead of **-가** before **쉬워요/어려워요**.

Example #4

사용하기가 쉬워요.

[sa-yong-ha-gi-ga swi-wo-yo.]

= It's easy to use.

사용하기에 쉬워요.

[sa-yong-ha-gi-e swi-wo-yo.]

= Using it is easy.

** In this case, **-가 쉬워요** and **-에 쉬워요** both work because the sentences are short.

In all of the above sentences, you can drop **-가 or **-에** from **-기가** or **-기에**.**

1. 제 이름은 발음하기가 어려워요. --> 제 이름은 발음하기 어려워요.
2. 이걸 만들기 어려워요. --> 이걸 만들기 어려워요.
3. 이걸 어린이가 사용하기에 어려워요. --> 이걸 어린이가 사용하기 어려워요.
4. 사용하기가 쉬워요. --> 사용하기 쉬워요.
5. 사용기에 쉬워요. --> 사용하기 쉬워요.

LEVEL 6 LESSON 25

Other words can also be used with “Verb stem + -기(가/에)”.

Examples

-기(가) 편리하다 / -기(에) 편리하다

= to be convenient to + V / to be convenient for + V-ing

-기(가) 좋다 / -기(에) 좋다

= to be good to + V / to be good for + V-ing

-기(가) 불편하다 / -기(에) 불편하다

= to be inconvenient to + V / to be inconvenient for + V-ing

LEVEL 6 LESSON 26

In this lesson, let us take a look at how to say things like "I thought you would do it", "**I didn't think you would do it**", "**I thought I was ...**", etc.

The key structure used for this is **-(으)ㄴ/ㄹ 줄 알다**.

-(으)ㄴ 줄 알다 = to know/think that someone has done something

-(으)ㄹ 줄 알다 = to know/think that someone will do something

(Note that **-(으)ㄴ** is usually associated with the past tense and **-(으)ㄹ** is usually used with the future tense.)

Even though **-(으)ㄴ/ㄹ 줄 알다** can be used in present tense or future tense sentences, it is mostly used in the past tense. That means the verb **알다** is mostly used in the form, **알았어요**.

Let us look at some examples first.

비가 올 줄 알았어요.

= I knew it was going to rain.

= I thought it was going to rain.

사람이 많을 줄 알았어요.

= I knew there would be a lot of people.

= I thought there would be a lot of people.

How to tell whether it means "I knew" or "I thought"?

The meanings can be very different between "I knew you would like it" and "I thought you would like it". The written form for both of these in Korean is the same, but the intonation in spoken Korean is different. When you have more stress on the verb "**알다**", it means "I knew" and when the stress is on the **-(으)ㄴ/ㄹ 줄** part, it means "I thought".

Ex)

LEVEL 6 LESSON 26

제가 말할 줄 알았어요?

(with emphasis on 알았어요?) = Did you know that I would tell you?

(with emphasis on 말할 줄) = Did you think that I would tell you?

Ex)

어디로 갈 줄 알았어요?

(with emphasis on 알았어요?) = Did you know where he(she/they) would go?

(with emphasis on 어디로) = Where did you think he(she/they) would go?

Difference between -(으)ㄴ 줄 알다 and -(으)ㄹ 줄 알다

Basically -(으)ㄴ 줄 알다 expresses your knowledge or assumption about a PAST ACTION or a PRESENT STATE, whereas -(으)ㄹ 줄 알다 expresses your knowledge or assumption about a FUTURE action or state.

To express your knowledge or assumption about a PRESENT ACTION, you need to use **-는 줄 알다**.

예쁜 줄 알다

= (with emphasis on 알다) to know that something/someone is pretty

= (with emphasis on 예쁜 줄) to think that something/someone is pretty

Ex)

제 친구는 자기가 세상에서 제일 예쁜 줄 알아요.

[je chin-gu-neun ja-gi-ga se-sang-e-seo je-il ye-ppeun jul a-ra-yo.]

= My friend thinks that she is the prettiest in the world.

간 줄 알다

= (with emphasis on 알다) = to know that someone has gone somewhere

= (with emphasis on 간 줄) = to think that someone has gone somewhere

Ex)

LEVEL 6 LESSON 26

제가 학교에 간 줄 알았어요?

[je-ga hak-gyo-e gan jul a-ra-sseo-yo?]

= (with emphasis on 알았어요?) = Did you know that I had gone to school?

= (with emphasis on 간 줄) = Did you think that I had gone to school?

How to say "I didn't know I would ..." and "I didn't think I would ..."

For making the -(으)ㄹ 줄 알았어요 a negative sentence, there are two ways.

One is to change 알았어요 to **몰랐어요**. The other is to add "안" to the original sentence.

Ex)

오늘 눈이 올 줄 알았어요.

[o-neul nu-ni ol jul a-ra-sseo-yo.]

= I knew it would snow today.

= I thought it would snow today.

→

오늘 눈이 올 줄 몰랐어요.

[o-neul nu-ni ol jul mol-la-sseo-yo.]

= I didn't know it would snow today.

오늘 눈이 안 올 줄 알았어요.

[o-neul nu-ni an ol jul a-ra-sseo-yo.]

= I thought it would not snow today.

Sample Sentences

1. 이게 여기 있을 줄 몰랐어요.

[i-ge yeo-gi i-sseul jul mol-la-sseo-yo.]

= I didn't know it would be here.

2. 저는 효진 씨도 올 줄 알았어요.

LEVEL 6 LESSON 26

[jeo-neun hyo-jin ssi-do ol jul a-ra-sseo-yo.]

= I thought Hyojin would come too.

3. 이렇게 비싼 줄 몰랐어요.

[i-reo-ke bi-ssan jul mol-la-sseo-yo.]

= I didn't know it was this expensive.

4. 저는 안 어려울 줄 알았어요.

[jeo-neun an eo-ryeo-ul jul a-ra-sseo-yo.]

= I thought it would not be difficult.

5. 제가 뭐라고 말할 줄 알았어요?

[je-ga mwo-ra-go mal-hal jul a-ra-sseo-yo?]

= What did you think I would say?

LEVEL 6 LESSON 27

In the previous lesson, we learned how to use -(으)ㄴ 줄 알다 to say "to think/know that something will happen". This sentence ending, however, can be also used to express "can", "to be able to", or "to know how to". The same meanings can also be expressed through -(으)ㄴ 수 있다, so through this lesson, let's find out how these two verb endings are used similarly or differently to express "can" or "to be able to".

-(으)ㄴ 수 있다

This ending was introduced in Level 2 Lesson 17. This is the basic way to say "can" or "to be able to". When the particle -도 [-do] is used after the noun 수 [su], it becomes -(으)ㄴ 수도 있다 and it means that something "could" happen or something "might be" in a certain state.

수 [su] basically means "possibility" or "method".

Ex)

이거 할 수 있어요?
[i-geo hal su i-sseo-yo?]
= Can you do this?

언제 올 수 있어요?
[eon-je ol su i-sseo-yo?]
= When can you come?

여기에서 뭐 살 수 있어요?
[yeo-gi-e-seo mwo sal su i-sseo-yo?]
= What can I buy here?

How to say "can NOT"

You need to change 있다 [it-da] to 없다 [eop-da].

-(으)ㄴ 줄 알다

This structure was introduced in the previous lesson as a sentence ending that means "to think/

LEVEL 6 LESSON 27

know that something will happen/be in a certain state". But when you are talking about "knowing how to do something" or "being able to do something", **줄** [jul] here means "method" or "how".

-(으)ㄹ 줄 = how/method

알다 = to know

-(으)ㄹ 줄 알다 = to know how to + V, to be able to + V

Ex)

운전 할 줄 알아요?

[un-jeon hal jul a-ra-yo?]

= Do you know how to drive?

= Can you drive?

김치 만들 줄 알아요?

[gim-chi man-deul jul a-ra-yo?]

= Do you know how to make kimchi?

= Can you make kimchi?

영어 할 줄 알아요?

[yeong-eo hal jul a-ra-yo?]

= Do you (know how to) speak English?

= Can you speak English?

How to say "can NOT"

You need to change **알다** [al-da] to **모르다** [mo-reu-da]. **모르다** means "to not know".

Difference between -(으)ㄹ 수 있다 and -(으)ㄹ 줄 알다

-(으)ㄹ 수 있다 is the basic way to say "can" or "to be able to", so it usually refers to one's actual "capability" of doing something. And on the other hand, -(으)ㄹ 줄 알다 means that you

LEVEL 6 LESSON 27

know how to do something, and you can do it, but in most cases, you have LEARNED how to do it. Therefore there can some things that you CAN (-을 수 있다) do (potentially), but CAN'T do it yet because you still don't know how to do it.

Ex)

아직 할 줄 몰라요. 그런데 할 수 있어요.

[a-jik hal jul mol-la-yo. geu-reon-de hal su i-sseo-yo.]

= I don't know how to do it yet. (I can't do it yet.) But I can do it.

More Sample Sentences

1. 이거 할 줄 알아요?

[i-geo hal jul a-ra-yo?]

= Do you know how to do this?

2. 저는 영어 할 줄 몰라요.

[jeo-neun yeong-eo hal jul mol-la-yo.]

= I don't speak English.

= I don't know how to speak English.

= I can't speak English.

3. 그거 한국어로 말할 수 있어요?

[geu-geo han-gu-geo-ro mal-hal su i-sseo-yo?]

= Can you say that in Korean?

그거 한국어로 말할 줄 알아요?

= Do you know how to say that in Korean?

4. 자전거 탈 줄 알아요?

[ja-jeon-geo tal jul a-ra-yo?]

= Do you know how to ride a bike?

= Can you ride a bike?

자전거 탈 수 있어요?

LEVEL 6 LESSON 27

[ja-jeon-geo tal su i-sseo-yo?]

= Can you ride a bike?

= Can you ride a bike (now/like that)?

How to tell which meaning -(으)ㄹ 줄 알다 takes

-(으)ㄹ 줄 알다 can mean either "to know how to" and "to know/think that something will happen". There is no certain rule for this, but you can usually figure out by context.

Examples

제가 올 줄 알았어요?

[je-ga ol jul a-ra-sseo-yo?]

In the example above, if you interpret it as "Did I know how to come here?", it is a bit weird. So you know it SHOULD mean "Did you know I would come here?" or "Did you think I would come here?"

이거 만들 줄 알아요?

[i-geo man-deul jul a-ra-yo?]

In the example above, if you interpret it as "Do you think ..." or "Do you know ...", you don't have enough information to figure out who's going to make "this" and this meaning is usually not commonly used in the present tense, so you know it's easier to understand it as a question, asking "Do you know how to make this?"

LEVEL 6 LESSON 28

In this lesson, let us look at how to say "**It depends on ...**" or just "**It depends**" in Korean.

The verb "to depend" is literally translated to **의지하다** [ui-ji-ha-da] or **의존하다** [ui-jon-ha-da], but this is only when you are talking about actually being "dependent" on someone about a certain matter.

So, for example, if you want to say something like, "Don't depend on your parents", you can use the verb 의지하다 or 의존하다 and say "부모님한테 의지하지 마세요."

But when you want to say, "it depends on the situation", "it depends on the person", or "it depends on how soon you finish this", you need to use the structure **-에 따라 다르다** [-e tta-ra da-reu-da] or **-마다 다르다** [-ma-da da-reu-da].

-에 따라 다르다 [-e tta-ra da-reu-da]

-에 따라 [-e tta-ra] means "according to", "in compliance with", or "in accordance with". 다르다 [da-reu-da] means "to be different". Literally, this structure means "it changes/becomes different in accordance with" something.

Examples

1. 때에 따라 달라요.

[ttae-e tta-ra dal-la-yo.]

= It depends on the time.

= It depends on when it is.

2. 상황에 따라 달라요.

[sang-hwang-e ttar-ra dal-la-yo.]

= It depends on the situation.

3. 사람에 따라 달라요.

[sa-ra-me tta-ra dal-la-yo.]

= It depends on the person.

LEVEL 6 LESSON 28

You can also say -에 따라 "서" 다르다 and it means the same.

Ex)

때에 따라 달라요.

= 때에 따라서 달라요.

상황에 따라 달라요.

= 상황에 따라서 달라요.

-마다 다르다 [-ma-da da-reu-da]

-마다 [-ma-da] means "every". So 아침마다 [a-chim-ma-da] is "every morning" and 밤마다 [bam-ma-da] is "every night", and when you use -마다 with 다르다, it means "it is different for every ...".

Examples

1. 사람마다 달라요.

[sa-ram-ma-da dal-la-yo.]

= For every person, it's different.

= It depends on the person.

2. 나라마다 달라요.

[na-ra-ma-da dal-la-yo.]

= It depends on the country.

3. 해마다 달라요.

[hae-ma-da dal-la-yo.]

= It depends on the year.

= It's different every year.

Difference between -에 따라 and -마다

These two are usually interchangeable, but -마다 can only be used with nouns, whereas -에 따

LEVEL 6 LESSON 28

라 can also be used with a clause. In order for -에 따라 to be used with a clause, however, you need to conjugate the verb into the -는지 form.

Also, while -에 따라 has a stronger meaning of "it depends on the certain item/circumstance", -에 마다 can also have the meaning that something constantly changes, even not really "in accordance with" the item or circumstance.

For example, 해마다 달라요 can mean "it depends on that year" or "it changes every year".

Verb stem + -는지에 따라(서) 다르다

Examples

1. 언제 가는지에 따라 달라요.

[eon-je ga-neun-ji-e tta-ra dal-la-yo.]

= It depends on when you go there.

2. 어디서 사는지에 따라 달라요.

[eo-di-seo sa-neun-ji-e tta-ra dal-la-yo.]

= It depends on where you buy it.

3. 누구한테 이야기하는지에 따라서 달라요.

[nu-gu-han-te i-ya-gi-ha-neun-ji-e tta-ra-seo dal-la-yo.]

= It depends on whom you talk to.

-는지에 따라 = -느냐에 따라

Sometimes you will also hear people saying -느냐에 따라 instead of -는지에 따라. They are interchangeable, but -느냐에 따라 is slightly more commonly used in spoken Korean.

달라요 vs 달라져요

You will also often hear people saying "달라져요" instead of "달라요". This is when they want to put stress on the nuance that it "becomes" different, but usually just saying "달라요" is clear enough.

LEVEL 6 LESSON 29

In this lesson, we are going to look at how to say **"sometimes I do this, sometimes I do that"** or **"sometimes it's like this, other times it's like that"** in Korean.

In order to say this, there are a few things you need to know. First of all, you need to know how to use the **-(으)ㄹ 때** ending, which means **"when + S + V"**. And you also need to know how the topic marker **-는** is used to show contrast.

How to say "sometimes" in Korean

When the word "sometimes" is used just to show the frequency of an action, you can say **가끔** [ga-kkeum], **가끔씩** [ga-kkeum-ssik], or **때때로** [ttae-ttae-ro]. (가끔 and 가끔씩 are more common in spoken Korean than 때때로.)

But when you want to literally say "some times" and "other times", you use the expression, **어떨 때** [eo-tteol ttae].

어떨 때 comes from 어떻게 + -(으)ㄹ 때.

어떻다 [eo-tteo-ta] means "to be how" or "to be in what kind of state" and -(으)ㄹ marks a future action or state, and 때 [ttae] means "time" or "when". So literally, 어떨 때 means "when what state will happen" or "when things are how". Therefore when more naturally translated, 어떨 때 means "in what kind of situation", "in what kind of times" or even just "when".

Ex)

어떨 때 영화 보고 싶어요?

[eo-tteol ttae yeong-hwa bo-go si-peo-yo?]

= When do you (usually) feel like watching a movie?

어떨 때 제일 힘들어요?

[eo-tteol ttae je-il him-deu-reo-yo?]

= When do you (usually) have the hardest time?

LEVEL 6 LESSON 29

As you can notice from the examples above, **어떨 때** is commonly used when you are asking about a general pattern or habit, whereas **언제** [eon-je] would just have the plain meaning of "when".

어떨 때 can also be used, however, to mean "sometimes". But this is when you want to show contrast between "some times" and "other times". Therefore, you usually use **어떨 때** with the topic marker, **-는**.

어떨 때는 [eo-tteol ttae-neun] = **sometimes + certain state/action**

+

어떨 때는 [eo-tteol ttae-neun] = **other times + another state/action**

Like shown above, you can repeat **어떨 때는**. Let's take a look at some examples.

커피요? 어떨 때는 마시는데, 어떨 때는 안 마셔요.

[keo-pi-yo? eo-tteol ttae-neun ma-si-neun-de, eo-tteol ttae-neun an ma-syeo-yo.]

= Coffee? Sometimes I drink it, but other times, I don't drink it.

어떨 때는 혼자 있는 것이 좋은데, 어떨 때는 싫어요.

[eo-tteol ttae-neun hon-ja it-neun geo-si jo-eun-de, eo-tteol ttae-neun si-reo-yo.]

= Sometimes, I like being alone, but other times, I don't like it.

If you want to be more specific and say "other times" in Korean, too, you can use the expression "**다른 때는**", using the verb "**다르다**".

Although **어떨 때는** is more commonly used, some people also use **어떤 때는**, since it is in the present tense.

Sample Sentences

1. 그 사람은 어떨 때는 친절한데, 어떨 때는 정말 불친절해요.

[geu sa-ra-meun eo-tteol ttae-neun chin-jeo-ran-de, eo-tteol ttae-neun jeong-mal bul-chin-

LEVEL 6 LESSON 29

jeo-rae-yo.]

= Sometimes, he is kind, but other times, he is very unkind.

2. 어떨 때는 일을 그만두고 싶은데, 어떨 때는 일 하는 게 좋아요.

[eo-tteol ttae-neun i-reul geu-man-du-go si-peun-de, eo-tteol ttae-neun il ha-neun ge jo-a-yo.]

= Sometimes I feel like quitting my job, but other times, I like working.

You can also use the ending **-(으)ㄴ 때도 있어요** after the second 어떨 때는 clause.

For example, the above sentence can be changed to 어떨 때는 일을 그만두고 싶은데, 어떨 때는 일 하는 게 좋을 때도 있어요.

-(으)ㄴ 때 means "a time when ..." and -도 있어요 means "there are also ...", therefore this is to express the meaning "there are also times when...".

3. 어떨 때는 운동하는 게 재미있는데, 어떨 때는 운동하고 싶지 않을 때도 있어요.

[eo-tteol ttae-neun un-dong-ha-neun ge jae-mi-it-neun-de, eo-tteol ttae-neun un-dong-ha-go sip-ji a-neul ttae-do i-sseo-yo.]

= Sometimes, working out is fun, but other times, there are also times when I don't feel like doing exercise.

LEVEL 6 LESSON 30

In this series, we focus on how you can use the grammatical rules and expressions that you have learned so far to train yourself to make more Korean sentences more comfortably and more flexibly.

We will start off with **THREE key sentences**, and practice changing parts of these sentences so that you don't end up just memorizing the same three sentences. We want you to be able to be as flexible as possible with the Korean sentences you can make.

Key Sentence #1

별로 안 어려울 줄 알았는데 생각보다 어려웠어요.

[byeol-lo an eo-ryeo-ul jul a-rat-neun-de saeng-gak-bo-da eo-ryeo-wo-sseo-yo.]

= I thought it wouldn't be so difficult, but it was more difficult than I had thought.

Key Sentence #2

그 사람 알기는 하는데, 자주 안 만나는 편이에요.

[geu sa-ram al-gi-neun a-neun-de, ja-ju an man-na-neun pyeo-ni-e-yo.]

= I DO know him, but I don't really meet him often.

Key Sentence #3

제 이름은 발음하기가 어려워서, 잊어버리기 쉬워요.

[je i-reu-meun ba-reum-ha-gi-ga eo-ryeo-wo-seo, i-jeo-beo-ri-gi swi-wo-yo.]

= My name is difficult to pronounce, so it's easy to forget.

Expansion & variation practice with key sentence #1

LEVEL 6 LESSON 30

0. Original Sentence:

별로 안 어려울 줄 알았는데 생각보다 어려웠어요.

= I thought it wouldn't be so difficult, but it was more difficult than I had thought.

1.

별로 안 어려울 줄 알았는데 = I thought it wouldn't be so difficult but

아무도 없을 줄 알았는데 = I thought nobody would be here but

여기에 있을 줄 알았는데 = I thought it would be here but

괜찮을 줄 알았는데 = I thought it would be okay but

2.

생각보다 어려웠어요. = It was more difficult than I thought.

생각보다 빨리 끝났어요. = It finished earlier than I thought.

생각보다 간단했어요. = It was simpler than I thought.

생각보다 비쌀 수도 있어요. = It might be more expensive than you think.

Expansion & variation practice with key sentence #2

0. Original Sentence:

그 사람 알기는 하는데, 자주 안 만나는 편이에요.

= I DO know him, but I don't really meet him often.

1.

그 사람 알기는 하는데 = I DO know him, but

LEVEL 6 LESSON 30

이거 좋기는 좋은데 = This IS good, but

비싸기는 비싼데 = It IS expensive, but

하기는 할 건데 = I AM going to do it, but

2.

자주 안 만나는 편이에요. = I don't really meet him often.

별로 안 좋아하는 편이에요. = I don't really like it.

다른 사람들보다는 잘하는 편이에요. = I am rather good at it, compared to other people.

가끔씩 가는 편이에요. = I go there sometimes.

Expansion & variation practice with key sentence #3

0. Original Sentence:

제 이름은 발음하기가 어려워서, 잊어버리기 쉬워요.

= My name is difficult to pronounce, so it's easy to forget.

1.

제 이름은 발음하기가 어려워요. = My name is difficult to pronounce.

이건 혼자서 만들기가 어려워요. = This is difficult to make by yourself.

지도가 복잡해서 찾아가기 어려워요. = The map is complicated so it's difficult to find the place.

한국어는 배우기 어렵지 않아요. = Korean is not difficult to learn.

2.

잊어버리기 쉬워요. = It is easy to forget.

실수하기 쉬워요. = It is easy to make a mistake.

LEVEL 6 LESSON 30

포기하기 쉬워요. = It is easy to give up.

찾기 쉬워요. = It is easy to find.



LEVEL 7 LESSON 1

In this lesson, we are looking at the sentence ending **-(는)구나** and **-(는)군요**. **-(는)구나** is used in 반말 (casual, informal language) and **-(는)군요** is only used in 존댓말 (polite, formal language).

When are they used?

You use **-(는)구나** and **-(는)군요** when you just realized or found out about something for the first time, mainly to express your realization. You can sometimes use them to show that you are surprised, but this depends on the intonation of your sentence.

Let's compare some sentences using the **-(는)구나** or **-(는)군요** ending with some plain sentences.

1.

여기 있었어요. [yeo-gi i-sseo-sseo-yo.] = It was here.

(존댓말) 여기 있었**군요**. [yeo-gi i-sseot-gun-yo.] = (I see that) it was here.

(반말) 여기 있었**구나**. [yeo-gi i-sseot-gu-na.] (same meaning as above)

2.

생각보다 비싸요. [saeng-gak-bo-da bi-ssa-yo.] = It's more expensive than I thought.

(존댓말) 생각보다 비싸**군요**. [saeng-gak-bo-da bi-ssa-gun-yo.] = (I see that) it is more expensive than I thought.

(반말) 생각보다 비싸**구나**. [saeng-gak-bo-da bi-ssa-gu-na.] (same meaning as above)

3.

LEVEL 7 LESSON 1

여기 살아요. [yeo-gi sa-ra-yo.] = I live here. She lives here. They live here. etc.

(존댓말) 여기 사는 **군요**. [yeo-gi sa-neun-gun-yo.] = (I see that) you live here.

(반말) 여기 사는 **구나**. [yeo-gi sa-neun-gu-na.] = (same meaning as above)

Construction

[Past Tense]

Verb stem + -았/었/였군요

Verb stem + -았/었/였구나

[Present Tense]

- Action Verbs: Verb stem + -는군요/는구나

- Descriptive Verbs: Verb stem + -군요/구나

-(는)군요 and -(는)군

Generally, when you drop the -요 at the end of a Korean sentence, it becomes a 반말 sentence and it is the same with -(는)군요. Therefore, instead of saying -(는)군요, if you say -(는)군, it becomes the same level as -(는)구나. Even though the basic meaning is the same, however, -(는)구나 is more commonly used in spoken language and among females than -(는)군. Sometimes people would say -(는)군, but saying this will make your sentence sound a bit like written language and more masculine.

Ex)

이거 맛있구나.

[i-geo ma-sit-gu-na]

= (I didn't know before but I just realized that) this is delicious!

LEVEL 7 LESSON 1

이거 맛있군.

[i-geo ma-sit-gun.]

--> This sentence has the same basic meaning as the one above, but it sounds a little more masculine and like written language.

Nouns + -군요/구나

When you want to say "Noun + -이다", if the noun ends with a consonant, you keep the -이 and add -군요 or -구나.

Ex)

학생이군요. / 학생이구나.

But if the noun ends with a vowel, you drop the -이 and just add -군요 or -구나.

Ex)

이거군요. / 이거구나.

More Sample Sentences

1. 여기 진짜 넓구나!

[yeo-gi jin-jja neolp-gu-na!]

= This place is so big!

2. 이게 그거였군요!

[i-ge geu-geo-yeot-gun-yo!]

= So this was what you were talking about!

LEVEL 7 LESSON 1

3. 이렇게 하는 거군요.

[i-reo-ke ha-neun geo-gun-yo.]

= So this is how you do it!

4. 벌써 11월이구나!

[beol-sseo si-bi-rweol-i-gu-na!]

= (I didn't realize before but) it's already November!

5. 어제도 만났군요.

[eo-je-do man-nat-gun-yo.]

= (I didn't know before but I just found out that) you met yesterday too.

LEVEL 7 LESSON 2

In this lesson, we look at how to say "to pretend" to do something in Korean. The key words that you need to know are 척 [cheok] and 체 [che]. They are a little bit different in usage, but they can be basically used in the following form.

Verb stem + -(으/느)ㄴ 척 하다

or

Verb stem + -(으/느)ㄴ 체 하다

In the structures above, both 체 and 척 have the meaning of "the act of pretending" or "acting as if". Therefore the part before 척/체, which is -(으/느)ㄴ has the role of changing a verb into the adjective form, and the verb 하다 means "to do".

1. -(으/ㄴ)ㄴ = adjective ending

2. 척/체 = the act of pretending

3. 하다 = to do

→ -(으/느)ㄴ 척/체 하다

Examples

1. 알다 = to know

→ 아는 척 하다 = to pretend to know

→ 아는 체 하다 = to pretend to know

** Here, 알다 is a ㄹ irregular verb so ㄹ drops.

2. 자다 = to sleep

→ 자는 척 하다 = to pretend to sleep

→ 자는 체 하다 = to pretend to sleep

LEVEL 7 LESSON 2

3. 예쁘다 = to be pretty

→ 예쁜 척 하다 = to pretend to be pretty, to act as if one was pretty

→ 예쁜 체 하다 = to pretend to be pretty, to act as if one was pretty

You can use -(으/느)ㄴ 척/체 하다 with past tense and present progressive too.

Examples

1. 알다 → 알고 있다 (present progressive)

→ 알고 있는 척/체 하다 = to pretend to be aware of something

2. 자다 → 자고 있다 (present progressive)

→ 자고 있는 척/체 하다 = to pretend to be sleeping/asleep

3. 하다 → 한 (past tense adjective form)

→ 한 척/체 하다 = to pretend to have done something

4. 먹다 → 먹은 (past tense adjective form)

→ 먹은 척/체 하다 = to pretend to have eaten something

** You can't use -(으/느)ㄴ 척/체 하다 with future tense. In that case you need to different structures, such as -(으)ㄹ 것처럼 행동하다, etc.

Difference between 척 and 체

척 and 체 are almost the same and almost always interchangeable, but only 척 can be followed by verbs other than 하다, which is usually 행동하다 (to behave) or 이야기하다 (to talk). You can also use the part "-(으/느)ㄴ 척" (without finishing with sentence with 하다) as a clause.

Ex)

LEVEL 7 LESSON 2

모르는 척, 조용히 나갔어요.

= (While) Pretending as if they didn't know, they went out quietly.

Sometimes, 척 and 체 will be followed by verbs that are not 하다, but even in those cases, those verbs are mostly "related" to the verb 하다.

For example, when you want to say "Stop pretending you know." you can say 아는 척 하지 마세요 but also 아는 척 그만하세요. Here, 그만하다 means to stop, but it basically comes from 하다.

Sample Sentences

1. 모르는 척 하지 말고 빨리 말해 줘요.

[mo-reu-neun cheok ha-ji mal-go ppal-li mal-hae jwo-yo.]

= Please don't pretend you don't know and tell me quickly.

2. 자는 척 그만하고 일어나요.

[ja-neun cheok geu-man-ha-go i-reo-na-yo.]

= Stop pretending to be asleep and get up.

3. 술 마신 척 하지 마세요.

[sul ma-sin cheok ha-ji ma-se-yo.]

= Don't pretend that you drank.

4. 그 사람은 예쁜 척을 너무 많이 해요.

[geu sa-ra-meun yeo-ppeun cheo-geul neo-mu ma-ni hae-yo.]

= She behaves (too much) as if she's pretty.

5. 아는 척 하지 마세요.

[a-neun cheok ha-ji ma-se-yo.]

= Don't pretend to know.

= Don't be a know-it-all.

LEVEL 7 LESSON 3

In this lesson we are looking at the structure **-(으)ㄴ 만하다**. This structure has a variety of meanings and it is very important to pay close attention to the context in order to understand what kind of meaning is intended.

Generally, **-(으)ㄴ 만하다** means that there is enough reason or justification for a certain situation or that something is doable or possible, but mainly in the sense of being "bearable" to do.

Examples

가다

→ **갈 만하다** [gal man-ha-da]

= to be possible to go

= to be worth going (and checking out the place)

= there is enough justifiable reason for one to go

먹다

→ **먹을 만하다** [meo-geul man-ha-da]

= to be edible

= to taste okay (the taste is bearable)

= the taste is acceptable

늦다

→ **늦을 만하다** [neu-jeul man-ha-da]

= to be forgivable for being late

= there is enough reason for being late

놀라다

→ **놀랄 만하다** [nol-lal man-ha-da]

= to be natural to be surprised/shocked

= there is enough reason for being surprisd/shocked

LEVEL 7 LESSON 3

Sample Sentences

1. 그럴 만해요.

[geu-reol man-hae-yo.]

= It's understandable to be so.

= It's possible.

= There is enough reason for it to be so.

2. 그 사람은 인기가 있을 만해요.

[geu sa-ra-meun in-gi-ga i-sseul man-hae-yo.]

= There is enough reason that he is popular.

= It's understandable why he is popular.

3. 이 책 읽을 만해요?

[i chaek il-geul man-hae-yo?]

= Is this book worth reading?

= Is this book good?

= Do you recommend this book?

4. 괜찮아요. 참을 만해요.

[gwaen-cha-na-yo. cha-meul man-hae-yo.]

= I'm okay. It's endurable.

= I'm okay. It's bearable.

5. 가족끼리 한 번쯤 갈 만해요.

[ga-jok-kki-ri han beon-jjeum gal man-hae-yo.]

= (The place) is worth visiting once (or twice) with family.

LEVEL 7 LESSON 4

In this lesson, we are looking at the words **-같이** and **-처럼**. They are both particles (used after nouns) that mean "like + N". When you use **-같이** or **-처럼** after a word, the word group works like an adverb in a sentence. (i.e. "like a robot", "like a Korean girl", etc.)

Many people make the mistake of using **-같이** and **처럼** with the verb for "to be", but more on that later in this lesson.

Noun + -같이/처럼 = like + N, as + N

1. 종이 + -처럼 = 종이처럼 [jong-i-cheo-reom] = like paper
2. 로봇 + -처럼 = 로봇처럼 [ro-bot-cheo-reom] = like a robot

→ 종이처럼 가볍다 = to be light like paper
→ 로봇처럼 걷다 = to walk like a robot

Examples

1. 저처럼 해 보세요.

[jeo-cheo-reom hae bo-se-yo.]

= Try doing it like I do.

2. 그 사람은 한국어를 한국 사람처럼 잘해요.

[geu sa-ra-meun han-gu-geo-reul han-guk sa-ram-cheo-reom ja-rae-yo.]

= He speaks Korean well like a Korean person.

3. 제가 어제 말한 것처럼 했어요?

[je-ga eo-je ma-ran geot-cheo-reom hae-sseo-yo?]

= Did you do it like I said yesterday?

All the sentences above can be written with **-같이** in the place of **-처럼**, too, but only some of them are "very" natural.

→ 저같이 해 보세요.
→ 그 사람은 한국어를 한국 사람같이 잘해요.
→ 제가 어제 말한 것같이 했어요?

LEVEL 7 LESSON 4

** -처럼 and -같이 are interchangeable in most cases and which sounds more natural depends on the person's opinion.

같이 and -같이

Even though they are basically the same word, there is a difference in the meaning between when you say -같이 after a noun and 같이 independently. When 같이 is used independently as an adverb, it means "together". In this case, you would often need the particle -와 or -(이)랑 that means "with".

Ex)

저 사람같이 하세요

[jeo sa-ram-ga-chi ha-se-yo.]

= Do like that person does.

저 사람이랑 같이 하세요.

[jeo sa-ra-mi-rang ga-chi ha-se-yo.]

= Do it together with that person.

-같이 and -같은

When you add -같이 after a noun, it works as an adverb. And when you want to make the expression work as an adjective, you can add -같은 instead of -같이. This does not apply to -처럼.

Ex)

저같은 사람

[jeo-ga-teun sa-ram]

= a person like me

= somebody like me

Sample Sentences

1. 강아지가 곰처럼 생겼어요.

[gang-a-ji-ga gom-cheo-reom saeng-gyeo-sseo-yo.]

LEVEL 7 LESSON 4

= The puppy looks like a bear.

2. 오늘은 일요일같은 월요일이에요.

[o-neu-reun i-ryo-il-ga-teun wo-ryo-i-ri-e-yo.]

= Today is a Monday (that feels) like a Sunday.

3. 제 친구는 미국인인데 영어를 영국 사람처럼 해요.

[je chin-gu-neun mi-gu-gi-nin-de yeong-eo-reul yeong-guk sa-ram-cheo-reom hae-yo.]

= My friend is American but s/he speaks English like a British person.

4. 왜 집을 요새처럼 만들었어요?

[wae ji-beul yo-sae-cheo-reom man-deu-reo-sseo-yo?]

= Why did you make your house like a fortress?

5. 바보처럼 정말 그 말을 믿었어요?

[ba-bo-cheo-reom jeong-mal geu ma-reul mi-deo-sseo-yo?]

= Did you really believe that like a fool?

LEVEL 7 LESSON 5

In this lesson, we are going to take a look at how to use the word **만큼** to say things like "He is as tall as I am." and "You can take as much as you want." in Korean.

만큼 can be used both as a particle and as a noun. When it is used after other nouns, pronouns and prepositions, it works as a particle and you write it right after the previous word, without space. When it is used after a verb, it has to be modified by it and work as a noun. But either way, the basic meaning is the same.

만큼 represents the meaning of "as much as" or "to the point of" doing or being something.

Examples

1. 저만큼 [jeo-man-keum]

= 저 + 만큼

= as much as me

= as much as I

2. 이만큼 [i-man-keum]

= 이(것) + 만큼

= as much as this

= this much

3. 놀랄 만큼 [nol-lal man-keum]

= 놀라다 + 만큼

= to the point of one being surprised

= surprisingly

4. 원하는 만큼 [won-ha-neun man-keum]

= 원하다 + 만큼

= as much as one wants

5. 한국에서만 [han-gu-ge-seo-man-keum]

= 한국에서 + 만큼

= as much as in Korea

LEVEL 7 LESSON 5

As you can see from the examples above, 만큼 (or -만큼) can be used after various types of words to mean "as much as". But when 만큼 is used after 얼마 [eol-ma], which usually means "how much", 얼마만큼 [eol-ma-man-keum] still has the same meaning of "how much (of something)" or "how much in quantity". In this case, 얼마만큼 is interchangeable with 얼마나 [eol-ma-na].

Sample Sentences

1. 효진 씨는 경화 씨만큼 키가 커요.

[hyo-jin ssi-neun gyeong-hwa ssi-man-kkeum ki-ga keo-yo.]

= Hyojin is as tall as Kyung-hwa.

2. 얼마만큼 필요해요?

[eol-ma-man-keum pi-ryo-hae-yo?]

= How much (of it) do you need?

3. 원하는 만큼 다 가져가세요.

[won-ha-neun man-keum da ga-jyeo-ga-se-yo.]

= Take as much as you want.

4. 필요한 만큼 가져가세요.

[pi-ryo-han man-keum ga-jyeo-ga-se-yo.]

= Take as much as you need.

5. 필요한 만큼만 가져가세요.

[pi-ryo-han man-keum-man ga-jyeo-ga-se-yo.]

= Take just the amount you need.

6. 한국에서만كم 자주 안 만나요.

[han-gu-ge-seo-man-keum ja-ju an man-na-yo.]

= We don't meet as often as in Korea.

LEVEL 7 LESSON 5

How to say "as much as I'd like to..." in Korean

In this case, you can't use 만큼 to say things like "As much as I want to go, I can't." Instead, you need to say "정말 -고 싶지만" which literally means "I really want to... but".

LEVEL 7 LESSON 6 - WORD BUILDER 12

Word Builder lessons are designed to help you understand how to expand your vocabulary by learning/understanding some common and basic building blocks of Korean words. The words and letters introduced through Word Builder lessons are not necessarily all Chinese characters, or 한자 [han-ja]. Though many of them are based on Chinese characters, the meanings can be different from modern-day Chinese. Your goal, through these lessons, is to understand how words are formed and remember the keywords in Korean to expand your Korean vocabulary from there. You certainly don't have to memorize the Hanja characters, but if you want to, feel free!

Today's keyword is **원**

These Chinese character for this is 院.

There are many other Chinese characters (or Hanja letters) that are used for 원, so keep in mind that not all the words that have 원 in them have related meanings.

The word **원** (院) is related to "house" and "institute".

대 (big) + 학 (study) + 원 (house) = **대학원** 大學院 [dae-ha-gwon] = **graduate school**

병 (sickness) + 원 (house) = **병원** 病院 [byeong-won] = **hospital**

원 (house) + 장 (head) = **원장** 院長 [won-jang] = **head of an organization or an institute of which name ends with -원**

학 (study) + 원 (house) = **학원** 學院 [ha-gwon] = **private school, institute**

연수 (training, education) + 원 (house) = **연수원** 研修院 [yeon-su-won] = **training institute**

퇴 (to retreat, to go back) + 원 (house) = **퇴원** 退院 [toe-won] = **leaving the hospital**

입 (to enter) + 원 (house) = **입원** 入院 [i-bwon] = **being hospitalized, hospitaliza-**

LEVEL 7 LESSON 6 - WORD BUILDER 12

tion

법 (law) + 원 (house) = **법원** 法院 [beo-bwon] = **court of law**

연구 (research) + 원 (house) = **연구원** 研究員 [yeon-gu-won] = **research center**

고 (lonely) + 아 (child) + 원 (house) = **고아원** 孤兒院 [go-a-won] = **orphanage**

LEVEL 7 LESSON 7

In today's lesson, we look at the structure **-아/어/여 봤자** [-a/eo/yeo bwat-ja]. This is used to express the meaning "**even if**" or "**there is no use**", and is more commonly used in spoken Korean than in written Korean.

Other similar expressions are -아/어/여도 and -아/어/여 봐도, and these expressions tend to be a little more formal and less intense in nuance than -아/어/여 봤자.

When used after verb stems, -아/어/여 봤자 gives the entire sentence the meaning that "even if" one tries to do something, they will NOT get the desired result.

Examples

말하다 [ma-ra-da] = to talk, to speak

→ **말해 봤자** [ma-rae bwat-ja] = even if you talk (to them) (there is no use)

찾다 [chat-da] = to look for, to find

→ **찾아 봤자** [cha-ja bwat-ja] = even if you look for something / even if you find it (there is no use)

How to say "**it is no use**" or "**it won't work**"

After you say -아/어/여 봤자, it's already expected that you are going to say something along the lines of "it won't work", "it's impossible" or "you can't do it", but in order to make it more clear, you can use the following expressions:

1. **소용 없어요.** [so-yong eop-seo-yo.] = It's of no use. It will not help.
2. **안 돼요.** [an dwae-yo.] = It won't work. It won't do. You can't do it.
3. **시간 낭비예요.** [si-gan nang-bi-ye-yo.] = It's a waste of time.

Or you can simply add negative phrases using **안** or **못**.

Ex)

LEVEL 7 LESSON 7

말해 봤자 소용 없어요. [ma-rae bwat-ja so-yong eop-seo-yo.] = Even if you talk (to them), it'll be of no use.

가 봤자 시간 낭비예요. [ga bwat-ja si-gan nang-bi-ye-yo.] = Even if you go, it will be a waste of your time.

But quite often, you can just drop the expressions above after -아/어/여 봤자 and just add -예요 (= to be) to make the sentence end with -아/어/여 봤자예요. This is because with just -아/어/여 봤자 alone, the meaning is clear, and you just add -예요 to make it a complete sentence.

Ex)

해 봤자예요. [hae bwat-ja-ye-yo.] = There is no use in trying doing it.

가 봤자예요. [ga bwat-ja-ye-yo.] = There is no use in going there.

Sample Sentences

1. 저한테 말해 봤자 소용 없어요.

[jeo-han-te ma-rae bwat-ja so-yong eop-seo-yo.]

= There is no use in talking to me.

2. 여기에 있어 봤자 시간 낭비예요.

[yeo-gi-e i-sseo bwat-ja si-gan nang-bi-ye-yo.]

= Even if you stay here, it's a waste of time.

3. 지금 출발해 봤자 시간 안에 못 가요.

[ji-geum chul-ba-rae bwat-ja si-gan a-ne mot ga-yo.]

= Even if you leave now, you can't get there in time.

4. 울어 봤자 소용 없어요.

[u-reo bwat-ja so-yong eop-seo-yo.]

= Even if you cry, it won't help.

LEVEL 7 LESSON 7

5. 모르는 척 해 봤자 이미 다 알고 있어요.

[mo-reu-neun cheok hae bwat-ja i-mi da al-go i-sseo-yo.]

= Even if you pretend you don't know, I already know all about it.

-아/어/여 봤자 can be replaced with -아/어/여 봐야 when it is followed by a phrase that is NOT -예요. (You can't say -아/어/여 봐야예요.)

LEVEL 7 LESSON 8

In this lesson, let's look at the structure -**길래** [-gil-lae]. -길래 basically expresses a reason that an action is done, but mostly when you have intentionally done something as a result of observing and judging a situation.

You can use -길래 mainly when you are talking about (1) doing something as a result of observation, (2) doing something as a result of judging a situation and (3) asking the reason/background for a decision. And since you usually talk about the reason for an action and the reason, too, the sentence is usually in the past or present tense.

Structure

Verb stem + -길래 + <result action>

Usages

1. Doing something as a result of observation

비가 오다 (= to rain)

--> 비가 오길래

--> 비가 오길래 우산을 가져왔어요.

(= It was raining so I brought my umbrella.)

맛있다 (= to be delicious)

--> 맛있길래

--> 맛있길래 더 사왔어요.

(= It was delicious so I bought some more.)

사람이 많다 (= to be crowded)

--> 사람이 많길래

--> 사람이 많길래 그냥 나왔어요.

(= There were a lot of people so I just left the place.)

2. Doing something as a result of judging a situation

LEVEL 7 LESSON 8

비가 올 것 같다 (= to seem like it's going to rain)

--> 비가 올 것 같길래

--> 비가 올 것 같길래 그냥 집에 있었어요.

(= It looked like it was going to rain, so I just stayed at home.)

곧 문을 닫을 것 같다 (= to seem like they will close the door soon)

--> 곧 문을 닫을 것 같길래

--> 서점이 곧 문을 닫을 것 같길래 그냥 돌아왔어요.

(= The bookstore looked like it was going to close soon so I just came back.)

3. Asking the reason/background for a decision

어디에 있다 (= to be where)

--> 어디에 있길래

--> 지금 어디에 있길래 이렇게 시끄러워요?

(= Where are you now? It's so noisy (as a result of that)!)

뭐 했다 (= to have done what)

--> 뭐 했길래

--> 뭐 했길래 이렇게 지쳤어요?

(= What did you do to be so tired?)

뭐라고 말했다 (= to have said what)

--> 뭐라고 말했길래

--> 경화 씨가 뭐라고 말했길래 이렇게 신났어요?

(= What did Kyung-hwa say to make you so excited?)

Sample Sentences

1. 무슨 이야기를 들었길래 그렇게 열심히 공부해요?

[mu-seun i-ya-gi-reul deu-reot-gil-lae geu-reo-ke yeol-si-mi gong-bu-hae-yo?]

= What kind of story did you hear to study so hard?

= What did they tell you? Why are you studying so hard?

LEVEL 7 LESSON 8

2. 어디에 가길래 그렇게 짐을 많이 싸요?

[eo-di-e ga-gil-lae geu-reo-ke ji-meul ma-ni ssa-yo?]

= Where are you going to be packing so much?

= Where are you going? You're packing so much stuff!

3. 누구를 만나길래 그렇게 화장을 열심히 해요?

[nu-gu-reul man-na-gil-lae geu-reo-ke hwa-jang-eul yeol-si-mi hae-yo?]

= Who are you meeting to be putting on so much make-up?

= Why are you making so much effort on your make-up? Who are you meeting?

4. 너무 피곤하길래 그냥 집에 있었어요.

[neo-mu pi-go-na-gil-lae geu-nyang ji-be i-sseo-sseo-yo.]

= I was too tired, so I just stayed at home.

= I realized I was too tired, so I just stayed at home.

5. 효진 씨가 스폰지밥을 좋아하길래, 스폰지를 사 줬어요.

[hyo-jin ssi-ga seu-pon-ji-ba-beul jo-a-ha-gil-lae, seu-pon-ji-reul sa jweo-sseo-yo.]

= I saw that Hyojin likes SpongeBob, so I bought her some sponge.

LEVEL 7 LESSON 9

In this lesson, we are taking a look at the verb ending **-느라고**, which is used to link two verbs or actions as reason and result. There are other expressions in Korean that you can use to talk about the reason for a result, but **-느라고** is used specifically when the result is somewhat negative and you want to mention an excuse or reason.

Structure:

Action + -느라고 + action/state

The verb that comes before **-느라고** should be an action.

(ex. 먹다, 잡다, 읽다, 일하다, etc.)

The verb that comes after **-느라고**, however, can be either an action or a state.

Example:

일하다 + -느라고 + 못 가다

(work) + -느라고 + (can't go)

일하느라고 못 갔어요.

[i-ra-neu-ra-go mot ga-sseo-yo.]

= I couldn't go because I was working.

= I was working so I couldn't go.

Here, 일하다 is your excuse/reason for not being able to go somewhere.

-느라고 is usually associated with negative or undesirable results, but you can sometimes use it in a more neutral sense, to mention a goal or an objective.

Example:

시험 준비 하느라고 바빠요.

[si-heom jun-bi ha-neu-ra-go ba-ppa-yo.]

= I'm busy preparing for an exam.

LEVEL 7 LESSON 9

먹을 것을 찾느라고 잠깐 냉장고를 열었어요.

[meo-geul geo-seul chat-neu-ra-go jam-kkan naeng-jang-go-reul yeo-reo-sseo-yo.]

= I opened the refrigerator for a little bit to look for something to eat.

The tense of the entire sentence is expressed through the second verb, so you can only use -느라고 with the verb stem of the first verb.

Ex)

준비 했느라고 (x) 준비 하느라고 (o)

가겠느라고 (x) 가느라고 (o)

Sample Sentences

1. 운동하느라고 전화 온 줄 몰랐어요.

[un-dong-ha-neu-ra-go jeon-hwa on jul mol-la-sseo-yo.]

= I was working out so I didn't know that you were calling.

= I was working out so I didn't know I received a phone call.

2. 청소하느라고 계속 집에 있었어요.

[cheong-so-ha-neu-ra-go gye-sok ji-be i-sseo-sseo-yo.]

= I was cleaning so I stayed at home all along.

= I stayed at home all day because I was cleaning.

3. 뭐 하느라고 이렇게 늦었어요?

[mwo ha-neu-ra-go i-reo-ke neu-jeo-sseo-yo.]

= What were you doing to be so late?

= Why are you so late?

4. 그때 아마 일 하느라 바쁠 거예요. 그래도 연락해 보세요.

[geu-ttae a-ma il ha-neu-ra ba-ppeul geo-ye-yo. geu-rae-do yeol-la-kae bo-se-yo.]

= At that time, I will probably be busy working. But still try calling me.

LEVEL 7 LESSON 9

5. 학비를 내느라고 돈을 다 썼어요.

[hak-bi-reul nae-neu-ra-go do-neul da sseo-sseo-yo.]

= I spent all the money paying for my tuition fees.

Instead of the full -느라고, you can also use -느라.

(ex. 운동하느라, 청소하느라, 뭐 하느라, 일 하느라, 학비 내느라, etc.)

Two more things to remember:

1. The subject of the two verbs should be the same when you use -느라고.

Ex)

친구가 일하느라, 저는 여기 있었어요. (x)

친구가 일해서, 저는 여기 있었어요. (o)

2. You can't make an imperative or a "let's" sentence using -느라고.

Ex)

지금 쇼핑 하느라, 같이 가자. (x)

지금 쇼핑 할 거니까, 같이 가자. (o)

LEVEL 7 LESSON 10

In this series, we focus on how you can use the grammatical rules and expressions that you have learned so far to train yourself to make more Korean sentences more comfortably and more flexibly.

We will start off with **THREE key sentences**, and practice changing parts of these sentences so that you don't end up just memorizing the same three sentences. We want you to be able to be as flexible as possible with the Korean sentences you can make.

Key Sentence #1

그 사람은 지금 음악 듣느라고, 아무리 불러 봤자 못 들어요.

[geu sa-ra-meun ji-geum eu-mak deut-neu-ra-go, a-mu-ri bul-leo bwat-ja mot deu-reo-yo.]

= He's listening to music now so no matter how much you try to call him, he can't hear you.

Key Sentence #2

뭐라고 말했길래 그 사람이 저를 모르는 척 해요?

[mwo-ra-go ma-raet-gil-lae geu sa-ra-mi jeo-reul mo-reu-neun cheek hae-yo?]

= What did you say to make him pretend not to know me?

Key Sentence #3

제가 말한 것처럼 했군요!

[je-ga ma-ran geot-cheo-reom haet-gun-yo!]

= You really did like I said!

Expansion & variation practice with key sentence #1

LEVEL 7 LESSON 10

0. Original Sentence:

그 사람은 지금 음악 듣느라고, 아무리 불러 봤자 못 들어요.

= He's listening to music now so no matter how much you try to call him, he can't hear you.

1.

그 사람은 지금 음악 듣느라고 = he is listening to music now so,

저 지금 전화 받느라고 = I'm talking on the phone now so,

아까 텔레비전 보느라고 = I was watching TV earlier so,

시험 공부 하느라고 = I was studying for an exam so,

2.

아무리 불러 봤자 못 들어요 = no matter how hard you try to call him, he can't hear you

아무리 노력해 봤자 안 돼요 = no matter how much effort you make, you can't do it

아무리 걱정해 봤자 소용 없어요 = no matter how much you worry, it's of no use

아무리 서둘러 봤자 이미 늦었어요 = no matter how much we hurry up, we are already late

Expansion & variation practice with key sentence #2

0. Original Sentence:

뭐라고 말했길래 그 사람이 저를 모르는 척 해요?

= What did you say to make him pretend not to know me?

1.

뭐라고 말했길래 = what did you say to ...

LEVEL 7 LESSON 10

아침에 비가 오길래 = I saw that it was raining in the morning so ...

집에 우유가 없길래 = I found that there was no milk at home so ...

조용하길래 = I realized that it was quiet so ...

2.

그 사람이 저를 모르는 척 해요 = he pretends not to know me

저랑 친한 척 하지 마세요 = Don't pretend you are close friends with me

그냥 바쁜 척 했어요 = I just pretended I was busy

걱정 없는 척 했어요 = I pretended I wasn't worried

Expansion & variation practice with key sentence #3

0. Original Sentence:

제가 말한 것처럼 했군요!

= You really did like I said!

1.

제가 말한 것처럼 = like (what) I said

우리 어제 이야기한 것처럼 = like we discussed yesterday

영화 배우처럼 = like a movie actor

처음처럼 = like the beginning

2.

했군요 = I see that you did it!

그랬군요 = I see THAT is what happened

LEVEL 7 LESSON 10

한국에 오래 살았군요 = I see that you've lived in Korea for a long time

이게 제일 좋은 거군요 = I see that this is the best one

LEVEL 7 LESSON 11

In English, when you want to say "make someone do something" or "make something do something", you need that extra word "make" or other words such as "let", "have", etc. But in Korean, this works in a slightly different way. In Level 6 Lesson 21, we introduced the suffixes - **이/히/리/기**- that makes a verb "passive voice". These same suffixes are also used to convert a verb into the causative verb.

Causative suffixes:

-이-

-히-

-리-

-기-

-우-

-구-

-추-

There are general rules for where these suffixes are used, but there are a lot of exceptions so it's best to learn by trial and error as well as by looking at a lot of common examples.

Not all the verbs, however, can be changed into causative verbs by adding these suffixes. You can't form a causative verb with -**이/히/리/기/우/구/추**- when the verb is already a transitive verb. For example, "to push" is 밀다 in Korean and it's already a transitive verb. So if you add -리 to it and make it 밀리다, it is changed to the passive voice, "to be pushed".

At first, it will be easier for you to "understand" these suffixes than to "use" them.

LEVEL 7 LESSON 11

When a certain verb doesn't work with these suffixes, you can still change it into the causative form by adding -게 하다 [-ge ha-da]. An example of such verbs is 가다 [ga-da]. 가다 doesn't work with -이/히/리/기/우/구/추-, so you can only say "가게 하다" to say "to make someone go".

All verbs can be changed into the causative form by using -게 하다.

Some verbs can be changed into the causative form by using -이/히/리/기/우/구/추-.

(These verbs are more commonly used with -이/히/리/기/우/구/추- than with -게 하다.)

1. -이-

-이- is used mostly after a vowel or sometimes after ㅏ.

Ex)

녹다 = to melt / 녹이다 = to make something melt, to melt something

보다 = to see / 보이다 = to show

높다 = to be high / 높이다 = to make something higher, to heighten

2. -히-

-히- is used mostly after ㅏ, ㅓ, or ㅕ.

Ex)

입다 = to wear / 입히다 = to make someone wear something

읽다 = to read / 읽히다 = to make someone read something

앉다 = to sit / 앉히다 = to seat someone, to make someone sit

밝다 = to be bright / 밝히다 = to brighten

LEVEL 7 LESSON 11

3. -리-

-리- is used mostly after ㄹ or ㄷ irregular.

Ex)

울다 = to cry / 울리다 = to make someone cry

놀다 = to play / 놀리다 = to let/make someone play, to tease

4. -기-

-기- is used mostly after ㄴ, ㄹ, or ㅅ.

Ex)

신다 = to wear (shoes) / 신기다 = to make someone wear (shoes)

안다 = to hug / 안기다 = to make someone hug someone

5. -우/구/추-

-우/구/추- have too many exceptions to generalize the rule.

낮다 = to be low / 낮추다 = to lower, to make something lower

맞다 = to fit / 맞추다 = to guess correctly, to make something fit

자다 = to sleep / 재우다 = to make someone sleep

크다 = to be big / 키우다 = to make something bigger, to grow

차다 = to be filled up / 채우다 = to fill

LEVEL 7 LESSON 11

하다 and 시키다

If you remember from the passive voice lessons, 하다 changes to 되다 when you make it passive. When you want to use 하다 and say "make someone do something", you can use the word 시키다 [si-ki-da]. This can also be applied to many "noun+-하다" verbs.

Examples:

공부하다 = to study / 공부시키다 = to make someone study

준비하다 = to prepare / 준비시키다 = to get someone ready

Sample Sentences

1. 아이들 울리지 마세요.

[a-i-deul ul-li-ji ma-se-yo.]

= Don't make the kids cry.

2. 너무 높으니까 좀 낮춰 주세요.

[neo-mu no-peu-ni-kka jom nat-chwo ju-se-yo.]

= It's too high, so lower it a little.

3. 다른 것도 보여 주세요.

[da-reun geot-do bo-yeo ju-se-yo.]

= Show me some other things, too.

4. 제가 너무 바빠서 다른 사람한테 시켰어요.

[je-ga neo-mu ba-ppa-seo da-reun sa-ram-han-te si-kyeo-sseo-yo.]

= I was too busy so I made another person do it.

LEVEL 7 LESSON 11

5. 아이 세 명을 키우고 있어요.

[a-i se myeong-eul ki-u-go i-sseo-yo.]

= I am raising three kids.

Even More Examples

1. 좁다 = to be narrow / 좁히다 = to make something narrower

2. 넓다 = to be wide / 넓히다 = to widen

3. 남다 = to remain / 남기다 = to leave (a comment), to leave something over

4. 숨다 = to hide / 숨기다 = to hide something, to make something hidden

5. 넘다 = to go over / 넘기다 = to make something go over something

LEVEL 7 LESSON 12

In this lesson, we are taking a look at the verb ending **-더라** [-deo-ra]. You will hear this often in situations where one person is telling another what they found out or experienced.

What is **-더라**?

-더라 [-deo-ra] is used when you are telling someone else about a new fact that you have learned about, by experiencing (i.e. seeing, finding, realizing, etc) something yourself.

Examples:

예쁘다 [ye-ppeu-da] = to be pretty

예뻐요 [ye-ppeo-yo] = (She's/It's) pretty.

--> 예쁘 + -더라 = 예쁘더라 [ye-ppeu-deo-ra] = She's pretty! / I saw her and she's so pretty!

춥다 [chup-da] = to be cold

추워요 [chu-wo-yo] = It's cold.

--> 춥 + -더라 = 춥더라 [chup-deo-ra] = It was so cold! / I went there and it was so cold!

Like in the examples above, when you use -더라, it should be about a past action, because you are talking about something that you've already experienced.

What is the difference between **-더라**, **-더라고** and **-더라고요**?

Basically it's -더라 [-deo-ra], but you can add -고 [-go] to slightly change the meaning. When you add -요 [-yo] at the end, you already know that it makes the sentence more polite.

When you use -더라, you tell someone a fact about something, based on what you saw or experienced, but in more 'exclamatory' way.

When you use -더라고 instead of -더라, the tone of your sentence is more calm, and it sounds

LEVEL 7 LESSON 12

less excited and conclusive than when you say -더라.

Examples:

나는 그거 좋더라. [na-neun geu-geo jo-teo-ra]. = (I check it out and) I like it.

나는 그거 좋더라고. [na-neun geu-geo jo-teo-ra-go.] = (I check it out and) I like it. [More calm and neutral]

How do you say -더라 in 존댓말?

You can change -더라 to 존댓말 quiet easily just by adding -요 at the end. With -더라, however, it's a little bit different. You need to use the ending -던데요.

예쁘더라. --> 예쁘던데요.

빠르더라. --> 빠르던데요.

And naturally, you can also make it change back to 반말 by getting ride of -요 at the end of -던데요.

Sample Sentences

1. 그 영화 어제 봤는데, 재밌더라!

(재미있던데요!/재미있더라고!/재미있더라고요!)

= I saw that movie yesterday, and it was fun!

2. 어제 경화 씨를 만났는데, 머리를 염색했더라.

(염색했는데요./염색했더라고./염색했더라고요.)

= I met Kyung-hwa yesterday and she had dyed her hair.

LEVEL 7 LESSON 12

3. 싱가포르에 처음 가 봤는데, 정말 덥더라.

(덥던데요./덥더라고./덥더라고요.)

= I went to Singapore for the first time, and it's really hot there.

4. 윤아 씨한테 물어봤는데, 모르더라.

(모르던데요./모르더라고./모르더라고요.)

= I asked Yoona, and she doesn't know.

5. 아까 효진 씨를 만났는데, 남자친구랑 있더라.

(있던데요./있더라고./있더라고요.)

= I met Hyojin earlier, and she was with her boyfriend.

Remember!

1. -더라 normally doesn't work with statements about one's own will or action.

Ex) 아침에 일어났는데 내가 바쁘더라. (x)

2. You can use -더라 about your own emotions, but normally not about other people's emotions.

Ex) 걱정되더라 means YOU are worrying about other people.

석진 씨가 걱정되더라 can be used if YOU are worried about 석진 but you can't use it when 석진 is worried.

3. You can NOT use -더라 when you have NOT experienced, seen, or read about something yourself.

Ex) 콘서트에 갔는데, 가수가 노래를 잘하더라. (o) / 콘서트에 못 갔는데, 가수가 노래를 잘하더라. (x)

LEVEL 7 LESSON 13 - WORD BUILDER 13

Word Builder lessons are designed to help you understand how to expand your vocabulary by learning/understanding some common and basic building blocks of Korean words. The words and letters introduced through Word Builder lessons are not necessarily all Chinese characters, or 한자 [han-ja]. Though many of them are based on Chinese characters, the meanings can be different from modern-day Chinese. Your goal, through these lessons, is to understand how words are formed and remember the keywords in Korean to expand your Korean vocabulary from there. You certainly don't have to memorize the Hanja characters, but if you want to, feel free!

Today's keyword is **기**.

The Chinese character for this is 機. There are many other Chinese characters (or Hanja letters) that are used for 기, so keep in mind that not all the words that have 기 in them have related meanings.

The word 기 (機) is related to "frame", "machine" or "loom".

기 (frame) + 계 (machine) = **기계** 機械 [gi-gye] = **machine**

기 (frame) + 회 (to meet) = **기회** 機會 [gi-hoe] = **opportunity, chance**

비 (to fly) + 행 (to go about) + 기 (machine) = **비행기** 飛行機 [bi-haeng-gi] = **airplane**

기 (airplane) + 내 (inside) + 식 (food, meal) = **기내식** 機內食 [gi-nae-sik] = **in-flight meal**

세 (to wash) + 탁 (to wash) + 기 (machine) = **세탁기** 洗濯機 [se-tak-gi] = **washing machine**

전 (electricity) + 화 (to talk, dialog) + 기 (machine) = **전화기** 電話機 [jeon-hwa-gi] = **telephone**

LEVEL 7 LESSON 13 - WORD BUILDER 13

기 (frame) + 관 (relations) = **기관** 機關 [gi-gwan] = **organization**

교육 (education) + 기관 (organization) = **교육 기관** 教育機關 [gyo-yuk gi-gwan] = educational organization

언론 (press) + 기관 (organization) = **언론 기관** 言論機關 [eon-lon gi-gwan] = **the media, the press**

정부 (government) + 기관 (organization) = **정부 기관** 政府機關 [jeong-bu gi-gwan] = **government organization**

복 (to overlap) + 사 (to copy) + 기 (machine) = **복사기** 複寫機 [bok-sa-gi] = **copying machine**

선 (fan) + 풍 (wind) + 기 (machine) = **선풍기** 扇風機 [seon-pung-gi] = **electric fan**

자 (automatic, self) + 판 (to sell) + 기 (machine) = **자판기** 自販機 = **vending machine**

계 (to count) + 산 (to count) + 기 (machine) = **계산기** 計算機 **calculator**

발 (to generate, to develop) + 전 (electricity) + 기 (machine) = **발전기** 發電機 = **electricity generator**

사 (to copy) + 진 (real) + 기 (machine) = **사진기** 寫真機 = **camera**

LEVEL 7 LESSON 14

In this lesson, we are going to look at how to say "no matter how ..." in Korean.

To say this, you need to know two key parts: one is the word **아무리** [a-mu-ri], and the other is the suffix **-아/어/여도** [-a/eo/yeo-do] (introduced in Level 3 Lesson 20).

Construction:

아무리 + Verb Stem + -아/어/여도

= No matter how + verb/adverb/adjective ...

아무리 [a-mu-ri] has a definition, but it's rarely used on its own to define or mean anything. This word is usually used with -아/어/여도 or other endings that mean "even if" or "however". You COULD say the same thing without 아무리, but amazingly makes the meaning of the entire sentence much stronger and clearer.

Examples

아무리 바빠도 [a-mu-ri ba-ppa-do] = no matter how busy you are

아무리 어려워도 [a-mu-ri eo-ryeo-wo-do] = no matter how difficult it is

아무리 심심해도 [a-mu-ri sim-sim-hae-do] = no matter how bored you are

* You can tell the tense and the voice, as well as the subject of the entire sentence from the context.

Using **아무리** with nouns

Sometimes you can use **아무리** with nouns, but in order to make them 'verbs', you need to add the -이다 verb. For example, if you want to say 부자 [bu-ja], "a rich person", you need to change it to 부자이다 and the -이다 part changes to either -아/어/여도 or -(이)라도.

LEVEL 7 LESSON 14

Ex)

No matter how rich you are

= Even if you are a rich person

= 아무리 부자여도 [a-mu-ri bu-ja-yeo-do]

= 아무리 부자라도 [a-mu-ri bu-ja-ra-do]

More examples

아무리 미인이라도 = 아무리 미인이여도 = no matter how much of a beauty she is

아무리 바보라도 = 아무리 바보여도 = no matter how big of a fool you are

Using 아무리 with other endings

You can express similar meaning with other endings. 아무리 -아/어/여도 can be replaced with 아무리 -어/어/여 봤자 (Level 7 Lesson 7), 아무리 -고 싶어도, 아무리 -려고 해도, 아무리 -(으/느)ㄴ다고 해도, etc., to express similar meanings. However, the sentences will all have subtle differences based on the core meaning of the 2nd part.

Ex)

아무리 공부해도 [a-mu-ri gong-bu-hae-do] (most neutral) = no matter how much you study

아무리 공부해 봤자 [a-mu-ri gong-bu-hae bwat-ja] (least hopeful) = no matter how much you study

아무리 공부하고 싶어도 [a-mu-ri gong-bu-ha-go si-peo-do] = no matter how much you want to study

아무리 공부하려고 해도 [a-mu-ri gong-bu-ha-ryeo-go hae-do] = no matter how much you are going to try to study

아무리 공부한다고 해도 [a-mu-ri gong-bu-han-da-go hae-do] (less hopeful) = no matter how

LEVEL 7 LESSON 14

much you study

아무리 + Verb Stem + -아/어/여도 그렇지...

In addition to the basic structure of -아/어/여도, there is also a commonly used structure, -아/어/여도 그렇지, that is used with 아무리. When you add "그렇지", the sentence can be used on its own, without the next part following. Here, 그렇지 means "but still...".

Ex)

아무리 어려워도 = no matter how difficult it is,

아무리 어려워도 그렇지. = I know it's difficult, but still... / No matter how difficult it is, still....

Sample Sentences

1. 아무리 늦어도 2시까지에는 오세요.

[a-mu-ri neu-jeo-do du-si-kka-ji-neun o-se-yo.]

= No matter how late you are, be there by 2.

= Come by 2 at the latest.

2. 아무리 싫어도, 안 싫은 척 해 주세요.

[a-mu-ri si-reo-do, an si-reun cheok hae ju-se-yo.]

= No matter how much you hate him, please pretend you don't hate him.

3. 아무리 맛있어도 이제 그만 먹어요.

[a-mu-ri ma-si-sseo-do i-je geu-man meo-geo-yo.]

= No matter how delicious it is, stop eating now.

4. 아무리 비싸도 제가 사 줄게요.

LEVEL 7 LESSON 14

[a-mu-ri bi-ssa-do je-ga sa jul-ge-yo.]

= No matter how expensive it is, I'll buy it for you.

5. 아무리 학생이라도 공부만 하는 건 아니에요.

[a-mu-ri hak-saeng-i-ra-do gong-bu-man ha-neun geon a-ni-e-yo.]

= Even if you are a student, you don't always study.

= Even students don't always study.

LEVEL 7 LESSON 15

Sometimes, you forget the name of someone, something, or some place. Sometimes you don't remember what someone else has said or on what date something happened. In those situations, you can say things like "What was it?", "What was it again?", "What was I going to say?", "Where were we going to meet tonight?", etc. In this lesson, let's take a look at how to say those phrases in Korean.

Key structures

1. **-더라?** [-deo-ra?] (Only possible with casual language and monologue)
2. **-았/(이)었/였지?** [-at/-i-eot/-yeot-ji?] (Only possible with casual language and monologue)
3. **-았/(이)었/였죠?** [-at/-i-eot/-yeot-jyo?] (Only possible with formal language)

Usage of "-더라?" (Only possible with casual language and monologue)

You can add -더라? at the end of the verb stem of an action verb to say "I forgot. What was it that ...". But when you want to use -더라? with a noun, you need to change the noun into the verb form by adding -이다.

→ Noun + -이다 (to be) + -더라?

But you can drop -이 when the noun ends with a vowel, therefore if a noun ends with a vowel (such as 나무, 여자, 남자, 누구, etc), you can simply add -더라? at the end.

Examples

이거 누구 책이에요? [i-geo nu-gu chae-gi-e-yo?] = Whose book is this? / This is whose book?

→ 이거 누구 책이더라? [i-geo nu-gu chae-gi-deo-ra?]

= Whose book was this again? I forgot, whose book is this?

LEVEL 7 LESSON 15

효진 씨 생일이 언제예요? [hyo-jin ssi saeng-i-ri eon-je-ye-yo?] = When is Hyojin's birthday?

효진 씨 생일이 언제더라? [hyo-jin ssi saeng-i-ri eon-je-deo-ra?]

= When was Hyojin's birthday again? / When is Hyojin's birthday? I forgot.

이거 어떻게 해요? [i-geo eo-tteo-ke hae-yo?] = How do you do this?

이거 어떻게 하더라? [i-geo eo-tteo-ke ha-deo-ra?]

= How do you do this? Can you tell me again?

Usage of “-았/(이)었/였지?” (Only possible with casual language and monologue)

-였지? basically has the same usage and construction as -더라?. So you can change the endings of all the sentences above to -였지.

이거 누구 책이더라? [i-geo nu-gu chae-gi-deo-ra?]

→ 이거 누구 책이었지? [i-geo nu-gu chae-gi-eot-ji?]

효진 씨 생일이 언제더라? [hyo-jin ssi saeng-i-ri eon-je-deo-ra?]

→ 효진 씨 생일이 언제였지? [hyo-jin ssi saeng-i-ri eon-je-yeot-ji?]

이거 어떻게 하더라? [i-geo eo-tteo-ke ha-deo-ra?]

→ 이거 어떻게 했지? [i-geo eo-tteo-ke haet-ji?]

The meanings are the same, but the latter (using -이었/였지?) has a slightly stronger nuance toward the past tense.

Usage of “-았/(이)었/였죠?” (Only possible with formal language)

LEVEL 7 LESSON 15

-이었/였죠? is basically the same as -이었/였지? but is in the 존댓말 form. -이었/였죠? is originally just -이었/였지 + 요? but when pronounced fast and naturally, it becomes -죠 at the end. Therefore you can use all the example sentences above with -죠? or -지요? at the end to make the sentences more polite and formal.

Usage with -다고 and -라고

Since you can use -더라?, -이었/였지? and -이었/였죠? when checking with someone what something is called, when something is scheduled, etc, you can often hear people say these together with -다고 or -라고. This is because -다고 and -라고 are expressed in order to 'quote' someone.

이거 뭐였죠?

[i-geo mwo-yeot-jyo?]

= What was this again? / What is this? I forgot.

이거 뭐라고 했죠?

[i-geo mwo-ra-go haet-jyo?]

= What did you say this was?

More Sample Sentences

1. 석진 씨가 언제 온다고 했죠?

[seok-jin ssi-ga eon-je on-da-go haet-jyo?]

= When did you say Seokjin was going to come?

2. 석진 씨가 한국에 언제 왔죠?

[seok-jin ssi-ga han-gu-ge eon-je wat-jyo?]

LEVEL 7 LESSON 15

= When did Seokjin come to Korea? I forgot.

3. 석진 씨가 한국에 언제 오더라?

[seok-jin ssi-ga han-gu-ge eon-je o-deo-ra?]

= When is Seokjin coming to Korea? I forgot.

4. 이거 누구 거더라?

[i-geo nu-gu geo-deo-ra?]

= Whose is this? I forgot.

5. 이거 누구 거라고 했더라?

[i-geo nu-gu geo-ra-go haet-deo-ra?]

= You said this was whose?

6. 그 사람 이름이 뭐더라?

[geu sa-ram i-reu-mi mwo-deo-ra?]

= What was his name again?

= 그 사람 이름이 뭐였더라?

7. 내일 몇 시에 올 거라고 했죠?

[nae-il myeot si-e ol geo-ra-go haet-jyo?]

= What time did you say you were going to come tomorrow?

8. 이게 한국어로 뭐였죠?

[i-ge han-gu-geo-ro mwo-yeot-jyo?]

= What was this in Korean again?

LEVEL 7 LESSON 16

In this lesson, let us take a look at how to say things like "I said so!", "I told you!", "I told you that this is...", or "I said that I am ..." in Korean, repeating and emphasizing what you have already said before. In Korean, the key ending you need to use to express this is **-다니까(요)/-라니까(요)**. This is not only used to repeat what you have said before, but also to make your point clear by emphasizing it one more time. For a review of how to say "I said that I ..." in a more neutral tone, check out Level 6, Lesson 11.

Using **-다니까(요)** with Verbs

In the present tense, descriptive verbs and action verbs are followed by different endings.

After descriptive verbs, you just add -다니까(요).

Ex)

바쁘다 [ba-ppeu-da] = to be busy

바쁘 + 다니까요 [ba-ppeu-da-ni-kka-yo] = I told you I'm busy. / I said I'm busy.

- 바쁘다니까요! (polite/formal)

- 바쁘다니까! (casual)

After action verbs, you add -(느)ㄴ 다니까(요). You add -는다니까(요) after a verb stem ending with a consonant and -ㄴ 다니까(요) after a verb stem ending with a vowel.

Ex)

모르다 [mo-reu-da] = to not know

모르 + -ㄴ 다니까요 [mo-reun-da-ni-kka-yo] = I told you I don't know. / I said I don't know.

LEVEL 7 LESSON 16

- 모른다니까요! (polite/formal)
- 모른다니까! (casual)

먹다 [meok-da] = to eat

먹 + -는다니까요 [meok-neun-da-ni-kka-yo] = I told you I am going to eat. / I said I'm eating.

- 먹는니까요! (polite/formal)
- 먹는니까! (casual)

In the past tense, both descriptive verbs and action verbs are followed by the same suffixes, -았/었/였 and then -다니까(요).

Ex)

몰랐다니까요. [mol-lat-da-ni-kka-yo.] = I said I didn't know.

벌써 다 했다니까요. [beol-sseo da haet-da-ni-kka-yo.] = I told you I already did it all.

진짜 맛있었다니까요. [jin-jja ma-si-sseot-da-ni-kka-yo.] = I told you it was really delicious.

Using -(이)라니까(요) with Nouns

After nouns, you need to add -(이)라니까(요). You add -이라니까(요) after nouns ending with a consonant and -라니까(요) after nouns ending with a vowel. Since the future tense is expressed through "verb stem + -을 거" and the word 거 is a noun, the future tense is also followed by -라니까(요).

Ex)

학생 [hak-saeng] = student

학생 + -이라니까요 [hak-saeng-i-ra-ni-kka-yo] = I said I'm a student.

LEVEL 7 LESSON 16

가다 [ga-da] = to go

갈 거예요 [gal geo-ye-yo] = I will go.

갈 거라니까요 [gal geo-ra-ni-kka-yo] = I told you I'm going to go.

Using -(으)라니까(요) with Imperative

With imperatives, you need to add -(으)라니까(요) after the verb stem. You add -으라니까(요) after verb stems ending with a consonant and -라니까(요) after verb stems ending with a vowel.

Ex)

보다 [boda] = to look

보 + -라니까(요) = I said look!

잡다 [jap-da] = to grab

잡 + -(으)라니까(요) = I said grab it!

Sample Sentences

1. 빨리 오라니까요. [ppal-li o-ra-ni-kka-yo.]

= I said, come here quickly!

2. 알았다니까요! [a-rat-da-ni-kka-yo!]

= I said I got it!

= I said I understood!

3. 제가 안 했단니까요. [je-ga an haet-da-ni-kka-yo.]

= I said I didn't do it!

LEVEL 7 LESSON 16

4. 저는 죄가 없다니까요. [jeo-neun joe-ga eop-da-ni-kka-yo.]

= I told you I'm innocent.

5. 혼자 갈 거라니까요. [hon-ja gal geo-ra-ni-kka-yo.]

= I said I'm going alone!

6. 저는 정말 몰랐다니까요. [jeo-neun jeong-mal mol-lat-da-ni-kka-yo.]

= I said I really didn't know.

7. 매일 운동한다니까요. [mae-il un-dong-han-da-ni-kka-yo.]

= I said I exercise everyday.

8. 다음달부터 열심히 공부할 거라니까요. [da-eum-dal-bu-teo yeol-si-mi gong-bu-hal geo-ra-ni-kka-yo.]

= I said I'm going to study hard starting next month!

9. 그럴 수도 있다니까요. [geu-reol su-do it-da-ni-kka-yo.]

= I said it's possible too.

10. 공부 좀 하라니까요. [gong-bu jom ha-ra-ni-kka-yo.]

= I said, "do some studying!"

LEVEL 7 LESSON 17

Let's take a look at how to say "They say ...", "I hear that ...", or how to re-tell someone what you've heard from someone else. There are mainly two ways of saying this in Korean, and we are going to learn how to use the endings **-(ㄴ/는)대(요)** and **-(이)래(요)** in this lesson. These endings might sound complicated, but in fact, they are just combinations of the grammar points that you have already learned before.

In Level 5 Lesson 17, you learned the following grammar points:

-(ㄴ/는)다고

-(이)라고

These are used for quoting what someone has said and are also used with verbs related to speech. In that lesson, the following sample sentences were introduced:

뭐라고 했어요? = What did they say?

내일 온다고 했어요. = They said they would come tomorrow.

언제 온다고 했어요? = When did they say they would come?

이거 재미있다고 들었어요. = I heard that this is fun.

You can make all of the above sentences shorter by using the endings **-(ㄴ/는)대(요)** and **-(이)래(요)**.

-(ㄴ/는)다고 해요 --> -(ㄴ/는)대요

-(이)라고 해요 --> -(이)래요

Although it's basically the same thing, the latter forms are more commonly used in everyday

LEVEL 7 LESSON 17

spoken Korean because they are shorter and much easier to pronounce.

Construction

[Present Tense]

Action Verbs + -(느)ㄴ대요

Ex) 지금 간대요. (= They say they are going now.)

Descriptive Verbs + -대요

Ex) 바쁘대요. (= He says that he's busy now.)

Nouns + -(이)래요

Ex) 친구래요. (= She says that he's a friend.)

[Past Tense]

Action Verbs + -았/었/였대요

Ex) 어제 만났대요. (= I heard they met yesterday.)

Descriptive Verbs + -았/었/였대요

Ex) 아팠대요. (= I heard she was sick.)

Nouns + -이었/였대요

Ex) 학생이었대요. (= They say they were students.)

[Future Tense]

Action Verbs + -(으)ㄹ 거 + 래요

Ex) 내일 만날 거래요. (= He says he will meet them tomorrow.)

LEVEL 7 LESSON 17

Descriptive Verbs + -(으)ㄴ 거 + 래요

Ex) 추울 거래요. (= They say it will be cold.)

Nouns + -일 거 + 래요

Ex) 마지막일 거래요. (= They say it will be the last time.)

When you use the -(ㄴ/는)대요/-(이)래요 endings, you usually deliver a piece of information that the other person doesn't know, or that you think they don't know. If you want to emphasize the fact that YOU, at least, have heard something and it might not be the exact truth, you need to use verbs such as "듣다 (= to hear)" and say "-다고/라고 들었어요".

Sample Sentences

1. 이게 제일 좋대요.

[i-ge je-il jo-tae-yo.]

= They say that this is the best.

2. 여기 정말 유명하대요.

[yeo-gi jeong-mal yu-myeong-ha-dae-yo.]

= They say this place is really famous.

3. 몰랐대요.

[mol-lat-dae-yo.]

= He says he didn't know.

4. 벌써 다 끝났대요.

LEVEL 7 LESSON 17

[beol-sseo da kkeun-nat-dae-yo.]

= They say it has ended already.

5. 어딘지 모른대요.

[eo-din-ji mo-reun-dae-yo.]

= He says he doesn't know where it is.

6. 이 사람 정말 유명한 사람이에요.

[i sa-ram jeong-mal yu-myeong-han sa-ra-mi-rae-yo.]

= They say this person is a very famous person.

7. 친구가 내일 이사 간대요.

[chin-gu-ga nae-il i-sa gan-dae-yo.]

= My friend says she's moving tomorrow.

8. 제 친구가 한국에 올 거래요.

[je chin-gu-ga han-gu-ge ol geo-rae-yo.]

= My friend says he will come to Korea.

9. 그 사람은 한국에 와 본 적이 없대요.

[geu sa-ra-meun han-gu-ge wa bon jeo-gi eop-dae-yo.]

= He says he's never come to Korea.

10. 효진 씨는 어제 집에도 안 갔대요.

[hyo-jin ssi-neun eo-je-do ji-be an gat-dae-yo.]

= They say Hyojin, once again, didn't go home yesterday.

LEVEL 7 LESSON 18

In the previous lesson, we learned how to say "They say ...", or "I hear that ..." in Korean in order to re-tell someone what you've heard from someone else. The structures used for saying these are -(ㄴ/는)대(요) and -(이)래(요).

Let's review a little bit.

1.

제 친구가 지금 바빠요. = My friend is busy now.

→ 제 친구가 지금 바쁘대요. = My friend says that she is busy now.

2.

이게 제일 좋은 거예요. = This is the best one.

→ 이게 제일 좋은 거래요. = They say that this is the best one.

And in this lesson, we are looking at the following structures:

1. -(ㄴ/는)다던데(요)

2. -(이)라던데(요)

Both of these are very similar to the structures introduced in the previous lesson. -(느)ㄴ 다던데(요) is similar to -(ㄴ/는)대(요) (from the first review sentence above) and -(이)라던데(요) is similar to -(이)래(요). Just like -(ㄴ/는)대(요) is an abbreviation of -(ㄴ/는)다고 해(요), -(ㄴ/는)다던데(요) is an abbreviation of -(ㄴ/는)다고 하던데(요). The same applies to -(이)래(요) and -(이)라던데(요).

Difference between -(ㄴ/는)대(요) and -(ㄴ/는)다던데(요)

Whereas -(ㄴ/는)대(요) is used to mainly just re-tell a story or deliver certain information, when

LEVEL 7 LESSON 18

you use -(ㄴ/는)다던데(요), you imply that you want some kind of reaction or response from the listener.

지금 와요. = She's coming now.

지금 온대요. = She says she's coming now.

지금 온다던데요. = She says she's coming now. (+ (ex) Should we wait?/What do you think?)

유명해요. = He's famous.

유명하대요. = They say he's famous.

유명하다던데요. = They say he's famous. (+ (ex) But you said otherwise, right?)

* The same applies to -(이)래(요) and -(이)라던데(요).

학생이에요. = He's a student.

학생이래요. = He says he's a student.

학생이라던데요. = He says he's a student. (+ (ex) What shall we do then?)

공원에요. = They are at a park. / It is a park.

공원이래요. = They say they are at a park.

공원이라던데요. = They say they are at a park. (+ (ex) Shall we go there?)

Difference between -(ㄴ/는)다던데(요) and -(ㄴ/는)다는데(요)

There is a slight difference in nuance between -던데 and -는데, and it's based on the fact that -던 is usually associated with the past tense whereas -는 is associated with the present tense. We are going to look at -던 in a more detail in a future lesson, so please just note the difference for now.

LEVEL 7 LESSON 18

지금 온다던데요. = They said that they would come here now.

지금 온다는데요. = They are saying that they will come here now.

유명하다던데요. = I heard that she's famous.

유명하다는데요. = He is saying that she's famous.

* The same applies to -(이)래(요), -(이)라던데(요) and -(이)라는데(요).

학생이라던데요. = They told me that they were students.

학생이라는데요. = They say that they are students.

공원이란데요. = They said that they were at a park.

공원이란데요. = They say that they are at a park.

Sample Sentences

1. 여기 위험하다던데요.

[yeo-gi wi-heom-ha-da-deon-de-yo.]

= I heard that this place is dangerous. (+ (ex) What do you think?)

2. 혼자 갈 거라던데요.

[hon-ja gal geo-ra-deon-de-yo.]

= She said she would go there alone. (+ (ex) Shall I talk to her again? / You can't go with her.)

3. 그 사람도 모른다던데요.

[geu sa-ram-do mo-reun-da-deon-de-yo.]

LEVEL 7 LESSON 18

= He said that he doesn't know either. (+ (ex) So why keep asking him?)

4. 벌써 다 끝났다던데요.

[beol-sseo da kkeut-nat-da-deon-de-yo.]

= They said that it was already all over. (+ (ex) There was nothing I could do.)

5. 한국에 겨울에 가면 많이 춥다던데요.

[han-gu-geo gyeo-u-re ga-myeon ma-ni chup-da-deon-de-yo.]

= I heard that it's very cold in Korea if you go there in winter. (+ (ex) Perhaps you should pack more clothes.)

LEVEL 7 LESSON 19

In this lesson, let's take a look at how to make reported questions in Korean. Reported questions are questions within sentences such as, "I asked him when he was going to finish his work"; "He asked me how old I was"; etc. In writing, you can quote the actual questions word for word, but when you speak with others, it is more natural to form reported question sentences. Let's learn how to do that in Korean.

Construction

To make a reported question, you use the ending **-냐고** [-nya-go] and add a question-related word.

Verb stem + -냐고 + Question related word

Examples of question related words

1. 묻다 [mut-da] = to ask
2. 물어보다 [mu-reo-bo-da] = to ask
3. 말하다 [ma-ra-da] = to say
4. 질문하다 [jil-mun-ha-da] = to ask a question

Examples of reported questions

1.

학생이에요?

= Are you a student?

→ 학생 + -이 (verb stem) + -냐고

→ 학생이냐고

→ 학생이냐고 물어봤어요.

LEVEL 7 LESSON 19

= They asked me if I was a student. / I asked her if she was a student.

2.

뭐예요?

= What is it?

→ 뭐 + -이 (verb stem) + -냐고

→ 뭐(이)냐고 → 뭐냐고

→ 뭐냐고 물어봤어요.

= She asked what this is. / I asked what it is. / They asked what that is.

3.

누가 그렇게 말했어요?

= Who said so?

→ 누가 + 그렇게 + 말하 (verb stem) + -았/었/였 (past tense suffix) + -냐고

→ 누가 그렇게 말했냐고

→ 누가 그렇게 말했냐고 물었어요.

= I asked who said so. / They asked who said such a thing.

* After a noun, you need to add 이다 (= to be) to make it a verb, but when the noun ends with a vowel and without the last consonant, you can omit -이. For example, 누구 is followed by 이다, but when also followed by -냐고, it changes to 누구냐고 instead of 누구이냐고.

Sample Sentences

1. 몇 시에 올 거냐고 물어보세요.

LEVEL 7 LESSON 19

[myeot si-e ol geo-nya-go mu-reo-bo-se-yo.]

= Ask him what time he will come here.

2. 왜 안 왔냐고 물어봤는데, 대답을 안 해요.

[wae an wat-nya-go mu-reo-bwat-neun-de, dae-da-beul an hae-yo.]

= I asked him why he didn't come here, but he won't answer.

3. 저한테 어디 가냐고 말했어요.

[jeo-han-te eo-di ga-nya-go ma-rae-sseo-yo.]

= He asked me where I was going.

4. 저는 몇 살이냐고 물어보는 게 제일 싫어요.

[jeo-neun myeot sa-ri-nya-go mu-reo-bo-neun ge je-il si-reo-yo.]

= I hate it the most when people ask me how old I am.

5. 저도 가야 되냐고 물어봐 주세요.

[jeo-do ga-ya doe-nya-go mu-reo-bwa ju-se-yo.]

= Please ask them if I have to come along, too.

LEVEL 7 LESSON 20

In this series, we focus on how you can use the grammatical rules and expressions that you have learned so far to train yourself to make more Korean sentences more comfortably and more flexibly.

We will start off with THREE key sentences, and practice changing parts of these sentences so that you don't end up just memorizing the same three sentences. We want you to be able to be as flexible as possible with the Korean sentences you can make.

Key Sentence #1

어제 효진 씨를 만났는데, 머리를 빨간 색으로 염색했더라고요.

[eo-je hyo-jin ssi-reul man-nat-neun-de, meo-ri-reul ppal-gan sae-geu-ro yeom-sae-kaet-deo-ra-go-yo.]

= I met Hyojin yesterday and I saw that she had dyed her hair red.

Key Sentence #2

경화 씨는 일 끝난 다음에 친구 만난대요.

[kyeong-hwa ssi-neun il kkeut-nan da-eu-me chin-gu man-nan-dae-yo.]

= Kyung-hwa says she is going to meet her friends after her work finishes.

Key Sentence #3

아무리 피곤해도 지금 자면 안 돼요.

[a-mu-ri pi-gon-hae-do ji-geum ja-myeon an dwae-yo.]

= No matter how tired you are, you shouldn't sleep now.

LEVEL 7 LESSON 20

Expansion & variation practice with key sentence #1

0. Original Sentence:

어제 효진 씨를 만났는데, 머리를 빨간색으로 염색했더라고요.

= I met Hyojin yesterday and you know what, I saw that she had dyed her hair red.

1.

어제 효진 씨를 만났는데 = I met Hyojin yesterday, and you know what,

어제 친구들이랑 영화를 봤는데 = I saw a movie with my friends yesterday, and you know what,

저도 그 책 읽었는데 = I read that book too, and you know what,

석진 씨한테 물어봤는데 = I asked Seokjin, and you know what,

집에 가서 냉장고 문을 열었는데 = I went home and opened the refrigerator door, and you know what,

2.

머리를 빨간색으로 염색했더라고요. = I saw that she had dyed her hair red.

사람이 정말 많더라고요. = (I saw that) there were so many people there.

이게 제일 좋더라고요. = (I know from my experience that) this one is the best.

정말 재미있더라고요. = I found it a lot of fun.

생각보다 어렵더라고요. = I found it more difficult than I had thought.

Expansion & variation practice with key sentence #2

LEVEL 7 LESSON 20

0. Original Sentence:

경화 씨는 일 끝난 다음에 친구 만난대요.

= Kyung-hwa says she is going to meet her friends after her work finishes.

1.

일 끝난 다음에 = after work finishes

책 다 읽은 다음에 = after you finish reading the book

영화 본 다음에 = after we watch the movie

이메일 답장 한 다음에 = after I reply to the email

집에 간 다음에 = after you go home

2.

친구 만난대요 = she says that she's going to meet a friend

오늘 서울은 날씨가 춥대요. = I hear that the weather is cold in Seoul today.

경화 씨가 오늘 효진 씨 만날 거래요. = Kyung-hwa says that she will meet Hyojin today.

여기 스파게티 정말 맛있대요. = I hear that the spaghetti here is really delicious.

윤아 씨 오늘 바쁘대요. = Yoona says that she's busy today.

Expansion & variation practice with key sentence #3

0. Original Sentence:

아무리 피곤해도 지금 자면 안 돼요.

= No matter how tired you are, you shouldn't sleep now.

LEVEL 7 LESSON 20

1.

아무리 피곤해도 = no matter how tired you are

아무리 어려워도 = no matter how difficult it is

아무리 화가 나도 = no matter how upset you are

날씨가 아무리 추워도 = no matter how cold the weather is

책을 아무리 많이 읽어도 = no matter how many books you read

2.

지금 자면 안 돼요 = you shouldn't sleep now

이거 잃어버리면 안 돼요 = you shouldn't lose it

혼자 가면 안 돼요 = you shouldn't go there alone

늦으면 안 돼요 = you shouldn't be late

술 너무 많이 마시면 안 돼요 = you shouldn't drink too much alcohol

LEVEL 7 LESSON 21

In the past few lesson, we have looked at various ways of making reported speech sentences. In this lesson, let us take a look at the verb ending **-(ㄴ/는)다잖아요/-라잖아요**. We introduced a similar ending, **-잖아요**, in Level 5 Lesson 27, which is used to express "Don't you see that ...", "Come on, isn't it ...", etc. By adding the **-(ㄴ/는)다/-라** before **-잖아요**, you add a 'reported speech' function to it.

Review of -잖아요

1. 석진 씨 지금 여기 없어요. = Seokjin is not here now.

→ 석진 씨 지금 여기 없잖아요. = Don't you see that Seokjin is not here now?

2. 오늘 일요일이에요. = Today is Sunday.

→ 오늘 일요일이잖아요. = Come on, it's Sunday.

Usage of -(ㄴ/는)다잖아요/-라잖아요

The construction is the same as in other structures that have **-(ㄴ/는)다** or **-라**. In the present tense, you add **-ㄴ/는다** for action verbs and just **-다** with descriptive verbs. With nouns, you add **-이** from **이다** and add **-라**.

The meaning of this structure is the combination of **-(ㄴ/는)다고/-라고** (reported speech, quotation) and **-잖아요**. Therefore, you can use this structure when you want to say "Don't you see that..." or "Come on ..." while quoting someone.

Ex)

좋아요. = It's good.

좋잖아요. = Come on, it's good. / Isn't it good?

좋다잖아요. = Come on, they say it's good. / Come on, they say they like it.

LEVEL 7 LESSON 21

여기 없어요. = He's not here.

여기 없잖아요. = Don't you see he's not here?

여기 없다잖아요. = Didn't you hear them say he's not here?

혼자 가요. = I go there by myself.

혼자 가잖아요. = You know I go there alone.

혼자 간다잖아요. = Don't you hear me saying that I'm going there alone?

친구 만날 거예요. = He will meet a friend.

친구 만날 거잖아요. = You know he will meet a friend.

친구 만날 거라잖아요. = Come on, he says he will meet a friend.

Sample Sentences

1. 싫다잖아요. 하지 마세요.

[sil-ta-ja-na-yo. ha-ji ma-se-yo.]

= She says she doesn't like it. Don't do it.

2. 효진 씨 지금 바쁘다잖아요.

[hyojin ssi ji-geum ba-ppeu-da-ja-na-yo.]

= Come on, Hyojin says she is busy now.

= Don't you hear Hyojin saying she's busy now?

3. 실수였다잖아요. 용서해 줘요.

[sil-su-yeot-da-ja-na-yo. yong-seo-hae jwo-yo.]

= He says it was a mistake. Forgive him.

LEVEL 7 LESSON 21

4. 아니라잖아요. 왜 그 사람 말을 안 믿어요?

[a-ni-ra-ja-na-yo. wae geu sa-ram ma-reul an mi-deo-yo?]

= Don't you hear him saying it's not true? Why do you not believe what he says?

5. 맞다잖아요!

[mat-da-ja-na-yo!]

= You see? He says it's true!

LEVEL 7 LESSON 22 - WORD BUILDER 14

Word Builder lessons are designed to help you understand how to expand your vocabulary by learning/understanding some common and basic building blocks of Korean words. The words and letters introduced through Word Builder lessons are not necessarily all Chinese characters, or **한자** [han-ja]. Though many of them are based on Chinese characters, the meanings can be different from modern-day Chinese. Your goal, through these lessons, is to understand how words are formed and remember the keywords in Korean to expand your Korean vocabulary from there. You certainly don't have to memorize the Hanja characters, but if you want to, feel free!

Today's keyword is **정**.

The Chinese character for this is 定. There are many other Chinese characters (or Hanja letters) that are used for 정, so keep in mind that not all the words that have 정 in them have related meanings.

The word 정 (定) is related to "to decide", "to choose" or "to correct".

결 (to decide) + 정 (to decide) = **결정** 決定 [gyeol-jeong] = **decision**

인 (to recognize) + 정 (to decide) = **인정** 認定 [in-jeong] = **admitting, approval**

예 (in advance) + 정 (to decide) = **예정** 豫定 [ye-jeong] = **scheduling, planning**

확 (to harden, to solidify) + 정 (to decide) = **확정** 確定 [hwak-jeong] = **confirmation, finalization**

일 (one) + 정 (to decide) = **일정** 一定 [il-jeong] = **fixed, regular, constant**

특 (special, particular) + 정 (to choose) = **특정** 特定 [teuk-jeong] = **particular, specific**

LEVEL 7 LESSON 22 - WORD BUILDER 14

판 (to judge) + 정 (to decide) = **판정** 判定 [pan-jeong] = **judgment, decision**

설 (set) + 정 (to decide) = **설정** 設定 [seol-jeong] = **setting, set-up**

가 (fake) + 정 (to decide) = **가정** 假定 [ga-jeong] = **supposition, assumption**

정 (to decide) + 원 (member) = **정원** 定員 [jeong-won] = **fixed member, capacity**

안 (comfortable) + 정 (to decide) = **안정** 安定 [an-jeong] = **stability, calm**

정 (to decide) + 기 (period) = **정기** 定期 [jeong-gi] = **periodical, regular**

정 (to decide) + 식 (manner, method) = **정식** 定式 [jeong-sik] = **formal, legal**

정 (to decide) + 가 (price) = **정가** 定價 [jeong-ga] = **fixed price, official price**

고 (to solidify, to harden) + 정 (to choose) = **고정** 固定 [go-jeong] = **fixation, fastening**

LEVEL 7 LESSON 23

In this lesson, let us take a look at how to say "no matter whether" someone does something or not. The verb ending you can use to say this in Korean is **-(으)나마나** [-(eu)na-ma-da]. This is very similar to -아/어/여 봤자 (Level 7 Lesson 7), but the difference is that -아/어/여 봤자 has a stronger nuance of "even if you go ahead and do it, you won't achieve what you want", whereas -(으)나마나 is closer to "no matter whether you do it or not, the result is fixed".

Construction

Verb stem + -(으)나마나

Ex) 먹다 → 먹 + -으나마나 = 먹으나마나

Ex) 보다 → 보 + -나마나 = 보나마나

Examples

보나마나, 이상할 거예요.

[bo-na-ma-na, i-sang-hal geo-ye-yo.]

= No matter whether you see it or not, (I'm sure) it will be strange.

= You don't even have to see it. It will be strange.

Sometimes, -(으)나마나 is followed just by the -이다 verb in the form -(으)나마나예요.

보나마나예요.

[bo-na-ma-na-ye-yo.]

= You don't even have to look at it. What you will see is fixed. I know what you will see.

= I don't even have to bother to look at it. I know what I will see.

Sample Sentences

1. 물어보나마나 안 된다고 할 거예요.

LEVEL 7 LESSON 23

[mu-reo-bo-na-ma-na an doen-da-go hal geo-ye-yo.]

= Whether you ask them or not, they will certainly say no.

2. 하나마나 똑같아요.

[ha-na-ma-na tto-kka-ta-yo.]

= No matter whether you do it or not, the result is the same.

3. 이야기를 하나마나 하나도 달라지는 게 없어요.

[i-ya-gi-reul ha-na-ma-da ha-na-do dal-la-ji-neun ge eop-seo-yo.]

= No matter whether you talk to him or not, nothing changes.

4. 보나마나 제가 일등이에요.

[bo-na-ma-na je-ga il-deung-i-e-yo.]

= No need to see. I'm the 1st place winner.

5. 이 책은 읽으나마나예요.

[i cha-geun il-geu-na-ma-na-ye-yo.]

= This book is worthless to read.

LEVEL 7 LESSON 24

In Level 6 Lesson 21 and 23, we looked at how the passive voice works in Korean. In this lesson, let's learn a structure you can use with the passive voice to say that something has been put into a certain state and stays that way.

For example, the verb for "to put something somewhere" is 놓다 [no-ta]. The passive voice is 놓이다 [no-i-da], so you can say 놓였어요 to say "it was put down (on the table/ground/etc)".

Now, the following structure is used when you want to say that something is on the floor/table/etc, but imply that it has been put down there by someone.

Passive Voice + -어 있다

= to have been put into a certain state (by someone) and stay that way

What's the difference between "Passive Voice" and "Passive Voice + -어 있다"?

Passive voice describes that action as it gets done, where as passive voice + -어 있다 expresses the state that the subject is in as a result of the passive action. This 'resultant state' structure is more commonly used in Korean than in English, so things you can express in English with just the passive voice are often expressed through this structure.

Examples

1.
잡다 = to catch
잡히다 = to be caught
잡혀 있다 = to be in custody, to have been caught and is still caught now

2.

LEVEL 7 LESSON 24

깨다 = to break

깨지다 = to be broken, to get shattered

깨져 있다 = to be in a broken state, somebody broke it and it's still in that state

3.

켜다 = to turn on, to switch on

켜지다 = to be turned on, to be switched on

켜져 있다 = somebody turned it on and it's still on

4.

쌓다 = to pile things up

쌓이다 = to be piled up

쌓여 있다 = to have been piled up (e.g. snow)

5.

열다 = to open

열리다 = to get opened

열려 있다 = to have been opened and stay open

****Note that you can't use this structure with transitive verbs.**

Sample Sentences

1. 문이 열려 있어요.

[mu-ni yeol-lyeo i-sseo-yo.]

= The door is open!

LEVEL 7 LESSON 24

2. 에어컨이 아직 켜져 있어요.

[e-eo-keo-ni a-jik kyeo-jyeo i-sseo-yo.]

= The airconditioning is still on.

3. 여기 사과가 한 개 놓여 있어요.

[yeo-gi sa-gwa-ga han gae no-yeo i-sseo-yo.]

= Somebody put an apple here.

= Here's an apple.

4. 이 마을은 산으로 둘러싸여 있어요.

[i ma-eu-reun sa-neu-ro dul-leo-ssa-yeo i-sseo-yo.]

= This town is surrounded by mountains.

5. 파란색으로 칠해져 있는 간판 보여요?

[pa-ran-sae-geu-ro chi-rae-jyeo it-neun gan-pan bo-yeo-yo?]

= Do you see the sign there that's painted in blue?

LEVEL 7 LESSON 25

In the previous lesson (Level 7 Lesson 24), we looked at how you can combine the Passive Voice form with -어 있다 to express a "resultant state". In this lesson, we are looking at a similar, yet fixed, structure using the verb 되다.

되다 = to become, to be done

되다 can be the verb "to become", but it can also work as the passive voice of the verb 하다 and mean "to be done".

-게 되다 = to get to do something, to gradually do something

-게 되다 (Level 4 Lesson 29) expresses how someone or something happens, comes to be in or becomes a certain state

-게 되어 있다 = to be destined to do something, to be bound to be in a certain state

"Passive Voice + -어 있다" expresses a "resultant state" of things, therefore when you say -게 되어 있다, you mean that something is "bound" to be in a certain state or "destined" to happen in a certain way.

Examples

1.

알다 = to know

알게 되다 = to get to know,

알게 되어 있다 = to be in a situation where you are bound to know or find out

2.

보이다 = to be seen

보이게 되다 = to become visible

LEVEL 7 LESSON 25

보이게 되어 있다 = can't help but be visible

3.

하다 = to do

하게 되다 = to get to do

하게 되어 있다 = to be bound to do, to have no other choice but to do

Sample Sentences

1. 공부는 정말 필요하면 열심히 하게 되어 있어요.

[gong-bu-neun jeong-mal pi-ryo-ha-myeon yeol-sim-hi ha-ge doe-eo i-sseo-yo.]

= As for studying, if it's really necessary, you are bound to study hard.

2. 아무리 게을러도, 손님이 오면 청소를 하게 되어 있어요.

[a-mu-ri ge-eul-leo-do, son-ni-mi o-myeon cheong-so-reul ha-ge doe-eo i-sseo-yo.]

= No matter how lazy you are, you are bound to clean the house when a guest comes.

3. 아무리 바빠도, 데이트 시간은 생기게 되어 있어요.

[a-mu-ri ba-ppa-do, de-i-teu si-ga-neun saeng-gi-ge doe-eo i-sseo-yo.]

= No matter how busy you are, you somehow always find time for dating.

4. 영원한 비밀은 없어요. 사람들이 알게 되어 있어요.

[yeong-won-han bi-mi-reun eop-seo-yo. sa-ram-deu-ri al-ge doe-eo i-sseo-yo.]

= There is no eternal secret. People will eventually find out.

5. 재미있게 공부하면 성적도 좋아지게 되어 있어요.

LEVEL 7 LESSON 25

[jae-mi-it-ge gong-bu-ha-myeon seong-jeok-do jo-a-ji-ge doe-eo i-sseo-yo.]

= If you have fun while studying, your grades are bound to get better.

LEVEL 7 LESSON 26

In this lesson, let us take a look at how to say "in addition to + V-ing" or "on top of + V-ing" in Korean. The structure we are looking at is "**-(으/느)ㄴ 데다가**".

How it is formed

"데" by itself means "a place" or "a spot", but it is always attached another Korean word, like in "아픈 데", which means a place that hurts (on your body).

-(에)다가 means "adding to this" or "to this place" as in, "put it over here" ("여기에다가 놓으세요") or "I left it at home" ("집에다가 두고 왔어요").

By adding 데 to -(에)다가, 데다가 is formed, which means "on the place of..." or "adding to the spot where...". When -(으/느)ㄴ is used, it connects other verbs with 데다가. All together, -(으/느)ㄴ 데다가 means "on top of ..." or "in addition to ..."

Construction

[Present tense]

Action verb + -는 데다가

Ex) 먹다 → 먹는 데다가

Descriptive verb + -(으)ㄴ 데다가

Ex) 예쁘다 → 예쁜 데다가

[Past tense]

Verb stem + -(으)ㄴ 데다가

Ex) 먹다 → 먹은 데다가

LEVEL 7 LESSON 26

Examples

1.

예쁘다 = to be pretty

예쁜 데다가 = in addition to being pretty

2.

바쁘다 = to be busy

바쁜 데다가 = in addition to being busy

3.

비싸다 = to be expensive

비싼 데다가 = in addition to being expensive

When using -(으/는)ㄴ 데다가 in a sentence, it is usually followed by a clause that is consistent with the previous. Therefore, the two clauses in the sentence should be consistent with each other, and -도 (also) is often used in the second clause.

Sample Sentences

1. 석진 씨는 잘생긴 데다가 키도 커요.

[seok-jin ssi-neun jal-saeng-gin de-da-ga ki-do keo-yo.]

= In addition to being handsome, Seokjin is also tall.

2. 효진 씨는 똑똑한 데다가 공부도 열심히 해요.

[hyo-jin ssi-neun ttok-tto-kan de-da-ga gong-bu-do yeol-ssi-mi hae-yo.]

= In addition to being smart, Hyojin studies hard too.

LEVEL 7 LESSON 26

3. 경은 씨는 예쁜 데다가 성격도 좋아요.

[gyeong-eun ssi-neun ye-ppeun de-da-ga seong-gyeok-do jo-a-yo.]

= In addition to being pretty, Kyeong-eun also has a nice personality.

4. 이 식당은 시끄러운 데다가 맛도 없어요.

[i sik-dang-eun si-kkeu-reo-un de-da-ga mat-do eop-seo-yo.]

= In addition to being noisy, this restaurant's food is also not good.

5. 경화 씨는 친구가 많은 데다가 하는 일도 많아서 만나기 어려워요.

[gyeong-hwa ssi-neun chin-gu-ga ma-neun de-da-ga ha-neun il-do ma-na-seo man-na-gi eo-ryeo-wo-yo.]

= In addition to having a lot of friends, Kyung-hwa also does lots of things, so it's difficult to meet her.

LEVEL 7 LESSON 27

In this lesson, let us take a look at how to say "as long as" in Korean. This is not the literal comparison of two things as in "A is as long as B" but the fixed expression "as long as + S + V" as in "As long as you stay here, you are safe." Let's find out how to say this in Korean!

How to say AS LONG AS in Korean

There are a few ways to say this in Korean.

1. Verb stem + -기만 하면

(Original literal translation = "if + S + only + V")

2. Verb stem + -(느)ㄴ 한

(Original literal translation = "within the boundaries where S + V")

3. Verb stem + -지만 않으면

(Original literal translation = "only if + S + doesn't + V")

Examples

1. Verb stem + -기만 하면

(Original literal translation = "if + S + only + V")

여기에 있기만 하면 괜찮아요.

[yeo-gi-e it-gi-man ha-myeon gwaen-cha-na-yo.]

= As long you are here, you're fine.

재미있게 공부하기만 하면, 한국어 잘할 수 있어요.

[jae-mi-it-ge gong-bu-ha-gi-man ha-myeon, han-gu-geo ja-ral su i-sseo-yo.]

= As long as you study Korean in a fun way, you can become good at Korean.

LEVEL 7 LESSON 27

2. Verb stem + -(느)ㄴ 한

(Original literal translation = "within the boundaries where S + V")

** This form is a little more formal than the other forms.

제가 열쇠를 가지고 있는 한, 아무도 못 들어가요.

[je-ga yeol-soe-reul ga-ji-go it-neun han, a-mu-do mot deu-reo-ga-yo.]

= As long as I have the keys, no one can go in.

3. Verb stem + -지만 않으면

(Original literal translation = "only if + S + doesn't + V")

너무 춥지만 않으면 갈게요.

[neo-mu chup-ji-man a-neu-myeon gal-ge-yo.]

= As long as it's not too cold, I will go/come.

Sample Sentences

1. 비밀을 지키기만 하면 안전해요.

[bi-mi-reul ji-ki-gi-man ha-myeon an-jeo-nae-yo.]

= As long as you keep the secret, you're safe.

2. 사람들이 너무 많이 오지만 않으면 괜찮아요.

[sa-ram-deu-ri neo-mu ma-ni o-ji-man a-neu-myeon gwaen-cha-na-yo.]

= As long as not too many people come here, it's okay.

3. 깨지지만 않으면, 계속 쓸 수 있어요.

LEVEL 7 LESSON 27

[kkae-ji-ji-man a-neu-myeon, gye-sok sseul su i-sseo-yo.]

= As long as it's not broken, you can keep using it.

4. 살아있는 한, 저는 계속 공부를 할 거예요.

[sa-ra-it-neun han, jeo-neun gye-sok gong-bu-reul hal geo-ye-yo.]

= As long as I am alive, I will keep studying.

5. 음식이 맛있고 직원이 친절하기만 하면, 식당은 언젠가 유명해져요.

[eum-si-gi ma-sit-go ji-gwo-ni chin-jeo-ra-gi-man ha-myeon, sik-dang-eun eon-jen-ga yu-my-eong-hae-jyeo-yo.]

= As long as the food is good and the staff are kind, a restaurant will get famous one day.

LEVEL 7 LESSON 28

In Level 6 Lesson 15, we looked at the structure -(이)라는 것, which can be used to express what you think is the definition or the nature of something. You can do the same with verbs, except with a slightly different structure.

Let's review a little bit first.

Noun + -(이)라는 것

= What I call "Noun" is ...

= (I think that) "Noun" is ...

Ex)

평화라는 것은 ...

= (I think that) Peace is ...

우정이라는 것은 ...

= (In my opinion, the nature of) Friendship is ...

And in order to express the same thing with verbs, you need to use the structure, -(ㄴ/는)다는 것.

Verb stem + -(ㄴ/는)다는 것

-(ㄴ/는)다는 것 originally comes from -(ㄴ/는)다고 하는 것, which means "the thing that is called + Verb" and it is used to express what you think the definition or the nature of a certain action/state/verb.

Examples:

LEVEL 7 LESSON 28

배우다 = to learn

배우 + -ㄴ다는 것 --> **배운다는 것** = the act of learning

배운다는 것은 언제나 즐거운 일이에요. = Learning is always a pleasant thing to do.

살다 = to live

사 + -ㄴ다는 것 --> **산다는 것** = the act of living, life

외국에 산다는 것은 가끔 힘들 때도 있어요. = The nature of living overseas is that there are sometimes hard times.

** Sometimes, -(ㄴ/는)다는 것 can be combined with the following particle and shortened to -(느/는)다는 건 (combined with -은) or -(느/는)다는 게 (-이).

Ex)

하다 --> 한다는 것이 = 한다는 게

하다 --> 한다는 것은 = 한다는 건

Sample Sentences

1. 혼자 공부한다는 것은 생각만큼 쉽지 않아요.

[hon-ja gong-bu-han-da-neun geo-seun saeng-gak-man-keum swip-ji a-na-yo.]

= Studying alone is not as easy as you think.

2. 주말에도 회사에 가야 한다는 건 정말 슬픈 일이에요.

[ju-ma-re-do hoe-sa-e ga-ya han-da-neun geon jeong-mal seul-peun i-ri-e-yo.]

= Having to go to work on the weekend is so sad.

3. 아이를 키운다는 건 참 힘든 일이에요.

LEVEL 7 LESSON 28

[a-i-reul ki-un-da-neun geon cham him-deun i-ri-e-yo.]

= Raising a child is very tough.

4. 한국에서 유명한 가수가 된다는 건 정말 어려운 일이에요.

[han-gu-ge-seo yu-myeong-han ga-su-ga doen-da-neun geon jeong-mal eo-ryeo-un i-ri-e-yo.]

= Becoming a famous singer in Korea is a very difficult thing.

5. 장학금을 받는다는 것은 정말 대단한 일이에요.

[jang-hak-geu-meul bat-neun-da-neun geo-seun jeong-mal dae-da-nan i-ri-e-yo.]

= Receiving scholarship is (an) amazing (achievement).

LEVEL 7 LESSON 29

In this lesson, let us take a look at the verb ending **-도록**, which means "so that", "in a way that" or sometimes "to the point where" in Korean.

-도록 mainly has three usages:

1. The verb before **-도록** can express the objective of the following verb.
2. The verb before **-도록** can express the effect or the method leading to the following verb.
3. The verb before **-도록** can express the extent or degree of the following state or action.

Usage 1 - Expressing the objective of the following verb

Ex)

지나가다 = to pass through

--> 사람들이 지나가도록 비켜 주세요.

[sa-ram-deu-ri ji-na-ga-do-rok bi-kyeo-ju-se-yo.]

= Please step aside so that people can pass through.

이해하다 = to understand

--> 제가 이해할 수 있도록 설명해 주세요.

[je-ga i-hae-hal su it-do-rok seol-myeong-hae ju-se-yo.]

= Please explain so that I can understand.

Usage 2 - Expressing the effect or the method leading to the following verb

Ex)

들리다 = to be heard

--> 다 들리도록 이야기해 주세요.

LEVEL 7 LESSON 29

[da deul-li-do-rok i-ya-gi-hae ju-se-yo.]

= Please talk in a way that everyone can hear you.

볼 수 있다 = to be able to see

--> 제가 볼 수 있도록 놓아 주세요.

[je-ga bol su it-do-rok no-a ju-se-yo.]

= Please put it in a way that I can see it.

Usage 3 - Expressing the extent or degree of the following state or action

Ex)

아프다 = to be painful

--> 목이 아프도록 노래를 불렀어요.

[mo-gi a-peu-do-rok no-rae-reul bul-leo-sseo-yo.]

= I sang a lot, to the point where my throat hurt.

질리다 = to get sick of, to get tired of

--> 바나나를 질리도록 먹었어요.

[ba-na-na-reul jil-li-do-rok meo-geo-sseo-yo.]

= I ate so much banana that I got sick of it.

** Usage 1 and 2 overlap in some contexts and Usage 2 and 3 also overlap in some contexts.

Sample Sentences

1. 그 얘기는 귀가 아프도록 많이 들었어요.

[geu yae-gi-neun gwi-ga a-peu-do-rok ma-ni deu-reo-sseo-yo.]

LEVEL 7 LESSON 29

= I heard that story so often, almost to the point of my ears hurting.

2. 늦지 않도록 빨리 서두르세요.

[neut-ji an-to-rok ppal-li seo-du-reu-se-yo.]

= Hurry up so that you won't be late.

3. 넘어지지 않도록 조심하세요.

[neo-meo-ji-ji an-to-rok jo-si-ma-se-yo.]

= Be careful so that you don't fall over.

4. 제가 이해하기 쉽도록 설명했어요.

[je-ga i-hae-ha-gi swip-do-rok seol-myeong-hae-seo-yo.]

= I explained it in a way that would be easy to understand.

5. 이 신발은 다 떨어지도록 자주 신었어요.

[i sin-ba-reun da tteo-reo-ji-do-rok ja-ju si-neo-sseo-yo.]

= I've worn these shoes so often, almost to the point where they are worn out.

LEVEL 7 LESSON 30

In this series, we focus on how you can use the grammatical rules and expressions that you have learned so far to train yourself to make more Korean sentences more comfortably and more flexibly.

We will start off with THREE key sentences, and practice changing parts of these sentences so that you don't end up just memorizing the same three sentences. We want you to be able to be as flexible as possible with the Korean sentences you can make.

Key Sentence #1

다른 사람들에게 물어보나마나, 제가 맞다고 할 거예요.

[da-reun sa-ram-deul-han-te mu-reo-bo-na-ma-na, je-ga mat-da-go hal geo-ye-yo.]

= Even if you ask other people, they will say I am right.

Key Sentence #2

이건 계속 연습하기만 하면 잘하게 되어 있어요.

[i-geon gye-sok yeon-seu-pa-gi-man ha-myeon ja-ra-ge doe-eo i-sseo-yo.]

= As long as you keep practicing this, you are bound to get good at it.

Key Sentence #3

여기는 날씨도 추운 데다가, 물가도 비싼 편이에요.

[yeo-gi-neun nal-ssi-do chu-un de-da-ga, mul-ga-do bi-ssan pyeo-ni-e-yo.]

= On top of being cold, here, the prices are rather high too.

Expansion & variation practice with key sentence #1

LEVEL 7 LESSON 30

0. Original Sentence:

다른 사람들에게 물어보나마나, 제가 맞다고 할 거예요.

= Even if you ask other people, they will say I am right.

1.

다른 사람들에게 물어보나마나 = (regardless of) whether you ask other people or not

확인해 보나마나 = (regardless of) whether you check or not

거기까지 가나마나 = (regardless of) whether you go all the way there or not

열심히 하나마나 = (regardless of) whether you work hard on it or not

사진을 많이 찍으나마나 = (regardless of) whether you take a lot of photos or not

2.

제가 맞다고 할 거예요. = They will say that I am right.

이게 제일 좋다고 했어요. = They said that this is the best one.

어렵지 않다고 했어요. = They said that it is not difficult.

혼자 간다고 했어요. = He said that he would go there alone.

바쁘다고 할 거예요. = They will say that they are busy.

Expansion & variation practice with key sentence #2

0. Original Sentence:

이건 계속 연습하기만 하면 잘하게 되어 있어요.

= As long as you keep practicing this, you are bound to get good at it.

LEVEL 7 LESSON 30

1.

이건 계속 연습하기만 하면 = as long as you keep practicing this,
중간에 그만두지만 않으면 = as long as you don't quit in the middle
사람들이 계속 봐 주기만 하면 = as long as people keep watching it
손님이 계속 오기만 하면 = as long as customers keep coming
멀리 가지만 않으면 = as long as you don't go far

2.

잘하게 되어 있어요. = You are bound to get better at it.
사람들이 알게 되어 있어요. = People will surely find out eventually.
다시 만나게 되어 있어요. = You are bound to meet again.
돌아오게 되어 있어요. = They will come back for sure.
해결되게 되어 있어요. = It is bound to be solved.

Expansion & variation practice with key sentence #3

0. Original Sentence:

여기는 날씨도 추운 데다가, 물가도 비싼 편이에요.
= On top of being cold, here, the prices are rather high too.

1.

여기는 날씨도 추운 데다가 = on top of being cold, this place ...
요즘 시간도 없는 데다가 = these days, on top of having no time,
아직 숙제를 다 못 한 데다가 = I haven't finished all my homework yet, and on top of that,
어제 늦게 잠든 데다가 = I went to sleep late yesterday, and in addition to that,

LEVEL 7 LESSON 30

영어를 잘하는 데다가 = on top of speaking English well,

2.

물가도 비싼 편이에요. = The prices are rather high, too.

키도 큰 편이에요. = He is also quite tall.

분위기도 좋은 편이에요. = The atmosphere is also pretty nice.

일도 잘하는 편이에요. = He is quite good at what he does, too.

중국어도 잘하는 편이에요. = She speaks fairly good Chinese, as well.

LEVEL 8 LESSON 1

Welcome to the first lesson in the Advanced Idiomatic Expression series! By studying with this series, you will learn many idiomatic expressions that are based upon a certain Korean word and used in everyday Korean conversation. In order to fully understand and use the expressions introduced in this series, it is essential that you understand the grammatical structure of the sentence. When you come across a grammar point that you are unfamiliar with, please go back and review the related lessons.

Keyword:

눈 = eye

1. 눈이 높다 = to be picky

(높다 = to be high)

→ 눈이 높다 literally means that your "eyes are high", but in Korean, if you say that your eyes are 높다, it simply means that you have high standards for things or people. When someone is very picky about the type of person they want to date or the kind of things they want to buy, you can say "눈이 높다".

Ex) 저 눈 안 높아요. 저는 그냥 성격 좋은 사람이면 다 좋아요.

(= I'm not picky. Anyone who has a good personality is fine for me.)

2. 눈 밖에 나다 = to get on one's bad side

(밖에 = outside of something / 나다 = to get out, to be out)

→ When you have done something to make a person upset with you and that person doesn't like you very much any longer, you might have some disadvantages compared to other people.

LEVEL 8 LESSON 1

In that case, you can say that you are "outside" someone's eyes, meaning that the person will not be happy to help you or give you any benefit.

Ex) 저는 지각을 많이 해서, 선생님 눈 밖에 났어요.

(= I am frequently late, so my teacher doesn't like me.)

3. **눈을 붙이다** = to get some sleep; to take a nap

(붙이다 = to paste; to glue things together)

→ When you take a nap, you can use the expression "눈을 붙이다". The literal translation is "to glue one's eyes together", but it is actually closer in meaning to "gluing one's eyelids shut", meaning that one sleeps. This is not very commonly used to refer to sleeping at night.

Ex) 피곤하면 눈 좀 붙여요. 나중에 깨워 줄게요.

(= If you are tired, get some sleep. I'll wake you up later.)

4. **눈빛만 봐도 알 수 있다** = can know with just one glance

(빛 = light, 보다 = to see, 알다 = to know)

→ When you automatically know what a person wants or wants to tell you just by looking at his/her eyes, you can say 눈빛만 봐도 알 수 있다. The word 눈빛 doesn't literally refer to light that comes out of one's eyes, but rather the way someone looks at something, or the emotion that you can feel from the eyes.

Ex) 말 안 해도, 눈빛만 봐도 알 수 있어요.

(= Even if you don't say it, I can know just by looking at your eyes.)

LEVEL 8 LESSON 1

5. **눈 앞이 캄캄하다** = to not know where to start; to have no hope

(앞 = front, 캄캄하다 = to be dark; to be pitch black)

→ When it's dark in front of your eyes, it means that you can't see; when you can't see, you will panic. When you are confronted with a situation where you don't know what to do or you can't think of a way to get out of it, you say 눈 앞이 캄캄하다.

Ex) 눈 앞이 캄캄했었는데, 석진 씨가 도와줬어요.

(= I was in panic because I didn't know how to solve the problem, but 석진 helped me.)

6. **눈썰미가 좋다** = to learn things quickly; to pick up things fast

(좋다 = to be good)

→ 눈썰미 refers to the ability to learn or understand how something is done just by looking at someone else doing it. For example, when someone can learn how to cook a Korean dish mainly by watching others, or when someone can pick up a dance move very quickly by imitating what they saw, you can say that the person has good 눈썰미.

Ex) 한 번만 보고 어떻게 따라해요? 눈썰미가 좋으시네요.

(= How do you follow the moves just by looking at them once? You pick up things very fast!)

LEVEL 8 LESSON 2

This is part 2 of the Advanced Idiomatic Expressions lesson related to 눈, the eyes! In order to fully understand and use the expressions introduced in this series, it is essential that you understand the grammatical structure of the sentence. When you come across a grammar point that you are unfamiliar with, please go back and review the related lessons.

Keyword:

눈 = eye

In Part 1, you learned the following expressions. (See Level 8 Lesson 1)

1. 눈이 높다 = to be picky
2. 눈 밖에 나다 = to get on one's bad side
3. 눈을 붙이다 = to get some sleep, to take a nap
4. 눈빛만 봐도 알 수 있다 = can know with just one glance (at someone's eyes)
5. 눈 앞이 캄캄하다 = to not know where to start; to not have hope
6. 눈썰미가 좋다 = to learn things fast; to pick up things fast

Part 2

7. 눈에 넣어도 아프지 않다 = to be the apple of one's eye

(놓다 = to put in, 아프다 = to hurt)

→ 눈에 놓다 literally means "to put something into one's eyes", which is not a very common thing to do, but it is just part of "눈에 넣어도 아프지 않다" which means "someone is so precious that it won't hurt even if you put him/her into your eyes". It might be a bit scary to think about the literal meaning of this sentence, but think of it as "wanting to keep the person in one's sight all the time". This is usually used toward children.

LEVEL 8 LESSON 2

Ex) 아이들은 그 나이 때 정말 귀여워서 눈에 넣어도 아프지 않아요.

(= Kids at that age are so cute that they are the apple of your eye.)

8. **눈에 띄다** = to be difficult to miss; to stand out

(띄다 = to be spotted)

→ The verb 띄다 itself means to be spotted, but it's almost always used with the noun "눈" to form the phrase "눈에 띄다". When you say that something or someone is "눈에 띄다", it not only means that it catches your eyes and is remarkable, but it can also mean that something is difficult to miss because it's either very good or terrible. When someone's fashion stands out because it's either amazing or weird, you can say "눈에 띄는 패션", and when someone's Korean speaking skills have gone up impressively, you can say that the person's Korean has "눈에 띄게 늘었어요".

Ex) 한국어 어떻게 공부해요? 실력이 눈에 띄게 늘었어요.

(= How do you study Korean? Your Korean skills have improved so much!)

9. **눈을 마주치다** = eyes meet

(마주치다 = to run into each other; to bump into each other)

→ 마주치다 means "to bump into" or "to run into someone" by chance. When you use this verb with 눈, it means that two people's eyes meet. When you say "눈을 마주치다", 눈 is the object of the verb 마주치다, and you can also say "눈이 마주치다", with 눈 as the subject of the verb 마주치다.

Ex) 그 사람하고 눈이 마주쳤는데, 창피해서 고개를 돌렸어요.

LEVEL 8 LESSON 2

(= My eyes met with his, and I felt embarrassed so I looked away.)

10. **눈이 멀다** = to be blinded by something

(눈이 멀다 = to go blind)

→ Here, the verb 멀다 sounds the same as the verb for "to be far away", but when 멀다 is used with 눈, it means that your eyes are either blind or temporarily blinded by something. This expression is often used along with what caused you to be blinded in the form "Noun + -에 눈이 멀다".

Ex) 그 사람은 욕심에 눈이 멀었어요.

(= He is blinded by his greed.)

11. **눈이 부시다** = to be radiant

(눈이 부시다 = to be dazzling; to be too bright)

→ 눈이 부시다 means that something is so bright that you can't open your eyes to see it directly. You can use this expression to talk about light, but you can also say this about someone's beauty.

Ex) 눈이 부시게 아름다워요.

(= Your beauty is dazzling.)

12. **눈 하나 깜짝하지 않다** = to not bat an eye

(하나 = one, 깜짝하다 = to blink)

LEVEL 8 LESSON 2

→ When someone is not surprised or affected by a threatening or shocking remark or action, you can say that the person doesn't even blink at it, by using the expression 눈 하나 깜짝하지 않다. A similar expression is 눈 깜짝할 사이에, which means "in the blink of an eye".

Ex) 그 사람은 그런 말을 들어도 눈 하나 깜짝하지 않을 거예요.

= Even if you tell him that, he wouldn't bat an eye.

LEVEL 8 LESSON 3

We have already introduced how to say "as soon as" or "right after" in Korean through a previous lesson, but there is more than one way to say these phrases in Korean. In this lesson, we are introducing a more advanced and more figurative way of saying "as soon as".

1. Verb + -기가 무섭게

The word 무섭다 literally means "to be scary" or "to be scared", but -기가 무섭게 has nothing to do with being scared or scary in its translation. When you say that something happens right after you do something, or even "as" you are doing it, you can say "verb + -기가 무섭게" and then say what happened.

Ex)

수업이 끝나기가 무섭게

= as soon as the class ended

(using -자마자) = 수업이 끝나자마자

말이 끝나기가 무섭게

= as soon as he finished talking

(using -자마자) = 말이 끝나자마자

2. Verb + -기가 바쁘게

-기가 바쁘게 and -기가 무섭게 are almost always interchangeable and are used depending on personal preferences. Some people say 무섭게 more often, some say 바쁘게, and others may not use either of them at all and could just use -자마자 for everything.

Ex)

문을 열기가 바쁘게

= as soon as I opened the doors

(using -자마자) = 문을 열자마자

LEVEL 8 LESSON 3

밥을 다 먹기가 바쁘게

= as soon as he finished eating

(using -자마자) = 밥을 다 먹자마자

Sample Sentences

1. 아침에 눈을 뜨기가 무섭게 집에서 나왔어요.

= 아침에 눈을 뜨기가 바쁘게 집에서 나왔어요.

= As soon as I woke up in the morning, I left the house.

2. 문을 열기가 무섭게 손님들이 들어왔어요.

= 문을 열기가 바쁘게 손님들이 들어왔어요.

= As soon as we opened the door, customers came in.

3. 음식이 주문하기가 무섭게 나왔어요.

= 음식이 주문하기가 바쁘게 나왔어요.

= The food came out as soon as we ordered it.

4. 수업이 끝나기가 무섭게 학생들이 교실 밖으로 나갔어요.

= 수업이 끝나기가 바쁘게 학생들이 교실 밖으로 나갔어요.

= The students left the classroom as soon as the class was over.

5. 사람들은 공연이 끝나기가 무섭게 밖으로 나갔어요.

= 사람들은 공연이 끝나기가 바쁘게 밖으로 나갔어요.

= As soon as the performance was over, people went outside.

LEVEL 8 LESSON 4

You have already learned several ways to express past actions in Korean, such as using the -았/었/였어요 sentence ending for plain past tense sentences and -(으)ㄴ verb ending to modify a noun with an action verb. In this lesson, we are introducing something that is similar to -(으)ㄴ, but a little bit different.

-던 = N + that (someone) used to + V

When you add -던 at the end of a verb stem, it expresses that you "used to" do or be something. The difference between -(으)ㄴ and -던 is that -던 implies that the past action or state did not continue or get completed.

For example, with the verb 가다 (to go), if you say "간 곳", it means a place that "you went to" in the past, but if you say "가던 곳", it means that "you used to go there" but somehow, the act of going there came to an end and did not continue.

With the verb 보다 (to see), if you say "본 영화", it means a movie that you "watched" before, but if you say "보던 영화", it implies that you did not finish it.

-던 and -았/었/였던

With action verbs, it is sufficient to just say -던, but you can make the meaning of the past tense stronger by adding -았/었/였. With descriptive verbs, it is almost always more natural to use -았/었/였던.

Ex)

예쁘던 < 예뻐던

작던 < 작았던

비싸던 < 비쌌던

LEVEL 8 LESSON 4

Sample Sentences

1. 예전에 제가 자주 가던 곳이에요.

= I used to frequently go to this place in the past.

= It's a place that I often used to go to before.

2. 예뻐던 경은 씨가 지금은 ...

= Kyeong-eun, who used to be pretty, is now...

(→ 예쁜 (x), 예뻐던(x))

3. 작년에는 키가 작았던 석진 씨가 지금은 키가 커요.

= Seokjin, who used to be short, is now tall.

(→ 작은 (x), 작던(x))

4. 친했던 친구들이 지금은 다 외국에 살아요.

= The friends I used to be close to are all living overseas now.

(→ 친한 (x), 친하던(x))

5. 지난 주에 이야기하던 거예요.

= This is what we were talking about last week.

(ref. 지난 주에 이야기한 거예요. = This is what we talk about last week.)

LEVEL 8 LESSON 5

Welcome to the first lesson in the Advanced Situation Expressions series. Throughout this series, we will take a look at common situations and some of the advanced expressions you can use in each of them. In this lesson, we will introduce various expressions you can use when you want to refuse or say no to something.

1.

괜찮아요. = It's okay (even if you don't offer it to me).

괜찮습니다. (same as above but more formal)

저는 괜찮습니다. = I'm good. / I'm okay. / I'm fine without it.

2.

아니예요. = No (you don't have to). / No (I don't need it).

아닙니다. (same as above but more formal)

3.

됐어요. = Don't worry about it. / I don't need that. / I'm all set even without it.

됐습니다. (same as above but more formal)

4.

생각이 없어요. = (when offered food) I am not hungry. / I'm fine. / No, thanks.

생각이 없습니다. (same as above but more formal)

5.

안 그러셔도 괜찮아요. = You don't have to do that. / Please don't bother to do that.

안 그러셔도 괜찮습니다. (same as above but more formal)

LEVEL 8 LESSON 5

6.

곤란해요. = It's difficult and embarrassing. / I can't do it.

곤란합니다. (same as above but more formal)

지금은 좀 곤란합니다. = I can't do it now.

이러시면 곤란합니다. = You shouldn't do this. / You are making things difficult for me by doing this.

7.

안 돼요. = No, I can't. / No, you can't. / It doesn't work. / It's not allowed.

안 됩니다. (same as above but more formal)

이러시면 안 됩니다. = You shouldn't do this. / You can't do this.

안 될 것 같습니다. = I think this will be a problem. / I think you shouldn't do it.

8.

이러지 마세요. = Don't do this.

9.

어려울 것 같습니다. = I don't think I can do it. / I think it will be difficult. / I think it will be impossible.

LEVEL 8 LESSON 6

In Level 6 Lesson 2, we introduced how to say "What do you mean?" or "What does that mean?" In this lesson, we are taking a look at how to respond to these questions and form sentences to say "it means ..." in Korean. The key word you need to know for this is 뜻, the Korean word for "meaning".

뜻이에요. = It is (...) meaning.

Using "뜻이에요" alone is not enough. You need to include more information about what kind of meaning it is.

Verb stem + -(ㄴ/는)다는 + 뜻이에요.

= It means ...

Ex)

사람이 많다는 뜻이에요. = It means that there are a lot of people.

다 나았다는 뜻이에요. = It means that you have completely healed.

Conjugation

Noun + -(이)라는

Descriptive verb / Present tense + -다는

Action verb / Present tense + -ㄴ/는다는

Action/Descriptive verb / Past tense + -았/었/였다는

Action/Descriptive verb / Future tense + -(으)ㄹ 거라는

LEVEL 8 LESSON 6

뜻이에요 and 말이에요

Just like with the expressions for "What do you mean?", 뜻 (= meaning) and 말 (= speech/ language) are interchangeable with each other. 말이에요, however, has a stronger focus on the intended meaning of the speaker rather than the definition of the expression itself.

좋다는 뜻이에요. = It means that it's good.

좋다는 말이에요. = I'm saying that it's good.

Sample Sentences

1. "완료"가 무슨 뜻이에요? / 끝났다는 뜻이에요.

= What does 완료 mean? It means that (something) has been finished.

2. "휴업"이 무슨 뜻이에요? / 일을 안 한다는 뜻이에요.

= What does 휴업 mean? It means that you don't work.

3. 꽃을 줬으면, 관심이 있다는 뜻이에요.

= If he gave you flowers, it means that he's interested in you.

4. 안 가고 싶다는 말이에요?

= Are you saying that you don't want to go?

5. 그러면, 못 한다는 뜻이에요?

= Then, does it mean that they can't do it?

LEVEL 8 LESSON 7

Word Builder lessons are designed to help you understand how to expand your vocabulary by learning/understanding some common and basic building blocks of Korean words. The words and letters introduced through Word Builder lessons are not necessarily all Chinese characters, or 한자 [han-ja]. Though many of them are based on Chinese characters, the meanings can be different from modern-day Chinese. Your goal, through these lessons, is to understand how words are formed and remember the keywords in Korean to expand your Korean vocabulary from there. You certainly don't have to memorize the Hanja characters, but if you want to, feel free!

Today's keyword is 점.

The Chinese character for this is 點. There are many other Chinese characters (or Hanja letters) that are used for 점, so keep in mind that not all the words that have 점 in them have related meanings.

The word 점 (點) is related to "point" or "spot".

강 (strong) + 점 (point) = 강점 強點 [gang-jeom] = strong point, strength

약 (weak) + 점 (point) = 약점 弱點 [yak-jeom] = weakness, weak point

장 (long, head) + 점 (point) = 장점 長點 [jang-jeom] = advantage, merit, virtue

단 (short) + 점 (point) = 단점 短點 [dan-jeom] = drawback, shortcoming

초 (burn) + 점 (point) = 초점 焦點 [cho-jeom] = focus, focal point

점 (point) + 수 (number) = 점수 點數 [jeom-su] = score, mark, grade

문 (ask) + 제 (topic) + 점 (point) = 문제점 問題點 [mun-je-jeom] = problem, drawback

관 (view) + 점 (point) = 관점 觀點 [gwan-jeom] = point of view, viewpoint

요 (important) + 점 (point) = 요점 要點 [yo-jeom] = essential point, main point

LEVEL 8 LESSON 7

공 (one) + 통 (go through, lead) + 점 (point) = 공통점 共通點 [gong-tong-jeom] = something in common, common factors

차 (differ) + 이 (differ) + 점 (point) = 차이점 差異點 [cha-i-jeom] = difference

원 (origin) + 점 (point) = 원점 原點 [won-jeom] = starting point, square one

학 (school, learn) + 점 (score) = 학점 學點 [hak-jeom] = school grade (usually college)

점 (point) + 자 (letter) = 점자 點字 [jeom-ja] = braille

득 (get) + 점 (point) = 득점 得點 [deuk-jeom] = score, make a score

점 (point) + 선 (line) = 점선 點線 [jeom-seon] = dotted line

LEVEL 8 LESSON 8

In Level 6 Lesson 16, we introduced the various usages of the suffix -겠-. The usages include showing your assumptions about something, your intention to do something, as well as asking the other person whether they would like to do something. In the form -(으)면 좋겠어요, you will find two grammatical structures: one is -(으)면, and the other is -겠-. The usage of -겠- in -(으)면 좋겠어요 is for expressing your assumption or expectation about something.

- 1) -(으)면 = if
- 2) -겠- = that would be ..., I would ..., they would ... (assuming)
- 3) 좋다 + -겠- = 좋겠어요 = it would be nice, I would like it

So together, -(으)면 좋겠어요 takes the meaning of "it would be nice if..." or "I would like it if ..." and can be also used when you want to say "I hope ..." or "I wish ...".

You can use two different structures: one is Verb + -(으)면 좋겠어요 and the other is -(았/었/였)으면 좋겠어요. While one is in the present tense and the other is in the past tense, the meanings are very similar and identical in many cases. The past tense version (-(았/었/였)으면 좋겠어요) is similar to using the past tense after "I wish", as in "I wish it would snow tomorrow."

Example

빨리 끝나다 = to finish quickly

빨리 끝나면 좋겠어요. = I hope this finishes quickly.

= 빨리 끝났으면 좋겠어요. = I hope this finishes quickly.

In English, there is a difference in meaning between "I hope" and "I wish", but that difference can't be expressed through the structure -((았/었/였)으면 좋겠어요. In order to express the nuance "I wish... but I know it's not", you can use the structure, -(았/었/였)으면 좋았을 텐데(요) (it

LEVEL 8 LESSON 8

would have been nice if...) or -아/어/여서 아쉽네요 (too bad it's ...).

What is 바라다?

When you look up in the dictionary, the first word for the verb "to hope" will be 바라다 or 희망하다. While they are correct "translations", it's more natural to use -(으)면 좋겠어요. If you want to use 바라다 or 희망하다 you can use the structure -기를 바라다 or -기를 희망하다, but the sentence can often sound like written language.

Sample Sentences

1. 내일 사람들이 많이 왔으면 좋겠어요.

= I hope many people will come tomorrow.

= 내일 사람들이 많이 오면 좋겠어요.

2. 비가 그쳤으면 좋겠어요.

= I hope it stops raining.

= 비가 그치면 좋겠어요.

3. 제 선물, 마음에 들면 좋겠어요.

= I hope you like my present.

= 제 선물, 마음에 들었으면 좋겠어요.

4. 효진 씨가 지각 안 했으면 좋겠어요.

= I would like it if Hyojin wouldn't be late for work.

= I hope Hyojin isn't late for work.

= 효진 씨가 지각 안 하면 좋겠어요.

LEVEL 8 LESSON 8

5. 제가 20살이었으면 좋겠어요.

= I wish I were 20 years old.

LEVEL 8 LESSON 9

This lesson is a review and summary of the various types of past tense structures in the Korean language. There is only one basic past tense structure, the suffix -았/었/였, but by using other structures, you can add more specific meanings to your sentences.

1. Basic Past Tense with “-았/었/였” (Level 1 Lesson 17)

Verb stem + -았/었/였 + -어요

Ex)

사다 = to buy

→ 사 + -았어요 = 샀어요 = I (or someone else) bought it.

주다 = to give

→ 주 + -었어요 = 줬어요 = I gave it (to someone).

2. -았/었/였었어요

To emphasize that one “had” done something in the past or before another action/state, some people add the suffix one more time, making it -았/었/였었어요 instead -았/었/였어요.

Ex)

보다 = to see, to watch

→ 보 + -았어요 = 봤어요 = I saw.

→ 보 + -았 + 었어요 = 봤었어요 = I saw it a long time ago. I had seen it before.

3. -고는 했어요

To talk about something that you used to do regularly or habitually, you can use the ending “-고는 했어요.” When you use -고는 했어요 after a verb, it implies that you don’t do it any longer.

LEVEL 8 LESSON 9

Ex)

보다 = to watch

→ 보 + -고는 했어요 = 보고는 했어요 = I used to watch.

밤 늦게까지 TV를 보고는 했어요.

= I used to watch TV until late at night.

가끔 친구들을 만나고는 했어요.

= I used to meet my friends from time to time.

4. -ㄴ/은 (Level 4 Lesson 26)

-ㄴ/은 is the conjugation you can use after a verb stem to modify a noun. -ㄴ/은 needs to be followed by the noun that the verb modifies either as the object or the subject.

Ex)

마시다 = to drink

마시 + -ㄴ = 마신 = that I drank

어제 마신 커피 = the coffee that I drank yesterday

아까 이야기한 책

= the book I talked about earlier

이 책을 쓴 사람

= the person who wrote the book

5. -던 (Level 8 Lesson 4)

LEVEL 8 LESSON 9

-던 is also used after a verb to modify a noun. -ㄴ/은 is the basic verb ending for modifying nouns, but if you use -던, you can add the nuance of "used to" or "was doing but didn't finish".

Ex)

마시다 = to drink

→ 마신 = (something) that I drank

→ 마시던 = (something) that I was drinking, (something) that I used to drink

그거 제가 마시던 커피예요. = That's the coffee I was drinking (but didn't finish).

어렸을 때 제가 좋아했던 만화책이에요.

= It's a comic book that I used to like when I was a kid.

6. -(으)ㄹ 뻔 했어요 (Level 5 Lesson 1)

When you say -(으)ㄹ 뻔 했어요 after a verb stem, it means that something "almost happened" or that you "almost did" something.

Ex)

잊다 = to forget

→ 잊 + -(으)ㄹ 뻔 했어요 = 잊을 뻔 했어요 = I almost forgot.

넘어지다 = to fall down (on the ground)

→ 넘어질 뻔 했어요. = I almost fell down.

너무 놀라서 소리를 지를 뻔 했어요.

= I was so surprised that I almost screamed.

LEVEL 8 LESSON 9

너무 무거워서 떨어뜨릴 뻔 했어요.

= It was so heavy that I almost dropped it.

7. -아/어/여 봤어요 (Level 4 Lesson 12)

-아/어/여 보다 means "to try doing something" or "to give something a try". By using this in the past tense, you can say "I've tried doing + something + before" or "I have done + something + before" in Korean.

Ex)

듣다 = to listen

→ 듣 + -어 보다 → 들어 보다 (irregular conjugation)

→ 이 노래 들어 봤어요? = Have you heard this song (before)?

이거 읽어 봤어요? = Have you read this? / Have you tried reading this?

8. -(으)ㄴ 적 있어요

-(으)ㄴ 적 있어요 is used after verb stems to mean "I have done + something + before", to talk about one's experience. You can also use -아/어/여 본 적 있다 to mean the same thing, using the -아/어/여 보다 structure.

Ex)

배우다 = to learn

→ 배우 + ㄴ 적 있어요 = 배운 적 있어요 = I have learned it before. I have the experience of learning it.

LEVEL 8 LESSON 9

→ 중국어 배운 적 있어요? = Have you learned Chinese before?

→ 중국어 배워 본 적 있어요? = Have you tried learning Chinese before?

여기는 와 본 적 없어요. = I haven't been here before.

LEVEL 8 LESSON 10

This is an Advanced Idiomatic Expressions lesson related to 귀, the eyes! In order to fully understand and use the expressions introduced in this series, it is essential that you understand the grammatical structure of the sentences. When you come across a grammar point that you are unfamiliar with, please go back and review the related lessons.

Keyword:

귀 = ear

1. **귀가 밝다** = to have good ears

(밝다 = to be bright)

→ Just like with the expression 눈이 밝다, the literal translation is "to be bright" but the actual meaning is that you have good ears. "To hear well" or "can hear well" is 잘 들을 수 있다 or 잘 들리다 in Korean but it is more natural to say that your 귀 is 밝다 in many cases. It refers to your hearing capabilities, not whether you can hear a particular sound in the certain situation. In the case of the latter, you can say "잘 안 들려요." to mean "I can't hear it clearly (due to other noise or small sound)."

Ex) 젊었을 때는 저도 귀가 밝았는데, 지금은 작은 소리는 잘 안 들려요.

(= I used to have good ears when I was young, too, but I can't hear small sounds now.)

2. **귀를 기울이다** = to pay attention to a sound or to what someone says

(기울이다 = to make something lean)

→ When you want to pay attention to a certain sound, you naturally want to get your ears closer to the source of the sound. Even though what you lean is more precisely your whole body, in

LEVEL 8 LESSON 10

Korean you say that you lean ear toward something. 귀를 기울이다 can mean both "trying to hear something well" and "paying attention to what someone says".

Ex) 아이들이 선생님이 해 주는 이야기를 귀를 기울여서 듣고 있었어요.

(= The children were listening to the story their teacher was telling them with full attention.)

3. **귀에 대고 속삭이다** = to whisper into someone's ears

(대다 = to put something close to something else, 속삭이다 = to whisper)

→ You could just say 귀에 속삭이다 to say "to whisper into someone's ears", but the part 대고 is used to describe the action of going closer to someone before whispering. 귀에 대다 means to put something close to or touch the ear, and in this case, it's someone's mouth.

Ex) 귀에 대고 속삭이지 말고 크게 말해요.

(= Don't whisper to each other secretly. Speak loudly (to everybody).)

4. **귀 먹다** = to be deaf, to be not able to hear

(먹다 = to eat)

→ When someone can't hear something well, you can use the expression 귀 먹다 or 귀가 먹다. Originally the word 먹다 is to eat, but not in this case. 귀(가) 먹다 can be used to someone who can't hear due to old age, but you can also hear people say "귀 먹었어(요)?" to someone who can't seem to understand or care about what they hear, even though they can hear.

Ex) 저 귀 안 먹었어요. 조용히 말해요.

(= I'm not deaf. Speak quietly.)

LEVEL 8 LESSON 10

5. 귀가 간지럽다 = to feel like someone is talking behind one's back

(간지럽다 = to feel itchy)

There is no way to spy on everybody and know when people talk about you, but you can use this expression "귀가 간지럽다" when you refer to the fact that people talk about you when you are not around. It's usually used in the past tense, after you find out that people talked about you in your absence.

Ex) 어쩐지 오늘 귀가 간지러웠어요.

(= No wonder my ears were itchy today. = I see that you talked about me.)

6. 귀가 얇다 = to be easily influenced by what others say

(얇다 = to be thin)

→ If your ears are thin, it will be easy for words to penetrate and go into your brain. 귀가 얇다 is a figurative way of saying that someone is easily influenced by what he or she hears.

Ex) 그 사람은 귀가 얇아서 설득하기 쉬워요.

(= He is easily influenced by what people say so he's easy to persuade.)

7. 귀에 못이 박히도록 (듣다) = to have heard something too much already

(못 = callus, 박히다 = to be embedded, to be stuck, -도록 = to the extent of...)

→ 못 usually means "cannot" or "nail", but in this case, it refers to callus, or the harden skin on your hand due to heavy usage. When you hear something over and over again, your ear will (figuratively) get hardened skin because of that, so when you say 귀에 못이 박히도록 (듣다), it

LEVEL 8 LESSON 10

means that you've (heard) something over and over again, so much that it makes you sick or upset.

Ex) 그 얘기는 귀에 못이 박히도록 들었어요.

(= I've heard that story so much. I don't need to hear it again.)

LEVEL 8 LESSON 11

In this series, we focus on how you can use the grammatical rules and expressions that you have learned so far to train yourself to make more Korean sentences more comfortably and more flexibly.

We will start off with THREE key sentences and practice changing parts of these sentences so that you don't end up just memorizing the same three sentences. We want you to be able to be as flexible as possible with the Korean sentences you can make.

Key Sentence #1

내일 친구들이랑 만날 것 같은데, 날씨가 좋았으면 좋겠어요.

[nae-il chin-gu-deu-ri-rang man-nal geot ga-teun-de, nal-ssi-ga jo-a-sseu-myeon jo-ke-sseo-yo.]

= I think I'll meet with my friends tomorrow, so I hope the weather will be nice.

Key Sentence #2

어제 운동을 많이 한 데다가, 일도 늦게 끝나서, 눕기가 무섭게 잠들었어요.

[eo-je un-dong-eul ma-ni han de-da-ga, il-do neut-ge kkeut-na-seo, nup-gi-ga mu-seop-ge jam-deu-reo-sseo-yo.]

= On top of working out a lot, work also finished late yesterday, so I fell asleep as soon as laid down.

Key Sentence #3

제가 어제 읽던 책인데, 어차피 다 못 읽을 것 같아요.

[je-ga eo-je il-deon chae-gin-de, eo-cha-pi da mot il-geul geot ga-ta-yo.]

= It's a book that I was reading yesterday, but I don't think I'll be able to finish reading it anyway.

LEVEL 8 LESSON 11

Expansion & variation practice with key sentence #1

0. Original Sentence:

내일 친구들이랑 만날 것 같은데, 날씨가 좋았으면 좋겠어요.

= I think I'll meet with my friends tomorrow, so I hope the weather will be nice.

1.

내일 친구들이랑 만날 것 같은데 = I think I'll meet with my friends tomorrow, so/but...

아마 내일도 비가 올 것 같은데 = I think it will probably rain again tomorrow, so/but...

별로 안 어려울 것 같은데 = I don't think it will be too difficult, so/but...

아마 안 될 것 같은데 = I think it probably will not work, so/but...

물어봐야 알 것 같은데 = I think I will have to ask them, so/but...

2.

날씨가 좋았으면 좋겠어요. = I hope the weather will be nice.

비가 안 왔으면 좋겠어요. = I hope it won't rain.

사람들이 별로 없었으면 좋겠어요. = I hope there aren't too many people.

빨리 시작했으면 좋겠어요. = I hope it will start soon.

그 사람들은 안 왔으면 좋겠어요. = Those people, I hope they don't come here.

Expansion & variation practice with key sentence #2

0. Original Sentence:

어제 운동을 많이 한 데다가, 일도 늦게 끝나서, 눕기가 무섭게 잠들었어요.

LEVEL 8 LESSON 11

= On top of working out a lot, work also finished late yesterday, so I fell asleep as soon as I laid down.

1.

운동을 많이 한 데다가, 일도 늦게 끝나서 = on top of working out a lot, work finished late too, so...

일이 바쁜 데다가 감기에도 걸려서 = on top of work being busy, I also got a cold, so...

날씨도 좋은 데다가, 휴일이어서 = on top of the weather being nice, it's a holiday, so...

저는 원래 잠이 많은 데다가, 요즘에 항상 일찍 일어나서 = I usually need a lot of sleep, on top of that, I always get up early these days, so...

2.

눅기가 무섭게 잠들었어요. = I fell asleep as soon as I laid down.

문을 열기가 무섭게 사람들이 들어왔어요. = People came in as soon as we opened the door.

비디오를 올리기가 무섭게 코멘트가 달리기 시작했어요. = Comments started being posted as soon as we uploaded the video.

집에 오기가 무섭게 다시 나갔어요. = He went out again as soon as he came home.

Expansion & variation practice with key sentence #3

0. Original Sentence:

제가 어제 읽던 책인데, 어차피 다 못 읽을 것 같아요.

= It's a book that I was reading yesterday, but I don't think I'll be able to finish reading it anyway.

1.

LEVEL 8 LESSON 11

제가 어제 읽던 책인데 = it's a book that I was reading yesterday, so/but...

예전에 자주 가던 곳인데 = it's a place I used to go to often before, so/but...

제가 입던 옷인데 = these are clothes I used to wear, so/but...

제가 일하던 곳인데 = it's a place I used to work at, so/but...

2.

어차피 다 못 읽을 것 같아요. = I don't think I'll be able to finish reading it anyway.

어차피 사람들 다 못 앉을 것 같아요. = I don't think everybody will be able to sit down anyway.

어차피 시간 안에 못 끝낼 것 같아요. = I don't think you'll be able to finish in time anyway.

어차피 좀 기다려야 될 것 같아요. = I think you will have to wait a little anyway.

LEVEL 8 LESSON 12

This lesson is a review and summary of the various types of present tense structures in the Korean language.

1. Basic Present Tense with “-아/어/여” (Level 1 Lesson 16)

Verb stem + -아/어/여 + -요

Ex)

사다 = to buy

→ 사 + -아요 = 사요 = I buy it. / She buys it. / They buy it. / Buy it.

주다 = to give

→ 주 + -어요 = 줘요 = I give it (to someone). / They give it (to someone). / Give it to me.

저는 매일 운동해요.

= I exercise every day.

저는 한국어를 혼자서 공부해요.

= I study Korean by myself.

2. -시 + -어요 (Level 5 Lesson 2)

The suffix -시 is used to make the sentence honorific when you are talking to or about someone you want to show respect for.

Verb stem + -시 + -어요 → -세요

Ex)

LEVEL 8 LESSON 12

가다 = to go

→ 가 + -시 + -어요 = 가세요 = 가세요 = He goes. / She goes. / Please go.

모르다 = to not know

→ 모르 + -시 + -어요 = 모르세요 = 모르세요 = He doesn't know. / She doesn't know.

3. -고 있다 (Level 2 Lesson 10)

-고 있다 is used after verb stems to form present progressive sentences. Then again 있다 is conjugated to match the context or the intended tense of the sentence.

Ex)

공부하다 = to study

→ 공부하 + -고 있다 = 공부하고 있어요 = I am studying. / They are studying.

지금 뭐 하고 있어요?

= What are you doing now?

서점에 가고 있어요.

= I am going to the library.

4. -고 싶다 (Level 1 Lesson 13)

-고 싶다 is used to express "I want to".

Ex)

보다 = to see

→ 보 + 고 싶다 = 보고 싶어요 = I want to see. / I miss you.

LEVEL 8 LESSON 12

뭐 하고 싶어요?

= What do you want to do?

밖에 나가고 싶어요.

= I want to go outside.

5. -(으)ㄹ 수 있다 (Level 2 Lesson 17)

-(으)ㄹ 수 있다 is used to express "can" or "be able to".

Ex)

찾다 = to look for, to find

→ 찾 + -(으)ㄹ 수 있다 = 찾을 수 있어요 = I can look for it. / I can find it.

여기 주차할 수 있어요?

= Can I park here?

이거 읽을 수 있어요?

= Can you read this?

6. -아/어/여야 되다 (Level 2 Lesson 20)

You can use the -아/어/여야 되다 ending to express "have to", "should" or "must".

Ex)

가다 = to go

→ 가 + -아야 되다 = 가야 되다 = 가야 돼요 = I have to go.

LEVEL 8 LESSON 12

이거 먼저 해야 돼요.

= I need to do this first.

조심해야 돼요.

= You have to be careful.

7. -지 않다, 안 (Level 1 Lesson 21)

You can form negative sentences by adding -지 않다 after the verb stem or 안 before the verb.

Ex)

이상하다 = to be strange

→ 이상하 + -지 않다 = 이상하지 않아요 = It's not strange.

→ 안 + 이상하다 = 안 이상해요 = It's not strange.

이거 안 비싸요.

= This is not expensive.

그거 별로 안 좋아요.

= It's not that good.

8. -지 마세요 (Level 2 Lesson 30)

-지 마세요 is used after verb stems to tell someone not to do something.

Ex)

먹다 = to eat

→ 먹 + -지 마세요 = 먹지 마세요 = Don't eat it.

LEVEL 8 LESSON 12

걱정하지 마세요.

= Don't worry.

늦지 마세요.

= Don't be late.

9. -아/어/여요 (Let's) (Level 3 Lesson 16)

-아/어/여요 looks the same as the plain present tense, but it can be used to form "Let's" sentences as well.

Ex)

하다 = to do

→ 하 + -여요 = 해요 = Let's do it.

같이 해요.

= Let's do it.

지금 가요.

= Let's go now.

10. -(으)ㄴ 것 같다 (Level 4 Lesson 27)

같다 originally means "to be the same" or "to seem like" but when expressing your opinion about something, you can use -(으)ㄴ 것 같다 to say "I think ...".

Ex)

좋다 = to be good

LEVEL 8 LESSON 12

→ 좋 + -은 것 같다 = 좋은 것 같아요 = I think it's good.

이상한 것 같아요.

= I think it's strange.

그 사람 착한 것 같아요.

= I think he's a nice person.

11. -(으)ㄹ 수도 있다 (Level 3 Lesson 22)

When you want to say that something "might" or "could" happen, you can use the structure -(으)ㄹ 수도 있다.

Ex)

늦다 = to be late

→ 늦 + -(으)ㄹ 수도 있다 = 늦을 수도 있어요 = I might be late. / They might be late.

석진 씨가 알 수도 있어요.

= Seokjin might know.

오늘 집에 있을 수도 있어요.

= I might stay at home today.

LEVEL 8 LESSON 13

Word Builder lessons are designed to help you understand how to expand your vocabulary by learning/understanding some common and basic building blocks of Korean words. The words and letters introduced through Word Builder lessons are not necessarily all Chinese characters, or 한자 [han-ja]. Though many of them are based on Chinese characters, the meanings can be different from modern-day Chinese. Your goal, through these lessons, is to understand how words are formed and remember the keywords in Korean to expand your Korean vocabulary from there. You certainly don't have to memorize the Hanja characters, but if you want to, feel free!

Today's keyword is 주.

The Chinese character for this is 主. There are many other Chinese characters (or Hanja letters) that are used for 주, so keep in mind that not all the words that have 주 in them have related meanings.

The word 주 (主) is related to "king", "owner", "main", or "autonomous".

주 (owner) + 인 (person) = 주인 主人 [ju-in] = owner

주 (main) + 인 (person) + 공 (fair) = 주인공 主人公 [ju-in-gong] = main character

주 (main) + 요 (important) = 주요 主要 [ju-yo] = major

주 (main) + 류 (flow) = 주류 主流 [ju-ryu] = mainstream

주 (main) + 력 (force, power) = 주력 主力 [ju-ryeok] = main force

LEVEL 8 LESSON 13

주 (main) + 동 (movement) + 자 (person) = 주동자 主動者 [ju-dong-ja] = prime mover, leader

주 (main) + 원 (source) + 인 (cause) = 주원인 主原因 [ju-wo-nin] = leading cause, main reason

주 (main) + 원 (source) + 료 (count) = 주원료 主原料 [ju-won-ryo] = main material

주 (owner) + 부 (wife) = 주부 主婦 [ju-bu] = housewife, homemaker

주 (owner) + 장 (give) = 주장 主張 [ju-jang] = opinion, insistence

주 (owner) + 도 (lead) + 권 (power, authority) = 주도권 主導權 [ju-do-gwon] = leadership, initiative

주 (owner) + 권 (power) = 주권 主權 [ju-gwon] = sovereignty

주 (main) + 특 (special) + 기 (skill) = 주특기 主特技 [ju-teuk-gi] = specialty, special ability

주 (main) + 목 (eye) + 적 (target) = 주목적 主目的 [ju-mok-jeok] = primary goal

주 (owner) + 관 (view) = 주관 主觀 [ju-gwan] = one's own opinion

주 (owner) + 어 (language) = 주어 主語 [ju-eo] = subject (grammar)

LEVEL 8 LESSON 14

Welcome to another lesson in the series, Advanced Situational Expressions. In this lesson, we are going to introduce how to agree with someone. In addition to the basic "Yes. (= 네.)", there are a lot of expressions you can use to make your Korean more natural and fluent, so be sure to practice all of the phrases introduced in this lesson and try using them at least once, as soon as you can.

네.

= Yes.

맞아요. / 맞습니다.

= That's right. / That's correct.

그렇죠. / 그렇습니다.

= That's right. / That's true.

좋아요. / 좋습니다.

= Good. / Sounds good. / I like the idea.

물론이죠. / 물론입니다.

= Of course. / Sure. / For sure.

당연하죠.

= Of course!

그럼요.

= Sure!

LEVEL 8 LESSON 14

바로 그거죠! / 바로 그겁니다!

= Exactly! / That's what I'm saying!

좋은 생각이예요. / 좋은 생각입니다.

= That's a good idea.

저도 그렇게 생각해요. / 저도 같은 생각입니다.

= I think so too. / My thoughts exactly.

그렇게 하면 되겠네요.

= That will do. / That will work.

알겠어요.

= I got it. / I see.

그럼 그렇게 하시죠.

= Then let's do it that way.

안 될 거 없죠.

= Why not? / There is no reason we can't do it that way.

찬성이예요. / 찬성입니다.

= I agree.

LEVEL 8 LESSON 15

This lesson is a review and summary of the various types of future tense structures in the Korean language. There are mainly two basic future tense structures, **-(으)ㄹ 거예요** and **-(으)ㄹ게요**, but by using other structures, you can add more specific meanings to your sentences.

1. Basic Future Tense with “-(으)ㄹ 거예요” (Level 2 Lesson 1)

Verb stem + **-(으)ㄹ 거예요**

Ex)

사다 = to buy

→ 사 + **-(으)ㄹ 거예요** = 살 거예요 = I (or someone else) will buy it.

주다 = to give

→ 주 + **-(으)ㄹ 거예요** = 줄 거예요 = I (or someone else) will give (something to someone).

2. Basic Future Tense with “-(으)ㄹ게요” (Level 3 Lesson 6)

Verb stem + **-(으)ㄹ게요**

Ex)

보다 = to see

→ 보 + **-(으)ㄹ게요** = 볼게요 = I will check.

기다리다 = to wait

→ 기다리 + **-(으)ㄹ게요** = 기다릴게요 = I will wait.

3. **-(으)ㄹ 계획이에요**

계획 means “plan” or “scheme”, so if you say “Verb stem + **-(으)ㄹ 계획이에요**”, it means you plan to do something or you are planning to do something.

LEVEL 8 LESSON 15

Ex)

번역하다 = to translate

→ 번역하 + -(으)ㄹ 계획이에요 = 번역할 계획이에요 = I'm planning to translate.

옮기다 = to move to a different spot

→ 옮기 + -(으)ㄹ 계획이에요 = 옮길 계획이에요 = I'm planning to move (something to a different spot).

4. -(으)ㄹ 예정이에요

예정 means "schedule" or "being scheduled" so it is similar to 계획, but 예정 is used in more formal situations.

Ex)

시작되다 = to begin, to be started

→ 시작되 + -(으)ㄹ 예정이에요 = 시작될 예정이에요 = It is scheduled to begin; It is going to start.

방문하다 = to visit (formal)

→ 방문하 + -(으)ㄹ 예정이에요 = 방문할 예정이에요 = I am scheduled to visit; It's in his schedule to visit.

5. -(으)ㄹ 것 같아요 (Level 4 Lesson 27)

When you say "Verb stem + -(으)ㄹ 것 같아요", it means you think that something will happen or you will do something, but you are not completely sure. -(으)ㄹ 것 같아요 is usually the Korean translation of the English expression "I think".

LEVEL 8 LESSON 15

Ex)

곧 도착하다 = to arrive soon

→ 곧 도착하 + -(으)ㄹ 것 같아요 = 곧 도착할 것 같아요 = I think we'll arrive soon.

잘 되다 = to go well

→ 잘 되 + -(으)ㄹ 것 같다 = 잘 될 것 같아요 = I think it will go well.

6. -(으)ㄹ지도 몰라요 and -(으)ㄹ 수도 있어요 (Level 3 Lesson 22)

When you say "Verb stem + -(으)ㄹ지도 몰라요" or "Verb stem + -(으)ㄹ 수도 있어요", it means that you MIGHT do something or something MIGHT happen. The two expressions are very similar and almost always interchangeable.

Ex)

안 가다 = to not go

→ 안 가 + -(으)ㄹ지도 몰라요 = 안 갈지도 몰라요. = I might not go.

→ 안 가 + -(으)ㄹ 수도 있어요 = 안 갈 수도 있어요. = I might not go.

7. -(으)ㄹ까 생각 중이에요

In this structure, the -(으)ㄹ까 part is like a question for oneself. And "Verb stem + -(으)ㄹ까" is followed by 생각 중이에요, which means "I am thinking" or "I am in the middle of a thought".

Ex)

일본어를 배우다 = to learn Japanese

→ 일본어를 배우 + -(으)ㄹ까 생각 중이에요 = 일본어를 배울까 생각 중이에요. = I'm thinking of learning Japanese.

LEVEL 8 LESSON 15

8. -(으)ㄹ까 해요

-(으)ㄹ까 해요 has the same meaning as -(으)ㄹ까 생각 중이에요. Since the -(으)ㄹ까 part itself is usually sufficient to express that the person is asking oneself, the following part doesn't always have to be 생각 중이에요. It can be 고민 중이에요, 생각하고 있어요, or other phrases, but the most commonly used short form is 해요.

Ex)

일본어를 배울까 생각 중이에요. → 일본어를 배울까 해요. = I'm thinking of learning Japanese.

집에 갈까 생각 중이에요. → 집에 갈까 해요. = I'm thinking of going home.

9. -(으)려고 해요 (Level 5 Lesson 8)

-(으)려고 해요 is used after verb stems to express one's intention to do something or when something seems about to occur.

Ex)

포스터가 떨어지다 = the poster falls off

→ 포스터가 떨어지 + -(으)려고 해요 = 포스터가 떨어지려고 해요 = The poster is about to fall off.

LEVEL 8 LESSON 16

This is an Advanced Idiomatic Expressions lesson related to 가슴, the chest, heart, or breast. In order to fully understand and use the expressions introduced in this series, it is essential that you understand the grammatical structure of the sentences. When you come across a grammar point that you are unfamiliar with, please go back and review the related lessons.

Keyword:

가슴 = chest, heart, breast

1. **가슴이 아프다** = My heart aches. / It makes me sad.

(아프다 = to be sick, to hurt)

→ This could mean that you have some pain in the chest, but normally, if you say this, people will understand it as you are sad or that something is breaking your heart.

Ex) 저는 이런 기사를 읽으면 너무 가슴이 아파요.

= I'm so sad when I read articles like this.

2. **가슴이 두근거리다** = to be thrilled / one's heart palpitates

→ 두근거리다 can also be used alone to mean "to be thrilled" or "one's heart is pounding", but it's often used together with 가슴이. When you have something very exciting or absolutely nerve-wrecking coming up soon, such as confessing to someone or going on stage for a performance, you can use this expression.

Ex) 어젯밤에 가슴이 두근거리어서 잠을 많이 못 잤어요.

= I couldn't sleep a lot last night because I was so excited.

LEVEL 8 LESSON 16

3. **가슴이 뛰다** = one's heart beats / one's heart races / to be happily excited and motivated
(뛰다 = to jump, to run)

→ When you are excited about something and your heart is beating faster than normal, you can say 가슴이 뛰다. 가슴이 뛰다 can be used for both good and bad situations, but is more commonly used for good situations, such as when your heart is racing because you saw someone you like, or when you are about to achieve something that you've wanted for a long time.

Ex) 지금 가슴이 너무 뛰어서 말이 안 나와요.
= Right now I'm so excited that I can't speak.

4. **가슴이 답답하다** = to feel a pressure on one's chest / to feel heavy with worries
(답답하다 = to be stuffy, to be stifling)

→ 답답하다 can be used to refer to a stuffy environment, but it can also be used to talk about a situation or something that doesn't work as well as one wants. 가슴이 답답하다 is mixture of both of these meanings. When there's something that is not working out like you wish, you can feel that your 가슴이 답답하다.

Ex) 요즘에 걱정이 많아서 가슴이 답답해요.
= I have a lot of things to worry about these days, so I feel a pressure on my chest.

5. **가슴이 내려앉다** = to be greatly surprised / to be startled / one's heart sinks
(내려앉다 = to sink, to collapse)

LEVEL 8 LESSON 16

→ 내려앉다 means to sink or to collapse, so when your heart or chest suddenly "sinks" due to surprise, sadness or disappointment, you can use the expression 가슴이 내려앉다.

Ex) 그 소식 듣고 정말 가슴이 내려앉았어요.

= My heart sank when I heard that news.

6. 부푼 가슴을 안고 = with a pounding heart

(부풀다 = to inflate)

→ 부풀다 means "to inflate", so 부푼 가슴 is an inflated chest or inflated heart. This means your heart or mind is full of hope and excitement, so the expression 부푼 가슴을 안고 refers to the attitude in which you are dealing with things with great excitement and high hopes. This expression, however, tends to be used more often in written language.

Ex) 부푼 가슴을 안고 10년 전에 서울로 이사왔어요.

= I moved to Seoul 10 years ago, full of excitement for what I would be doing in Seoul.

7. 가슴에 와 닿다 = something touches one's heart / to hit home

(오다 = to come, 닿다 = to reach, to touch)

→ When something comes along and touches your heart, it means it hit home and you were touched. In that case, you can use the expression 가슴에 와 닿다. On the contrary, however, if a story or a movie doesn't hit home and you are not greatly moved by it, you can say 가슴에 와 닿지 않는다.

Ex) 왜인지 모르겠지만 이 이야기는 가슴에 와 닿지 않아요.

LEVEL 8 LESSON 16

= I don't know why, but this story doesn't touch my heart.

8. **가슴에 맺힌 한을 풀다** = to resolve one's deep sorrow

(맺히다 = to form, 한 = resentment, 풀다 = to resolve)

→ 한 is deep resentment or deep sorrow and 맺히다, which means "to form", is usually used with 눈물 (tears), 이슬 (dew), 땀 (sweat), or 한 (resentment). And 풀다 means to resolve, so 가슴에 맺힌 한을 풀다 means to resolve some long overdue deep sorrow, usually by finally doing something that one hasn't been able to do, or by being forgiven by someone.

Ex) 저희 어머니는 드디어 가슴에 맺힌 한을 풀었어요.

= She finally got/achieved what she had been hoping for.

9. **가슴 벅차다** = to be overwhelmed (with joy) / one's heart is overflowing with joy

→ When you're overwhelmed with joy and your heart is "full", you can say 가슴이 벅차다.

Ex) 제 친구가 올림픽에서 금메달을 따서 정말 가슴이 벅차요.

= My heart is overflowing with joy because my friend won a gold medal in the Olympic Games.

10. **가슴 깊이 후회하다** = to deeply regret

→ In fact, you can omit the word 가슴 and just say 깊이 후회하다 to mean the same thing, but by adding the word 가슴, you give the expression a stronger nuance.

Ex) 그때 제가 했던 말을 가슴 깊이 후회하고 있어요.

LEVEL 8 LESSON 16

= I am deeply regretting what I said back then.

11. 가슴 깊이 뉘우치다 = to deeply repent

→ This expression is very similar to 가슴 깊이 후회하다, except 뉘우치다 is closer to repenting and realizing one's fault.

Ex) 가슴 깊이 뉘우치고 있어요. 용서해 주세요.

= I am deeply repenting what I did. Please forgive me.

12. 가슴이 쿵닥쿵닥 (뛰다) = one's heart is pounding

→ 쿵닥쿵닥 is an onomatopoeia that describes the sound of a pounding heart or a mimetic word that describes how the heart pounds in a small and cute way. Other words that describe the same kind of movement or sound in a bigger scale or in a more serious way are 쿵광쿵광 or 쿵덕쿵덕.

Ex) 좋아하는 가수를 봐서 가슴이 쿵닥쿵닥 뛰었어요.

(= I saw my favorite singer so my heart was pounding.)

LEVEL 8 LESSON 17

In this lesson, we are taking a look at the structure -만 아니면, which can mean "if only it's not..." or "if only you were not...". This is used in situations where you talk about something that you would be willing to do, but you can't because of some reason. For example, you can use -만 아니면 in sentences like "If you were not my brother, I would not hang out with you" or "I would totally meet you for coffee, but I have work to do."

Structure

(1) Noun + -만 아니면 + Verb stem + -(으)ㄹ 텐데요

= If only it were not + [noun], I would + [verb]

= If only it were not for + [noun], I would + [verb]

= If only I didn't have + [noun], I would + [verb]

This is used when you want to say that you would do something only if A were not B.

Ex)

오늘이 월요일만 아니면 거기 갈 텐데요.

[o-neu-ri wo-ryo-il-man a-ni-myeon geo-gi gal ten-de-yo.]

= If only today were not Monday, I would go there.

숙제만 아니면 지금 갈 텐데요.

[suk-je-man a-ni-myeon ji-geum gal ten-de-yo.]

= If only I didn't have my homework, I would go.

(2) Noun + -만 아니면 + Verb stem + -았/었/였을 거예요

= If only it were not + [noun], I would have + [p.p.]

= If only it were not for + [noun], I would have + [p.p.]

LEVEL 8 LESSON 17

= If only I didn't have + [noun], I would have + [p.p.]

Ex)

친구만 아니면 경찰에 신고했을 거예요.

[chin-gu-man a-ni-myeon gyeong-cha-re sin-go-hae-sseul geo-ye-yo.]

= If only she were not my friend, I would've reported her to the police.

오늘이 친구 생일만 아니면 그냥 집에 있었을 거예요.

[o-neu-ri chin-gu saeng-il-man a-ni-myeon geu-nyang ji-be i-sseo-sseul geo-ye-yo.]

= If only today were not my friend's birthday, I would've just stayed at home.

(3) Nonn + -만 아니면 ...

= If only it were not + [noun] ...

= If only it were not for + [noun] ...

= If only I didn't have + [noun] ...

When what you would have done is obvious and can be easily guessed by the listener, you can just omit the rest of the sentence.

Ex)

직장 상사만 아니면 ...

= If only he were not my boss at work ...

Sample Sentences

1. 그 사람이 제 친구 남자친구만 아니면...

= If only he were not my friend's boyfriend ...

LEVEL 8 LESSON 17

2. 이것만 아니면 ...

= If only this didn't exist ...

3. 공사 소리만 아니면 잘 잤을 거예요.

= If only it were not for the construction noise, I would have slept well.

4. 여기가 친구 집만 아니면, 지금 잠들었을 거예요.

= If only I were not at a friend's house, I would have fallen asleep.

5. 저희 담임 선생님만 아니면, 따졌을 거예요.

= If only he were not my homeroom teacher, I would have started an argument.

LEVEL 8 LESSON 18

In today's lesson, we are looking at the grammatical structure, **-(으/는)ㄴ 대로**. This is used when you want to describe how something is done in the same way as another action or remains in the same state as the current. You can say things like "Leave it as it"; "Did you do as I told you?"; or "I wrote down what I heard" using this structure.

Construction

Past tense: Verb stem + -(으)ㄴ 대로

Present tense: Verb stem + -(는)ㄴ 대로

Ex)

보다 = to see

→ 본 대로 = the way you saw it; just the way you saw it; as you saw it

→ 보는 대로 = the way you see it; just the way you see it; as you see it

하다 = to do

→ 제가 하는 대로 = the way I do it; just like I do it; as I do it

→ 제가 한 대로 = the way I did it; just like I did it; as I did it

Examples

1. 아는 대로 = just the way one knows

(알다 = to know)

아는 대로 말해 주세요.

= Please tell me everything you know.

= Please tell me just the way you know of it (without changing anything).

LEVEL 8 LESSON 18

아는 대로 쓰세요.

= Just write whatever you know.

= You don't have to add or change anything, just write what you know.

2. 말한 대로 = just the way one said

(말하다 = to say)

제가 말한 대로 했어요?

= Did you do it the way I told you?

= Did you do as I said?

효진 씨가 말한 대로 했는데, 안 됐어요.

= We did as Hyojin said, but it didn't work.

= We did it just as Hyojin told us to, but it didn't go well.

3. 들은 대로 = just like I heard

(듣다 = to hear)

들은 대로 이야기해 주세요.

= Tell me what you heard.

= Tell me exactly as you heard it.

들은 대로 잘 전달했어요.

= I delivered the message well.

= I passed on what I heard accurately.

LEVEL 8 LESSON 18

Other usages and forms of -(으/느)ㄴ 대로

1. -(느)ㄴ 대로 meaning "as soon as"

→ You can use -(느)ㄴ 대로 after a verb stem to mean "as soon as".

Ex)

도착하다 = to arrive

→ 도착하는 대로 전화해 주세요. = Call me as soon as you arrive.

2. Verb stem + -(던) 대로

→ You can use -(던) 대로 instead of -(으)ㄴ 대로 to talk about a past action or state that wasn't finished or that was repeated.

Ex)

하다 = to do, 평소 = usual times

→ 평소에 하던 대로 하세요. = Just do as you usually do. / Just do it in the way you've always done it.

3. 이대로, 그대로, and 저대로

→ Combined with 이, 그, and 저, you can say "just like this" or "just like that" with 이대로, 그대로, and 저대로. The meanings are affected by the original meanings of the words 이, 그, and 저.

이대로 = just the way it is now; keeping the current state

저대로 = just like that is over there now; keeping the current state of that thing/person over there

그대로 = just the way it is

LEVEL 8 LESSON 18

4. Noun + -대로

→ When you add -대로 after a noun, it means "following + [noun]" or "just like how the [noun] goes".

제 말대로 = like I said; following what I said

→ 제 = my (polite)

→ 말 = words, saying, what one says

예언대로 = just as the prophecy said; just like the prediction said

→ 예언 = prophecy, prediction

LEVEL 8 LESSON 19

Today's grammar point, -는 한이 있더라도, is used when you want to say "even if that means I have to..." or "even if I end up ...-ing ...", meaning that you would take risks or try your best to achieve a desired result.

Construction

Verb stem + -는 한이 있더라도 + ...

= Even if I end up + ... -ing ...

= Even if that means I have to ...

Here, the word 한 means "case" or "situation", so the literal translation of this structure is "even if there is a situation where ABC happens, I will do XYZ". The phrase that follows is usually about something that one is determined to do, can't do, or has to do. When -는 한이 있더라도 is used in a sentence, that sentence usually ends with -수 없어요 (can't do), -아/어/여야 돼요 (have to), or -(으)ㄹ 거예요 (will).

Examples

1. 나중에 후회하는 한이 있더라도

= Even if that means we will regret it later

- 나중에 = later

- 후회하다 = to regret

2. 다치는 한이 있더라도

= Even if I might end up getting injured

- 다치다 = to get hurt, to get injured

LEVEL 8 LESSON 19

3. 지는 한이 있더라도

= Even if we might end up losing

- 지다 = to lose

Sample Sentences

1. 무대에서 쓰러지는 한이 있더라도 공연을 취소할 수는 없어요.

= Even if it means I might collapse on the stage, we can't cancel the performance.

2. 여행 계획을 다 취소하는 한이 있더라도 지금 수술을 받아야 돼요.

= Even if that means we have to cancel all the travel plans, you need to get this surgery now.

3. 회사를 그만두는 한이 있더라도 할 말은 해야겠어요.

= Even if I end up quitting the job because of this, I have to say what I have to say.

4. 약속에 많이 늦는 한이 있더라도 화장은 꼭 하고 가야 돼요.

= Even if I might end up being very late for the meeting, I must put my make-up on before I go.

5. 금방 고장나서 버리는 한이 있더라도 일단 사야겠어요.

= Even though this might end up breaking and I'll have to throw it away, I have to buy it now (and think about it later).

LEVEL 8 LESSON 20

In this series, we focus on how you can use the grammatical rules and expressions that you have learned so far to train yourself to make more Korean sentences more comfortably and more flexibly.

We will start off with THREE key sentences and practice changing parts of these sentences so that you don't end up just memorizing the same three sentences. We want you to be able to be as flexible as possible with the Korean sentences you can make.

Key Sentence #1

아무리 바빠도, 원칙대로 해야 돼요.

[a-mu-ri ba-ppa-do, won-chik-dae-ro hae-ya dwae-yo.]

= No matter how busy you are, you have to do it by the principles.

Key Sentence #2

나중에 바꾸는 한이 있더라도, 지금은 이렇게 했으면 좋겠어요.

[na-jung-e ba-kku-neun ha-ni it-deo-ra-do ji-geu-meun i-reoke hae-sseu-myeon jo-ke-sseo-yo.]

= Even if we might end up changing it later, I hope we just go with this for now.

Key Sentence #3

회사 일만 아니면 저도 호주로 여행을 갔을 거예요.

[hoe-sa il-man a-ni-myeon jeo-do ho-ju-ro yeo-haeng-eul ga-sseul geo-ye-yo.]

= If only I didn't have this work from my job, I would have gone to Australia to travel, too.

Expansion & variation practice with key sentence #1

LEVEL 8 LESSON 20

0. Original Sentence:

아무리 바빠도, 원칙대로 해야 돼요.

= No matter how busy you are, you have to do it by the principles.

1.

아무리 바빠도 = no matter how busy you are

아무리 힘들어도 = no matter how tired you are; no matter how difficult it is

아무리 친구가 중요해도 = no matter how important friends are to you

아무리 재미없는 이야기여도 = no matter how boring the story is

아무리 비싸도 = no matter how expensive it is

2.

원칙대로 해야 돼요. = you have to do it by the principles

마음대로 하세요. = do it as you please

제가 말한 대로 하세요. = do it as I said

들은 대로 이야기해 주세요. = tell me exactly what you heard

약속대로 해 주세요. = please do it as you promised you would

Expansion & variation practice with key sentence #2

0. Original Sentence:

나중에 바꾸는 한이 있더라도, 지금은 이렇게 했으면 좋겠어요.

= Even if we might end up changing it later, I hope we just go with this for now.

LEVEL 8 LESSON 20

1.

나중에 바꾸는 한이 있더라도 = even if we have to change it later

조금 늦는 한이 있더라도 = even if this makes me a little late for it

내일 다시 오는 한이 있더라도 = even if that means I might end up coming back again tomorrow

집에 못 가는 한이 있더라도 = even if it means I might not be able to go home

다른 사람들이 욕하는 한이 있더라도 = even if it means other people might criticize me

2.

지금은 이렇게 했으면 좋겠어요 = This time, I hope we do it like this

사람들이 많이 왔으면 좋겠어요 = I wish a lot of people would come

날씨가 좋았으면 좋겠어요 = I hope the weather will be nice

창문을 닫았으면 좋겠어요 = I hope they close the window

조용한 데로 갔으면 좋겠어요 = I hope we go somewhere quiet

Expansion & variation practice with key sentence #3

0. Original Sentence:

회사 일만 아니면 저도 호주로 여행을 갔을 거예요.

= If only I didn't have this work from my job, I would have gone to Australia to travel, too.

1.

회사 일만 아니면 = If only it had not been for the work from my job

회의만 아니면 = If only it had not been for the meeting

가족 행사만 아니면 = If only I didn't have to go to this family event

LEVEL 8 LESSON 20

컴퓨터 바이러스만 아니면 = If only it had not been for the computer virus

주차 요금만 아니면 = If only it had not been for the parking fees

2.

저도 호주로 여행을 갔을 거예요 = I would have gone to Australia to travel, too

저도 그렇게 말했을 거예요 = I would have said that, too

효진 씨도 이것 골랐을 거예요 = Hyojin would have chosen this, too

제프 씨도 좋다고 했을 거예요 = Jeff would have said

안 된다고 했을 거예요 = I would have said no

잘 됐을 거예요 = it would have gone well

LEVEL 8 LESSON 21

This is an Advanced Idiomatic Expressions lesson related to 머리, the head or hair. In order to fully understand and use the expressions introduced in this series, it is essential that you understand the grammatical structure of the sentences. When you come across a grammar point that you are unfamiliar with, please go back and review the related lessons.

Keyword:

머리 = head, hair

1. **머리가 좋다/나쁘다** = to be smart/stupid

(좋다 = to be good, 나쁘다 = to be bad)

→ The literal translation is that your "head" is good or bad, but the natural translation is that someone is "smart" or "not smart". Instead of 머리가 나쁘다, you can also say 머리가 안 좋다.

Ex) 그 사람은 머리는 좋은데 노력을 안 해요.

= He is smart, but he doesn't make any effort.

2. **머리를 쓰다** = to use one's brain; to think (as opposed to just act); to do brain work

→ 머리를 쓰다 is often used when thinking things through as opposed to just acting spontaneously without thinking too much. This phrase can also mean "to have the intelligence to do things in a smart or efficient way".

Ex) 힘으로만 하지 말고 머리를 좀 써 보세요.

= Don't try to do it just by strength, but think a little bit (about how to solve this problem).

LEVEL 8 LESSON 21

3. **머리를 굴리다** = to put one's brain to work; to use one's head to try to find a solution to a problem

(굴리다 = to roll something)

→ 머리를 굴리다 literally means "to roll one's head", but when used in context, it means "to try to come up with a solution to a problem by putting one's brain to work". This is a rather casual expression, so it can be considered rude to use it about or to someone older than you are.

Ex) 아무리 머리를 굴려 봐도 답이 안 나와요.

= No matter how hard I try (to think of a solution), I can't find an answer (or solution).

4. **잔머리(를) 굴리다** = to think of petty tricks (to get oneself out of a situation)

(잘다 = little, small, fine)

→ 잔머리(를) 굴리다 is similar to 머리를 굴리다, but by adding the word 잔 (adjective form of 잘다, meaning "little" or "small") to 머리, you add the nuance of "petty tricks" or "trying to find shortcuts/lazy ways to get out of a situation". Just like 머리를 굴리다, this is not appropriate to use to someone you need to show respect for or be formal with.

Ex) 잔머리 굴리지 말고 열심히 일해!

= Stop trying to find ways to work less. Just work hard.

= Don't think of petty tricks to not work. Get your work done.

5. **머리가 깨질 것 같다** = to have a very bad headache; to have a splitting headache

(깨지다 = to break)

LEVEL 8 LESSON 21

It doesn't mean that your head is really going break or split; it just means that you have a really bad headache. You can also say "머리가 깨질 것처럼 아파요", the literal meaning of which is "my head hurts as if it's going to be broken."

Ex) 어제 술을 너무 많이 마셔서 오늘 머리가 깨질 것처럼 아파요.

= I drank too much yesterday, so I have a splitting headache today.

6. **머리가 (잘) 안 돌아가다** = can't think well; can't think straight; one's brain is slow
(돌아가다 = to go around, to go back, to spin)

When you say that your brain or head "spins" (in Korean), just like a motor or a hard drive in a computer, it means that your brain "works" or that you are thinking. So when you say that your brain "doesn't spin very well", you mean that you can't think clearly, straight, or well for the moment.

Ex) 피곤해서 머리가 안 돌아가요. 바람 좀 쐬고 올게요.

= I'm tired so I can't think straight. I'll go get some fresh air.

7. **머리가 복잡하다** = can't think straight; to have a lot of concerns in one's head
(복잡하다 = to be complicated, to be complex)

When someone says that his or her "head" is "complicated" in Korean, you can assume that it means a lot of thoughts and concerns are cluttering the person's brain. 머리가 복잡하다 usually has a negative connotation, so be careful when you use it!

Ex) 요즘에 걱정되는 일이 많아서 머리가 복잡해요.

LEVEL 8 LESSON 21

= I am worried about a lot of things these days, so my head is full of concerns.

8. **머리를 스치다** = an idea (or thought) that flashes through one's mind

(스치다 = to graze, to brush past)

스치다 is originally "to graze" or to "brush past". When you walk past someone and your shoulder touches the other person's shoulder very lightly, you use the verb 스치다. Therefore, when an idea (아이디어) or a thought (생각) occurs to you, you can say 머리를 스치다.

Ex) 재미있는 생각이 머리를 스쳤어요.

= I just thought of an interesting idea.

= An interesting idea just flashed through my head.

9. **머리가 멍하다** = one's mind is blank; to be disoriented

If you find yourself in a situation where your mind goes completely blank due to any number of reasons, whether it be stress, confusion, or fatigue, you can say "머리가 멍하다" in Korean to express your situation.

Ex) 여기 너무 시끄러워서 머리가 멍해요.

= It's so noisy here that I can't think.

10. **머리가 땡하다** = to feel dizzy; one's brain feels numb

You can use 머리다 땡하다 for when you feel dizzy as well as when you have a headache that makes your brain feel numb.

LEVEL 8 LESSON 21

Ex) 갑자기 일어섰더니 머리가 땡 해요.

= I stood up suddenly and I feel dizzy.

11. **머리가 크다** = to start thinking like a grown-up and making mature judgements.

(크다 = to be big, to grow up)

You can say "머리가 크다" about a person whose head is big, but you can also use the word 크다 to mean "to grow up". In this case, 머리가 크다 means "to start thinking like a grown-up" or "to feel like someone has grown up and does not want to listen to what older people tell him/her".

Ex) 이제 애들이 머리가 커서 말을 안 들어요.

= The children have grown, so now they don't listen to what I say.

LEVEL 8 LESSON 22

Word Builder lessons are designed to help you understand how to expand your vocabulary by learning/understanding some common and basic building blocks of Korean words. The words and letters introduced through Word Builder lessons are not necessarily all Chinese characters, or 한자 [han-ja]. Though many of them are based on Chinese characters, the meanings can be different from modern-day Chinese. Your goal, through these lessons, is to understand how words are formed and remember the keywords in Korean to expand your Korean vocabulary from there. You certainly don't have to memorize the Hanja characters, but if you want to, feel free!

Today's keyword is 상.

The Chinese character for this is 上. There are many other Chinese characters (or Hanja letters) that are used for 상, so keep in mind that not all the words that have 상 in them have related meanings.

The word 상 (上) is related to "up", "high", or "on".

상 (high) + 하 (low) = 상하 (上下) = above and below, 1st and 2nd volumes of a book

상 (up) + 경 (Seoul) = 상경 (上京) = going (up) to Seoul

상 (high) + 위 (rank, position) = 상위 (上位) = high rank

상 (high) + 반 (half) + 기 (period) = 상반기 (上半期) = first half of the year

상 (high) + 사 (be in charge) = 상사 (上司) = boss

LEVEL 8 LESSON 22

상 (up) + 장 (market, yard) = 상장 (上場) = go public and be listed on the stock market

상 (high) + 급 (grade) = 상급 (上級) = advanced, higher level

상 (up) + 공 (empty, air) = 상공 (上空) = sky (above a certain place)

상 (up) + 승 (go up) = 상승 (上昇) = increase, rise, climb

상 (high) + 류 (flow) = 상류 (上流) = upper class, upper region of a river

북 (north) + 상 (go up) = 북상 (北上) = going north (e.g. typhoon)

사 (history) + 상 (on) = 사상 (史上) = in history, all-time

업무 (work) + 상 (on) = 업무상 (業務上) = for work, for business

조 (grandfather) + 상 (high) = 조상 (祖上) = ancestor

상 (up) + 의 (clothes) = 상의 (上衣) = (clothes) one's top

정 (top) + 상 (on) = 정상 (頂上) = top, summit

세 (humanity) + 상 (on) = 세상 (世上) = world

옥 (house) + 상 (on) = 옥상 (屋上) = rooftop

LEVEL 8 LESSON 23

Welcome to another lesson in the Advanced Situation Expressions series. Throughout this series, we will take a look at common situations and some of the advanced expressions you can use in each of them. In this lesson, we will introduce various expressions you can use when you want to make suggestions and proposals.

Sentence Structures

1. How about doing ...?

= Verb stem + -(으)(시)는 건 어떨까요?

= Verb stem + -(으)(시)는 건 어때요?

Ex) How about doing it this way?

= 이렇게 하시는 건 어때요?

= 이렇게 해 보시는 건 어때요?

= 이렇게 해 보시는 건 어떨까요?

2. Why don't we do ...?

= -(으)(시)래요?

= -(으)(시)겠어요?

Ex) Why don't we go to the meeting together?

= 회의에 같이 가실래요?

= 회의에 같이 가시겠어요?

3. I think it will be better to ...

= -(시)는 게 좋을 것 같아요.

LEVEL 8 LESSON 23

Ex) I think it will be for you to research more about this.

= 좀 더 알아보시는 게 좋을 것 같아요.

4. I'm thinking of ...ing. What do you think?

= -(으)니까 하는데, 어떻게 생각하세요?

= -(으)니까 하는데, 어떠세요?

Ex) 사무실을 옮길까 하는데, 어떻게 생각하세요?

= I'm thinking of moving the office (to another location). What do you think?

Fixed Expressions

1. 차라리

= it would rather be ...

= it will be more ... if you ...

Ex)

차라리 안 하는 게 좋을 것 같아요.

= I think it would rather be better not to do it.

차라리 다른 제품을 쓰는 게 좋을 것 같아요.

= It will be better to use a different product (rather than sticking with the current one).

2. 아니면

= or

= or perhaps

LEVEL 8 LESSON 23

= or if you don't like that option

Ex)

아니면 그냥 이렇게 할까요?

= Or shall we just do it this way?

아니면 더 큰 장소를 찾아볼까요?

= Or perhaps we should look for a bigger place?

3. 그러면

= if so

= if that's the case

= then

Ex)

그러면 행사를 연기할까요?

= Then shall we postpone the event?

그러면 제가 해 보면 어떨까요?

= Then how about me giving it a try?

4. 한번 이렇게 해 보는 것도 나쁘지는 않을 것 같은데요.

= It wouldn't hurt to try doing it this way (just for this once).

5. 일단 한번 이렇게 해 보는 거 어떨까요?

= For now, how about we try doing it this way?

LEVEL 8 LESSON 23

6. 이런 방법도 있지 않을까요?

= Perhaps we can do it like this?

7. 저한테 좋은 생각이 있습니다.

= I have a good idea.

8. 좋은 생각이 떠올랐어요.

= A good idea just occurred to me.

9. 제안 드리고 싶은 게 있습니다.

= I have a suggestion that I'd like to make to you.

10. 이렇게 해 볼 수도 있을 것 같아요.

= I think we could do it like this.

11. 혹시 이렇게도 해 보셨어요?

= Have you, by any chance, tried doing it like this, too?

12. 이런 식으로 해 보는 것도 괜찮을 것 같아요.

= I think it will be cool to try doing it like this too.

LEVEL 8 LESSON 24

In this lesson, we are taking a look at how to use the sentence ending “-(으)ㄴ 따름이다”. This is used to express the meaning of “only” as in “we can only ...” or “what I did is just ...”. This is a somewhat formal ending and can be found in many official (usually apologetic) statements as well as contexts where the speaker is expressing hope or regret, such as “I only did what he told me, but ...” or “we can only wait for the result now”.

Construction

Present / Future Tense:

Verb stem + -(으)ㄴ 따름이다

Past Tense:

Verb stem + -았/었/였 + -(으)ㄴ 따름이다

Ex)

기다리다 (= to wait)

--> 기다리 + -(으)ㄴ 따름이다

--> 기다릴 따름입니다. (= I can only wait.)

말해 주다 (= to tell someone)

--> 말해 주 + -었 + -(으)ㄴ 따름이다

--> 말해 줬을 따름입니다. (= I did nothing but tell them about it.)

Sample Sentences

1. 부끄러울 따름입니다.

[bu-kkeu-reo-ul tta-reu-mim-ni-da]

= I'm just ashamed of it/my mistake/what I did/what happened.

LEVEL 8 LESSON 24

(I have nothing else to say; I can't say anything but this; I can't think of anything else but this.)

2. 제가 이 상을 받을 수 있게 도와 주신 모든 분들께 감사할 따름입니다.

[je-ga i sang-eul ba-deul su it-ge do-wa ju-sin mo-deun bun-deul-kke gam-sa-hal tta-reu-mim-ni-da.]

= I'm just grateful to everybody who helped me receive this award.

3. 정말 놀라울 따름입니다.

[jeong-mal nol-la-ul tta-reu-mim-ni-da.]

= All I can say is that I'm surprised.

= It's really shocking. That's all I can say.

4. 저는 해야 할 일을 했을 따름입니다.

[jeo-neun hae-ya hal i-reul hae-sseul tta-reu-mim-ni-da.]

= I just did what I had to do.

5. 이런 일이 생겨서, 저희는 정말 당황스러울 따름입니다.

[i-reon i-ri saeng-gyeo-seo jeo-hui-neun jeong-mal dang-hwang-seu-reo-ul tta-reu-mim-ni-da.]

= We are just really embarrassed that something like this happened.

Difference between 따름입니다 and 뿐입니다

뿐입니다 also has the same meaning, but 뿐입니다 is commonly used in spoken Korean and in a lighter, less formal setting. For example, "저는 해야 할 일을 했을 따름입니다" (Sample Sentence #4) can be changed to "저는 해야 할 일을 했을 뿐이에요" to be made less formal.

LEVEL 8 LESSON 25

Welcome to another lesson in the Advanced Situational Expressions series. Throughout this series, we will take a look at common situations and some of the advanced expressions you can use in each of them. In this lesson, we will introduce various expressions you can use when you want to defend, deny, or negate something.

1. 그렇지 않아요.

[geu-reo-chi a-na-yo.]

= That's not true.

= That's not how it is.

= It's not like that.

2. 그게 아니고요.

[geu-ge a-ni-go-yo.]

= That's not true.

= That's not how it is.

= No, I'm not talking about that.

= That's not the issue here.

3. 그건 아닌 것 같아요.

[geu-geon a-nin geot ga-ta-yo.]

= I don't think that's how it is.

= I don't think it's true.

= I don't think that's the case.

4. 아니요, 제 말은 그게 아니고요.

[a-ni-yo, je ma-reun geu-ge a-ni-go-yo.]

LEVEL 8 LESSON 25

= No, that's not what I'm saying.

= No, that's not what I mean.

5. 절대 그럴 리가 없어요.

[jeol-dae geu-reol li-ga eop-seo-yo.]

= That's impossible.

= That can't be true.

6. 말도 안 돼요.

[mal-do an-dwae-yo.]

= It doesn't even make sense.

= That's not even possible.

7. 그런 뜻으로 한 말이 아니에요.

[geu-reon tteu-seu-ro han ma-ri a-ni-e-yo.]

= I didn't mean that by what I said.

= What I said doesn't mean that.

8. 뭔가 잘못 아셨을 거예요.

[mwon-ga jal-mot a-syeo-sseul geo-ye-yo.]

= You must be mistaken about something.

9. 분명 뭔가 오해가 있는 것 같아요.

[bun-myeong mwon-ga o-hae-ga it-neun geot ga-ta-yo.]

= I'm sure there is a misunderstanding.

= There must be a misunderstanding.

LEVEL 8 LESSON 25

10. **꼭 그런 건 아니고요.**

[kkok geu-reon geon a-ni-go-yo.]

= It's not exactly like that.

11. **그렇다고 보기는 힘들죠.**

[geu-reo-ta-go bo-gi-neun him-deul-jyo.]

= It is hard to say that's the case.

= You can't really say it is.

12. **아직 확실히 정해진 건 아니에요.**

[a-jik hwak-si-ri jeong-hae-jin geon a-ni-e-yo.]

= It's not decided for sure yet.

= It's not final yet.

LEVEL 8 LESSON 26

This is an Advanced Idiomatic Expressions lesson related to 몸, the body. In order to fully understand and use the expressions introduced in this series, it is essential that you understand the grammatical structure of the sentences. When you come across a grammar point that you are unfamiliar with, please go back and review the related TTMIK lessons.

Keyword:

몸 = body

1. 몸이 약하다 = to be weak

(약하다 = to be weak)

→ The verb 약하다 itself already means "to be weak" but if you say that someone is 약해요, it means that he/she is in a weak position or his/her athletic ability or skill is not superior, rather than his/her body is weak. A similar expression is 몸이 허약하다.

Ex) 저는 어렸을 때 몸이 약했어요.

= When I was small, I was a weak child.

2. 몸이 튼튼하다 = to be strong, to be healthy

(튼튼하다 = to be strong, to be sturdy, to be solid)

→ 튼튼하다 can be used for many things - furniture, teeth, car, and so on. Therefore, when you want to specify that someone has a robust or healthy body, you need to use the word 몸 together with 튼튼하다.

Ex) 저는 몸이 튼튼해서 감기에 잘 안 걸려요.

LEVEL 8 LESSON 26

= I am healthy/strong so I don't catch a cold easily.

3. **몸이 근질거리다** = to be anxious/raring to do something

(근질거리다 = to be itchy)

→ When you're itching to do something, it means that you haven't done something that you've wanted to do for a long time and can't wait to do it, or that you are anxiously looking forward to starting something. You can use the expression "몸이 근질거리다" to express how much you want to start moving and get rid of the itch.

Ex) 요즘에 운동을 안 했더니 몸이 근질거려요.

= I haven't done any exercise recently, so I'm dying to start working out again.

4. **몸이 좋다/안 좋다** = to be in good shape/to be not healthy, to not feel well

(좋다 = to be good)

→ When you say "몸이 좋다", it means that someone is in good shape or overy fit and well-built. But when you say the opposite, 몸이 안 좋다, it doesn't mean that the person is not fit; it means that the person is not feeling well.

Ex) 몸이 안 좋을 때에는 충분히 자는 게 좋아요.

= When you are not feeling well, you need to get enough sleep.

5. **몸을 만들다** = to build up one's body, to work out to get fit

(만들다 = to make)

LEVEL 8 LESSON 26

→ You can't "make" a body, but in Korean, if you say 몸을 만들다, it means "to build up" one's body or to build muscles. It can also mean "to lose weight to get fit" in some contexts.

Ex) 요즘 몸 만들려고 운동을 열심히 하고 있어요.

= These days I am working out hard in order to get fit/build muscles.

6. 몸을 사리다 = to spare oneself, to be cautious and not take any risk

→ 몸을 사리다 means to play it safe and keep away from possible risks. It can be used both with positive and negative connotations.

Ex) 저 운동선수는 몸을 안 사리고 위험한 기술을 많이 시도해서, 많이 다쳤어요.

= That athlete has tried many dangerous techniques without worrying about his safety, so he has gotten hurt many times.

7. 몸에 배다 = to become a habit, to get comfortable doing something repeatedly
(배다 = to be saturated)

→ 배다 originally means that color or smell is stained or saturated on clothes or in places, but when a behavior or skill is saturated into your body, it means that it has become a habit or you have grown so used to it that you can do it without effort.

Ex) 처음에는 어색했는데 벌써 몸에 뻘었어요.

= It was unfamiliar and awkward at first, but I've grown used to it.

8. 몸을 혹사시키다 = to overexert oneself, to overwork

LEVEL 8 LESSON 26

(혹사시키다 = to overexert, to exploit)

→ When you overwork yourself or don't get enough rest, what you are doing is "exploiting" or "overexerting" your body. In Korean, you say "몸을 혹사시키다" instead of "자신(oneself)을 혹사시키다". If you want to emphasize "yourself" you can add the word 자기 and say "자기 몸을 혹사시키다".

Ex) 왜 그렇게 자기 몸을 혹사시켜요? 쉬면서 하세요.

= Why do you overwork yourself? Get some rest from time to time.

9. **몸을 망치다** = to ruin one's health

(망치다 = to mess up, to screw up)

→ 망치다 means to screw something up. Therefore, when you say "몸을 망치다", it means to ruin one's health, usually by drinking too much, not sleeping enough, or working too much.

Ex) 아무리 젊어도, 잠을 안 자고 공부하면 몸을 망쳐요.

= No matter how young you are, if you only study without sleeping, you will ruin your health.

LEVEL 8 LESSON 27

Welcome to another lesson in the Advanced Situational Expressions series. Throughout this series, we will take a look at common situations and some of the advanced expressions you can use in each of them. In this lesson, we will introduce various expressions you can use when you want to make compliments about or to someone.

1. 우와, 이거 어떻게 하셨어요?

[u-wa i-geo eo-tteo-ke ha-syeo-sseo-yo?]

= Wow. How did you do this?

2. 어떻게 이렇게 하셨어요?

[eo-tteo-ki i-reo-ke ha-syeo-sseo-yo?]

= How did you do it like this?

= How did you do that?

= How were you able to do such a difficult thing?

3. 잘 하신 거예요.

[jal ha-sin geo-ye-yo.]

= You've done a good thing.

= You've made the right choice.

= It's a good thing you did that.

4. 정말 잘하시네요.

[jeong-mal jal ha-si-ne-yo.]

= You're really good at it.

4. 어떻게 그렇게 ○○를 잘하세요?

LEVEL 8 LESSON 27

[eo-tteo-ke geu-reo-ke o o -reul ja-ra-se-yo?]

= How are you so good at o o?

5. 정말 대단하신 것 같아요.

[jeong-mal dae-da-na-sin geot ga-ta-yo.]

= I think you are amazing.

= You are really inspiring.

6. 오늘 패션 너무 멋져요.

[o-neul pae-syeon neo-mu meot-jyeo-yo.]

= Your fashion looks awesome today.

7. 오늘 옷이 너무 예뻐요.

[o-neul o-si neo-mu ye-ppeo-yo.]

= I really like your outfit.

= Your outfit looks very beautiful today.

8. 요즘 젊어지신 것 같아요.

[yo-jeum jeol-meo-ji-sin geot ga-ta-yo.]

= It seems like you've become younger recently.

= You look younger these days.

9. 갈수록 예뻐지시는 것 같아요.

[gal-su-rok ye-ppeo-ji-si-neun geot ga-ta-yo.]

= I think you are becoming prettier and prettier.

= You are becoming prettier day by day.

LEVEL 8 LESSON 27

10. 저도 ○○ 씨처럼 ○○를 잘했으면 좋겠어요.

[jeo-do ○○ ssi-cheo-reom ○○-rul ja-rae-sseu-myeon jo-ke-sseo-yo.]

= I wish I were good at ○○ like you.

= I wish I could do ○○ as well as you do.

11. 너무 부러워요.

[neo-mu bu-reo-wo-yo.]

= I'm so jealous.

12. ○○ 잘하신다고 이야기 많이 들었어요.

[○○ ja-ra-sin-da-go i-ya-gi ma-ni deu-reo-sseo-yo.]

= I've heard a lot that you are good at ○○.

= Many people have told me that you are good at ○○.

13. 도대체 못 하는 게 뭐예요?

[do-dae-che mot ha-neun ge mwo-ye-yo?]

= Is there anything you can't do?

LEVEL 8 LESSON 28

In this lesson, we are going to take a look at how to use the expression **불구하고**, which means "despite," "in spite of," or "although." It is a rather formal expression and is more commonly used in formal settings such as business presentation and speeches, but it can also be found in some news reports, dramas, or movies.

Construction

Noun + -에도 불구하고 = despite + Noun

Verb stem + -는데도 불구하고 = despite/although + Verb

Since **불구하고** is very formal, if you want to say the same thing in a less formal manner, you can just use the structure "Verb stem + -는데도" without adding "**불구하고**" at the end. This is only applicable to verbs.

Sample Sentences

경고에도 불구하고 전혀 달라진 것이 없어요.

[gyeong-go-e-do bul-gu-ha-go jeon-hyeo dal-la-jin geo-si eop-seo-yo.]

= Despite the warning, nothing has changed at all.

(Less formal = 경고했는데도 전혀 달라진 게 없어요.)

이미 충분히 설명을 했는데도 불구하고 아직도 모르겠다고 합니다.

[i-mi chung-bu-ni seol-myeong-eul haet-neun-de-do bul-gu-ha-go a-jik-do mo-reu-get-da-go ham-ni-da.]

= Despite having provided enough explanation, they say they still don't get it.

(Less formal = 이미 충분히 설명을 했는데도 아직도 모르겠대요.)

그 용의자는 증거가 있는데도 불구하고 무죄로 풀려났습니다.

LEVEL 8 LESSON 28

[geu yong-eui-ja-neun it-neun-de-do bul-gu-ha-go mu-joe-ro pul-lyeo-na-sseum-ni-da.]

= Although there was evidence, the suspect was declared innocent and was released.

(Less formal = 그 용의자는 증거가 있는데도 무죄로 풀려났어요.)

정부의 노력에도 불구하고, 물가가 계속 상승하고 있습니다.

[jeong-bu-ui no-ryeo-ge-do bul-gu-ha-go, mul-ga-ga gye-sok sang-seung-ha-go i-sseum-ni-da.]

= Despite the government's efforts, prices are on a constant rise.

(Less formal = 정부가 노력을 하는데도, 물가가 계속 오르고 있어요.)

숙면을 취했는데도 불구하고 계속 피곤하다면, 병원에 가 봐야 합니다.

[suk-myeo-neul chwi-haet-neun-de-do bul-gu-ha-go gye-sok pi-go-na-da-myeon byeong-wo-ne ga bwa-ya ham-ni-da.]

= If you are still tired despite having had a good night's sleep, you need to go see a doctor.

(Less formal = 숙면을 취했는데도 계속 피곤하다면, 병원에 가 봐야 해요.)

LEVEL 8 LESSON 29

Welcome to another lesson in the Advanced Situational Expressions series. Throughout this series, we will take a look at common situations and some of the advanced expressions you can use in each of them. In this lesson, we will introduce various expressions you can use when you feel very happy about something or a particular situation.

1. 너무 신나요.

[neo-mu sin-na-yo.]

= I'm so excited.

(Talking to oneself/Exclamation)

너무 신난다!

[neo-mu sin-nan-da]

= I'm so excited!

2. 진짜 너무 잘 됐어요.

[jin-jja neo-mu jal dwae-sseo-yo.]

= I'm so happy about it.

= I'm so happy that you were able to do it.

3. 잘 돼서 정말 다행이에요.

[jal dwae-seo jeong-mal da-haeng-i-e-yo.]

= I'm so happy that it went well.

= I'm so happy that the result is very good.

4. 오늘 일이 잘 풀리는 것 같아요.

[o-neul i-ri jal pul-li-neun geot ga-ta-yo.]

LEVEL 8 LESSON 29

= I think things are going well today.

5. 뭔가 좋은 예감이 들어요.

[mwon-ga jo-eun ye-ga-mi deu-reo-yo.]

= I have a good feeling about this.

6. 왠지 오늘 좋은 일이 생길 것 같아요.

[waen-ji o-neul jo-eun i-ri saeng-gil geot ga-ta-yo.]

= For some reason, I think something good will happen today.

7. 날아갈 것 같은 기분이에요.

[na-ra-gal geot ga-teun gi-bu-ni-e-yo.]

= I feel like I am going to fly.

= I feel so happy that I feel like I can fly.

8. 너무 마음이 놓여요.

[neo-mu ma-eu-mi no-yeo-yo.]

= I'm so relieved.

= I'm relieved to hear that.

9. 이제 발 뻗고 잘 수 있을 것 같아요.

[i-je bal ppeot-go jal su i-sseul geot ga-ta-yo.]

= I think I can finally sleep peacefully.

= I think I can finally sleep with my legs stretched out straight. (literal)

10. 이게 꿈인지 생시인지 모르겠어요.

LEVEL 8 LESSON 29

[i-ge kku-min-ji saeng-si-in-ji mo-reu-ge-sseo-yo.]

= I don't know whether this is a dream or reality.

LEVEL 8 LESSON 30

In this series, we focus on how you can use the grammatical rules and expressions that you have previously learned to train yourself to comfortably make Korean sentences.

We will start off with THREE key sentences and practice changing different parts of these sentences so that you don't end up simply memorizing the same three sentences. We want you to be able to be as flexible as possible when making Korean sentences.

Key Sentence #1

저는 들은 대로 전달했을 뿐이에요.

[jeo-neun deu-reun dae-ro jeon-da-rae-sseul ppu-ni-e-yo.]

= I just told them what I had heard.

= I just delivered the message exactly as I heard it.

Key Sentence #2

혼자 가지 말고, 친구들이랑 같이 가는 건 어때요?

[hon-ja ga-ji mal-go, chin-gu-deu-ri-rang ga-chi ga-neun geon eo-ttae-yo?]

= Rather than going there alone, how about going with your friends?

Key Sentence #3

1시간 후에 문을 닫는다고 하니까, 내일 다시 오는 게 좋을 것 같아요.

[han si-gan hu-e mu-neul dat-neun-da-go ha-ni-kka, nae-il da-si o-neun ge jo-eul geot ga-ta-yo.]

= Since they say they are going to close in one hour, we'd better come back again tomorrow.

LEVEL 8 LESSON 30

Expansion & variation practice with key sentence #1

0. Original Sentence:

저는 들은 대로 전달했을 뿐이에요.

= I just delivered the message exactly as I heard it.

1.

들은 대로 = just as I heard it

본 대로 = just as I saw it

읽은 대로 = just as I read it

아침에 둔 대로 = just the way I put it in the morning

제가 말한 대로 = just the way I said

2.

전달했을 뿐이에요 = I just delivered the message, that's it.

궁금했을 뿐이에요 = I was just curious.

잠깐 목소리를 듣고 싶었을 뿐이에요 = I just wanted to hear your voice for a little bit.

피곤해서 쉬고 싶었을 뿐이에요 = I was tired and just wanted to get some rest.

Expansion & variation practice with key sentence #2

0. Original Sentence:

LEVEL 8 LESSON 30

혼자 가지 말고, 친구들이랑 같이 가는 건 어때요?

= Rather than going there alone, how about going with your friends?

1.

혼자 가지 말고 = instead of going alone

여기에서 기다리지 말고 = instead of waiting here

걱정만 하지 말고 = instead of just worrying

직접 가서 사지 말고 = instead of going there yourself to buy it

위험하니까 직접 하지 말고 = since it's dangerous; instead of doing it yourself

2.

친구들이랑 같이 가는 건 어때요? = how about going with your friends?

이렇게 하는 건 어때요? = how about doing it this way?

그냥 여기 있는 건 어때요? = how about just staying here?

인터넷으로 알아보는 건 어때요? = how about looking it up on the Internet?

Expansion & variation practice with key sentence #3

0. Original Sentence:

1시간 후에 문을 닫는다고 하니까, 내일 다시 오는 게 좋을 것 같아요.

= Since they say they are going to close in one hour, we'd better come back again tomorrow.

1.

1시간 후에 문을 닫는다고 하니까 = they say they are going to close in one hour, so...

LEVEL 8 LESSON 30

여기가 제일 좋다고 하니까 = since they say this is the best place

내일은 비가 온다고 하니까 = since they say it's going to rain tomorrow

지금 질문을 받는다고 하니까 = they say they are receiving questions now, so...

2.

내일 다시 오는 게 좋을 것 같아요 = we'd better come back again tomorrow

이건 안 하는 게 좋을 것 같아요 = we'd better not do this

오늘은 좀 쉬는 게 좋을 것 같아요 = I'd better get some rest today

오늘은 일찍 자는 게 좋을 것 같아요 = I'd better go to bed early today

다음 번엔 좀 일찍 시작하는 게 좋을 것 같아요 = we'd better get started a little early next time

LEVEL 9 LESSON 1

This is an Advanced Idiomatic Expressions lesson related to 손, the hand. In order to fully understand and use the expressions introduced in this series, it is essential that you understand the grammatical structure of the sentences. When you come across a grammar point that you are unfamiliar with, please go back and review the related TTMIK lessons.

Keyword:

손 = hand

1. 손에 익다 = get accustomed to something

(익다 = to be ripe, to be experienced)

→ You might be familiar with the word 익숙하다, which means "to be used to" something. Here, the verb 익다 has the same meaning as 익숙하다, but with the word 손, the expression is always used in the form 손에 익다. Think of it as a task or skill being "comfortable" or "accustomed" to the hand.

Ex) 아직 일이 손에 익지 않아서, 시간이 오래 걸려요.

= I haven't become accustomed to the work yet, so it takes me a long time.

2. 손을 씻다 = to be through with something (bad); to quit doing something (bad)

(씻다 = to wash)

→ The verb 씻다 means "to wash," so the literal meaning of 손을 씻다 is "to wash one's hands." While it really is used in that sense, the expression 손을 씻다 can also be used to mean "to quit doing something bad," such criminal or illegal acts.

LEVEL 9 LESSON 1

Ex) 저는 그 일에서 손 씻은 지 오래 됐어요.

= It's been a long time since I quit doing that.

3. 손이 크다 = to have an open hand; to be very generous (usually with food that one cooks)

(크다 = to be big)

→ When someone tends to make a lot of food when cooking, you can say that the person is 손이 크다. When this expression is used in an idiomatic way, it has nothing to do with the actual size of the person's hand. 손이 크다 is often, if not always, used to refer to mothers always cooking more food than necessary.

Ex) 저희 어머니는 손이 커서 항상 음식을 너무 많이 하세요.

= My mother has an open hand, so she always cooks too much food.

4. 손에 땀을 쥐다 = to be thrilled (while experiencing or watching something)

(땀 = sweat, 쥐다 = to grab)

→ Literally, 손에 땀을 쥐다 means to "grab sweat in one's hand." The actual meaning of this phrase is that you are so excited and thrilled that your hands start sweating, therefore you have some sweat in your hands. This expression is commonly used in the forms 손에 땀을 쥐고, meaning "while being very thrilled," and 손에 땀을 쥐게 하는, meaning "to be thrilling."

Ex) 축구 경기가 너무 재미있어서 정말 손에 땀을 쥐고 봤어요.

LEVEL 9 LESSON 1

The soccer match was a lot of fun, so I felt really thrilled while watching it.

The soccer match was a lot of fun and I was really on the edge of my seat.

5. 손에 안 잡히다 = can't concentrate on something (usually work)

(잡히다 = to be grabbed, to be caught)

→ When you say that something is 손에 안 잡히다, it literally means that something is "not caught by one's hands" but the actual meaning behind it is that you can't get your hands on some task or can't concentrate on something because you are distracted by other worries or exciting things.

Ex) 걱정돼서 일이 손에 안 잡혀요.

= I can't concentrate on work because I am worried.

6. 손을 놓다 = to stop working on something; to get one's hands off something

(놓다 = to let go)

→ When you have your hands off something, it means you are not working on it anymore. You can say 손을 놓다 when you are either distracted or discouraged and not working on something anymore.

Ex) 요즘 비디오 만드는 것에 손을 놓고 있었어요.

= Recently, I haven't been making any videos.

7. 손이 닳도록 빌다 = to beg as if one's life depended on it; to beg

LEVEL 9 LESSON 1

and plead

(닳다 = to be worn down, 빌다 = to beg, to plead)

→ 빌다 is to beg or to plead, and 손이 닳도록 means "to the point where your hands will be worn out", so all together, 손이 닳도록 빌다 means to plead or beg as if your life depended on it.

Ex) 손이 닳도록 빌었는데도, 안 된다고 했어요.

= I begged and begged, but he still said no.

8. 손을 떼다 = to pull out of something

(떼다 = to detach)

→ 떼다 means "to detach something off another thing." So, when you say that you detach your hands off something, it means you've stopped doing something. Whereas 손을 놓다, 손을 떼다, and 손을 씻다 have similar meanings, 손을 씻다 usually means to stop doing something that is bad or illegal, 손을 놓다 means "to be too distracted or tired to continue working on something," and 손을 떼다 means "to decide to stop being involved in something from a certain moment."

Ex) 저는 이 일에서 손 뺄게요.

= I will pull out of this.

= I will stop being involved in this project.

LEVEL 9 LESSON 2

In this lesson, we are going to take a look at the grammar structure, -아/어/여 버리다. This structure is used to express the completion of a certain action. In addition to the fact that an action is completed, this structure also includes the speaker's feeling, which can be 1) a happy feeling about finally completing a task and getting rid of a burden, or 2) a sad feeling that something happened in a way that the speaker did not want or expect.

Construction:

Verb stem + -아/어/여 버리다

Ex)

끝나다 = to finish; to end

→ 끝나 버리다 = to finish; to come to an end

→ 끝나 버렸어요. = It ended (and I am sad about it). / It ended (and it's completely over).

Although the construction is fairly simple, it will take some time to get used to the actual meaning behind this grammar structure, especially when you want to determine whether the feeling contained in the sentence is a happy one about completing a task or a sad one about something ending.

Examples of a happy feeling attached to -아/어/여 버리다

1. 다 끝내 버렸어요!

= I've finished everything!

2. 고민하다가, 사 버렸어요!

= I was hesitating, but I've (finally) bought it!

LEVEL 9 LESSON 2

Examples of a sad feeling attached to -아/어/여 버리다

1. 잃어 버렸어요.

= I've lost it (and I'm not happy about it).

2. 떨어져 버렸어요.

= It dropped (and I didn't want it to).

Sample Sentences

1. 어제 산 핸드폰을 잃어 버렸어요.

= I lost the cell phone I bought yesterday. (And I didn't want that to happen.)

2. 안 좋은 일은 다 잊어 버렸어요.

= I've forgotten all the bad things. (I am done with them.)

3. 빨리 끝내 버리세요.

= Get it over with quickly.

= Finish it quickly and be done with it already.

4. 벌써 다 말해 버렸어요.

= I've already told them everything. (It's done. It's over.)

5. 10분 더 기다려도 안 오면 저 혼자 가 버릴 거예요.

= If I wait for 10 more minutes (and) you don't come, I will just go by myself.

6. 어제 쓴 글이 마음에 안 들어서 다 지워 버렸어요.

= I didn't like what I wrote yesterday, so I've erased it all.

7. 효진 씨한테 기다려 달라고 했는데, 그냥 가 버렸어요.

= I asked Hyojin to wait, but she just left.

8. 컴퓨터가 멈춰 버렸어요.

= My computer has stopped. (And it's causing me trouble.)

LEVEL 9 LESSON 2

9. 시작한 김에 오늘 다 끝내 버리는 거 어때요?

= Now that we've started it, why don't we just get it all done today?

10. 영화가 벌써 시작해 버렸어요.

= Oh, no! The movie has already begun!

LEVEL 9 LESSON 3

Welcome to another lesson in the Advanced Situational Expressions series. Throughout this series, we go over common situations and some of the advanced Korean expressions you can use in each of them. In this lesson, we will introduce various expressions you can use when you are unhappy or upset about something or a particular situation.

1. 오늘 기분이 너무 안 좋아요.

[o-neul gi-bu-ni neo-mu an jo-a-yo.]

= I'm feeling terrible today.

= I'm so upset today.

2. 지금 그럴 기분 아니에요.

[ji-geum geu-reol gi-bun a-ni-e-yo.]

= I'm in no mood to do that.

3. 지금 이야기할 기분 아니에요. 말 시키지 마세요.

[ji-geum i-ya-gi-hal gi-bun a-ni-e-yo. mal si-ki-ji ma-se-yo.]

= I'm not in the mood to talk now. Please leave me alone.

4. 진짜 열 받는 일이 있었어요.

[jin-jja yeol bat-neun i-ri i-sseo-sseo-yo.]

= Something really upsetting happened.

= I'm so upset now because of what happened earlier.

5. 사람이 어떻게 그래요?

[sa-ra-mi eo-tteo-ke geu-rae-yo?]

= How can someone be so mean?

LEVEL 9 LESSON 3

= How can they do that to me?

6. 진짜 어이가 없네.

[jin-jja eo-i-ga eop-ne.]

= I don't even know what to say. I'm so mad.

7. 저 지금 너무 화 나는데 참고 있는 거예요.

[jeo ji-geum neo-mu hwa na-neun-de cham-gi it-neun geo-ye-yo.]

= I'm so upset now but I'm trying not to show it.

8. 진짜 속상해요.

[jin-jja sok-sang-hae-yo.]

= I'm so upset.

= I'm so sad.

9. 너무 서운해요.

= I'm so disappointed.

10. 이번에는 믿고 있었는데 완전 실망했어요.

= I trusted them this time but I am really disappointed.

LEVEL 9 LESSON 4

In this lesson, we are going to look at the sentence ending "-고 말다." First of all, please note that this is found more commonly in written Korean than in spoken Korean. "-고 말다" is used to express how a certain action comes to an end or is completed after going through a series of events. This is similar to the sentence ending "-아/어/여 버리다," but "-고 말다" tends to be more objective and "-아/어/여 버리다" tends to show how the speakers feel about the situation more actively, in addition to being used more commonly in spoken Korean.

Structure:

Verb stem + -고 말다

When you talk about an action in a simple statement and do not provide a lot of background information, using "-고 말다" can be inappropriate. For example, if you want to start a conversation by saying "저 어제 이거 샀어요" (I bought this yesterday), if you say "저 어제 이거 사고 말았어요" instead, you are expecting the listener to already know what kind of situations or previous actions the speaker has gone through before reaching that final state or action.

Examples

1.

잠들다 = to fall asleep

잠들었어요. = I fell asleep.

잠들고 말았어요. = (I was doing other things so I didn't want to fall asleep but after a while, eventually) I fell asleep.

공부를 하다가 잠들고 말았어요. = I was studying but then I fell asleep.

2.

LEVEL 9 LESSON 4

감기에 걸리다 = to catch a cold

감기에 걸렸어요. = I caught a cold.

감기에 걸리고 말았어요. = I ended up catching a cold.

As you can see in both examples above, the result is somewhat undesirable. This is not always the case and there is usually less negative feeling on the speaker's side about the situation when using -고 말다 than -아/어/여 버리다.

Sample Sentences

1. 결국 힘이 다 빠지고 말았어요.

= I ended up using all my energy and became exhausted.

(Understood: You made some efforts to continue without being exhausted, but eventually, after a series of actions, you became exhausted.)

2. 이곳도 사막이 되고 말았어요.

= This place has also turned into a desert.

(Understood: The place was not a desert before, but after going through a series of situations, it has eventually become one, to your disappointment.)

3. 너무 어두워서 머리를 벽에 부딪히고 말았어요.

= It was too dark, so I ended up hitting my head against the wall.

(Understood: You were trying not to get hurt and did your best to find your way around things even though the room was very dark, but eventually, you hit your head against the wall.)

4. 범인을 쫓아갔지만 놓치고 말았어요.

= I went after the criminal, but I lost him.

LEVEL 9 LESSON 4

(Understood: You made efforts to go after the criminal and catch him, but eventually, you lost him.)

5. 가겠다는 약속을 하고 말았어요.

= I ended up promising to go.

(Understood: You, perhaps, didn't want to or weren't supposed to, but you promised someone that you'd go to a place after some talking.)

LEVEL 9 LESSON 5

Welcome to another lesson in the Advanced Situational Expressions series. Throughout this series, we take a look at common situations and some of the advanced expressions you can use in each of them. In this lesson, we will introduce various expressions you can use when you are worried about something or a particular situation.

1. 걱정 돼요.

= I'm worried.

= It worries me.

2. 불안해요.

= I am anxious.

= I feel nervous.

3. 걱정돼 죽겠어요.

= I'm worried to death.

= I'm so worried.

4. 불안해 미치겠어요.

= I'm so anxious [that] it's driving me crazy.

5. ~할까 봐 걱정이예요.

= I am worried that ~ might happen.

= I am worried that they might ~.

6. ~하면 어떡하죠?

LEVEL 9 LESSON 5

= What if ~ happens?

= What if they ~?

7. 어떻게 하면 좋죠?

= What should we do?

8. 마음이 안 놓여요.

= I don't feel at ease.

= I can't stop worrying.

9. 잘 해결됐으면 좋겠어요.

= I hope the problem is solved [well].

10. 큰일이네요.

= That's not good.

= That's a big problem.

11. 이 상황에서 어떻게 걱정이 안 돼요?

= How can you not worry in this situation?

LEVEL 9 LESSON 6

This is an Advanced Idiomatic Expressions lesson related to 발, the foot. In order to fully understand and use the expressions introduced in this series, it is essential that you understand the grammatical structure of the sentences. When you come across a grammar point that you are unfamiliar with, please go back and review the related TTMIK lessons.

Keyword:

발 = foot

1. 발이 넓다 = to be well connected

(넓다 = to be wide)

→ You can use this expression to describe how someone has good social connections and knows a lot of people in various fields of profession. In this expression, 발 symbolizes the scope of one's reach or influence. However, if you want to literally describe someone's feet as being large or wide, you would say "발이 크다."

Ex) 그 사람은 발이 진짜 넓은 것 같아요. 모르는 사람이 없어요.

= I think he's really well-connected. There is no one that he doesn't know.

2. 발 벗고 나서다 = to throw oneself into a matter with enthusiasm

(벗다 = to take off; 나서다 = to go, to leave)

→ When someone you know is in trouble, or when you see a problem, even if it's not directly your business, you might want to help out because you know that person needs some help. In that case, you can say "발 벗고 나서다" to describe how you throw yourself into the matter with enthusiasm. "발 벗다" here means "to take off your shoes to go into a room to do something",

LEVEL 9 LESSON 6

but it's never used in this way other than in this idiomatic expression. If you want to say "take off [one's] shoes," you need to say "신발(을) 벗다."

Ex) 많은 사람들이 우리를 돕기 위해서 발 벗고 나서 줬어요.

= A lot of people went out of their way to help us.

3. 발을 담그다 = to be involved in something

(담그다 = to dip, to soak)

→ When you dip your feet into some water, e. g. in the sea or a swimming pool, you can say "발을 물에 담그다." When you don't have any water and just say "발을 담그다," it means "to get involved in a matter." This expression is usually used when you want to describe how hard it is to quit once you start something.

Ex) 드라마 보는 것에 한 번 발을 담그면 빠져나올 수 없어요.

= Once you start watching TV dramas, you can't quit [watching them] easily.

4. 발 디딜 틈이 없다 = to be really packed

(디디다 = to step on something, to tread; 틈 = gap)

→ 발을 디디다 originally means "to step on something," usually in order to start walking or to stand on it. You can use the expression "발 디딜 틈이 없다" when you want to describe how a place is really crowded and you can't find an empty spot to fit yourself into.

Ex) 요즘 홍대는 밤에 가면 사람이 너무 많아서 발 디딜 틈이 없어요.

= These days, if you go to Hongdae at night, there are so many people [that I can barely find a

LEVEL 9 LESSON 6

place to stand].

5. 한 발 늦다 = to fall a step behind

(늦다 = to be late)

→ This expression is similar to the English expression "to fall a step behind." 한 is native number for "one," therefore 한 발 can mean "one foot," but in this context, it means "one step." Therefore the expression literally means you are "late by just one step."

Ex) 지하철 문이 닫히기 전에 타려고 뛰었는데 한 발 늦었어요.

= I ran to get on the train before the door closed, but I fell a step behind.

6. 발 빠르게 움직이다 = to move fast, to do the necessary actions quickly

(빠르게 = quickly, 움직이다 = to move)

→ 발 빠르게 움직이다 can mean to literally and physically move fast, and it also can mean to quickly take care of a problem or quickly do the actions that is necessary to solve a problem or prevent it from occurring.

Ex) 경화 씨가 발 빠르게 움직인 덕분에 문제가 더 커지지 않았어요.

Thanks to Kyung-hwa who moved fast, the problem didn't escalate.

7. 발이 묶이다 = to be detained, to be confined, to be shackled

(묶다 = to tie, 묶이다 = to be tied up)

→ If your feet are tied up by a rope or a chain, you can't go anywhere. When you can't go

LEVEL 9 LESSON 6

anywhere, mainly because of the situation you are in or the weather, you can use the expression "발이 묶이다." 발 here can literally mean "feet," but here it symbolizes the inability to go somewhere.

Ex) 이 곳에 눈이 너무 많이 와서 발이 묶였어요.

= It snowed too much here, I'm snowbound.

8. 발로 뛰다 = to work hard in the field

(뛰다 = to run)

→ Almost everyone runs with their feet. It's rare to find someone who runs with their hands, but if you say "발로 뛰다" instead of just "뛰다" it means "to work hard in the field" in the sense of actually going out and doing something to get first-hand experience as opposed to doing desk work or just researching through books.

Ex) 컴퓨터 앞에만 앉아 있는 것보다 나가서 직접 발로 뛰면 더 좋은 정보를 얻을 수 있을 거예요.
Rather than sitting in front of a computer, if you go out and work in the field yourself, you will get better information.

9. 새 발의 피 = a drop in the bucket

(새 = bird; 피 = blood)

→ Except some large species, birds are usually considered to be small in comparison to other animals; therefore, birds have small feet. If a bird is injured and bleeds from its foot, there's

LEVEL 9 LESSON 6

usually not much blood in terms of quantity. If you say "새 발의 피," it's like the English phrase means "a drop in the bucket," meaning that the situation is insignificant, or pales in comparison to something that happened before.

Ex) 이번 일에 비하면 지난 번 일은 정말 새 발의 피예요.

This is nothing compared to what happened last time.

10. 발을 끊다 = to stop visiting

(끊다 = to cut)

→ If there's a place that you visit regularly or often, but you stop visiting that place, that's what "발을 끊다" is referring to. 발 here doesn't literally mean "feet," but it means the visit itself. If you cut off the 발 (visit), it means you no longer visit somewhere or go to that place.

Ex) 살이 많이 찌서 살을 빼려고 자주 가던 치킨 집에 발을 끊었어요.

I've gained a lot of weight, so in order to lose it, I quit going to a chicken restaurant that I used to go often.

LEVEL 9 LESSON 7

Word Builder lessons are designed to help you understand how to expand your vocabulary by learning/understanding some common and basic building blocks of Korean words. The words and letters introduced through Word Builder lessons are not necessarily all Chinese characters, or 한자 [han-ja], though many of them are based on Chinese characters, the meanings can be different from modern-day Chinese. Your goal, through these lessons, is to understand how words are formed and remember the keywords in Korean to expand your Korean vocabulary from there. You certainly don't have to memorize the Hanja characters, but if you want to, feel free!

Today's keyword is 비.

The Chinese character for this is 非. There are many other Chinese characters (or Hanja letters) that are used for 비, so keep in mind that not all the words that have 비 in them have related meanings.

The word 비 (非) is related to "not".

비 (not) + 공식 (official) = **비공식** (非公式) = unofficial, informal

비 (not) + 회 (gathering) + 원 (member) = **비회원** (非會員) = non-member

비 (not) + 정 (right) + 상 (always) = **비정상** (非正常) = not normal, abnormal, unusual

비 (not) + 주 (master, head) + 류 (flow, stream) = **비주류** (非主流) = nonmainstream, fringe group

비 (not) + 인간 (human) + 적 (of) = **비인간적** (非人間的) = inhuman

비 (not) + 범 (ordinary) + 하다 = **비범하다** (非凡하다) = to be extraordinary

비 (not) + 인 (people) + 기 (energy) = **비인기** (非人氣) = unpopular

비 (not) + 공 (official) + 개 (open) = **비공개** (非公開) = closed, private

LEVEL 9 LESSON 7

비 (not) + 협 (harmony) + 조 (associate) + 적 (of) = **비협조적** (非協調的) = uncooperative

비 (not) + 전 (exclusive) + 문 (door) + 적 (of) = **비전문적** (非專門的) = unprofessional

비 (not) + 상 (always) + 구 (door) = **비상구** (非常口) = emergency exit

비 (not) + 상 (always) + 계단 (stairs) = **비상 계단** (非常階段) = emergency staircase

비 (not) + 무장 (armed) + 지대 (zone) = **비무장지대** (非武裝地帶) = DMZ, demilitarized zone

시 (true) + 비 (not) = **시비** (是非) = right or wrong

LEVEL 9 LESSON 8

Welcome to another lesson in the Advanced Situational Expressions series. Throughout this series, we take a look at common situations and some of the advanced expressions you can use in each of them. In this lesson, we will introduce various expressions you can use when you are asking a favor or asking someone to do something for you.

1. 부탁이 하나 있어요.

= I have a favor to ask.

2. 부탁할 게 있는데요.

= I have a favor to ask.

3. 부탁 하나만 할게요.

= Let me ask you a favor.

4. 제 부탁 하나만 들어 줄 수 있어요?

= Can you do me a favor?

5. 어려운 부탁인 건 알지만, 저도 같이 가면 안 될까요?

= I know it won't be easy, but could I possibly go with you?

6. 죄송한데요, 혹시 전화기 좀 빌릴 수 있을까요?

= I'm sorry, but could I borrow your phone?

8. 저 잠깐만 도와주실 수 있나요?

= Can you help me for just a second?

LEVEL 9 LESSON 8

9. 제발 부탁이니까 오늘은 늦지 마세요.

= Please, I beg of you, don't be late today.

10. 돌아오는 길에 우유 좀 사다 줄 수 있어요?

= Could you get me some milk on your way back?

11. 편의점에 가는 김에 물 좀 사다 줄 수 있어요?

= Since you're going to the convenience store anyway, can you get me some water?

12. 어제 제가 부탁한 거 잊지 마세요.

= Please don't forget what I asked you yesterday.

LEVEL 9 LESSON 9

In this lesson, we are introducing a new verb ending which can be used, mainly, in three different ways. **-(으)ㅁ** is commonly used in everyday Korean in both formal and informal settings, and you can simplify the structure of a sentence that would otherwise be a bit more complicated.

-(으)ㅁ changes a verb into a noun form. When the verb stem ends with a vowel, you just add **-ㅁ**, and when it ends with a consonant, you add **-음** at the end. Let us look at the different usages and how **-(으)ㅁ** is different from other verb endings that make noun forms.

Usage #1

By attaching **-(으)ㅁ** after a verb stem, you can transform the verb into a noun. Basically any verb can be made into a noun in this manner, but there are certain words that are used so commonly in this nominalized form that they are also used as stand-alone nouns. The following are some of the most

common examples:

웃다 (to laugh) - 웃음 (laughter, smile)

울다 (to cry) - 울음 (crying, weeping)

믿다 (to believe, to trust) - 믿음 (belief, trust)

알다 (to know) - 앎 (knowing, knowledge)

살다 (to live) - 삶 (life)

얼다 (to freeze) - 얼음 (ice)

졸다 (to doze) - 졸음 (sleepiness, drowsiness)

슬프다 (to be sad) - 슬픔 (sadness)

기쁘다 (to be happy) - 기쁨 (pleasure, joy)

아프다 (to be painful, to be sick) - 아픔 (pain, agony)

젊다 (to be young) - 젊음 (youth)

꾸다 (to dream (a dream)) - 꿈 (dream)

LEVEL 9 LESSON 9

지다 (to carry (luggage) on one's back) - 짐 (luggage)

추다 (to dance) - 춤 (dance)

자다 (to sleep) - 잠 (sleep)

Some of these verbs, such as 추다, 지다, 꾸다 always have to be used together with their noun forms, whereas some other verbs like 자다 and 살다 can be used with or without the nouns.

자다 and 살다 can be used on their own or together with their noun forms, like 잠을 자다 (to sleep) and 삶을 살다 (to live a life). One of the reasons one might use the noun form too is to modify the noun with other adjectives.

추다, 지다, and 꾸다 can NOT be used on their own, because the meaning won't be clear enough. You always need to use them as a pair, such as 춤을 추다 (to dance), 짐을 지다 (to carry luggage on one's back), and 꿈을 꾸다 (to have a dream).

Usage #2

-(으)ㄴ can be used to make a sentence or clause into a noun group, so that you can then use the noun group as an object or the subject of the larger sentence structure.

Difference between -다는/라는 것 and -(으)ㄴ

Example:

오늘이 제 생일임을 아무도 몰랐어요.

= Nobody knew that today was my birthday.

In the sentence above, "오늘이 제 생일이에요" has been changed to the noun group, "오늘이 제 생일

LEVEL 9 LESSON 9

임" and is now the object of the verb 모르다, meaning that nobody knew "오늘이 제 생일임" or "the fact that today is my birthday".

In most casual conversations, you should use -다는 것 or -라는 것 instead of -(으)ㄴ. -(으)ㄴ sounds much more formal than -다는 것 or -라는 것, therefore -(으)ㄴ is used more in official documents or more formal situations.

그 사람은 한국 사람이에요.

= He is a Korean person.

그 사람이 한국 사람임을 저는 알고 있었어요.

= 그 사람이 한국 사람이라는 것을 저는 알고 있었어요.

= I knew that he was Korean.

* The second sentence with -이라는 것을 is more likely to be used in everyday colloquial speech, but in written language, such as in novels, news articles, official statements, etc., you will often see -임을.

** Please note that the marker -은 in 그 사람은 was changed to -이 in the longer sentences. In compound sentences like these, the marker -은/는 often changes to -이/가 when the sentence becomes a part of a bigger structure.

Difference between -기 and -(으)ㄴ

Example:

그 사람은 자신이 무죄임을 주장했어요.

= He claimed that he was innocent.

LEVEL 9 LESSON 9

(In this sentence, you can see the clause "자신이 무죄이다" inside the bigger structure "그 사람은 주장했어요.")

Example:

그 사람은 한국어를 배우기를 시작했어요.

= He started learning Korean.

(In this sentence, you can see that "한국어를 배우다" has been changed to the noun form of "한국어를 배우기" to be used as the object of 시작하다.)

The basic difference between -기 and -(으)ㄴ is that these two endings are usually used together with different types of verbs:

-(으)ㄴ	-기
-(으)ㄴ 옳다 (= to be right)	-기 쉽다 (= to be easy)
-(으)ㄴ 나쁘다 (= to be bad/wrong)	-기 어렵다(= to be difficult)
-(으)ㄴ 분명하다 (= to be certain)	-기 좋다 (= to like)
-(으)ㄴ 확실하다 (= to be sure)	-기 싫다 (= to hate)
-(으)ㄴ 발견하다 (= to discover)	-기 바라다 (= to hope)
-(으)ㄴ 알다 (= to know)	-기 시작하다(= to begin)
-(으)ㄴ 주장하다 (= to claim, to insist)	-기 계속하다(= to continue)
-(으)ㄴ 알리다 (= to tell/notify)	-기 멈추다(= to stop)
...etc.	-기 약속하다(= to promise)
	...etc.

He is difficult to meet.

= 그 사람은 만나기가 어려워요. (o)

그 사람은 만남이 어려워요. (x)

LEVEL 9 LESSON 9

I proved that I am innocent.

= 무죄임을 증명했어요. (o)

무죄이기를 증명했어요. (x)

Usage #3

-(으)ㄴ can also be used at the end of a sentence when it is not clear which formality level or sentence ending one should use. This usage is often found in written memos, warnings, reports, dictionaries, laws, notices, etc.

Examples:

1. "진석진" 씨에게 전화 왔음.

= Someone called "진석진" called you.

When you answer the phone for your coworker when she's away, you can leave a memo like this.

You could write "전화 왔어요" or "전화 왔습니다", but since you're not really "talking" to this person and it's a simple delivery of information, you can just use the neutral -(으)ㄴ ending. This is neither 반말 nor 존댓말.

2. 읽음.

= (It has been) read.

When you send a message to someone on your mobile phone or write an e-mail, when the recipient receives and reads the message, your phone or e-mail might say "읽음" to let you know that the other person read it. -(으)ㄴ is used instead of "읽었어요" or "읽었습니다" because it is much more neutral and shorter to use.

LEVEL 9 LESSON 9

3. 모르고 있음.

= He doesn't know.

You can see this kind of subtitle on Korean TV shows. If one person doesn't know a fact that everybody else knows, you might see "모르고 있음" or "아직 모르고 있음" written on the screen, which means "he doesn't know" or "he doesn't know yet".

LEVEL 9 LESSON 10

In this series, we focus on how you can use the grammatical rules and expressions that you have previously learned to train yourself to comfortably make Korean sentences.

We will start off with THREE key sentences and practice changing different parts of these sentences so that you don't end up simply memorizing the same three sentences. We want you to be able to be as flexible as possible when making Korean sentences.

-아/어/여 버리다

-고 말다

-(으)ㅁ

Key Sentence #1

버스에서 내리다가 전화기를 떨어뜨려 버렸어요.

= I accidentally dropped my phone while I was getting off the bus.

Key Sentence #2

안 사려고 했는데, 50% 할인이라고 해서 사고 말았어요.

= I was not going to buy it, but they said it was 50% off so I ended up buying it.

Key Sentence #3

이 대학교의 학생임을 증명할 수 있는 서류를 지참해야 함.

= You must carry a document that can prove that you are a student of this university.

LEVEL 9 LESSON 10

Expansion & variation practice with key sentence #1

0. Original Sentence:

버스에서 내리다가 전화기를 떨어뜨려 버렸어요.

= I accidentally dropped my phone while I was getting off the bus.

1.

버스에서 내리다가 = while I was getting off the bus / I was getting off the bus and...

길을 걷다가 = while I was walking / I was walking and...

책을 읽다가 = while I was reading a book / I was reading a book and...

창문을 열다가 = while I was opening the window / I was opening the window and...

2.

전화기를 떨어뜨려 버렸어요 = I accidentally dropped my phone.

전화기가 고장나 버렸어요. = My phone broke (and I'm not happy about it).

영화가 벌써 끝나 버렸어요.

= The movie ended already (and I'm surprised and not happy about it).

효진 씨가 사람들에게 말해 버렸어요. = Hyojin told people (and she was not supposed to).

LEVEL 9 LESSON 10

Expansion & variation practice with key sentence #2

0. Original Sentence:

안 사려고 했는데, 50% 할인이라고 해서 사고 말았어요.

= I was not going to buy it, but they said it was 50% off so I ended up buying it.

1.

안 사려고 했는데 = I was not going to buy it but...

안 보려고 했는데 = I was not going to look at it but...

말 안 하려고 했는데 = I was not going to tell them but...

빨리 가려고 했는데 = I was going to be there early but...

2.

50% 할인이라고 해서 = they said it was 50% off so...

건강에 좋다고 해서 = they said it was good for health so...

오늘 할인이 끝난다고 해서 = they said the discount was ending today so...

이 영화가 재미있다고 해서 = they said this movie is good so...

3.

사고 말았어요 = I ended up buying it (I shouldn't have)

들키고 말았어요 = I got busted (I didn't want to)

먹고 말았어요 = I ended up eating it (I shouldn't have)

늦고 말았어요 = I got there late (I shouldn't have)

LEVEL 9 LESSON 10

Expansion & variation practice with key sentence #3

0. Original Sentence:

이 대학교의 학생임을 증명할 수 있는 서류를 지참해야 함.

= You must carry a document that can prove that you are a student of this university.

1.

이 대학교의 학생임 = (the fact that) you're a student of this university

이 방법이 최선임 = (the fact that) this method is the best

업무를 완료했음 = (the fact that) you've completed a task

바깥에서 보이지 않음 = (the fact that) it's not visible from outside

2.

서류를 지참해야 함 = you must bring a document

오전 9시까지 보내야 함 = you must send it by 9 AM

오늘과 내일은 가게 문을 닫음 = the store is closed today and tomorrow

100명이 참가했음 = 100 people attended

LEVEL 9 LESSON 11

This is an Advanced Idiomatic Expressions lesson related to 마음, the heart or mind. In order to fully understand and use the expressions introduced in this series, it is essential that you understand the grammatical structure of the sentences. When you come across a grammar point that you are unfamiliar with, please go back and review the related TTMIK lessons.

Keyword:

마음 = heart, mind

1. 마음을 먹다 = to make up one's mind

(먹다 = to eat)

→ Literally translated, it would mean "to eat one's mind" but the actual meaning is to determine or to make up one's mind. You can use this expression when you are talking about your determination to do something, but it doesn't necessarily include or guarantee actually doing it.

Ex) 이번에는 정말로 운동을 매일 하기로 마음 먹었어요.

= I have made up my mind to really exercise every day this time.

2. 마음대로 하다 = to do as one wants

(-대로 = like the way something goes)

→ You can use this phrase to describe how one does things the way they want or choose to do whatever they want to do. You can say 마음대로 하세요 to someone to say "Do whatever you want." or "Do as you please." but if you want to be more polite you can say 편하신대로 하세요, literally meaning, "Do it the way that is comfortable for you".

LEVEL 9 LESSON 11

Ex) 저는 그 책 필요 없으니까 마음대로 하세요.

= I don't need that book so do whatever you want with it.

3. 마음에 들다 = to like, to find something likeable

(들다 = to go in)

→ 마음에 들다 is literally translated as "to enter one's heart" and means that you found something likeable. The difference between 좋아하다 and 마음에 들다 is that you say 좋아하다 about something that you have already liked for some time, whereas 마음에 들다 is usually about things that you see for the first time and decide that you like it. 마음에 들다 can be used people as well as things.

Ex) 마음에 드는 가방 있어요?

= Is there a bag that you like?

4. 마음에 걸리다 = to weigh upon one's mind, to trouble one's mind

(걸리다 = to be stuck, to be hung)

→ 걸다 means to hang something up or to lock a door, and 걸리다 is the passive voice of 걸다. So when you say that something is hung or hooked in your mind, it means that it doesn't go through easily and it troubles your mind because you either feel bad or are worried about something or someone.

Ex) 어제 있었던 일이 마음에 걸려요.

= I keep thinking about what happened yesterday because I feel bad about it.

LEVEL 9 LESSON 11

5. 마음에 두다 = to have something/someone on one's mind

(두다 = to put something somewhere)

→ This phrase is similar to 마음에 걸리다, but it has a weaker nuance of being worried and can refer to many other types of emotions too. You can be worried, upset, or even distracted by something. It is often used in the form 마음에 두지 마세요 to tell someone to forget about what happened or what someone has said, mainly because it won't help to think about it or it wasn't something important.

Ex) 효진 씨가 한 말은 너무 마음에 두지 마세요.

= Don't think about what Hyojin said.

= Pay no attention to what Hyojin said.

6. 마음에 없는 말을 하다 = to say something without meaning it

(없다 = to not exist, to not have, 말 = words, language, speech)

→ When you say something that is not "in your heart" or "in your mind", it means that you say something that you do not really mean or are serious about. You can hear this expression often when someone is complimenting too much, or when someone offers to do something they probably won't do.

Ex) 마음에도 없는 말 하지 마세요.

= Don't say what you don't even mean.

7. 마음은 굴뚝 같다 = to wish one could something right now, to want to do something right but can not

LEVEL 9 LESSON 11

(굴뚝 = chimney, 같다 = to be like)

→ When you say that your heart is like a chimney, it doesn't mean that you're tough, hot-tempered, or warm. In this context, you can think of the 굴뚝 as a place where the result is coming out, which is smoke, as the result of boiling water or burning woods. So by saying 마음은 굴뚝 같다, you imply that your mind is already fixed on the result, but you haven't even started, or won't even start doing it. So you can often say this when you really want to do something but you can't, and you can also say this just to be polite.

Ex) 도와주고 싶은 마음은 굴뚝 같지만, 오늘은 너무 바빠요.

= I'd love to help you, but I am too busy today.

8. 마음이 놓이다 = to feel relieved

(놓다 = to put down, to let go / 놓이다 = to be let go)

→ When you are worried about something, your mind is not at ease and cannot fully rest. So when you say 마음이 놓이다, it describes how the mind is finally put down somewhere so that it can rest, instead of being held up high in anxiety.

Ex) 그 말을 들으니까 마음이 놓이네요.

= I feel relieved to hear that.

9. 마음이 통하다 = to understand each other well

(통하다 = to go through, to flow through, to circulate)

→ When two people's mind are connected, they know each other well and they are comfort-

LEVEL 9 LESSON 11

able around each other. You can use this verb 통하다 about languages as well, like when you ask if English is spoken/understood in Korea ("한국에서 영어 통해요?").

Ex) 마음이 통하는 친구들이랑 여행하면 너무 재미있어요.

= Traveling with friends that you connect well with is a lot of fun.

10. 마음이 무겁다 = to have a heavy heart, to feel bad

(무겁다 = to be heavy)

→ This one is similar in English as well. When you have a heavy heart, you feel bad about someone's situation or about what you did or said to someone.

Ex) 저 때문에 경기에서 진 것 같아서 마음이 무겁습니다.

= I feel bad because it looks like we lost the game because of me.

LEVEL 9 LESSON 12

Let's look at how to say that something or someone "seems" to be in a certain state or "looks" a certain way. The basic structure, -아/어/여 보인다, is fairly easy to understand and use, but it is important to understand the difference between this structure and some other similar structures.

Basic Construction

Verb stem + -아/어/여 보인다

* 보인다 is originally the passive voice of 보다, to see.

Example

재미있다 = to be fun

재미있 + -어 보인다 = 재미있어 보인다 = to look fun, to look interesting

Sample Sentences

1. 피곤해 보여요.

= You look tired.

2. 이 영화는 재미없어 보여요.

= This movie looks boring.

3. 이거 매워 보이는데, 사실은 하나도 안 매워요.

= This looks spicy, but it's not spicy at all.

4. 이 케이크가 맛있어 보여서 샀는데, 너무 달아요.

= This cake looked delicious so I bought it, but it's too sweet.

LEVEL 9 LESSON 12

5. 사장님 기분이 안 좋아 보이는데, 무슨 일 있어요?

= The boss doesn't look happy. Is there anything wrong?

Difference between 좋아 보이네요 and 좋은 것 같아요

The structure -(으)ㄴ 것 같다 is literally translated as "to seem like" but is commonly used to express one's thought or opinion. Therefore, when someone says 좋은 것 같아요, it is different from 좋아 보이네요 because if something looks good (좋아 보이네요) but you don't think it's good, or you're not happy about it, you wouldn't always say 좋은 것 같아요 in that case. So -아/어/여 보이다 is commonly used when you just express the fact that something or someone "seems" or "looks" a certain way.

Examples

이 영화는 재미없어 보여요 = This movie looks boring.

이 영화는 재미없는 것 같아요 = I think this movie is boring.

이거 매워 보이는데, 사실은 하나도 안 매워요.

= This looks spicy but it's not spicy at all.

이거 매울 것 같았는데 (you need to change this to the past tense because you "thought" it would be spicy) 사실은 하나도 안 매웠어요.

= I thought it would be spicy but it wasn't spicy at all.

사장님 기분이 안 좋아 보이는데, 무슨 일 있어요?

= The boss doesn't look happy. Is there anything wrong?

사장님 기분이 안 좋은 것 같은데, (you're guessing or thinking based on either what you saw or some other clues) 무슨 일 있어요? = I think the boss is upset. Is there anything wrong?

LEVEL 9 LESSON 12

Using 보이다 with nouns

With nouns, instead of using -아/어/여 after a verb stem, you add -처럼 after a noun. With nouns, the above mentioned difference is also applied to 보이다 and 같다.

Example

학생 = student

학생처럼 보여요. = He looks like a student.

학생 같아요. = He looks like a student, so I think he's a student.

Sample Sentences

1. 비둘기처럼 보이네요.

= It looks like a pigeon.

2. 멀어서 잘 안 보이지만, "3"처럼 보이네요.

= I can't see clearly because it's far, but it looks like a "3".

3. 경찰처럼 보이는 사람이 그 여자를 데려갔어요.

= Someone who looks like a cop took her.

LEVEL 9 LESSON 13

Word Builder lessons are designed to help you understand how to expand your vocabulary by learning/understanding some common and basic building blocks of Korean words. The words and letters introduced through Word Builder lessons are not necessarily all Chinese characters, or 한자 [han-ja], though many of them are based on Chinese characters, the meanings can be different from modern-day Chinese. Your goal, through these lessons, is to understand how words are formed and remember the keywords in Korean to expand your Korean vocabulary from there. You certainly don't have to memorize the Hanja characters, but if you want to, feel free!

Today's keyword is 신.

The Chinese character for this is 新. There are many other Chinese characters (or Hanja letters) that are used for 신, so keep in mind that not all the words that have 신 in them have related meanings.

The word 신 (新) is related to "new".

신제품 = 신 (new) + 제 (make) + 품 (item) = 新製品 = new product

신기록 = 신 (new) + 기록 (record) = 新記錄 = new record

신학기 = 신 (new) + 학 (learn, school) + 기 (period) = 新學期 = new semester

신인 = 신 (new) + 인 (person) = 新人 = rookie

신작 = 신 (new) + 작 (make) = 新作 = new movie/book/musical/etc

신혼 = 신 (new) + 혼 (marriage) = 新婚 = newly wed, the first few years of married life

LEVEL 9 LESSON 13

갱신 = 갱 (alter) + 신 (new) = 更新 = modification

경신 = 경 (alter) + 신 (new) = 更新 = breaking the record

혁신 = 혁 (alter) + 신 (new) = 革新 = innovation

신세대 = 신 (new) + 세대 (generation) = 新世代 = new generation

신세계 = 신 (new) + 세계 (world) = 新世界 = new world

신입 = 신 (new) + 입 (enter) = 新入 = new employee

신입 사원 = 신 (new) + 입 (enter) + 사 (company) + 원 (member)

= 新入社員 = new employee

신입생 = 신 (new) + 입 (enter) + 생 (student) = 新入生 = freshman student

신병 = 신 (new) + 병 (soldier) = 新兵 = rookie soldier

신간 = 신 (new) + 간 (publish) = 新刊 = new publication

신간 서적 = 신 (new) + 간 (publish) + 서 (book) + 적 (document)

= 新刊書籍 newly published book

LEVEL 9 LESSON 14

Welcome to another lesson in the Advanced Situational Expressions series. Throughout this series, we take a look at common situations and some of the advanced expressions you can use in each of them. In this lesson, we will introduce various expressions that are related to regretting something.

1. 후회가 돼요.

= I regret it.

2. 후회가 막심해요.

= I deeply regret it.

3. 어렸을 때 더 많이 놀지 않은 게 후회가 돼요.

= I regret not having played enough when I was little.

4. 그 이야기를 꺼낸 것 자체가 후회스러워요.

= I regret the fact that I even brought that up.

5. 말하지 말았어야 했어요.

= I shouldn't have told them.

6. 이거 괜히 샀어요.

= I shouldn't have bought it.

(괜히 = in vain, uselessly)

7. 오지 말 걸 그랬어요.

= I shouldn't have come here.

LEVEL 9 LESSON 14

8. 좀 더 일찍 도착했더라면 좋았을 텐데요.

= It would have been nice if we'd arrived a little earlier.

9. 그냥 우리끼리 하는 게 나을 뻔 했어요.

= It might have been better to just do it by ourselves.

10. 그래서 후회 중이에요.

= So I'm regretting it now.

11. 원래 그럴 생각은 없었어요.

= I didn't intend to do it.

12. 지금 와서 생각해 보면, 제가 그때 왜 그랬나 싶어요.

= Looking back now, I wonder why I did that back then.

LEVEL 9 LESSON 15

This is an Advanced Idiomatic Expressions lesson related to 기분, feelings or emotions. In order to fully understand and use the expressions introduced in this series, it is essential that you understand the grammatical structure of the sentences. When you come across a grammar point that you are unfamiliar with, please go back and review the related TTMik lessons.

Keyword:

기분 = feeling, emotion, mood

1. 기분이 좋다 = to feel happy, to feel upbeat

(좋다 = to be good)

→ When your 기분 (feeling) is good, it means that you are feeling great and happy in general. When you say that you feel good in English, it can also be related to your health, but in Korean, it's mostly related to your feelings at that moment. You can also use 기분이 좋다 when you feel good because of a nice cool breeze or a soothing massage, but not about general health conditions on a certain day.

Ex) 오늘 기분이 좋아 보이는데, 좋은 일 있어요?

= You look happy today. Is there anything good happening?

2. 기분이 나쁘다 = to be in a bad mood, to be unpleasant

(나쁘다 = to be bad)

→ When you say that you "feel bad" in English, it can mean that you are sorry about something and you feel like you have to apologize or feel responsible for a bad result. But in Korean, when you say 기분이 나쁘다, it never means that you are apologetic but just upset or unpleasant. You

LEVEL 9 LESSON 15

can also say 기분이 나쁘다 about something or someone that is unpleasant to you.

Ex) 그 사람이 저를 보고 웃으면 왠지 기분이 나빠요.

= When he smiles at me, for some reason, I feel unpleasant.

3. 기분 좋게 = willingly, with good cheer

(좋게 = nicely)

→ 기분 좋게 is basically the adverbial form of 기분 좋다, and you can use it either about how someone does something without feeling forced or upset about having to do something, or about how someone is actually feeling happy while doing something.

Ex) 원래는 기분 좋게 도와주려고 했는데, 기분 나빠졌어요. 혼자 하세요.

= At first I was going to help you with good cheer, but I feel angry now. You do it by yourself.

4. 기분을 풀다 = to relieve one's feelings

(풀다 = resolve, untangle)

→ 풀다 literally means to "resolve" or "untangle" something, so when you untangle someone's feelings that are upset, you make them feel better or less upset. You can also use 기분을 풀다 to describe how you divert oneself and relieve some stress.

Ex) 제가 맛있는 거 사 줄 테니까 이제 기분 좀 풀어요.

= I will buy you something delicious, so please stop being angry at me.

LEVEL 9 LESSON 15

5. -(으)ㄹ 기분이다 = to be not in the mood for

→ This expression is actually very similar to the English expression, "to be not in the mood to" do something.

Ex) 저 지금 농담할 기분 아니에요.

= I'm not in the mood to play jokes (with you).

6. 기분이 상하다 = to be offended

(상하다 = to rot, to go bad)

→ You can use 기분이 상하다 when someone's feelings are hurt by what someone else said, but also when someone is heartbroken by something that happened.

Ex) 그냥 농담이었는데 기분 상했어요?

= I was just joking. Did I hurt your feelings?

7. 기분 내키는 대로 = just the way one wants

(내키다 = to feel like, to be inclined)

→ The expression 기분 내키는 대로 has a slightly negative nuance, so when you say it about someone, you are usually not very happy about the way that person behaves.

Ex) 그 사람은 기분 내키는 대로 행동하는 게 꼭 어린 아이 같아요.

= He does whatever he feels like; he's like a child.

LEVEL 9 LESSON 15

8. 기분이 들뜨다 = to be excited, to be exhilarated

(들뜨다 = to be excited)

Ex) 내일 런던에 갈 생각에 기분이 들떴어요.

= I'm very excited by the thought of going to London tomorrow.

9. 기분 전환을 하다 = to refresh oneself

(전환 = change, switch)

→ 전환 means transition or change, so when you "do" a 기분 전환 (mood transition), it usually means that you usually refresh yourself or get some fresh air, usually by doing something different for a change, like going out for a walk, meeting friends, or going on a short trip.

Ex) 기분 전환 하러 잠시 밖에 나갔다 왔어요.

= I went out for a bit to refresh myself.

10. 기분 탓이다 = to be just imagination

(탓 = reason, fault, blame)

→ When there's no real issue or substantial problem but you feel like something is wrong or is happening, you can say that it's just the fault of your 기분 (feeling). You can often hear people saying 기분 탓인가? (= It is just me?) or 기분 탓일 거예요 (= You're just feeling that way).

Ex) 그냥 기분 탓일 거예요. 너무 걱정 마세요.

= You are just imagining things. Don't worry too much.

LEVEL 9 LESSON 15

11. -(으/느)ㄴ 기분이 들다

(들다 = to come in)

→ 기분이 들다 literally means "a feeling enters" so when you feel like something is happening or will happen, you can use this phrase.

Ex) 왠지 오늘은 좋은 일이 있을 것 같은 기분이 들어요.

= For some reason, I feel like there is going to be something good (happen to me).

12. 기분이 가라앉다

(가라앉다 = to sink)

Ex) 그 얘기를 들으니 기분이 가라앉았어요.

= After hearing that news, I felt down.

LEVEL 9 LESSON 16

In this lesson, we are taking a look at the structure **-(으)ㄴ 테니(까)**. This is used often in situations where one person wants, or asks, the other person to do something. When you use it after a verb stem that ends with a consonant, you add **-을 테니(까)**, and when the verb stem ends with a vowel, you add **-ㄴ 테니(까)**. The original form is **-을 테니까** or **-ㄴ 테니까**, but it is always interchangeable with **-을 테니** or **-ㄴ 테니**, with the last letter, **까**, omitted.

Original meaning

-테니(까) comes from the combination of **터** and **-이니(까)**. **터** means a "place", "site", "lot", "ground", or "foundation".

There are mainly two usages for this structure:

1. When you are offering to do something and you ask the listener to do something else in return. What you ask of the other person doesn't always have to be a favor that you want; it can also be something that you want them to do for their own good. Therefore, **-(으)ㄴ 테니(까)** is often translated as "I will do this, so in return, I want you to do this". As a result, you can not use this structure for all situations where you say "therefore" or "so".

Example

이건 제가 할 테니까, 걱정하지 말고 쉬세요.

= I will do this, so don't worry and get some rest.

In the sentence above, you are offering to take care of something and telling the other person to go get some rest. You cannot use the same structure about someone else doing the same thing. For example, "이건 석진 씨가 할 테니까, 걱정하지 말고 쉬세요" is not a natural sentence. If you want to say something like "Seokjin will take care of this, so don't worry" in Korean, you

LEVEL 9 LESSON 16

can either just use the -을 거니까 ending and say "진 씨가 할 거니까", or you can keep yourself as the subject of the sentence by saying "이건 석진 씨한테 하라고 할 테니까", meaning "I will ask Seokjin to do this, so...".

2. When you are making an assumption and are almost certain about something, you can use this structure to mean "I assume/think/believe that this will happen/is happening, so let's do this/please do this." Even when you are talking about a present state or action, since you're assuming and WILL have to check to see if you're right, it's always in the future tense.

Example

밖에 추울 테니까 나가지 마세요.

= It must be cold outside, so don't go out.

If you are NOT making an assumption and just saying a plainly known fact, you can use the -(으)니까 structure and just say "밖에 추우니까". The -(으)ㄴ 테니까 structure is often used together with -(으)면, which means "if". For example, if you say "지금 밖에 나가면 추울 테니까", it means "if you go outside now, it will be cold, so..."

Sample Sentences

1. 제가 점심 살 테니까, 경화 씨가 커피 사세요.

= I will buy lunch, so Kyung-hwa, you buy the coffee.

2. 저는 먼저 갈 테니까, 나중에 오세요.

= I will go first, so you come later.

LEVEL 9 LESSON 16

3. 나머지는 제가 할 테니까, 먼저 퇴근하세요.

= I'll do the rest, so please go home first.

4. 저는 뛰어갈 테니까, 효진 씨는 택시 타고 오세요.

= I'll run, so Hyojin, you take a taxi.

5. 갑자기 찾아가면 놀랄 테니까, 전화를 할까요?

= If we visit her suddenly, she'll be surprised, so shall we call her?

6. 지금 출발하면 너무 일찍 도착할 테니까, 10분 뒤에 출발해요.

= If you leave now, you'll get there too early, so leave in 10 minutes.

7. 아직 뜨거울 테니까 조심하세요.

= It must be still hot, so be careful.

LEVEL 9 LESSON 17

In this lesson, we are introducing the structure **-(으/느)ㄴ 이상**. The word **이상** (以上), by itself, means "not lower than" or "from this point and above", and when used in the form **-(으/느)ㄴ 이상**, it can mean that the preceding clause is a fact that makes the following clause something that's naturally expected or supposed thing to happen.

-(으/느)ㄴ 이상 can be used in both the present tense and in the past tense, but with the present tense, it is used more often in writing than when speaking.

Example

저도 이 회사의 직원인 이상, 이 행사에 꼭 참여해야 돼요.

= Since I'm also an employee of this company, I must participate in this event.

Therefore, especially in spoken language, the structure **-(으/느)ㄴ 이상** is used more commonly in the past tense than in the present tense. When used in the past tense, it can be translated to "since you have already done this, this is bound to happen" or "you have done this, so this has to be the way things are".

Example

이미 공식 발표를 한 이상, 이제 취소할 수는 없어요.

= Since we've already made a public announcement, we can't cancel it now.

Sample Sentences

1. 비행기를 탄 이상, 도착할 때까지 내릴 수 없어요.

= Now that you've boarded the airplane, you can't get out until you arrive.

LEVEL 9 LESSON 17

2. 한번 시작한 이상, 중간에 포기할 수 없어요.

= Once you've started, you can't quit in the middle.

3. 여기까지 온 이상, 포기하지 말고 열심히 하세요.

= Since you've come this far, don't give up and keep working hard.

4. 출근을 안 할 수는 있지만, 출근을 한 이상, 일을 안 할 수는 없어요.

= I could just not go to work, but once I've [actually] gone to work, I have to work [lit: I can't not do work].

5. 이 방에 들어온 이상, 이 게임을 꼭 해야 돼요.

= Once you've come into this room, you must play this game.

Negative Forms

When -(으/느)ㄴ 이상 is used in a negative form, the sentence can take the meaning of "as long as" or "unless", and the following clause usually describes a negative situation or is a negative statement.

(1) Negative form + -(으/느)ㄴ 이상

As there are various ways to form a negative sentence in Korean, this structure also works with various forms of negative verb endings.

Sample Sentences

1. 비행기를 타지 않는 이상, 그렇게 빨리 갈 수가 없어요.

= Unless you take the airplane, you can't go that fast.

LEVEL 9 LESSON 17

2. 계산기를 쓰지 않는 이상, 이렇게 복잡한 계산은 못 해요.

= Unless I use a calculator, I can't do such a complex calculation.

3. 아주 아프지 않은 이상, 저는 수업에 빠지지 않아요.

= Unless I'm very sick, I don't skip classes.

(2) Noun + -이/가 아닌 이상

With nouns, since you need to add the verb -이다 before you can conjugate it, you add the structure -이/가 아닌 이상 after the noun.

Sample Sentences

1. 여기 직원이 아닌 이상, 들어갈 수가 없어요.

= Unless you're a staff member here, you can't go in.

2. 가족이 아닌 이상, 그런 건 알 수가 없어요.

= Unless you are his family, it's impossible to know such things.

3. 중요한 일이 아닌 이상, 지금 이 시간에 나갈 수는 없어요.

= Unless it's something important, I can't go out at this hour.

LEVEL 9 LESSON 18

In this lesson, we are looking at how -(으)ㄹ까 보다 is used in a sentence. As you've learned from Level 3 Lesson 4, when you add the ending -(으)ㄹ까 after a verb stem, it can express an assumption (e.g. 내일 비가 올까요? = Do you think it will rain tomorrow?). With -(으)ㄹ까 보다, an assumption is also implied, but you can also express concern, the reason for a decision, or an inclination to do something.

Usage #1 - Expressing worries or concerns

Structure: Verb stem + -(으)ㄹ까 봐 + another verb

When you are worried about something that MIGHT happen, you can use -(으)ㄹ까 봐 to talk about what you did or are doing as a result. You use -(으)ㄹ까 봐 only about things that might happen and not things that are already happening or will happen for sure. In this case, when you use it with the word 걱정, you can omit 봐 and just say -(으)ㄹ까 걱정이에요 or -(으)ㄹ까 걱정했어요.

Example

1. 나중에 후회할까 봐 걱정 돼요.

= 나중에 후회할까 걱정 돼요.

= I am worried that I might regret it later.

2. 아이가 실망할까 봐 아직 말 못 했어요.

= I was worried that the child might be disappointed, so I didn't tell him yet.

3. 늦을까 봐 걱정이에요.

= 늦을까 걱정이에요.

= I am worried that we might be late.

LEVEL 9 LESSON 18

4. 시험에 떨어질까 봐 걱정이에요.

= 시험에 떨어질까 걱정이에요.

= I am worried that I might fail the exam.

5. 차가 막힐까 봐 걱정이에요.

= 차가 막힐까 걱정이에요.

= I am worried that the traffic might be bad.

Usage #2 - Explaining the reason for a decision based on an assumption

Structure: Verb stem + -(으)ㄴ까 봐 + another verb

When you've made a decision to do something based on the assumption that it might be a good or helpful decision, or just that something might happen, you can use **-(으)ㄴ까 봐**. In this case, you can also say **-(으)ㄴ까 봐서** to mean the same thing.

Example

1. 택시로 가면 더 빠를까 봐 택시를 탔는데, 결국은 지각했어요.

= I took a taxi thinking that it might be faster, but I ended up being late.

2. 비가 올까 봐 우산을 가져왔는데 비가 안 오네요.

= I brought an umbrella thinking that it might rain, but it's not raining.

3. 공부하다가 잠이 올까 봐 커피 사왔어요.

= I bought some coffee in case I fall asleep.

4. 배고프실까 봐 간식 사왔어요.

LEVEL 9 LESSON 18

= In case you're hungry, I bought some snacks.

5. 이 책 필요하실까 봐 가져왔어요.

= I thought you might need this book, so I brought it.

Usage #3 - Expressing one's inclination to do something

Structure: Verb stem + -(으)ㄴ까 봐(요)

You can also use -(으)ㄴ까 봐 when you want to talk about something that you are feeling inclined to do something, although you haven't fully decided on doing it quite yet. In this case, you can also say -(으)ㄴ까 해(요) instead of -(으)ㄴ까 봐(요) to mean the same thing.

1. 오늘은 좀 쉴까 봐요.

= I think maybe I should get some rest today.

2. 친구들한테 물어볼까 봐요.

= I think maybe I should ask my friends.

3. 그냥 환불 받을까 봐요.

= I am thinking maybe I should just get a refund.

4. 이걸로 살까 봐요.

= Maybe I should buy this one.

5. 일본어를 공부해 볼까 봐요.

= I am thinking maybe I should try studying Japanese.

LEVEL 9 LESSON 19

Welcome to another lesson in the Advanced Situational Expressions series. Throughout this series, we take a look at common situations and some of the advanced expressions you can use in each of them. In this Advanced Situational Expressions lesson, we are going to take a look at some expressions you can use or expect to hear when you meet someone after not seeing them for a long time.

1. 오랜만이에요.

= Long time no see.

2. 이게 얼마만에예요.

= It's been a long time.

3. 얼마만에 보는 거죠?

= How long has it been since we last met?

4. 별일 없죠?

= Everything alright?

5. 요새 어떻게 지내요?

= How are you doing these days?

6. 지난 번에 본 게 벌써 2년 전이에요?

= The last time we met was already 2 years ago?

7. 작년 가을에 보고 못 봤죠?

= We haven't met since last fall, right?

LEVEL 9 LESSON 19

8. 앞으로는 자주 연락 하고 지내요.

= Let's stay in touch more often from now on.

9. 왜 그렇게 얼굴 보기가 힘들어요?

= Why is it so hard to meet you?

10. 오랜만에 만났는데 하나도 안 변했네요?

= It's been a long time and you haven't changed a bit.

11. 3년 전에 보고 처음 보는 거죠?

= We are meeting for the first time in three years, right?

12. 옛날 그대로네요.

= You're exactly the same as before.

= You haven't changed a bit.

LEVEL 9 LESSON 20

In this series, we focus on how you can use the grammatical rules and expressions that you have previously learned to train yourself to comfortably make Korean sentences.

We will start off with THREE key sentences and practice changing different parts of these sentences so that you don't end up simply memorizing the same three sentences. We want you to be able to be as flexible as possible when making Korean sentences.

Key Sentence #1

혼자 가면 심심할 테니까 제가 같이 간다니까요.

= I told you. I'm go with you because you would be bored if you go alone.

Key Sentence #2

제가 몸이 약해 보이지만, 사실은 아주 건강한 편이에요.

= I look weak, but in fact, I am quite healthy.

Key Sentence #3

헬스장에 돈까지 낸 이상, 운동을 안 하면 아까울 테니까 열심히 하세요.

= Now that you've even paid at the gym, it would be a waste if you don't work out, so exercise hard.

Expansion & variation practice with key sentence #1

0. Original Sentence:

LEVEL 9 LESSON 20

혼자 가면 심심할 테니까 제가 같이 간다니까요.

= I told you. I'm go with you because you would be bored if you go alone.

1.

혼자 가면 심심할 테니까 = because you would be bored if you go alone

이대로 나가면 추울 테니까 = because it would be cold if you go out just this

너무 일찍 일어나면 피곤할 테니까 = because you would be tired if you get up too early

혼자 하면 힘들 테니까 = because it would be hard if you do it alone

2.

제가 같이 간다니까요 = I told you. I'm going with you.

저 괜찮다니까요 = I told you. I'm okay.

이게 제일 좋다니까요 = I told you. This is the best one.

혼자서도 할 수 있다니까요 = I told you. I can do this even by myself.

Expansion & variation practice with key sentence #2

0. Original Sentence:

제가 몸이 약해 보이지만, 사실은 아주 건강한 편이에요.

= I look weak, but in fact, I am quite healthy.

1.

LEVEL 9 LESSON 20

제가 몸이 약해 보이지만 = although I look weak

제가 어려 보이지만 = although I look very young

이게 처음에는 쉬워 보이지만 = although this looks easy at first

멀리서 보면 귀여워 보이지만 = although it looks cute from afar

2.

사실은 아주 건강한 편이에요 = I am actually quite healthy

친구들을 자주 만나는 편이에요 = I meet my friends rather frequently

공부를 열심히 하는 편이에요 = I study rather diligently

저는 잠이 많은 편이에요 = I sleep rather a lot

Expansion & variation practice with key sentence #3

0. Original Sentence:

헬스장에 돈까지 낸 이상, 운동을 안 하면 아까울 테니까 열심히 하세요.

= Now that you've even paid at the gym, it would be a waste if you don't work out, so exercise hard.

1.

헬스장에 돈까지 낸 이상 = now that you've even paid at the gym

사람들이 다 안 이상 = now that everybody has already found out

한국까지 온 이상 = since you've already come all the way to Korea

마음 먹은 이상 = since you've already made up your mind

LEVEL 9 LESSON 20

2.

운동을 안 하면 아까울 테니까 열심히 하세요

= it would be a waste if you don't work out, so exercise hard

너무 많이 넣으면 매울 테니 조금만 넣으세요

= it would be spicy if you put in too much of it, so just add a little bit

지금 가면 차가 막힐 테니 나중에 가세요

= the traffic would be bad if you leave now, so go later

내일 오면 저는 여기에 없을 테니 지금 이야기하세요

= I won't be here if you come back tomorrow, so tell me now

LEVEL 9 LESSON 21

This is an Advanced Idiomatic Expressions lesson related to 생각, "thought" or "idea". In order to fully understand and use the expressions introduced in this series, it is essential that you understand the grammatical structure of the sentences. When you come across a grammar point that you are unfamiliar with, please go back and review the related TTMIK lessons.

Keyword:

생각 = thought, idea

1. 생각이 다르다 = to have different opinions

(다르다 = to be different)

→ Literally translated, it would mean "the thought is different", but the actual meaning is that you have an opinion that is different from another person's opinion.

Ex) 저는 그 문제에 대해서는 생각이 좀 달라요.

= About that matter, I have a different opinion.

2. 생각이 없다 = to not feel like eating/drinking

→ Literally this would mean that you don't have an idea or that you do not think much about something, but in the actual usage, it means that you are not hungry or thirsty so you do not feel like eating or drinking.

Ex) 저는 아침을 늦게 먹어서 점심 생각이 없어요.

= I had a late breakfast, so I don't feel like having lunch (now).

3. 생각에 잠기다 = to be lost in thought

→ 잠기다 literally means "to be submerged" or "to be flooded", so if you say that you are

LEVEL 9 LESSON 21

"flooded" by thoughts or are sinking in thoughts, it means that you are deep in thought about something.

Ex) 무슨 생각에 잠겨 있었길래 전화 온 줄도 몰랐어요?

= What were you thinking about so hard? You didn't even know that your phone was ringing.

4. 생각만 해도 = at the bare thought of it

→ This one is fairly easy to guess the meaning since it's translated as "even if I just think about it". This is most commonly used when you talk about something that you are scared about, something you don't enjoy experiencing, or when someone mentions something that's very absurd or is unlikely to happen.

Ex) 생각만 해도 소름이 끼쳐요.

= Just thinking about it alone gives me goosebumps.

5. 생각하기도 싫다 = to not even want to think about it

→ When there is something you're not really looking forward to and want to avoid if possible, you can say "생각하기도 싫다". You can also change it "생각하고 싶지도 않다" to mean the same thing.

Ex) 다시 대학생이 되는 건 생각하기도 싫어요.

= I don't even want to think about becoming a university student. / I hate the idea of becoming a university student.

6. 생각이 나다 = to occur to one's mind, to remember

→ 생각이 나다 can be used in two types of situations: when you just remembered something

LEVEL 9 LESSON 21

that you previously couldn't recall (like someone's name or the reason you called someone), or when something just occurred to you and you started thinking about it. When you are just going about your daily tasks and all of a sudden think of someone that you know, you can say "생각이 나다".

Ex) 그냥 니 생각 나서 전화했어.

= I just thought of you, so I am calling you now.

7. 생각이 들다 = to occur to one's mind

→ 생각이 들다 and 생각이 나다 are similar in usage, but 생각이 들다 is only used about the actual "content" of a thought. You can say "생각이 나다" about a person or a place, but 생각이 들다 about your opinion or premonition. In many cases, 생각이 들다 is just translated as "to think", "to feel", or "to have a feeling".

Ex) 이거 조금 이상하다는 생각 안 들어요?

= Don't you feel that this is a bit strange?

8. -(으)ㄹ 생각은 없다 = to not intend to do something

→ When you feel bad about something you have said or done and want to apologize, one expression that can come in handy is -(으)ㄹ 생각은 없다. If you just say "생각 없다", it can mean either "to be not very hungry" or "to be thoughtless or careless", but if you use -(으)ㄹ 생각은 없다 with a specific verb stem, it means that you don't intend to do something.

Ex) 놀래킬 생각은 없었어요.

= I didn't intend to surprise you.

LEVEL 9 LESSON 21

9. 생각이 간절하다 = to really want to have (usually a certain food/drink)

→ 간절하다 means "ardent" or "desperate", so if you say "생각이 간절하다", it means that you have a very strong yearning for something, usually a certain food or drink.

Ex) 요즘에 다이어트 하고 있는데, 운동하고 나면 콜라 생각이 간절해요.

= I am on a diet (to lose weight) these days, and after I work out, I really want some cola.

10. 생각지도 못 했던 일이다 = to be unthought-of, to have not been foreseen

→ 생각지도 is short for 생각하지도, and by saying that something was a "생각지도 못 했던 일", you are saying that you didn't have the faintest idea that something like that could happen.

Ex) 이걸 정말 생각지도 못 했던 결과네요.

= We really couldn't see this coming.

= This is really an unexpected result.

11. 생각해 보고 말 것도 없다 = to not even be worth thinking about it

→ Here, 말다 means "to not do something", and to express this meaning, it's always used in the form of -아/어/여 보고 말 것도 없다, which means that "it's not even worth trying doing it". Literally it means "there's not enough (substance or importance to it) to really bother doing do it".

Ex) 생각해 보고 말 것도 없이, 그 사람은 무조건 안 돼요.

= It's needless to think about, he just can't do it.

= Needless to say, my answer is no. I can't let him do it.

12. ~을/를 생각해서라도 = at least for the sake of (someone)

LEVEL 9 LESSON 21

→ Literally translated, this means "even if you were to do it, just think about [someone else]", and in actual usage, it means "at least for the sake of [someone]". This is commonly used when you want to stop someone from doing something that can be either embarrassing or harmful for other people.

Ex) 가기 싫겠지만, 나를 생각해도 한 번만 참석해 줘.

= I know you don't want to go there, but please attend it just this once, at least for me.

LEVEL 9 LESSON 22

Word Builder lessons are designed to help you understand how to expand your vocabulary by learning/understanding some common and basic building blocks of Korean words. The words and letters introduced through Word Builder lessons are not necessarily all Chinese characters, or 한자 [han-ja], and although many of them are based on Chinese characters, the meanings can be different from modern-day Chinese. Your goal, through these lessons, is to understand how words are formed and remember the keywords in Korean to expand your Korean vocabulary from there. You certainly don't have to memorize the Hanja characters, but if you want to, feel free!

Today's keyword is 시.

We are introducing two Chinese characters for this lesson: 示 and 視. The first one, 示 means to "show" and the second one, 視 means to "see".

시범 = 시 (show) + 범 (good example) = 示範 = demonstration

예시 = 예 (example) + 시 (show) = 例示 = example, illustration

과시 = 과 (boast) + 시 (show) = 誇示 = showing off

게시 = 게 (put up, post) + 시 (show) = 揭示 = put up/post a notice

→ 게시물 (written posts), 게시판 (bulletin board)

표시 = 표 (outside, surface) + 시 (show) = 表示 = expressing or showing (emotions)

시력 = 시 (see) + 력 (power) = 視力 = eyesight, vision

시청 = 시 (see) + 청 (listen) = 視聽 = watching and listening

시각 = 시 (see) + 각 (realize) = 視覺 = sight, vision

→ 시각적인 (visual), 시각 디자인 (visual design)

시야 = 시 (see) + 야 (field) = 視野 = one's view, field of vision

시찰 = 시 (see) + 찰 (examine) = 視察 = inspection

LEVEL 9 LESSON 22

시선 = 시 (see) + 선 (line) = 視線 = attention, gaze

LEVEL 9 LESSON 23

The structure **-(으)면서** can be translated to English as "while", and similarly to the usage of "while" in English, **-(으)면서** has a few different usages in Korean depending on the context.

Usage #1

You can use **-(으)면서** to describe how you are doing two actions at the same time, or how you do one thing while doing another thing, such as "studying Korean while cleaning the house" or "exercising while listening to the music".

Structure

Verb stem + **-(으)면서**

Ex)

공부하다 + **-(으)면서** + 운동하다 = 공부하면서 운동해요 (I exercise while studying.)

Sample Sentences:

1. 저는 샤워 하면서 노래를 들어요.

= I listen to the music while taking a shower.

2. 저는 잠을 자면서 많이 움직여요.

= I move my body a lot while sleeping.

3. 저는 학교에 다니면서 아르바이트를 많이 했어요.

= I did a lot of part-time work while going to school.

4. 저는 노래를 들으면서 일을 할 수가 없어요.

= I can't work while listening to the music.

LEVEL 9 LESSON 23

5. 운전하면서 전화 통화 하지 마세요.

= Don't talk on the phone while driving.

Usage #2

You can contrast two actions or states by linking them with -(으)면서. When one state or action betrays or is the opposite of the other action, you can use -(으)면서 between two verbs.

Ex)

알면서 모르는 척 했어요?

= You knew but you pretended you didn't know?

Sample Sentences

1. 좋으면서 관심 없는 척 하지 마세요.

= Don't pretend you are not interested when you are excited.

2. 알지도 못 하면서 쉽게 말하지 마세요.

= You don't know (it/him/them/me) well, so don't speak about it so easily.

3. 준비는 하면서도 걱정이 됐어요.

= Even as I was preparing for it and everything, I was worried.

Usage #3

You can use the -(으)면서 structure with action verbs, but you can also use it with nouns and the -이다 verb, in which case the structure changes to "Noun + -(이)면서". Since the future tense in Korean is basically "Verb stem + -(으)ㄹ 것이다", which already uses the -이다 verb, the future tense is also expressed with -것 + -이면서, but is shortened to 거면서.

LEVEL 9 LESSON 23

Ex)

학생이면서 동시에 모델이에요.

= She is a student and model at the same time.

(The same can also be expressed by saying "학생이기도 하면서 동시에 모델이에요".)

Ex)

결국에 올 거면서 어제는 왜 그렇게 말했어요?

= You were going to come here anyway, so why did you say that (you wouldn't) yesterday?

Sample Sentences:

1. 그 사람은 제 친구이면서 동시에 선생님이에요.

= She is my friend and my teacher at the same time.

2. 시간 없다고 할 거면서...

= I know you are going to say you don't have time (and yet you are not saying so).

3. 하지도 못 할 거면서 큰 소리 치지 마세요.

= Don't bluff about it while (it's obvious that) you are not going to be able to do it anyways.

LEVEL 9 LESSON 24

If you are familiar with the structure **-(으)면서**, which was introduced in the previous lesson, it is easy to guess what **-(ㄴ/는)다면서(요)** and **-(이)라면서(요)** mean.

Origins

-(ㄴ/는)다면서(요) is a combination of **-(ㄴ/는)다** and **-다고 말하면서**, and the literal translation is "while saying ABC does XYZ". Similarly, **-(이)라면서(요)** is originally **-(이)다** + **-다고 말하면서** and, therefore, literally translates as "while saying that ABC is XYZ".

However, what makes the endings **-(ㄴ/는)다면서(요)** and **-(이)라면서(요)** have different meanings from the literal translations is the fact that they can be used as sentence endings. Note that the endings have **-요** at the end for 존댓말.

Actual Usage

-(ㄴ/는)다면서(요) and **-(이)라면서(요)** can be used when you want to show your surprise or dissatisfaction after finding out that what you thought was true is not the actual truth, or when you are just fact-checking what you heard before with someone else.

Ex)

집에 가다 + **-ㄴ** 다면서요 = 집에 간다면서요 = you said you were going home (but you are here)

Ex)

학생 + **-이** 라면서요 = 학생이라면서요 = you said you were a student (yet, apparently, you are not)

Ex)

가다 + **-라**면서요 = 가라면서요 = you told me to leave (and now you are saying otherwise)

LEVEL 9 LESSON 24

These endings do not always make the sentence a question, but it is very common to put a question mark at the end of the sentence to emphasize the fact that the speaker was surprised, disappointed, or intrigued, depending on the context.

Sample Sentences:

1. 다음 달에 이사간다면서요?

= I heard you were going to move next month.

2. 벌써 다 끝났다면서요?

= I heard it's already over. Is that right?

3. 아직 학생이라면서요?

= Didn't you say you were still a student?

4. 잘 모르는 사이라면서요!

= You said you didn't know each other that well!

5. 여자친구 없다면서요.

= You said you didn't have a girlfriend!

LEVEL 9 LESSON 25

Welcome to another lesson in the Advanced Situational Expressions series. Throughout this series, we take a look at common situations and some of the advanced expressions you can use in each of them. In this Advanced Situational Expressions lesson, we are going to take a look at some expressions you can use or expect to hear when you meet someone after not seeing them for a long time.

1. 저기요, 죄송하지만 길 좀 물을게요.

= Excuse me, I'm sorry, but I'd like to ask for directions.

2. 혹시 길 좀 물을 수 있을까요?

= By any chance, could I ask you for directions?

3. 서울역이 어느 쪽이에요?

= Which way is Seoul Station?

4. 교보문고 가려면 어디로 가야 돼요?

= Where should I go to get to Kyobo Bookstore?

5. 어린이대공원으로 가려면 어느 쪽으로 가야 돼요?

= Which way should I go to get to Children's Grand Park?

6. 서울대학교 정문이 어디예요?

= Where is the main gate of Seoul National University?

7. 현대백화점이 어딘지 아세요?

= Do you know where Hyundai Department Store is?

LEVEL 9 LESSON 25

8. 이 근처에 하나은행이 어디에 있는지 아세요?

= Do you know where there is a Hana Bank around here?

9. 저도 잘 모르겠네요.

= I don't know either.

10. 저도 여기 사람이 아니라서 잘 모르겠네요.

= I am not from around here either, so I don't know.

11. 하나은행이요? 모르겠어요.

= Hana Bank? I don't know.

12. 이쪽으로 가셔서 다시 한 번 물어보세요.

= Go this way and ask someone one more time.

13. 이쪽으로 100미터 정도 가셔서 왼쪽으로 가면 있어요.

= If you go 100 meters this way and turn left, it will be there.

14. 여기서 걸어가기에는 거리가 좀 있어요. 버스 타셔야 될 거예요.

= It's a bit of a distance to walk from here. You'll need to take a bus.

LEVEL 9 LESSON 26

This is an Advanced Idiomatic Expressions lesson related to 시간, time. In order to fully understand and use the expressions introduced in this series, it is essential that you understand the grammatical structure of the sentences. When you come across a grammar point that you are unfamiliar with, please go back and review the related TTMik lessons.

Keyword:

시간 = time

1. 잠깐 시간 좀 내 줄 수 있어요?

= Can you make some time for me?

2. 지금 이러고 있을 시간이 어디 있어요?

= You don't have time for this.

3. 그럴 시간 있으면 공부나 하세요.

= If you have that kind of time, do your studying.

4. 이번 프로젝트에 시간을 많이 할애해 주세요.

= I hope you can spend a lot of time on this project.

5. 한국 시간으로 5월 2일 오후 7시에 시작할 거예요.

= It will begin at 7 pm on May 2nd in Korean time.

6. 여행을 가고 싶은데 좀처럼 시간이 안 나네요.

= I want to travel, but I just can't find the time.

LEVEL 9 LESSON 26

7. 괜히 시간 낭비하지 말고 그냥 돌아가세요.

= Stop wasting your time, just go back home.

8. 제가 시간이 남아도는 줄 아세요?

= Do you think I have that much time to waste?

9. 아무리 바빠도 그렇죠. 잠깐 전화할 시간도 없어요?

= Even though you were really busy, you didn't even have time for a quick phone call?

10. 시간이 어떻게 가는지 모르겠어요.

= I can't feel the passage of time.

= Time flies.

11. 시간을 되돌릴 수 있으면 좋겠어요.

= I wish I could turn back time to the past.

12. 저는 주말에는 가족들과 시간을 보내는 편이에요.

= I usually spend time with my family on the weekends.

LEVEL 9 LESSON 27

It's time to learn another very cool grammar point that will help you enrich your Korean conversations! In this lesson, we are looking at the verb ending **-더니**. In general, you can use **-더니** when you are describing what happened in relation to your discovery of a fact.

Usage #1

You can use **-더니** when you describe two things that you experienced or observed, one after the other. The two things that happened can be either the opposite of each other, very different from each other (therefore surprising you), or just connected to each other in sequence; therefore, depending on the context, the English translation of **-더니** can be very different.

Sample Sentences:

1. 어제는 비가 오더니 오늘은 눈이 오네요.

= It rained yesterday, but it's snowing today.

2. 효진 씨가 어제는 9시에 오더니, 오늘은 11시에 왔어요.

= Hyojin came in at 9 o'clock yesterday, and she came in at 11 o'clock today.

3. 경화 씨가 어제는 요가를 하더니, 오늘은 테니스를 하네요.

= Kyung-hwa did yoga yesterday, and today she's playing tennis.

4. 아침에는 춥더니 지금은 따뜻하네요.

= It was cold in the morning, but now it's warm.

5. 제 컴퓨터가 느려지더니, 이제 안 켜져요.

= My computer slowed down, and now it won't even switch on.

LEVEL 9 LESSON 27

6. 두 사람이 커피숍 앞에서 만나더니 뭔가 물건을 교환했어요.

= Those two met in front of a coffee shop, and then exchanged some things.

7. 석진 씨가 밖에 나가더니 갑자기 고양이를 데리고 왔어요.

= Seokjin went outside, and then suddenly, he brought back a cat.

Usage #2

The second usage is similar to the first one, but in this case, you can use -더니 when one thing is either a sign of something else (usually bigger, more intense, or more serious), or the direct result of another thing.

Sample Sentences

1. 책을 많이 읽었더니 눈이 피곤해요.

= I read a lot, so my eyes are tired.

2. 도너츠를 많이 먹었더니 배탈이 났어요.

= I ate a lot of doughnuts, and now I have a stomachache.

3. 아침에 날씨가 흐리더니 오후에는 눈이 왔어요.

= The weather was overcast in the morning, and it ended up snowing in the afternoon.

4. 석진 씨가 열심히 운동을 하더니 몸이 정말 좋아졌어요.

= Seokjin exercised hard, and now he has a really well-built body.

5. 경화 씨가 매일 글을 쓰더니 지난 달에 소설을 출간했어요.

= Kyung-hwa wrote every day, and she published a novel last month.

LEVEL 9 LESSON 27

6. 무거운 짐을 들고 왔더니 허리가 아파요.

= I carried some heavy luggage here, and because of that, my back hurts.

7. 노래방에서 노래를 두 시간 동안 불렀더니 목소리가 안 나와요.

= I sang for two hours in a singing room, and I can't speak now.

LEVEL 9 LESSON 28

In this TTMik lesson, we will be introducing how **-(으)ㄴ 바에** works and where you can use it.

Although this grammatical structure is fairly straightforward, the meaning of it is rather complex. It is essential to understand what **바** means. **바** is a dependent noun that is rarely used on its own, and when paired with other verbs, **바** can mean "method", "content", or "situation". Used in **-(으)ㄴ 바에**, **바** means "situation" or "fact".

Structure

Verb stem + -(으)ㄴ 바에

= Verb stem + -(으)ㄴ 바에야

= Verb stem + -(으)ㄴ 바에는

When you link two actions with **-(으)ㄴ 바에**, you imply that the first action or option is much worse than the second action or option, or it is so disappointing that you would rather choose the second option.

Ex)

식은 라면을 먹다 = to eat ramyeon noodles that have become cold

안 먹다 = to not eat

—> **식은 라면을 먹을 바에는 그냥 안 먹을게요.**

= If I have to eat ramyeon noodles that have become cold, I would rather just not eat (at all).

Since you are saying that the second option (the action which comes after the **-(으)ㄴ 바에** part) is better, you can also add expressions related to comparisons such as the following:

1. **차라리** = would rather
2. **낫다** = to be better
3. **그냥** = just
4. **-고 말다** = to just do something and be done with the matter

LEVEL 9 LESSON 28

Sample Sentences:

1. 그 사람이랑 여행을 갈 바에는 저는 차라리 그냥 집에 있겠어요.

= If I have to go on a trip with him, I would rather just stay at home.

2. 너랑 결혼할 바에야 평생 혼자 사는 게 낫지.

= If I have to marry you, it would be better living by myself forever.

3. 나중에 후회할 바에는 그냥 안 하는 게 낫겠어요.

= If you're going to regret it later, it would be better to just not do it.

4. 이렇게 고민할 바에야 차라리 다른 사람한테 시키고 말겠어요.

= If this is going to be such a headache, I would rather just ask someone else to do it.

5. 잠깐 밖에 못 쓸 바에는 중고로 사는 게 좋죠.

= If I'm only going to be able to use it for a short time, it would be nicer to just buy it second-handed.

Exceptions

Since 바 has the meaning of "situation", -(ㅇ)ㄴ 바에 can also imply "if you're going to do it anyway".

In this usage, it is usually preceded by 이왕 or 어차피.

Sample Sentences

1. 어차피 살 바에는 좋은 걸로 사세요.

= If you are going to buy one anyway, get a good one.

2. 이왕 고칠 바에는 처음부터 다시 하는 게 낫겠어요.

= If you are going to modify it, it'll be better to do it all over again.

LEVEL 9 LESSON 29

Welcome to another lesson in the Advanced Situational Expressions series. Throughout this series, we take a look at common situations and some of the advanced expressions you can use in each of them. In this Advanced Situational Expressions lesson, we are going to take a look at some expressions you can use or expect to hear when you meet someone after not seeing them for a long time.

1. 차가 막혀요.

= The traffic is bad.

2. 차가 많이 막히네요.

= (I see that) The traffic is really bad.

3. 차가 너무 많이 막혀서 오늘은 차 두고 나왔어요.

= The traffic is really bad today, so I left my car at home.

4. 지금은 차가 많이 막히는 시간이라서 지하철 타고 가는 게 빠를 거예요.

= Now is the time (of the day) when the traffic is bad, so it will be faster to take the subway.

5. 차가 좀 막혀서 늦을 것 같아요.

= The traffic is bad, so I'll be a bit late.

6. 차가 심하게 막혀서 20분 정도 늦을 것 같아요.

= The traffic is really bad, so I think I'll be about 20 minutes late.

7. 보통 이 시간대에는 차가 안 막히는데, 오늘은 좀 많이 막히네요.

= The traffic is usually not bad at this time of the day, but today, it's pretty bad.

LEVEL 9 LESSON 29

8. 어제 여기 지나가는 데에 한 시간 걸렸어요.

= It took me one hour to pass through this place yesterday.

9. 서울에서는 출퇴근 시간에 운전하면 차 막히는 거 각오해야 돼요.

= If you drive in Seoul around rush hour, you have to be ready for some bad traffic.

10. 차만 안 막히면 10분 안에 갈 수 있는 거예요.

= If the traffic is not bad, it's a 10 minute distance.

11. 이쪽 길은 많이 막히는 것 같으니까 다른 길로 갈게요.

= It looks like the traffic is very bad on this road, so I'll take another route.

12. 거기 지금쯤 많이 막히지 않을까요?

= Don't you think the traffic there must be bad by now?

13. 차가 하나도 안 막혀서 빨리 왔어요.

= There was no traffic at all, so I got here fast.

LEVEL 9 LESSON 30

In this series, we focus on how you can use the grammatical rules and expressions that you have previously learned to train yourself to comfortably make Korean sentences.

We will start off with THREE key sentences and practice changing different parts of these sentences so that you don't end up simply memorizing the same three sentences. We want you to be able to be as flexible and as confident as possible when coming up with your own Korean sentences.

Key Sentence #1

이렇게 제출할 바에는, 후회하는 한이 있더라도 차라리 제출 안 하겠어요.

= If I have to submit it like this, I would rather not submit it, even if that means I'll regret it.

Key Sentence #2

어제 경화 씨가 밖에 나가더니 강아지를 데리고 오더라고요.

= Kyung-hwa went outside yesterday and then came back with a puppy.

Key Sentence #3

어제 공연이 끝나기가 무섭게 사람들이 다 나갔다면서요.

= As soon as the performance was over yesterday, I heard that everyone went outside.

LEVEL 9 LESSON 30

Expansion & variation practice with key sentence #1

0. Original Sentence:

이렇게 제출할 바에는, 후회하는 한이 있더라도 차라리 제출 안 하겠어요.

= If I have to submit it like this, I would rather not submit it, even if that means I'll regret it.

1.

이렇게 제출할 바에는 = if I have to submit it like this, (I would rather)

처음부터 다시 할 바에는 = if I have to do it again from the beginning, (I would rather)

경화 씨랑 같이 앉을 바에는 = if I have to sit with Kyung-hwa, (I would rather)

혼자서 영화를 볼 바에는 = if I have to watch a movie by myself, (I would rather)

사람들 앞에서 창피를 당할 바에는

= if I have to embarrass myself in front of people, (I would rather)

2.

후회하는 한이 있더라도 차라리 제출 안 하겠어요

= even if I end up regretting it, I would rather not submit it

전체 내용을 다 바꾸는 한이 있더라도 괜찮아요

= even if I end up changing all the content, it's okay

내일 다시 오는 한이 있더라도, 오늘은 여기까지만 할 거예요

= even if I end up coming back tomorrow, I will stop working on it now

늦게 자는 한이 있더라도, 이 책 다 읽을 거예요

= even if I end up going to bed late, I will read all of this book

LEVEL 9 LESSON 30

밤을 새는 한이 있더라도 이거 오늘 다 끝내세요

= even if you end up staying up all night, finish this today

Expansion & variation practice with key sentence #2

0. Original Sentence:

어제 경화 씨가 밖에 나가더니 강아지를 데리고 오더라고요.

= Kyung-hwa went outside yesterday and then came back with a puppy.

1.

어제 경화 씨가 밖에 나가더니 = Kyung-hwa went outside yesterday and then ...

아침부터 눈이 많이 오더니 = it was snowing a lot since morning and then ...

석진 씨가 어제 커피를 많이 마시더니

= Seokjin was drinking a lot of coffee yesterday and now ...

현정 씨가 운동을 열심히 하더니 = Hyeonjeong worked out hard and now ...

스테파니 씨가 한국어를 매일 공부하더니 = Stephanie studied Korean every day and now ...

2.

강아지를 데리고 오더라고요 = (I saw that) she brought a puppy

잠이 안 오더라고요 = I couldn't sleep

이 영화 생각보다 재미있더라고요 = I found this movie to be more fun than I thought

거기는 항상 사람이 많더라고요 = (I found that) that place is always crowded

저는 이 옷이 제일 편하더라고요 = (I find that) these clothes are the most comfortable

LEVEL 9 LESSON 30

Expansion & variation practice with key sentence #3

0. Original Sentence:

어제 공연이 끝나기가 무섭게 사람들이 다 나갔다면서요.

= As soon as the performance was over yesterday, I heard that everybody went outside.

1.

어제 공연이 끝나기가 무섭게 = as soon as the performance was over yesterday

비가 그치기가 무섭게 = as soon as the rain stopped

전화벨이 울리기가 무섭게 = as soon as the phone bell rang

말이 끝나기가 무섭게 = as soon as I finished talking

문이 열리기가 무섭게 = as soon as the door opened

2.

사람들이 다 나갔다면서요 = I heard that everybody went outside

어제 효진 씨 만났다면서요 = I heard that you met Hyojin yesterday

아무도 안 왔다면서요 = I heard that nobody came

교통 사고가 있었다면서요 = I heard that there was a traffic accident

시험에 합격했다면서요 = I heard that you passed the exam